Collocations Dictionary and Thesaurus

NEW

FOR INTERMEDIATE – ADVANCED LEARNERS



ONLINE

ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON

Short forms and labels

Parts of speech

adj	adjective
adv	adverb
n	noun
v	verb
prep	preposition

Short forms

sb	someone
sth	something

Labels

Ac	used to show that a word is on the Academic Word List
AmE	American English
BrE	British English
formal	suitable for formal speech or writing, but not normally used in ordinary conversation
informal	used in normal conversation, but not suitable for use in more formal contexts, such as in essays or business letters
spoken	used only, or nearly always, in conversation
written	used only, or nearly always, in written English
literary	used mainly in English literature, and not in normal speech or writing
technical	used by scientists, engineers, or other specialists
old-fashioned	commonly used in the past, but sounds old-fashioned today
disapproving	used when you do not approve of someone or something
humorous	used in a joking way

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

https://archive.org/details/longmancollocati0000unse

Short forms and labels

Parts of speech

adj	adjective
adv	adverb
n	noun
v	verb
prep	preposition

Short forms

sb	someone
sth	something

Labels

Ac	used to show that a word is on the Academic Word List
AmE	American English
BrE	British English
formal	suitable for formal speech or writing, but not normally used in ordinary conversation
informal	used in normal conversation, but not suitable for use in more formal contexts, such as in essays or business letters
spoken	used only, or nearly always, in conversation
written	used only, or nearly always, in written English
literary	used mainly in English literature, and not in normal speech or writing
technical	used by scientists, engineers, or other specialists
old-fashioned	commonly used in the past, but sounds old-fashioned today
disapproving	used when you do not approve of someone or something
humorous	used in a joking way

LONGMAN

Collocations Dictionary and Thesaurus

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England, UK
and associated Companies throughout the world

Visit our website: http://www.pearsonlongman.com/dictionaries

© Pearson Education Limited, 2013
All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

First published 2013

Words that editors have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been described as such. However, neither the presence not the absence of such a description should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

ISBN 978 1 4082 5225 3 (Cased edition + online access)
ISBN 978 1 4082 5226 0 (Paperback edition + online access)

Set in Whitney by Letterpart, UK
Printed in China SWTC/01

Acknowledgements

Editorial Director
Michael Mayor

Managing Editor
Chris Fox

Senior Editor
Rosalind Combley

Editors
Karen Cleveland-Marwick
Lucy Hollingworth
Elizabeth Manning
Michael Murphy
Howard Sargeant
Dr Martin Stark
Laura Wedgeworth

Thesaurus Entries & Language Notes
Chris Fox

Project Management
Alan Savill

Computational Linguist
Allan Ørsnes

Online Development
Andrew Roberts

Senior Project Editor
Alice Willoughby

Proofreaders
Pat Dunn
Isabel Griffiths
Alison Sadler
Nicky Thompson

Production
Keeley Hill
Susan Braund

Design
Matthew Dickin

Project and Databases Administrator
Denise McKeough

Academic Collocations List
Kirsten Ackermann
Yu-Hua Chen
Professor Douglas Biber
Bethany Gray
Andrew Roberts

The publishers and editors of the *Longman Collocations Dictionary and Thesaurus* would like to thank the many people who have contributed ideas, suggestions and feedback during the creation of this new dictionary, in particular:
Professor the Lord Quirk, chair of the Linglex Advisory Committee
Professor Geoff Leech
Professor David Crystal
Professor John Wells
Della Summers
Diane Schmitt, Nottingham Trent University
Professor Norbert Schmitt, Nottingham Trent University
Dr Ron Martinez

The publishers and editors would also like to thank all the teachers and students who contributed to the research for the *Longman Collocations Dictionary and Thesaurus*.

Contents

Short forms and labels	inside front cover
Acknowledgements	ii
How to use the Dictionary	iv–v
Introduction	vi–vii
The Dictionary A-Z	**1–1447**

Appendices

Introduction to the Academic Collocations List	1448–9
The Academic Collocations List	1450–1463
Access code for online dictionary	inside back cover

How to use the Dictionary

Words from the Academic Word List are marked Ac

Collocations are arranged according to their part of speech, so that you can see all the adjectives, all the verbs etc, together.

Collocations are listed in order of frequency, so that you can see the most common collocations first.

The meanings of difficult collocations are explained in brackets.

research Ac *n*
serious study to discover new facts or test new ideas

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + research

scientific/medical research *The university is an important centre for scientific research.*
cancer/AIDS etc research *She is raising money for cancer research.*
the latest research (=the most recent research) *The latest research is published in this month's 'Nature' magazine.*
pioneering/groundbreaking research (=producing completely new information) *Watson and Crick did pioneering research into DNA.*
basic research *He wants to conduct ba*

painstaking historical research.

VERBS

do research/carry out research (*also* **conduct research** *formal*): *The research was carried out by a team of scientists at Tokyo University.*
⚠ Don't say 'make research'.
undertake research *formal* (=do research, or start doing research, especially into a complicated subject) *They are plannin to*

Labels tell you if the collocation is only used in formal or informal English.

Error notes warn about common mistakes with collocations.

Words that have the same spelling, but have different parts of speech, are listed separately, and given different numbers.

Meanings of the word are listed in frequency order.

Every collocation, or group of collocations, has an example, so that you can see how it is used in a sentence. The examples are taken from the Longman Corpus Network: a database of over 450 million words of written and spoken English.

respect[1] *v*
1 to admire someone because you think they are very good, fair etc

ADVERBS

respect sb greatly *I admire her and respect her greatly.*
highly respected *The author is a highly respected historian.*
widely respected (=by many people) *The general is widely respected in the army.*
well respected *She was well respected by her colleagues.*

country and can be used to increase its wealth

Grammar
Often plural in this meaning.

Grammar notes give information about how the word is used, for example whether it is usually plural or usually passive.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + resource

natural resources *The country has always relied on coal and other natural resources*

famous *adj*
known about by a lot of people in a country or in the world, especially because someone or something is very good or impressive

NOUNS

a famous writer/actor/singer/artist *Leonardo was one of the most famous artists who has ever lived.*

a famous book/story/poem/painting *'Nineteen Eighty-Four' was Orwell's most famous book.*

famous phrase/words *In John Donne's famous phrase, "No man is an island".*

VERBS

become famous *She became famous for the gardens she created.*

make sb famous *The song made him famous.*

Thesaurus entries show other words which have a similar meaning, so that you can compare the collocations and develop your vocabulary.

THESAURUS: famous

legendary
singer | **musician** | **performer** | **player** | **figure** | **name** | **reputation** | **ability** | **courage**
very famous and greatly admired for a long time – used especially about a singer, musician, or performer, often one who has died:
The album features songs by legendary guitar player Jimi Hendrix. | *Her courage was legendary.* | *Newman was* ***legendary for*** *his good looks.*

The words that a word is most commonly used with are listed before the definition.

The definition gives information about the nuance of the word, and shows how it is different from the other words.

Common prepositions and adverbs that you use with the word are shown in bold.

eminent
scientist | **historian** | **scholar** | **professor** | **doctor** | **surgeon** | **economist** | **member**
used about scientists and experts who are

realize (*also* **realise** *BrE*) *v*

1 to begin to understand, notice, or know something that you did not understand etc before

ADVERBS

suddenly realize *I suddenly realized I was late*

British and American spellings of the word are shown.

2 to achieve what you wanted

THESAURUS: realize

accomplish, attain, reach, realize → **achieve**

There are cross-references to words that appear in a Thesaurus box at another word.

reason *n*

Introduction

The aim of this book

When I'm writing in a foreign language, there is often a feeling of doubt in my mind. How can I be sure that the combination of words I'm using sounds natural? Is this what a native speaker would say in this situation? I need someone to tell me that I am on the right track. The aim of this book is to help students of English with exactly this sort of problem, so that they can quickly find the most typical word combination used by native speakers.

For example, when writing about **research**, which verb should you use? Do you 'make research' or 'do research'? The *Longman Collocations Dictionary and Thesaurus* gives the following information:

painstaking historical research.

VERBS

do research/carry out research (*also* **conduct research** *formal*): *The research was carried out by a team of scientists at Tokyo University.*

⚠ Don't say 'make research'.

undertake research *formal* (=do research, or start doing research, especially into a complicated subject) *They are planning to undertake research into the genetic causes of the disease.*

publish research *His research was published in the 'New England Journal of Medicine'.*

present research (=tell people the results of

The entry tells you the most common verbs used with **research**. It also tells you which word combinations to avoid – this can be very important for students, in order to avoid common errors such as 'make research'. There is also information about more formal word combinations, which are useful for academic writing. Here **conduct research** is often used in more formal contexts instead of **do research** or **carry out research**.

For each word combination there is an example, so that you can see how it is used in a sentence, and get a feeling for the most typical context. The examples are based on lines from the Longman Corpus Network, which is a 450 million word database of both written and spoken English. There are more examples in the online version of the book.

The collocations are listed according to their frequency on the Longman Corpus Network, with the most frequent collocations shown first. We think that the collocations that are most commonly used are also likely to be the first ones that people will want to look up.

What is a collocation?

In this book, a collocation is a word that you often use with another word. This can be an adjective used with a noun – for example when talking about the **rain**, you use **heavy rain** when there is a lot of rain, or when talking about the **wind**, you use **high winds** about winds that are very strong. It can be a verb used with a noun – for example when talking about a **decision** you can **make a decision**, **take a decision**, or **reach a decision**. It can also be an adverb used with an adjective – for example when you want to emphasize that something is **obvious**, you can say that it is **perfectly obvious**, **patently obvious**, or **glaringly obvious**.

Prepositions such as **about** and **over** are often not considered to be 'true' collocations, but we have included them in this book, because they are often the word that a student most needs to know and often the biggest cause of errors.

Some people make a distinction between 'transparent' collocations, where you can easily guess the meaning, for example **serious crime**, and 'opaque' collocations, where the meaning of the word is less obvious, for example **petty crime** (=crime that is not very serious, such as stealing small amounts of money). In this book we show both types of collocations, because they are both useful to students. If the meaning of the word is difficult to understand, we explain what it means after the collocation.

What makes this book special?

Apart from showing the collocations for each word, there are also Thesaurus sections, where you can compare words that have a similar meaning and see which collocations go with each word. For example, at **famous** you can see other similar words such as **legendary**, **eminent**, or **notorious**. Each of these words is used about a particular type of famous person – you use **legendary** especially about musicians and performers, **eminent** about scientists and historians, and **notorious** about criminals.

Similarly, if you are talking about things that are **empty**, there is a range of other words you can use, depending on the kind of thing you are talking about. And each of the synonyms has a fixed set of collocations. You can use **vacant** about a seat or a room at a hotel, **blank** about a computer screen, or **deserted** about a street or a beach. If you are talking about things that are **interesting**, you can use **stimulating** about a debate, **intriguing** about a question, or **absorbing** about a hobby.

Students sometimes overuse simple words like **famous** or **interesting**, when often there is a more specific and more natural-sounding word combination, depending on the kind of person or thing you are talking about. The Thesaurus sections will help you to improve your spoken and written English, making it sound more like that of a native speaker.

Native speakers often do not think of each individual word. They tend to use ready-made 'chunks' of language, such as a **notorious criminal** or an **eminent scientist**. This is the first book that makes a link between these chunks of language and groups them according to their meaning. We think this is very important for language learning.

Going beyond collocations

The key aim of this book is to help students produce natural English. In order to do this, you need to be aware of the nuances of a word. There is help with this in the definitions for the words and collocations. At **eminent** the definition says this is "used about scientists and experts who are greatly respected because of their knowledge". At **legendary** the definition says "very famous and greatly admired for a long time – used especially about a singer, musician, or performer, often one who has died".

Register is also very important. You need to know if the word is mainly used in formal or informal situations. This dictionary helps you to choose between similar word combinations, where there is a difference in formality, for example at **task**:

> **carry out/do a task** (*also* **perform a task** *formal*): *We don't have enough staff to carry out this task.*

This shows you that you usually say **carry out a task** or **do a task**, but in formal situations you say **perform a task**.

You also need to know about the grammar of the word – for example whether it is usually used in the plural, or in the passive. At **accommodation** there is the following note:

> **Grammar**
> In American English, the plural form **accommodations** is often used. In British English, however, people only use the uncountable form **accommodation**.

Collocations and Native Speaker Competence

People sometimes ask me how well I can speak a foreign language. Working with collocations has made me realize how much more I need to learn. Reaching native speaker competence in a language is not just about learning lists of words and grammar. Making the connections between the individual words of the language is equally important. We hope that the new *Longman Collocations Dictionary and Thesaurus* can help students have better access to this network of connections, so that they can make the links between words and improve their spoken and written fluency.

As always, we welcome comments on our work from students and teachers.
Please email us at:

chris.fox@pearson.com

Aa

abandon Ac *v*

1 to leave someone or something completely

NOUNS

abandon a car/ship *The thieves abandoned the car when it ran out of fuel.*

abandon a building *We had to abandon the building when the roof began to collapse.*

abandon a child/family *The child was found abandoned outside a hospital.*

ADVERBS

quickly/hastily abandon sb/sth *They had to hastily abandon the ship when it started sinking.*

largely/virtually abandon sb/sth (=almost completely) *Her family had largely abandoned her, and she only saw her son occasionally.*

temporarily abandon sb/sth (=for a short time) *Residents were forced to temporarily abandon their homes due to a flood warning.*

VERBS

be forced to abandon sth *Guests were forced to abandon the hotel because of the fire.*

have to abandon sth *The soldiers had to abandon the tanks which had become bogged down in the mud.*

PHRASES

abandon sb to their fate (=leave someone in a bad situation with no one to help them) *The wounded soldier had been abandoned to his fate.*

2 to decide not to do something because you are unlikely to succeed

NOUNS

abandon an attempt/effort *Poor weather forced them to abandon their attempt to climb the mountain.*

abandon a search *When night fell, the police decided to abandon their search for the missing boy.*

abandon a plan/policy *The government was forced to abandon its economic policies.*

abandon an idea *Helen abandoned the idea of becoming a doctor, and studied law instead.*

abandon a decision *He showed no sign of abandoning his decision to earn a living as a writer.*

abandon your principles *The party was accused of abandoning its principles in order to win votes.*

abandon hope *She never abandoned hope of seeing him again.*

ADVERBS

abandon sth altogether/completely/totally *They abandoned their plans to start up a business altogether.*

largely/virtually abandon sth (=almost completely) *She appeared in a few films in the 1990s, but has largely abandoned her acting career.*

finally/eventually abandon sth *The police finally abandoned their hunt for the man when all sign of him had disappeared.*

temporarily abandon sth (=for a short time) *The rescue attempt was temporarily abandoned until the weather improved.*

VERBS

be forced to abandon sth *Severe storms forced them to abandon the expedition.*

have to abandon sth *He had to abandon the idea of travelling to Italy on account of his ill health.*

PHRASES

abandon sth in favour of sth else (=use something else instead) *The original plan was abandoned in favour of a cheaper one.*

abbreviation *n*

a group of letters used as a short way of saying or writing a word or group of words

VERBS

use an abbreviation *People often use the abbreviation 'US' instead of saying the 'United States'.*

ADJECTIVES

a written abbreviation *'BTW' is a written abbreviation which means 'by the way'.*

a common abbreviation *At the back of the book there is a list of common abbreviations used in English.*

the standard abbreviation *The standard abbreviation for 'for example' is 'e.g.'.*

PREPOSITIONS

the abbreviation for/of sth *'PC' is the abbreviation for 'personal computer'.*

PHRASES

an abbreviation is short for sth *The abbreviation 'WHO' is short for 'World Health Organization'.*

an abbreviation stands for sth *The abbreviation 'mph' stands for 'miles per hour'.*

ability *n*

someone's level of skill at doing something

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable ability *These drawings required considerable ability on the part of the artist.*

remarkable/outstanding/exceptional ability *The company aims to select people of outstanding ability.*

high/low/average ability *Many of these students are of above average ability.*

mixed ability (=with students who have different levels of ability) *It can be difficult to teach a mixed ability class.*

natural ability (*also* **innate ability** *formal*) (=one that you are born with) *The human body has a natural ability to fight infection.*

physical/athletic ability *He has considerable athletic ability.*

mental ability *The exercises are supposed to help you improve your mental ability.*

intellectual/academic ability *No one doubts his intellectual abilities.*

artistic/creative/musical ability *You do not need to have any artistic ability to do the course.*

an uncanny ability (=one that is unusual and difficult to explain) *He has an uncanny ability for spotting investment opportunities.*

VERBS

have the ability to do sth (*also* **possess the ability to do sth** *formal*): *She has the ability to make people feel relaxed.*

develop/acquire an ability to do sth *Students are encouraged to develop an ability to work independently.*

show/demonstrate the ability to do sth *Jones quickly demonstrated his ability to score goals.*

lack the ability to do sth *As a young man, he lacked the ability to communicate his feelings.*

lose the ability to do sth *Roger lost the ability to walk following a horrific accident.*

affect sb's ability to do sth *The noise was affecting her ability to concentrate.*

limit/reduce sb's ability to do sth *He has a medical condition which limits his ability to work.*

improve/increase sb's ability to do sth *Surely anything which improves your ability to learn is a good thing.*

PREPOSITIONS

ability in sth *Applicants for the job need to demonstrate an ability in English.*

ability as sth *She thought they were criticizing her ability as a mother.*

PHRASES

sb's level of ability/ability level *The children were of the same age and ability level.*

a range of ability/ability range *There is a wide range of ability within the class.*

a test of ability/ability test *Examinations are not always a good test of ability.*

an ability group (=a group that students are taught in, based on their level of ability) *Children are divided into different ability groups.*

play/perform/do sth to the best of your ability (=as well as you can) *Players must perform to the best of their ability every week.*

abnormal *adj*

not normal, especially when this seems strange or has a bad effect

NOUNS

abnormal behaviour *BrE*, **abnormal behavior** *AmE*: *A reduction in oxygen reaching the brain can cause changes in mood and abnormal behaviour.*

abnormal cells *Doctors can detect abnormal cells that may become cancerous.*

abnormal conditions *The damage was caused by abnormal weather conditions.*

abnormal signs/symptoms (=unusual things that show that something may be wrong) *Patients should report any abnormal symptoms to their doctor.*

something/nothing/anything abnormal *There was nothing abnormal about him – he was just like anyone else.*

ANTONYMS **abnormal → normal**

abort *v* THESAURUS stop[1] (3)

abortive *adj* THESAURUS unsuccessful

absence *n*

1 a situation in which someone is not at their school, office, a meeting etc

ADJECTIVES

a long absence *Henry returned to school after a long absence.*

a lengthy/prolonged absence (=unusually long) *Her prolonged absences were causing concern among her colleagues.*

a brief/short absence *He had a brief absence from work after his first child was born.*

a temporary absence *No one noticed her temporary absence from the meeting.*

frequent absences *His job involves frequent absences from home.*

repeated absences *Ian's repeated absences from work got him into trouble with his boss.*

VERBS

explain your absence *He explained his absence from class by saying that he had not been feeling well.*

apologize for your absence *Jim apologized for his absence from last week's meeting.*

PREPOSITIONS

absence from school/work etc *His absence from work was due to illness.*

during/in sb's absence *During my absence, Sally Greene will be in charge of the office.*

PHRASES

a week's/month's absence *After several weeks' absence, he returned home.*

a period of absence *Workers receive sick pay for each period of absence caused by illness.*

a reason/explanation for your absence *His explanation for his absence was not very convincing.*

be conspicuous by your absence (=be absent from somewhere, in a way that seems very noticeable) *The US ambassador was conspicuous by her absence at the conference.*

2 a situation in which someone or something does not exist

ADJECTIVES

a complete/total absence of sth *There was a complete absence of windows and very little light entered the room.*

a virtual absence of sth (=almost none) *There is still a virtual absence of female employees.*

a relative/comparative absence of sth *There is a relative absence of trees in this city.*

a notable/conspicuous/marked absence of sth (=very noticeable) *Despite a conspicuous absence of information to support his theories, many people accepted them as being true.*

PREPOSITIONS

an absence of sth *An absence of clean water has meant that the disease is very common in this part of the world.*

in the absence of sth *In the absence of any other evidence, they assumed that the man was innocent.*

absolutely *adv* THESAURUS very[1]

absorbing *adj* THESAURUS interesting

abstract[1] Ac *adj*

1 based on ideas rather than specific examples or real events

abstract + NOUNS

an abstract idea/concept/principle *Children gradually learn the words they need to deal with abstract ideas such as time.*

abstract thought *Do you think animals are capable of abstract thought?*

ADVERBS

highly abstract *People often regard philosophy as a highly abstract subject.*

PHRASES

in abstract terms *We've discussed the subject in abstract terms, but haven't made any concrete suggestions.*

2 abstract art consists of shapes and patterns that do not look like things or people

abstract + NOUNS

abstract art *The gallery is holding an exhibition of abstract art.*

an abstract painting/picture *The room was decorated with brightly coloured abstract paintings.*

an abstract pattern/design *The wallpaper comes in various abstract designs.*

an abstract artist/painter *Miró was famous as an abstract artist.*

abstract[2] Ac *n*

a written summary of an article or speech

VERBS

write an abstract *Write the abstract in a less formal style than the article itself.*

provide/submit an abstract *Editors of journals will expect you to provide an abstract of the article.*

publish an abstract *The magazine publishes abstracts of all the presidents' speeches to Congress.*

PREPOSITIONS

in sb's abstract *In your abstract, you should outline the main points of the paper you have written.*

abuse *n*

1 rude, offensive, or cruel words

ADJECTIVES

racial/racist abuse *Some of the children had experienced racial abuse at school.*

VERBS

shout/scream/hurl abuse *The other driver started hurling abuse at me* (=shouting abuse).

shower sb with abuse/heap abuse on sb (=give someone a lot of abuse) *Workers who refused to join the strike were showered with abuse.*

PHRASES

a term of abuse (=an offensive word or phrase) *In Australia, 'Pom' is a term of abuse for someone from the UK.*

a torrent/stream of abuse (=a lot of offensive words) *When I disagreed, he directed a stream of abuse at me.*

a target for/of abuse *Williams became a target for abuse when he failed to stop the opposing team's winning goal.*

2 cruel, violent, or unfair treatment of someone

ADJECTIVES

physical abuse *He experienced physical abuse when he was a child.*

verbal abuse *I was subjected to verbal abuse on many occasions.*

domestic abuse (=abuse inside the home) *Doctors see evidence of domestic abuse when women are treated for bruises and broken bones.*

sexual abuse *In his book, he revealed that he was a victim of sexual abuse as a teenager.*

emotional/psychological abuse *Constant criticism can be a form of emotional abuse.*

VERBS

suffer/experience/endure abuse *Women who suffer abuse may still be unwilling to leave their violent husbands.*

be subjected to abuse (=be made to suffer abuse by someone) *He was subjected to constant abuse by his older brother.*

A

NOUNS + abuse

child abuse *The man was arrested for child abuse.*

wife abuse *Wife abuse is more common than people imagine.*

elder abuse (=of old people) *Cases of elder abuse have increased as more people live to an advanced age.*

PHRASES

a victim of abuse *Children who have been victims of abuse sometimes grow up to be abusers themselves.*

abysmal *adj* THESAURUS terrible

academic Ac *adj*

relating to education, especially at college or university level

NOUNS

academic research/study *He has been carrying out academic research into the effects of computer games on children.*

an academic subject (*also* **academic discipline** *formal*): *Linguistics is a well-established academic discipline in universities.*

academic qualifications *What academic qualifications do you need for the job?*

academic achievements *Girls' academic achievements are better than those of boys in some subjects.*

academic success *Academic success is important, but it's not the only reason for studying hard at school.*

academic ability *The students are placed in groups according to academic ability.*

academic standards *The college prides itself on its high academic standards.*

the academic year *The academic year starts in October.*

an academic institution *The university is one of the oldest academic institutions in Britain.*

academic freedom *Universities want to protect the academic freedom of both staff and students.*

PHRASES

in academic circles (=among people who study at university or do research) *His name is well known in academic circles.*

You can also use **academic** to describe a person who likes studying and is good at subjects that people study at school or university: *My brother is much more **academic** than I am – he studied law at Harvard.*

accent *n*

the way someone pronounces the words of a language, showing which country or which part of a country they come from

VERBS

have an accent *The girl had a Russian accent.*

speak with an accent *The old man spoke with an accent which I couldn't recognize.*

pick up an accent *He used to work in Sydney and picked up an Australian accent while he was over there.*

lose your accent *Although she was born in the US, Sally had lost her American accent after living in London for over 30 years.*

put on an accent (=deliberately speak with a different accent from your usual one) *Some people put on an accent when they're speaking on the phone.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + accent

a strong/broad/thick/heavy accent *Claude speaks English with a strong French accent.*

a slight/faint accent *He has a very slight Irish accent which you can hardly notice.*

a French/American etc accent *He introduced himself in a strong American accent.*

a New York/London etc accent *The man I met had a Chicago accent.*

a foreign accent *The waitress spoke with a foreign accent.*

a regional accent *Some people try to hide their regional accents because they feel embarrassed about them.*

an upper-class/middle-class/working-class accent *The woman spoke with an upper-class accent.*

PREPOSITIONS

with an accent *She spoke English with a slight foreign accent.*

in an accent *Costas read out his speech in a thick Greek accent.*

Strong, broad, thick, or heavy accent?

You use all these words when saying that someone's accent is very noticeable. **Strong** is the most common word: *The man had a **strong** German accent.*

You use **thick** or **heavy** when someone's accent is very strong and difficult to understand: *The teacher had a **thick** Scottish accent, and some of the students had difficulty following what he said.*

You use **broad** when someone has an accent from a particular part of the UK or the US: *She spoke with a **broad** Yorkshire accent.*

Accent or pronunciation?

Your **accent** shows which country, or which social group you come from. **Pronunciation** is a more general word meaning the way in which a language or a particular word is pronounced.

PHRASES

a hint/trace of an accent *I could detect the hint of a German accent in her voice.*

accept *v*

1 to take something that someone offers you, or to agree to do something that someone asks you to do

NOUNS

accept an offer/invitation *I decided to accept their offer of a job.*

accept a gift/present/bribe *I wasn't sure whether I could accept such a generous gift.*

accept an award *He had to give a speech when he accepted the award.*

accept help/aid/assistance *He has always been reluctant to accept help from other people.*

accept an apology *Please accept my apologies for cancelling our meeting.*

accept sb's resignation *The manager refused to accept her resignation.*

accept a challenge *Paul accepted the challenge to run in the London Marathon.*

ADVERBS

gladly/willingly/readily accept sth *He invited her to dinner and she gladly accepted.*

gratefully accept sth *Any information you can let me have would be gratefully accepted.*

graciously accept sth (=in a polite and kind way) *She accepted her gift graciously.*

reluctantly accept sth *He handed the book to James who reluctantly accepted it.*

PREPOSITIONS

accept sth from sb *He accepted an invitation from the president to visit France.*

2 to decide that there is nothing you can do to change a bad situation

NOUNS

accept a situation *You'll just have to accept the situation – there's nothing you can do about it.*

accept reality (=accept the real situation) *He was unwilling to accept reality and kept calling his ex-girlfriend.*

accept defeat *Woods refused to accept defeat and came back to win the competition.*

accept the consequences *They will have to accept the consequences of their actions.*

accept your fate *Rather than accept their fate, the workers went on strike in protest at the job cuts.*

accept the inevitable *He had to accept the inevitable and close down his business.*

accept the fact (that)... *The team has had to accept the fact that it is not good enough to win the league.*

VERBS

be forced to accept sth *I was forced to accept defeat.*

learn/come to accept sth (=gradually accept something) *Eventually my parents came to accept our marriage.*

3 to agree that something is right or true

NOUNS

accept an idea/principle/notion *It took his parents a long time to accept the idea that he wanted to be a dancer.*

accept a view *This view is now generally accepted among scientists.*

accept an argument *I accept the argument that violence is sometimes necessary.*

accept an explanation *He accepted her explanation without question.*

accept a proposal *The committee voted to accept the proposals.*

accept a claim *A scientist wouldn't accept claims like this without proper evidence.*

accept a recommendation *The company accepted all the recommendations that were made in the report.*

accept the need for sth *The authorities say they accept the need for an investigation into the matter.*

ADVERBS

be generally/widely/commonly accepted (=by many or most people) *It is widely accepted that the Earth's climate is changing.*

be universally accepted (=by everyone) *This point of view was almost universally accepted in the nineteenth century.*

fully accept sth (=completely) *I fully accept that I was wrong and I apologize.*

readily/happily accept sth *Most people readily accept that learning a foreign language is difficult.*

reluctantly/grudgingly accept sth (=unwillingly) *She didn't like him, but she grudgingly accepted that he did a good job.*

blindly/unquestioningly accept sth *disapproving* (=without thinking or asking questions) *You shouldn't blindly accept what other people say.*

PHRASES

accept sth at face value (=accept something without thinking that there may be a hidden meaning) *He accepted this information at face value.*

have no choice but to accept sth *I had no choice but to accept the judge's decision.*

acceptable *adj* good enough or satisfactory

ADVERBS

completely/totally/entirely/fully acceptable *His suggestion sounds totally acceptable to me.*

quite acceptable *If you can't get fresh mangoes, then dried ones are quite acceptable.*

perfectly acceptable (=completely acceptable – often used when you disagree with

someone) *Some people think that it is perfectly acceptable to wear shorts to work when it's hot.*

generally/widely acceptable (=most people think it is acceptable) *This idea has now become widely acceptable.*

mutually acceptable (=acceptable to both people or groups) *The talks are aimed at finding a mutually acceptable solution.*

socially/culturally acceptable *In Britain, it is socially acceptable to live with someone before you get married.*

morally/ethically acceptable *I don't think that testing drugs on prisoners is morally acceptable.*

VERBS

prove acceptable *formal* (=be found to be acceptable) *None of the solutions proved acceptable.*

make sth acceptable *They changed the ending of the movie, to make it more acceptable to young children.*

find/consider sth acceptable (*also* **deem sth acceptable** *formal*) (=think it is acceptable) *What level of pollution would you deem acceptable?*

NOUNS

an acceptable standard/level *Teaching at the school is of an acceptable standard.*

acceptable behaviour *He seems to think that it is acceptable behaviour to sleep in class.*

an acceptable solution *Building another road is not an acceptable solution for traffic problems.*

an acceptable way *We are trying to find an acceptable way of dealing with the problem.*

an acceptable alternative *We will soon run out of oil and we need to find an acceptable alternative.*

PREPOSITIONS

acceptable to sb *We want to reach a solution that is acceptable to both sides.*

acceptable for sth *A suit is acceptable clothing for a business interview.*

PHRASES

be the acceptable face of sth (=be acceptable to people who do not usually approve of that type of thing) *The singer is the acceptable face of hip-hop music.*

access Ac *n*

the ability to enter a place, get information or other things, or talk to someone

VERBS

have access *Everyone needs to have access to clean drinking water.*

gain/get access *The thieves used a ladder to gain access to the back of the house.*

give/offer (sb) access *I was given access to secret files.*

provide (sb with) access *They want to provide access to the internet for everyone.*

allow/grant sb access *The men should have been allowed access to a lawyer.*

deny/refuse sb access *His family have been denied access to him in jail.*

improve access *The college needs to improve access for disabled students.*

limit/restrict access *The authorities are trying to restrict access to websites which show these images.*

ADJECTIVES

immediate/quick/instant access *The card gives you instant access to up to $10,000.*

direct access *Patients should have direct access to their medical records.*

easy access *The new road gives easy access to the city centre.*

free access *There is free access to the museum.*

unlimited/unrestricted/open access *The ticket gives you unlimited access to the palace.*

good access *The airport has good access by public transport and there are buses every 10 minutes.*

full access *I was given full access to all the documents about the case.*

equal access *All groups in society should have equal access to cancer care.*

limited/restricted access *In some countries, women have limited access to education.*

unauthorized access (=access which is not officially allowed) *The lock code can be changed very simply to prevent unauthorized access.*

public access *The company tried to restrict public access to this information.*

NOUNS + access

internet/Web access *More than 25 million homes in western Europe now have internet access* (=they can use the internet).

wheelchair/disabled access (=access for people using wheelchairs or disabled people) *The cinema only has limited wheelchair access.*

PREPOSITIONS

access to sth *Hotel guests have access to the swimming pool.*

PHRASES

freedom of access *American companies want greater freedom of access to Chinese markets for their goods.*

accident *n*

a situation in which someone is injured or something is damaged

ADJECTIVES

a bad/serious accident *The road is closed after a serious accident.*

a terrible/horrific/nasty accident *Janet was badly hurt in a horrific accident a couple of years ago.*

a tragic accident *Her son was killed in a tragic accident when he was only 21.*

a major accident *News is coming in of a major rail accident.*

a minor accident *His car was involved in a minor traffic accident.*

⚠ Don't say 'a small accident'.

a fatal accident (=in which someone is killed) *Police are at the scene of a fatal accident involving a lorry and a cyclist.*

a freak accident (=a very unusual accident) *She was injured in a freak accident when she was struck by lightning.*

a hit-and-run accident (=an accident in which someone is hit by a driver who does not stop) *Her son was killed in a hit-and-run accident.*

an industrial accident *He injured his hand in an industrial accident when it was crushed by a machine.*

a nuclear accident *There was a very serious nuclear accident in Fukushima.*

VERBS

have an accident *He had an accident while cleaning his gun.*

be involved in an accident *formal*: *Two women were taken to hospital after their car was involved in an accident.*

be hurt/injured/killed etc in an accident *Several coach passengers were injured in the accident.*

prevent an accident *Steps have been taken to prevent a similar accident happening again.*

survive an accident *She was lucky to survive the accident.*

an accident happens (*also* **an accident occurs** *formal*): *No one saw the accident happen.*

NOUNS + accident

a car accident *He was badly injured in a car accident.*

a road/traffic accident *They were killed in a traffic accident in France.*

a rail accident/a train accident *It was the country's most serious rail accident.*

a plane accident/an air accident *Holly died in a plane accident.*

accident + NOUNS

accident rates/statistics *Jets have one of the worst accident rates among military aircraft.*

an accident investigation/inquiry *Accident investigations often take months.*

accident prevention *The local authorities have just introduced an accident prevention scheme.*

PHRASES

the scene of an accident (=the place where it happened) *An ambulance soon arrived at the scene of the accident.*

the cause of the accident *The cause of the accident is thought to have been engine failure.*

at the time of the accident *At the time of the accident, 135 men were underground.*

THESAURUS: accident

crash
car crash | plane crash | train crash
a serious accident involving a car, plane, train etc:
His sister died in a car crash. | Seven people have been injured in a train crash.

collision
an accident in which two or more cars, trains etc hit each other:
*Their car was involved in a **head-on collision** with a lorry. | There have been reports of a **mid-air collision** between a military plane and an airliner. | He escaped unhurt from a **high-speed collision** with another racing driver.*

disaster
a serious accident involving a train, plane, or boat, in which a lot of people are killed or injured:
*The Munich **air disaster** took place on 6 February 1958. | Police are interviewing the driver of the train blamed for the Belgian **rail disaster**.*

wreck *AmE*
an accident in which a car or train is badly damaged:
*He was killed in a **car wreck** in Arizona. | This is the country's fourth fatal **train wreck** in three and a half years.*

pile-up
an accident that involves several cars or other vehicles:
*Four people were injured in a **multiple pile-up** involving a minibus and five cars in thick fog. | There was a 12-car pile-up on the motorway.*

accidental *adj*

happening without being planned or intended

NOUNS

accidental damage *It is difficult to see how this damage could have been accidental.*

accidental death *The court recorded a verdict of accidental death.*

accidental loss *The insurance policy protects you against accidental loss.*

accidental killing/shooting *He expressed deep regret over the accidental killing of innocent civilians.*

accidental injury *The insurance policy covers you against accidental injury.*

an accidental discovery *The invention was an accidental discovery.*

ADVERBS

purely/completely accidental *Do you think it was purely accidental, or do you think she wanted to cause trouble?*

A

THESAURUS: accidental

unintentional
comedy | **humour** | **irony** | **death**
unintentional means the same as **accidental**, but is more formal:
The film is full of unintentional humour. | The nets caused widespread unintentional deaths of dolphins and other sea creatures. | The company was committing an offence, even if it was unintentional.

unintended
consequence | **effect** | **impact** | **result** | **outcome**
unintended consequences and results are accidental:
Government decisions can sometimes have unintended consequences. | The new tax may have the unintended effect of making unhealthy foods cost less. | The unintended result of building bigger roads is that people use their cars more.

inadvertent *formal*
error | **omission** | **use**
accidental – often used about mistakes:
The problem was caused by an inadvertent error. | The paper apologized for the inadvertent omission of his name from the article. | The inadvertent use of an incorrect word can lead to serious misunderstandings.

In everyday English you often say that someone did something **by accident** or **accidentally**: *She found out about it **by accident**.*
You can also say that something **was an accident**: *Investigators believe that her death **was an accident**.*

ANTONYMS **accidental → deliberate**

accommodation Ac *n*

a place for someone to stay, live, or work

Grammar
In American English, the plural form **accommodations** is often used. In British English, however, people only use the uncountable form **accommodation**.

ADJECTIVES

rented accommodation *It can be difficult to find cheap rented accommodation in the middle of the city.*

furnished/unfurnished accommodation (=with or without furniture) *More cheap furnished accommodation is required for the town's student population.*

living/residential accommodation (=a place where people can live) *We obtained permission to convert the barn into living accommodation.*

sleeping accommodation *There is sleeping accommodation for 25 people at a small hotel in the village.*

temporary accommodation *He will have to stay in temporary accommodation until permanent housing can be provided for him.*

free accommodation *Although the job is not very well paid, the employers do provide free accommodation.*

suitable accommodation *It can be problematic finding suitable accommodation for physically disabled people.*

alternative accommodation *If your hotel room is not satisfactory, the company will do its best to provide alternative accommodation of a similar standard.*

NOUNS + accommodation

hotel accommodation *He gave us a list of hotel accommodation.*

student accommodation *The university provides some student accommodation on campus.*

VERBS

look for/seek accommodation *Ideally, we're looking for accommodation within travelling distance of the conference centre.*

find accommodation *Our guide found some accommodation for us in the village.*

rent accommodation *Students rent accommodation in the streets around the university.*

provide/offer accommodation *The city provides accommodation for homeless people.*

accommodation + NOUNS

accommodation costs/expenses *When planning your holiday, you need to budget for accommodation costs as well as food and travel.*

In everyday English, people often say **I'm looking for somewhere to live/stay** instead of 'I'm looking for accommodation'.

accomplish *v* THESAURUS achieve

accomplished *adj* THESAURUS skilful

account *n*

1 a written or spoken description of a situation or of something that happened

VERBS

give an account (*also* **provide an account** *formal*): *He gave an account of his meeting with the prime minister.*

write an account *Greene wrote an entertaining account of the affair.*

publish an account *Orwell's account of the war was published in his book 'Homage to Catalonia'.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + account

a detailed account *The book contains a detailed account of the history of the island.*

a full account (=including everything) *It is not possible to give a full account of everything that happened on that day.*

a short/brief account *He gave a brief account of his recent visit to Budapest.*

a true/accurate account *Do you think the article is an accurate account of what happened?*

a vivid account (=one that is so clear that it seems real) *The movie gives a vivid account of life in India.*

a graphic account (=one that gives clear and shocking details) *She published a graphic account of her experiences during the civil war.*

a first-hand account (=from someone who has experienced something) *The author gives us a first-hand account of life in the refugee camps.*

an eye-witness account (=from someone who saw an event) *The man gave an eye-witness account of the explosion.*

a blow-by-blow account (=one describing everything that happened in the order it happened) *She gave us a blow-by-blow account of her meeting with the boss.*

PREPOSITIONS

an account of sth *He was too shocked to give an account of what had happened.*

in an account *He includes these details in his account of the battle.*

2 an arrangement in which a bank keeps your money for you

VERBS

have an account *Do you have a bank account?*

open/close an account *She opened an account at her local bank.*

pay money into an account *Terry said he would pay the money into my account.*

take money out of an account/withdraw money from an account *When was the last time you took money out of your account?*

credit an account (=the bank pays money in) *The interest on your investment will be credited to your account.*

debit an account (=the bank takes money out) *Please authorize the bank to debit your account.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + account

a bank account *He had $850 in his bank account.*

a current account *BrE*, **a checking account** *AmE* (=one that you can take money out of at any time) *I paid the money into my current account.*

a savings/deposit account (=one in which you keep money for a long time) *I think you should put the money in a savings account.*

a joint account *She has a joint account with her husband.*

a personal account *He withdrew £40 from his personal account.*

an account is overdrawn (=you have taken out more money than is in the account) *Your account is overdrawn by $50.*

account + NOUNS

an account number *Write your account number on the reverse of the cheque.*

an account holder *You have to be an account holder in order to use this service.*

an account balance/the balance on your account (=the amount of money in an account) *Your account balance is £656.78.*

account details *Never give your account details over the phone.*

PREPOSITIONS

an account at/with a bank *He opened an account with the Royal Bank of Scotland.*

accuracy Ac *n*

the ability to do something in an accurate or exact way

> **Grammar**
> **Accuracy** is often used in the phrase **with accuracy**.

VERBS

measure sth with accuracy *These tiny movements can be measured with incredible accuracy.*

predict sth with accuracy *It is impossible to predict with complete accuracy what will happen next.*

determine/establish sth with accuracy *Satellite navigation equipment makes it possible to determine your position with great accuracy.*

check/verify/assess the accuracy of sth *How can we check the accuracy of these figures?*

question/doubt the accuracy of sth *Some people questioned the accuracy of the research on climate change.*

improve/increase the accuracy of sth *The new equipment will greatly improve the accuracy of the data.*

ADJECTIVES

with great/remarkable accuracy *He described the symptoms of the disease with great accuracy.*

with complete/absolute accuracy *They predicted the result of the game with complete accuracy.*

with deadly accuracy (=very accurately, causing death or a lot of damage) *The planes hit their target with deadly accuracy.*

with pinpoint accuracy (=finding or hitting something with very great accuracy) *The device helps you find your location with pinpoint accuracy.*

with unerring accuracy (=always very accurately) *He always hits the ball with unerring accuracy.*

historical/scientific/technical accuracy *There is a lack of scientific accuracy in some news reports.*

PREPOSITIONS

with accuracy *It is impossible to predict the weather with complete accuracy.*

PHRASES

a degree/level of accuracy *Teachers can predict who will pass an exam with a high degree of accuracy.*

accurate Ac *adj*

correct and true in every detail

NOUNS

accurate information/data/figures *Not all the information that you read on the internet is accurate.*

an accurate description/account/record *The brochure tries to give a fair and accurate description of each hotel.*

an accurate picture/reflection/representation of sth (=show accurately what something is like) *These statistics give an accurate picture of the problem of unemployment.*

an accurate assessment of sth *He was able to give an accurate assessment of the situation.*

an accurate way/method of doing sth *There is no accurate way of knowing if she is telling the truth.*

an accurate measurement *Make sure that all your measurements are accurate.*

an accurate estimate/prediction *It is difficult to make an accurate estimate of the number of illegal workers.*

ADVERBS

very/highly/remarkably accurate *The scientists used a highly accurate measuring system.*

fairly/reasonably/pretty accurate *The measurements are usually fairly accurate.*

not strictly/completely/entirely accurate (=not exactly accurate) *The evidence she gave to the court was not strictly accurate.*

factually accurate (=the facts are all correct) *Everything in the article is factually accurate.*

historically accurate (=exactly like something that existed in the past) *The costumes designed for the film were historically accurate.*

broadly accurate (=mostly accurate) *His account is broadly accurate.*

VERBS

prove accurate (=be shown to be accurate) *The scientists' forecasts about global warming have proved accurate.*

PREPOSITIONS

accurate to (within) a millimetre/a second etc *The clock is accurate to one thousandth of a second.*

THESAURUS: accurate

accurate, undeniable/indisputable → **true (1)**

accusation *n*

a statement saying that someone is guilty of a crime or of doing something wrong

VERBS

make an accusation *A number of serious accusations have been made.*

bring an accusation against sb (=make an accusation, especially in a court) *The accusation against him was brought by one of his employees.*

level an accusation against sb *formal* (=make an accusation – used especially when someone is criticized for what they have done) *The accusation often levelled against bankers is that they get paid far too much money.*

face an accusation *The mayor faces accusations of corruption.*

deny an accusation *He denied accusations that he had cheated.*

reject/dismiss an accusation *Smith rejects accusations that he was involved in the man's disappearance.*

prove/support an accusation *There were very few facts to support the accusation against him.*

ADJECTIVES

a serious accusation *The accusations which the senator faces are extremely serious.*

a false accusation *Teachers sometimes have false accusations made against them by students.*

an unfounded/groundless/baseless accusation (=untrue and made without good reason) *The company insists that all the accusations are unfounded.*

a wild accusation (=one made without thought or without knowing all the facts) *He dismissed their claims as wild accusations.*

bitter accusations *There were bitter accusations from both sides of the dispute.*

PREPOSITIONS

accusations of sth *Three police officers face accusations of brutality.*

an accusation against sb *She rejects all of the accusations against her.*

accuse *v*

to say that you believe someone is guilty of a crime or of doing something bad

ADVERBS

wrongly/falsely accuse sb *Nichols claims that he was wrongly accused.*

unfairly/unjustly accuse sb *He [illegible] an innocent man who has been unjustly accused.*

wrongfully accuse sb (=in a way that is unfair or illegal) *The actress plays an innocent woman*

who is wrongfully accused of murdering her husband.

publicly/openly accuse sb *She publicly accused the president of lying to voters.*

repeatedly accuse sb (=accuse someone many times) *These firms have been repeatedly accused of polluting the environment.*

practically accuse sb (=almost accuse someone) *Rebecca practically accused me of starting the fire.*

PREPOSITIONS

accuse sb of sth *The two men are accused of murder.*

accuse sb of doing sth *He accused them of stealing his work.*

PHRASES

stand accused of sth (=be accused of doing something) *Several members of the committee stand accused of taking bribes.*

accustomed *adj*

if you are accustomed to something, you have experienced it many times before, or for a long time, so that it seems normal

VERBS

become/get/grow accustomed to sth *Her eyes quickly became accustomed to the dark.*

ADVERBS

quite/well accustomed (=very accustomed) *She was obviously well accustomed to being the centre of attention.*

long accustomed (=for a long time) *He had long been accustomed to criticism of his work.*

PREPOSITIONS

accustomed to sth *I'm accustomed to criticism of my work.*

achieve Ac *v*

to succeed in doing or getting what you wanted, especially by working hard

NOUNS

achieve your goal/target/aim *He had achieved his goal of teaching at a university.*

achieve your ambition/dream *She has at last achieved her ambition of becoming world champion.*

achieve success *Streisand achieved success as a singer.*

achieve a standard/level *Students are expected to achieve high standards.*

achieve a result/effect *He achieved the result he had intended.*

achieve a feat (=achieve something very impressive) *Redgrave achieved the remarkable feat of winning five gold medals.*

achieve independence *Venezuela achieved independence from Spain in 1830.*

achieve your potential (=achieve the level of skill that it is possible for you to achieve) *We try to help young people achieve their full potential.*

VERBS

fail to achieve sth *The sales team failed to achieve their objectives.*

help sb (to) achieve sth *I love helping brides achieve their dreams.*

PHRASES

be difficult/hard/impossible to achieve *Political progress is going to be very difficult to achieve.*

it is possible to achieve sth *It might be possible to achieve greater efficiency.*

THESAURUS: achieve

accomplish
goal | **aim** | **objective** | **task** | **feat** | **mission**
to achieve something, especially something difficult. **Accomplish** is more formal than **achieve** and is used especially in written English:
To accomplish this goal, he brought together thousands of the country's top scientists and engineers. | *He scored over 2,000 goals. No other player has accomplished this feat* (=used when someone has done something very impressive). | *The soldiers have less than two months in which to accomplish their mission.*

attain *formal*
level | **grade** | **standard** | **degree** | **rank** | **goal** | **objective**
to achieve something, especially a level or goal. **Attain** is more formal than **achieve** or **accomplish**:
Over half of boys leave school without attaining a basic level of written English. | *Most of the students attained a grade C or higher.* | *You need to be very determined if you want to succeed in attaining your goals.*

reach
target | **goal** | **decision** | **verdict** | **agreement** | **compromise**
to achieve a target or goal, or to achieve something after discussing or thinking about it:
The university will reach its target of having over 5,000 students. | *The company hopes to reach its goal of a 10% increase in sales.* | *They were unable to reach a decision.* | *The jury took two hours to reach a verdict.* | *The two sides have finally reached an agreement.*

realize (*also* **realise** *BrE*)
ambition | **dream** | **vision** | **potential**
to achieve something, especially something that you wanted to do:
Gandhi was close to realizing his dream of leading his country to independence. | *It is only now that she is beginning to realize her full potential as a player* (=achieve the level of skill that it is possible for her to achieve).

A

achievement *n*

something important that you succeed in doing

ADJECTIVES

a great/fine/impressive achievement *His greatest achievement was to win an Olympic gold medal.*

a major/important/significant achievement *Writing the book was a major achievement.*

a remarkable/extraordinary/amazing achievement *The victory was an extraordinary achievement.*

VERBS

be an achievement *She came second out of 1,000 people, which is an amazing achievement.*

represent an achievement *formal* (=be an achievement) *The increase in profits represents a great achievement in such difficult economic times.*

recognize/acknowledge sb's achievements (=notice and reward them) *Her achievements were never recognized in her lifetime.*

celebrate sb's achievements *Prize Day is an occasion to celebrate students' achievements.*

acquaintance *n*

someone you know, but who is not a close friend

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + acquaintance

an old acquaintance *I met an old acquaintance outside the museum.*

a casual acquaintance *He nodded at her, as if she was just a casual acquaintance.*

a personal acquaintance *Many people said that they obtained their jobs through a personal acquaintance.*

a mutual acquaintance (=someone you both know separately) *They were introduced to each other by a mutual acquaintance.*

a business acquaintance *We are business acquaintances of your husband.*

PHRASES

an acquaintance of mine/his etc *He introduced me to an acquaintance of his, who had visited Tokyo.*

friends and acquaintances *Ask your friends and acquaintances if they know of any job vacancies.*

acquire Ac *v formal* to get or buy something

ADVERBS

sb recently acquired sth *The gallery recently acquired a painting by Picasso.*

newly acquired *She was trying to decide what to do with her newly acquired wealth.*

acquire sth easily *Extremist groups can easily acquire materials for making a bomb.*

suddenly acquire sth *When his mother married again, he suddenly acquired a new family.*

THESAURUS: acquire

receive, obtain, acquire, gain, win, earn, inherit, get hold of sth → **get (1)**

action *n*

1 the process of doing something, especially in order to achieve a particular thing

VERBS

take action (=do something) *The government must take action to control inflation.*

call for/demand action *Voters are demanding tougher action on gun crime.*

swing/spring/leap into action (=suddenly start doing something) *The fire crew immediately swung into action.*

put sth into action (=start doing something you have planned to do) *She was looking forward to putting her plans into action.*

ADJECTIVES

immediate/prompt/swift action *Without immediate action, the company will go bankrupt.*

firm/tough action *Environmental groups want tougher action on pollution.*

decisive action (=that has a big effect on the way something develops) *We are urging the international community to take decisive action on debt relief.*

drastic action (=that has a very severe effect) *The president decided to take drastic action.*

further action *No further action is necessary.*

appropriate action (=that is suitable for the situation) *Schools should take appropriate action to deal with bullying.*

direct action (=things that people to do in order to protest about something, especially in order to prevent a government or company from doing something) *Local people are preparing to take direct action to prevent any mining on the island.*

political action *Some forms of political action are more effective than others.*

joint action (=that two or more countries, organizations etc take together) *Community leaders agreed to take joint action on scientific, social, and environmental issues.*

PREPOSITIONS

action on sth *Action on global warming requires international cooperation.*

action against sth *An agreement to take joint action against drug trafficking was signed last year.*

PHRASES

a course of action (=something that you decide to do) *Have you decided on a course of action?*

a plan of action/an action plan *The general outlined his plan of action for the campaign.*

2 something that someone does

VERBS

perform an action *formal* (=do it) *This action was performed without any concern for his own safety.*

defend/justify sb's actions *The chief of police tried to justify his actions.*

ADJECTIVES

prompt/swift actions (=quick actions) *Her prompt actions probably saved my life.*

PHRASES

hold sb responsible for their actions (=decide that someone can be punished if they have done anything wrong) *The child was too young to be held responsible for his actions.*

activity *n* things that people do

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + activity

leisure activities (=things that you do for enjoyment) *She doesn't have much time for leisure activities.*

cultural activities *There is plenty of opportunity for children to get involved in cultural activities.*

classroom/school activities *Amelia had lost interest in school activities and didn't attend the school prom.*

outdoor activities *The college is well situated for students who are interested in outdoor activities.*

physical/mental activity *Regular physical activity helps to control your weight.*

criminal/illegal activity *The bar was being used for illegal activities.*

political/economic activity *Political activity is closely controlled by the government.*

business/commercial activity *Internet shopping is a rapidly developing area of business activity.*

military activity *There has been an increase in military activity in the area.*

human activity *There was no sign of any human activity.*

VERBS

take part in an activity *The children were encouraged to take part in several different activities.*

engage in/participate in an activity *formal* (=take part) *Police suspect he may have engaged in criminal activities.*

be involved in an activity *The men were involved in terrorist activities.*

do an activity *He doesn't do a lot of physical activity.*

⚠ Don't say 'make an activity'. Say **take part in an activity** or **be involved in an activity**.

PHRASES

the level of activity *The level of economic activity has increased.*

a flurry of activity (=a time when people are suddenly very busy) *The morning passed by in a flurry of activity.*

a burst of activity (=a sudden increase in activity) *Your muscles need to be strong enough to handle sudden bursts of activity.*

a hive of activity (=a place where people are busy doing something) *The kitchen was a hive of activity.*

actor *n*

someone who performs in plays or films

ADJECTIVES

a good/fine/great actor *He had a reputation as a fine actor.*

a talented/accomplished actor (=very good) *Daniel Radcliffe is a talented young actor.*

a well-known/famous actor *Tom Cruise is a very famous actor.*

a struggling actor (=one who is not getting many jobs) *We shared a house when we were both struggling actors.*

an aspiring actor (=someone who wants to be an actor) *Every year aspiring actors arrive in Hollywood looking for work.*

a professional actor *The plays will be recorded in a studio with professional actors.*

an amateur actor (=one who is not paid) *The play will be performed by local amateur actors.*

the leading/principal actor (=the person playing the most important part) *Who was the leading actor in 'The Sound of Music'?*

a supporting actor (=the person playing the second most important part) *She was awarded an Oscar for Best Supporting Actor.*

NOUNS + actor

a film/movie actor *Joe wanted to be a movie actor from an early age.*

a television/TV actor *For several years he had small parts as a television actor.*

a stage actor *Stage actors are often badly paid.*

a Hollywood actor *Hollywood actor Michael Douglas will be on the show to talk about his latest movie.*

a character actor (=one who plays unusual characters, rather than the most important characters) *As a character actor you get to play some interesting parts.*

a child actor *As a child actor, he played the role of Harry Potter.*

a comedy actor (=one who acts in funny plays and films) *Jason was voted top TV comedy actor.*

VERBS

an actor plays a part/role/character *The 31-year-old actor plays the role of Albert.*

an actor performs a play/scene *The actors performed the scene in full costume.*

an actor rehearses (for) sth (=practises for a play or film) *The actors are busy rehearsing for the opening night of the play.*

A

Actor or actress?
The word **actor** can be used about both men and women. Women who appear in plays and films prefer to be called **actors**.
However, in everyday English, many people often still use **actor** about a man, and **actress** about a woman.

actress *n*
a woman who performs in plays or films

ADJECTIVES

a good/fine/great actress *Judy Garland was a truly great actress.*

a talented/accomplished actress (=very good) *Hurley is a highly talented actress.*

a well-known/famous actress *Lenya became a famous actress in the 1930s.*

a professional actress *She has been a professional actress for over thirty years.*

the leading/principal actress (=the woman playing the most important part) *Zhou Xun won the Best Leading Actress Award for her role in the film.*

a supporting actress (=a woman playing the second most important part) *Huston won an Oscar as best supporting actress in 1985.*

an aspiring actress (=someone who wants to be an actress) *Marilyn was an aspiring young actress.*

NOUNS + actress

a film/stage/television actress *Gish was the finest film actress of her generation.*

a Hollywood actress *She looked like a glamorous Hollywood actress.*

a child actress *Susan was a former child actress, making her first film at the age of four.*

a comedy actress (=one who acts in funny plays and films) *The film stars comedy actress Goldie Hawn.*

VERBS

an actress plays a part/role/character *Lynd is played by French actress Eva Green.*

acute *adj* THESAURUS bad (2)

adapt *v* THESAURUS change[1] (1), (2)

addict *n*
1 someone who likes something very much and does it a lot

NOUNS + addict

a (computer) games addict *Ken is a computer games addict and he spends most evenings on his computer.*

a chocolate/caffeine addict *Some caffeine addicts will drink eight or ten cups a day.*

a TV addict *The British are a nation of TV addicts.*

a news addict *The show is aimed at news addicts.*

a soap opera addict *She is a soap opera addict and she always knows what has been happening to all the characters.*

THESAURUS: addict

junkie
news junkie | **political junkie** | **media junkie** | **sports junkie**
someone who is very interested in a particular subject and is always watching programs or reading about it:
a 24 hour news channel for news junkies | *Political junkies will be staying up all night to watch the election results come in.*

Junkie, **fanatic**, and **~aholic** all sound rather informal.

fanatic
fitness fanatic | **sports fanatic** | **baseball fanatic** | **football fanatic** | **cricket fanatic** | **crossword fanatic**
someone who likes something very much, especially sports or games, and does it a lot:
He is a fitness fanatic and he spends three hours a day at the gym. | *Our family are all sports fanatics.*

~aholic
workaholic | **shopaholic** | **chocoholic**
used in words about people who do something too much:
My dad was a workaholic and he sometimes worked 80 hours a week (=someone who is always working). | *Shopaholics will love the new shopping mall* (=someone who loves shopping). | *Don't leave the box anywhere near Kevin – he's a chocoholic and it will be gone in a few minutes* (=someone who loves eating chocolate).

~aholic comes from **alcoholic**.

2 someone who is unable to stop taking drugs

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + addict

a drug addict *The project helps drug addicts to find their way back into normal society.*

a cocaine/heroin addict *Heroin addicts often steal to get money to buy drugs.*

VERBS

treat/help an addict *The charity runs a home for treating drug addicts.*

address *n*
the details of where someone lives, where a company, school etc is, or the details of someone's email account

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + address

sb's old/new address *What's your new address?*

sb's email address *My email address is chrisfox@pearson.com.*

sb's home/private address *I sent the letter to his home address.*

sb's work/business/school address *My business address is on my card.*

a web/website address *Just type in the web address.*

a full address *You need to give your full address, including the postcode.*

a forwarding address (=a new address for sending mail to when you move from your old address) *They moved without leaving a forwarding address.*

a false/fake address *He gave the police a false address.*

VERBS

give sb your address *She refused to give me her address.*

have/know sb's address *Do you know Helen's address?*

lose sb's address *I wanted to write to him, but I've lost his address.*

change your address *Please notify the school if you change your address.*

PREPOSITIONS

at an address *We've been at this address for over ten years.*

the address of sb/sth *Do you know the address of the school?*

adequate Ac *adj*

enough for a particular purpose

ADVERBS

barely/hardly adequate (=not really adequate) *The roads are barely adequate to cope with the amount of traffic.*

quite adequate/perfectly adequate (=completely adequate – used for emphasis) *The amount of food was quite adequate for the number of guests.*

more than adequate *The safety measures were found to be more than adequate.*

VERBS

consider sth to be adequate/regard sth as adequate *Thirty minutes of gentle exercise each day is considered to be adequate by most doctors.*

PREPOSITIONS

adequate for sth *The house was small, but it was perfectly adequate for my needs.*

THESAURUS: adequate

sufficient, adequate, ample, plenty → **enough**

adjourn *v*

to stop an official meeting for a short time

Grammar
Usually passive.

NOUNS

adjourn a meeting *We decided to adjourn the meeting until the following week.*

adjourn a trial/case/hearing *The judge can adjourn the trial to allow the prisoner to receive medical treatment.*

ADVERBS

adjourn sth indefinitely (=used when you do not know when something will start again) *The case has been adjourned indefinitely while new evidence is being examined.*

PREPOSITIONS

adjourn sth until tomorrow/next week etc *The meeting will be adjourned until next month.*

adjust *v* THESAURUS change[1] (2)

admiration *n*

a feeling of great respect and liking for something or someone

ADJECTIVES

great/deep admiration *I have great admiration for his work.*

profound admiration (=very great admiration) *Bacon expressed his profound admiration for Picasso's paintings.*

genuine/real admiration *"Your mother is a remarkable woman," said John with genuine admiration in his voice.*

grudging/reluctant admiration (=unwilling admiration) *She has won grudging admiration from her rivals.*

a sneaking admiration for sb (=you secretly admire someone) *He had always had a sneaking admiration for his opponent.*

open admiration (=you do not try to hide your admiration) *Her father looked at her in open admiration.*

mutual admiration (=that two or more people feel for each other) *Their friendship was based on mutual admiration.*

VERBS

have great/deep etc admiration *They have the greatest admiration for his music.*

be filled with admiration/be full of admiration *I'm full of admiration for what you've done.*

win/earn sb's admiration *His films have won him the admiration of the critics.*

express/show your admiration *The mayor expressed his admiration for the Cuban leader.*

PREPOSITIONS

admiration for sb/sth *His son was full of admiration for him.*

A

in/with admiration *Daniel gazed at her in admiration.*

admire *v*

to think that someone or something is good

Grammar
Admire is not used in the progressive. Don't say 'I am admiring him.' Say **I admire him.**

ADVERBS

greatly admire (=very much) *He greatly admired Wordsworth's poems.*

be much admired *Her books are much admired in the US.*

be widely/universally admired (=by many people) *Hunt was widely admired by his fellow pilots.*

secretly admire *Although what he did was wrong, many people secretly admired him.*

particularly admire *We contacted artists whose work we particularly admired.*

PREPOSITIONS

admire sb/sth for sth *He admired them for their determination.*

PHRASES

you can't help but admire/you have to admire (=used when saying that someone or something deserves to be admired) *You can't help but admire his courage.*

admirer *n* THESAURUS fan

admission *n*

1 the act of going into a place, or the amount that you pay to go in

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + admission

free admission *Admission is free on Sundays.*

half-price admission *There is half-price admission for children.*

VERBS

refuse/deny sb admission *He was refused admission to law school.*

seek admission (=ask to enter) *She was advised by her doctor to seek admission to hospital.*

gain admission (=succeed in entering a place) *A large crowd was struggling to gain admission to the exhibition.*

include admission *The ticket price includes admission to the museum.*

apply for admission *The document explains how to apply for admission to a university.*

admission + NOUNS

an admission charge/fee *There is an admission charge to go into the gallery.*

the admission price/price of admission *The admission price includes a ride on the steam train.*

the admissions criteria (=the set of rules used to decide who can join a college or other organization) *The college changed its admissions criteria to encourage a wider range of students to study there.*

PREPOSITIONS

admission to sth *Admission to the gallery is £2.*

on admission (=when you go in) *You can pay on admission.*

2 a statement in which you admit that something is true or that you have done something wrong

PHRASES

an admission of guilt/failure/defeat/responsibility/liability *His statement was an admission of guilt.*

by/on sb's own admission (=based on someone's own words) *By her own admission, she lied about the incident.*

ADJECTIVES

a frank admission *We weren't expecting such a frank admission from him.*

VERBS

make an admission *I have an admission to make – I didn't tell you everything that happened last night.*

admit *v*

to agree that something is true, especially when you do not want to do this, or to say that you have done something wrong or illegal

ADVERBS

freely/openly/readily admit sth (=admit something without being ashamed) *The star freely admits that he has made mistakes in the past.*

VERBS

have to admit/be forced to admit sth *In the end, she had to admit that she was wrong.*

refuse to admit sth *The company refused to admit that they had caused the problem.*

PREPOSITIONS

admit to sb *He later admitted to me that he was lying.*

admit to (doing) sth *People will not admit to illegal activities because they are afraid of being punished.*

PHRASES

be willing/prepared/ready to admit sth *The chairman said he was willing to admit that there had been some problems.*

be ashamed to admit sth *David was ashamed to admit that he had lied to his parents.*

be reluctant/loath to admit sth (=not want to admit something) *I'm loath to admit it, but you're probably right.*

I must admit/I have to admit *spoken* (=used when saying that you admit that something is true) *I must admit, I had my doubts at first.*

I hate to admit it, but... *spoken: I hate to admit it, but her cake tastes better than mine.*

adolescent *adj* THESAURUS young

adopt *v*

1 to start to use a plan or method

Grammar
Often passive.

NOUNS

adopt an approach *It's a shame that this approach isn't adopted by more companies.*

adopt a method *We got better results when a different method of raising money was adopted.*

adopt a policy/strategy *The protesters adopted a policy of non-violence.*

ADVERBS

be widely/generally adopted (=be adopted by many people) *Her classic costume designs were widely adopted throughout Hollywood.*

be universally adopted (=be adopted by everybody) *This method of teaching children to read was soon universally adopted.*

be enthusiastically adopted *The policy was enthusiastically adopted by the new government.*

2 to accept a proposal at a meeting

Grammar
Often passive.

NOUNS

adopt a proposal/motion/resolution *The motion to go on strike was adopted by a clear majority of workers.*

ADVERBS

be officially/formally adopted *Resolutions are formally adopted by a simple majority vote.*

be adopted unanimously (=by everyone at a meeting) *A proposal must be adopted unanimously in order to become company policy.*

adult[1] Ac *n*

a fully grown person or animal

ADJECTIVES

a young adult *The novel is aimed at young adults.*

a healthy adult *The risk of catching the disease is rare for healthy adults.*

a responsible adult (=someone who can be trusted to look after someone) *Children can watch the movie, if they are accompanied by a responsible adult.*

a mature adult (=one who behaves sensibly) *Let's discuss this like mature adults.*

VERBS

become an adult *When we become adults we tend to think we've learnt everything we need to know.*

adult + NOUNS

sb's adult life *She spent most of her adult life in Africa.*

adult education/training *The demand for evening classes and other forms of adult education has increased.*

adult supervision (=adults watching children to make sure they are safe and behave well) *Young children are not allowed to play on the beach without adult supervision.*

adult[2] Ac *adj* fully grown or developed

NOUNS

an adult male/female *One in three adult males in this area is unemployed.*

an adult man/woman *Nine out of ten adult women work or study full-time outside the home.*

the adult population *Smokers have been a minority in the adult population since 1976.*

an adult child/son/daughter *She is married, with four adult children.*

advance *n*

a change or discovery that brings progress

ADJECTIVES

a great/huge/major advance *The discovery represents a major advance in cancer treatment.*

an important/significant advance *The school has made important advances in dealing with deaf children.*

a medical/scientific/technological/technical advance *The development of the drug has been a huge medical advance.*

VERBS

make an advance *The two groups have made an important advance towards working together.*

PREPOSITIONS

advances in science/technology etc *Communication has been transformed by advances in technology.*

advanced *adj*

1 using very modern technology and ideas

NOUNS

advanced technology/techniques *The company uses the most advanced technology available.*

an advanced country/society/civilization *Pay is higher in advanced industrial countries.*

an advanced economy *The US has a greater capacity to create jobs than any other advanced economy.*

an advanced system *The ship is equipped with an advanced missile defense system.*

A

advanced features *The phone has several advanced features, including a high-resolution video camera.*

advanced equipment *Advanced equipment is used at airports to check people's bags.*

advanced weapons *Britain has been supplying the country with advanced weapons including fighter aircraft.*

ADVERBS

highly advanced *The communications system is highly advanced.*

technologically/technically advanced *Japan is one of the world's most technologically advanced countries.*

THESAURUS: advanced

sophisticated
equipment | technology | system | way | method | approach | technique | weapon
advanced – used about equipment, systems etc that are cleverly designed but also complicated:
Sophisticated medical equipment saved his life. | This technique requires extremely sophisticated methods of analysis. | The weapons used by terrorists are becoming more and more sophisticated.

highly developed
economy | society | industry | system | sense | skill | understanding
good and effective compared to other countries, people, or animals:
It is a feature of highly developed societies that they place great value on educating young people. | New Zealand has a highly developed tourism industry. | The dog has a highly developed sense of smell.

high-tech/hi-tech
equipment | device | goods | products | weapons | industry | company | firm | business
using very advanced technology, especially electronic equipment and computers:
High-tech listening equipment was used to find survivors from the earthquake. | Many hi-tech industries are based in Silicon Valley.

state-of-the-art
technology | equipment | software | facilities | system | drug | kitchen
using the newest and most advanced features, ideas, and materials that are available:
Its factory uses state-of-the-art technology. | The football club has invested £40 million in state-of-the-art training facilities. | The sound system is state-of-the-art.

cutting-edge
technology | research | design
cutting-edge technology or research is the most advanced that there is at this time:
The building uses cutting-edge technology to cut energy consumption. | He has been involved in cutting-edge medical research.

THESAURUS: advanced

advanced, up-to-date, high-tech/hi-tech, state-of-the-art, new-fangled → **modern (2)**

2 studying a subject at a high level, or having a high level of skill

NOUNS

an advanced student *The class is for advanced students of English.*

an advanced course *The college has an advanced course in jewellery design.*

advanced level *At six he could solve complicated mathematical equations and play chess at an advanced level.*

an advanced certificate/diploma/qualification *Staff have to take an advanced certificate in food hygiene.*

advantage *n*

something good that helps someone or something to be more successful than others

ADJECTIVES

a big/great/major advantage *It's a great advantage to be able to speak some Spanish.*

a slight advantage (=a small one) *Karpov enjoyed a slight advantage over his opponent.*

an unfair advantage *Companies that receive government subsidies have an unfair advantage.*

an important/significant advantage *This software has a significant advantage in that it is easy to use.*

a definite/distinct/obvious advantage *Electronic trading has a number of distinct advantages.*

a real advantage (=a definite advantage) *The new system has some real advantages.*

the main advantage *The main advantage of digital photography is that there is no film to process.*

an added advantage (=an extra advantage) *Candidates with experience in Sales and Marketing would have an added advantage.*

a political/military/financial advantage *Republicans have a political advantage in most of those areas.*

a psychological advantage *Winning the first game gives you a psychological advantage over your opponent.*

a competitive advantage (=one relating to competition) *The company's longer opening hours give it a competitive advantage.*

⚠ Don't say 'a good advantage'. Say **a big advantage** or **a real advantage**.

VERBS

have an advantage (*also* **enjoy an advantage**

formal): *Western countries enjoyed considerable advantages in terms of technology.*

get/gain an advantage *Both teams tried to get an advantage.*

give sb an advantage *His height gives him a big advantage.*

work to your advantage (=make you have an advantage – often used when this is unexpected) *Sometimes a lack of experience can work to your advantage.*

PREPOSITIONS

the advantage of sth *The advantage of this method is that it is much quicker.*

be an advantage to sb *Playing at our own stadium in front of our own fans will be an advantage to us.*

have an advantage over sb/sth *This printer has several advantages over conventional printers.*

be at an advantage (=have an advantage) *Younger workers tend to be at an advantage when applying for jobs.*

to your advantage (=in a way that helps you) *She used the information to her advantage.*

there is an advantage in doing sth *There are advantages in using rewards rather than punishments in controlling children's behaviour.*

PHRASES

the advantages and disadvantages of sth *What are the advantages and disadvantages of living in a big city?*

the advantages outweigh the disadvantages (=the advantages are more valuable) *Working from home can be lonely, but, for me, the advantages outweigh the disadvantages.*

THESAURUS: advantage

benefit
a feature of something that has a good effect on people's lives:
*Regular exercise has **great benefits**, including reducing the risk of heart disease. | Tourism has brought considerable **economic benefits** to the island.*

merit
a good feature that something has, which you consider when you are deciding whether it is the best choice:
*The committee will **consider the merits of** the proposals. | We discussed the **merits and demerits of** the two systems* (=their good and bad features). | *The chairman **saw no great merit in** this suggestion* (=he did not think that it was a good idea).

virtue
an advantage that makes you believe that something is a good thing:
*They believed in the **virtues of** culture, civilization, and reason. | He's always **extolling the virtues** of hard work* (=saying that hard work is a good thing).

the good/great/best thing about sth
especially spoken
used when mentioning a good feature of something. This phrase is rather informal and you should not use it in formal essays:
***The good thing about** cycling is that you don't have to worry about getting stuck in a traffic jam.*

ANTONYMS **advantage** → **disadvantage**

adventure *n*

an exciting experience in which dangerous or unusual things happen

ADJECTIVES

an exciting adventure *In the story, he has many exciting adventures.*

a great adventure *Climbing Everest was a great adventure and a massive challenge.*

a big adventure *For the children, the holiday was all one big adventure.*

a new adventure *He was always looking for new adventures and new countries to visit.*

VERBS

be looking for/searching for/seeking adventure *India is a great place to visit if you're looking for adventure.*

tell sb about your adventures (*also* **recount your adventures** *formal*): *He recounted his adventures in China.*

start/set out on an adventure (*also* **embark on an adventure** *formal*): *I was ready to embark on another adventure.*

share an adventure (with sb) *He wished Jane was with him to share his adventures.*

adventure + NOUNS

an adventure story/novel *The writer is best known for his adventure stories.*

an adventure film/movie *I like watching adventure films, like 'Indiana Jones'.*

an adventure holiday *The company specializes in adventure holidays in faraway countries.*

PHRASES

the adventure of a lifetime *The family are setting out on the adventure of a lifetime – a journey by sea from France to Kenya.*

a sense/spirit of adventure *He loves travelling and has a keen sense of adventure.*

adventurous *adj* THESAURUS brave

advertise *v*

to tell people about a product or service, in order to persuade them to buy it

ADVERBS

be heavily advertised (=be advertised a lot) *People are more likely to choose the brands that are heavily advertised.*

be widely advertised (=a lot and in many places) *Details of the concert were widely advertised.*

A

advertise nationally *The big supermarkets can afford to advertise nationally.*

advertise locally *Some employers advertise locally for new staff.*

PREPOSITIONS

advertise sth in a newspaper/magazine *I saw the course advertised in a magazine.*

advertise (sth) on TV/the internet *The games are advertised on the internet.*

be advertised as sth *The drug was advertised as a miracle cure.*

advertise for sb/sth *The college is advertising for a new principal.*

advertisement *n*

a picture, set of words, or a short film, which is intended to persuade people to buy a product or use a service

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + advertisement

a newspaper/magazine advertisement *She saw a newspaper advertisement for a job in a design company.*

a television/radio advertisement *When a television advertisement is shown in the evening, it might be seen by up to 10 million people.*

a job advertisement *There are not many job advertisements in today's paper.*

a car/coffee etc advertisement *The magazine is full of car advertisements.*

a misleading advertisement (=making you believe something that is not true) *There are lots of misleading advertisements for beauty products, which claim they will make you stay young forever.*

a full-page/half-page advertisement *The company took out a full-page advertisement in the 'New York Times'.*

a pop-up advertisement (=one that suddenly appears on your computer screen when you are looking at a website) *The software blocks unwanted pop-up advertisements.*

VERBS

see an advertisement *I saw an advertisement for the exhibition on my way to work.*

answer an advertisement/reply to an advertisement *He answered an advertisement in 'The Times'.*

publish an advertisement *The newspaper refused to publish the advertisement.*

put/place an advertisement in a newspaper/magazine *She placed an advertisement for a cleaner in the local newspaper.*

take out an advertisement (=arrange for an advertisement to appear in a newspaper or magazine) *Their record company took out full-page advertisements in the music press to promote the album.*

an advertisement appears in sth *The advertisement appeared in 'Newsweek' magazine.*

PREPOSITIONS

an advertisement in a newspaper/magazine *Car advertisements in glossy magazines are aimed at men, not women.*

an advertisement on the television/the internet/a website *I wish they didn't have all those annoying advertisements on the internet.*

an advertisement for sth *I saw an advertisement for the course on a website.*

⚠ Don't say 'an advertisement about'.

advice *n*

an opinion you give someone about what they should do

ADJECTIVES

good/excellent/useful/helpful advice *The book is full of good advice.*

sound advice (=sensible) *I thought that this was sound advice.*

bad/poor advice *Financial advisers can be fined if they give bad advice to a client.*

advice is wrong *Unfortunately all the advice they gave me was wrong.*

practical advice *The programme aims to offer practical advice on healthy eating.*

detailed advice *The website gives detailed advice about making bombs.*

professional/expert/specialist advice *It's advisable to get professional advice before starting any building work.*

legal/medical/financial etc advice *Good legal advice can be expensive.*

independent/impartial advice (=from someone who is not involved and will not get an advantage) *The banks claim to offer independent financial advice.*

VERBS

give sb some advice *My father gave me some useful advice.*

get some advice *I decided to get some advice from a specialist.*

ask sb's advice *Can I ask your advice about something?*

ask for advice *If in doubt, always ask for advice.*

take/follow sb's advice (*also* **act on sb's advice** *formal*) (=do what someone advises you to do) *He followed his doctor's advice and went on a low-fat diet.*

listen to sb's advice (*also* **heed sb's advice** *formal*) (=pay attention to someone's advice) *I wish I had listened to her advice.*

ignore/disregard sb's advice (=not do what someone tells you) *The accident happened because she ignored their advice.*

go/turn to sb for advice *People often go to him for advice about their problems.*

seek advice (=try to get some advice) *If you have any of these symptoms, you should seek urgent advice.*

offer advice *They can offer advice to those who wish to quit drinking.*

NOUNS + advice

career(s) advice *We offer career advice and information for graduates.*

business advice *Business advice from an expert is invaluable if you are starting a company.*

PREPOSITIONS

advice on/about sth *The nurse will give you some advice on diet and exercise.*

advice from sb *You should seek professional advice from a lawyer.*

on sb's advice (=because someone has advised it) *On his lawyer's advice, he pleaded guilty to the crime.*

against sb's advice (=ignoring someone's advice) *Eva travelled to India against the advice of her doctor.*

PHRASES

a piece of advice (*also* **a bit of advice** *informal*): *Let me give you a piece of advice.*

a word of advice *spoken* (=used when advising someone what to do) *A word of advice: look at the small print in the contract very carefully.*

advise *v*

to tell someone what you think they should do

Grammar
The most common way of using **advise** is in the phrase **advise sb to do sth**: *My lawyer **advised** me **to** plead guilty.* | *People are **advised not to** keep large sums of money at home.*

ADVERBS

strongly advise sb to do sth *There is a limited number of seats and we strongly advise customers to buy their tickets in advance.*

be badly/wrongly advised *She now feels that she was wrongly advised by her doctor.*

be legally advised to do sth *The men have been legally advised not to say anything to the press.*

PREPOSITIONS

advise (sb) against sth (=advise someone not to do something) *The authorities are advising people against traveling to the area.*

affair *n*

1 events or activities

Grammar
Always plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + affair

world/international/global affairs *Are you interested in international affairs?*

current affairs (=important events that are happening now) *The BBC launched a 24-hour news and current affairs channel.*

political/economic/military affairs *He was appointed Minister of State with responsibility for economic affairs.*

foreign/external affairs (=events in other countries) *She is the Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs.*

domestic/internal affairs (*also* **home affairs** *BrE*) (=events inside a country) *He said that the US should not try to interfere in his country's domestic affairs.*

public affairs (=events that affect the people of a country) *In the past, women had little role in public affairs.*

sb's private affairs (=things that are personal and not for other people to know about) *He never discussed his private affairs in public.*

financial/business affairs *They offer advice on managing your financial affairs.*

religious affairs *Jones reports on religious affairs.*

VERBS

interfere/meddle in sb's affairs *China doesn't want other countries meddling in its domestic affairs.*

PHRASES

affairs of state (=the business of the government) *The church played no role in the affairs of state.*

2 something that happens

Grammar
Usually singular in this meaning.

VERBS

deal with/handle an affair *The chairman was criticized for the way he handled the affair.*

be involved in an affair *Several leading politicians were involved in the affair.*

ADJECTIVES

a private affair *He felt that his marriage was a private affair and he didn't want any press reporters there.*

the whole affair *The whole affair has been very embarrassing for the government.*

affect Ac *v*

to cause a change in something or someone

ADVERBS

badly/seriously/severely affect *The city was badly affected by the earthquake.*

greatly/significantly affect *The attitude of the parents can greatly affect a child's progress at school.*

deeply/strongly/profoundly affect *She was deeply affected by her parents' divorce.*

directly/indirectly affect *People living near the building works will be directly affected by the extra noise and dirt.*

adversely/negatively affect (=have a bad

effect on something) *Sales have been adversely affected by the weather.*

hardly/barely affect (=almost not at all) *The recession has barely affected us.*

disproportionately affect (=affect one person or group much more than other people) *The tax will disproportionately affect people on low wages.*

affection *n*

a feeling that you like or love someone or something and care about them

ADJECTIVES

great/deep/strong affection *Bart had great affection for the old man.*

real/genuine affection *They treat each other with genuine affection.*

mutual affection (=between two people) *Mutual respect and affection are very important in a marriage.*

special affection *She would always think of Nigel with special affection.*

warm affection *He felt a warm affection for his cousin.*

growing affection *There was a growing affection between them.*

brotherly/sisterly/fatherly etc affection *In a burst of sisterly affection, Dana hugged me.*

VERBS

show/display/express affection *Their father never showed much affection to his children.*

give sb affection *Joe never gave her the affection she needed from him.*

feel affection/have an affection for sb *It was obvious that Simon had a great affection for her.*

be held in great affection by sb *The ancient tree was held in great affection by the people of the town.*

need/want affection (*also* **crave affection** *formal*): *The little boy craved affection from his mother.*

return sb's affection *She was in love with someone who did not return her affection.*

win/gain sb's affection (=make someone like you) *He did his best to win her affection.*

PREPOSITIONS

affection for sb/sth *He had a deep affection for his wife.*

affection towards sb *The family members do not display much affection towards each other.*

with affection *She remembered her teachers with affection.*

PHRASES

a display/show/sign/expression of affection *People often give flowers as a sign of affection.*

a feeling of affection *You could see that he still had feelings of affection for her.*

the object of sb's affection (=the person someone loves) *In the film, the object of his affection is a shy girl who works in his office.*

love and affection *Children respond much more to love and affection than they do to punishment.*

affectionate *adj*

showing that you love someone or something and care about them

ADVERBS

deeply/highly affectionate *His letters were always deeply affectionate.*

PREPOSITIONS

affectionate towards/to/with sb *Jo is very affectionate towards her brother.*

affluent *adj* THESAURUS rich (1)

affordable *adj* THESAURUS cheap

afraid *adj*

frightened or worried that something bad may happen

ADVERBS

terribly/deeply/desperately afraid *She was terribly afraid that she would forget the lines of her speech.*

always afraid *Lionel was always afraid that she would find someone else.*

deathly afraid *AmE* (=extremely afraid) *He is deathly afraid of heights.*

VERBS

be/feel afraid *I am always afraid she is going to hurt me.*

look/sound afraid *He stood up straight and tried not to look afraid.*

make sb afraid *The accident made her afraid to get in a car again.*

PREPOSITIONS

afraid of sb/sth *Many people are afraid of the dark.*

afraid for sb (=worried that something bad will happen to someone) *She was afraid for her children.*

PHRASES

don't be afraid *Don't be afraid. It's only a little dog.*

there's nothing to be afraid of/there's no need to be afraid *There's nothing to be afraid of – it's just a small injection.*

be half afraid that (=a little afraid that something might happen) *I was half afraid that she would say 'no'.*

afternoon *n*

the part of the day after the morning and before the evening

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + afternoon

good afternoon (=used when meeting someone in the afternoon) *Good afternoon everyone!*

this/that afternoon *I have a French class this afternoon.*

tomorrow/yesterday afternoon *What are you doing tomorrow afternoon?*

Monday/Friday etc afternoon *I have arranged to meet her next Saturday afternoon.*

early/late afternoon *Mike arrived in Boston in the early afternoon.*

a sunny/hot/wet etc afternoon *It was a lovely sunny afternoon.*

a summer/spring etc afternoon *One hot summer afternoon she decided to go for a walk.*

afternoon + NOUNS

an afternoon nap (=a short sleep in the afternoon) *Dad was having his Sunday afternoon nap.*

afternoon tea *My grandma always has afternoon tea at 4 o'clock.*

VERBS

spend the afternoon *He decided to spend the afternoon in town.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the afternoon *We went swimming in the afternoon.*

on Monday/Friday etc afternoon *There's a meeting on Thursday afternoon.*

⚠ Don't say 'On the afternoon I went to Pam's house.' Say **In the afternoon I went to Pam's house.**

PHRASES

the middle of the afternoon *By the middle of the afternoon, she was tired and wanted to go home.*

take the afternoon off *I'm taking tomorrow afternoon off to do some Christmas shopping.*

age *n*

1 how old someone is

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + age

old age *Loneliness affects many people in old age.*

middle age (=between about 40 and 60) *Smoking kills a fifth of all smokers in middle age.*

a great/advanced age (=a very old age) *My aunt died at a great age.*

a difficult/awkward age (=used mainly about the time when people are teenagers) *13–16 is often a difficult age.*

retirement age *The risk of experiencing poverty is much greater for those over retirement age.*

school age *Children should start doing homework as they approach high school age.*

school-leaving age *BrE: The government is proposing to raise the minimum school-leaving age.*

the legal age *In the UK, the legal age for buying alcohol is 18.*

the minimum age *The minimum age for driving a car is 17.*

the voting age *There are plans to bring down the voting age from 18 to 16.*

age + NOUNS

an age group/bracket/range *Men in the 50–65 age group are most at risk from heart disease.*

an age limit *There's no upper age limit for drivers.*

an age gap/difference *There's a five-year age gap between me and my husband – he's 35 and I'm 40.*

VERBS

get to/reach/live to an age *One in three children died before they reached the age of 5.*

lower/raise the age (=at which something can be done) *The voting age was lowered from 21 to 18.*

look/feel your age (=look or feel as old as you really are) *The singer is 46, but she doesn't look her age at all.*

act your age (=behave in the way that a person of your age should behave) *It's time he started acting his age.*

ask sb his/her age *It's rude to ask a woman her age.*

PREPOSITIONS

at an age *At your age, you shouldn't have any problem walking.*

of this/that/sb's age *Children of this age learn very quickly.*

by the age of *I could read by the age of five.*

the age of 5/65 etc *She left school at the age of 15.*

under/below the age of *The film is not suitable for children under the age of twelve.*

over the age of *It is difficult to get travel insurance if you are over the age of 80.*

for your age *She looks very good for her age.*

PHRASES

from an early/young age *She'd been playing the piano from a very early age.*

at an early/young age *Kids can start learning a second language at a young age.*

sb (of) your own age *He needs to play with children of his own age.*

the age of consent (=when you are legally allowed to marry or have sex) *At 15, the girl was under the age of consent.*

2 a particular period of history

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + age

a new age *We are now entering a new age in world history.*

a golden age (=a very good or successful time) *This is a television show from the golden age of American comedy.*

a bygone age (=a time in the past, which no longer exists) *The building has the elegance and grace of a bygone age.*

A

the modern age *In the modern age, the British monarch does not have any real power.*

the space age *The 1960s was the dawn of the space age.*

the nuclear age *The nuclear age began in the middle of the 20th century.*

the digital age *In the digital age, people can access information from a range of different sources.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an age *We are living in the age of technology.*

the age of sth *In the age of the internet, information is very easy to find.*

through the ages *The exhibition shows the development of the castle through the ages.*

PHRASES

in this day and age (=now – used when you do not think that something should still happen or exist now) *Racist comments are not acceptable in this day and age.*

agenda *n*

1 a list of things that need to be discussed or dealt with, or that someone plans to do – used especially about politics and business

PHRASES

an item on the agenda *What is the next item on the agenda for today's meeting?*

be (at the) top of the agenda *Energy efficiency is top of the agenda.*

be high on the agenda *Dealing with terrorism is high on the government's agenda.*

be on the political agenda *Reforming the healthcare system has been on the political agenda for many years.*

VERBS

set the agenda (=decide what needs to be dealt with or achieved) *The report set the agenda for the debate.*

agree an agenda *We need to agree an agenda for the next meeting.*

put sth on the agenda *This incident has put the issue of racism firmly back on the agenda.*

establish/create/provide an agenda *The scientists were able to establish an agenda for future research.*

ADJECTIVES

the political agenda *The political agenda was dominated by the world economic crisis.*

an ambitious agenda *The new government had an ambitious agenda when they first came to power.*

PREPOSITIONS

be on the agenda *The environment is still on the agenda.*

be off the agenda (=not on it) *Women's issues are off the agenda.*

2 secret reasons for doing something or things you secretly want to achieve

ADJECTIVES

a secret/hidden agenda *When the reforms were first announced, people suspected that the government had a hidden agenda.*

your own (personal) agenda *She had her own agenda when she agreed to accept the job.*

a political agenda *There is a small group of union leaders with a political agenda who are causing trouble.*

VERBS

have an agenda *The makers of the film clearly have an agenda.*

aggression *n*

angry or threatening behaviour or feelings that often result in fighting or wars

ADJECTIVES

military aggression *China suffered under military aggression from other countries in previous centuries.*

external/foreign aggression (=attacks from other countries) *States must be allowed to defend themselves against external aggression.*

naked/open/overt aggression (=very obvious aggression) *In some countries there is naked aggression towards foreigners.*

pent-up aggression (=angry feelings that you do not express) *Sports are a good way to release all your pent-up aggression.*

VERBS

control your aggression *He sometimes struggled to control his aggression.*

take out your aggression (=get rid of your aggressive feelings) *I know she feels strongly, but she shouldn't take out her aggression on me.*

channel your aggression (=use your aggression in a different way, which does not hurt other people) *To stay out of trouble, he began to channel his aggression into boxing.*

show/display aggression *Our dogs have never shown aggression towards other dogs.*

PREPOSITIONS

aggression against sb *The UN said the country had engaged in aggression against its neighbours.*

aggression towards sb *Unfortunately, it has become more common for pupils to show aggression towards teachers.*

PHRASES

an act of aggression *The invasion of Kuwait was an obvious act of aggression.*

aggressive *adj*

behaving in an angry threatening way, as if you want to attack someone or have a big argument with them

ADVERBS

highly aggressive *The man was behaving in a highly aggressive manner.*

openly aggressive (=in a way that is easy to notice) *He was not openly aggressive, but I felt uncomfortable with him.*

increasingly aggressive *The political candidates are becoming increasingly aggressive towards each other.*

VERBS

become aggressive *The man suddenly became aggressive and started shouting at me.*

PREPOSITIONS

aggressive to/towards sb *Some dogs are aggressive towards children and are not good pets.*

You can use **aggressive** about people, animals, countries, and companies.

agony *n* great pain or suffering

ADJECTIVES

great agony *She appeared to be in great agony.*

absolute agony *informal* (=very great pain) *I woke up in absolute agony, with a terrible pain in my leg.*

mental agony *It's hard to imagine the mental agonies suffered by someone wrongly accused of murder.*

VERBS

scream with agony *He screamed with agony when he caught his hand in the car door.*

writhe in agony (=twist your body violently because you are in pain) *She was writhing in agony, with tears running down her cheeks.*

prolong the agony (=make someone suffer any longer) *It would be unkind to prolong the agony and not tell him the test results.*

PREPOSITIONS

in agony *By the time she reached the hospital, she was in agony.*

the agony of sth *The country is recovering from the agonies of the recent civil war.*

PHRASES

a scream/cry of agony *He let out a scream of agony.*

days/weeks/months of agony *He suffered months of agony after damaging his foot during a soccer match.*

it is agony *spoken* (=it causes you a lot of worry and suffering) *It was agony not knowing if she would live.*

agree *v*

1 to have the same opinion as someone else

ADVERBS

completely/totally/entirely agree *He thinks that we should cancel the party and I completely agree with him.*

agree wholeheartedly (=agree completely – more formal) *The speaker said that she agreed wholeheartedly with the prime minister.*

unanimously agree (=used when everyone in a group agrees) *The committee unanimously agreed it was too much to pay.*

generally agree *People generally agree that education is important.*

broadly agree (=agree with most of something) *Most scientists broadly agree with the professor's views.*

PREPOSITIONS

agree with sb/sth *I think most people would agree with you. | I agree with what you're saying.*

agree about/on sth *My husband and I agree about most things.*

PHRASES

I agree with sb up to a point (=used when you partly agree with someone) *I agree with you up to a point, but I think there are some exceptions.*

I quite agree (=used when saying that you definitely agree with someone) *"It's a really good restaurant." "I quite agree."*

I couldn't agree more/I absolutely agree (=used when saying strongly that you completely agree) *"We need a new government." "I couldn't agree more."*

ANTONYMS agree → disagree

2 to say that you will do what someone asks, or allow something to happen

ADVERBS

reluctantly agree (=agree, although you do not really want to allow something) *I begged my parents to let me go, and they reluctantly agreed.*

happily/readily agree (=agree because you think something is a good idea) *She suggested that they go out for a meal and he happily agreed.*

unanimously agree (=everyone in a group agrees) *The three judges unanimously agreed to let the appeal go ahead.*

PHRASES

sb has kindly agreed to do sth (=a polite phrase used when saying that someone has agreed to do something) *The school has kindly agreed to let us use the hall for our meeting.*

sb would never agree to sth *The painting's owners would never agree to sell it.*

3 to make a decision with someone about something

NOUNS

agree a time/place/date *We still need to agree a time for our next meeting.*

agree a deal *The government and unions have agreed a deal setting a maximum 48-hour working week.*

agree a price/fee *They agreed a price of $3,500 for the job.*

A

Grammar
You can **agree** a time, place, price etc, or **agree on** a time, place, price etc: *Have you agreed (on) a date for the meeting?*

agreeable *adj* THESAURUS enjoyable

agreement *n*

1 an arrangement or promise to do something, made by two or more people, companies, countries etc

ADJECTIVES

a legal agreement *He had signed a legal agreement to repay the money.*

an international agreement *We need an international agreement to deal with climate change.*

a written agreement *There is usually a written agreement between the borrower and the bank.*

a verbal agreement (=agreed in words, but not written down) *The doctor needs to have a verbal agreement from the patient.*

a formal/informal agreement *Two years of negotiation led to a formal agreement.*

a binding agreement (=an official agreement that must be obeyed) *Lawyers are in the process of drafting a legally binding agreement between both parties.*

a multilateral agreement *formal* (=involving several countries or groups) *They negotiated a multilateral agreement between all World Trade Organization members.*

a bilateral agreement *formal* (=between two countries or groups) *A bilateral agreement between the UK and Korean governments was signed last year.*

NOUNS + agreement

a trade agreement *The administration has signed a multi-billion dollar trade agreement with Colombia.*

a peace agreement (=a permanent agreement to stop fighting) *The five countries in the region signed a peace agreement.*

a ceasefire agreement (=a temporary agreement to stop fighting) *A ceasefire agreement was signed between the government and the rebels.*

a draft agreement (=one that is not yet in its finished form) *The government of Iraq refused to accept the wording of the draft UN agreement.*

a gentleman's agreement (=an agreement that is not written down, and is based only on trust) *The candidates seemed to have a gentleman's agreement not to criticize each other.*

VERBS + agreement

make an agreement *We made an agreement not to tell anyone.*

enter into an agreement *formal* (=make an official agreement, which has legal responsibilities) *In 2006, the city authorities entered into an agreement with a private firm to build a thousand new homes.*

sign an agreement *The two countries have signed an agreement on military cooperation.*

have an agreement *They have an agreement that all workers should be union members.*

reach/come to an agreement (*also* **conclude/secure an agreement** *formal*): *The two sides failed to come to an agreement.*

break/violate an agreement *The UN accused the country's leaders of breaking international agreements.*

keep/honour an agreement (*also* **stick to an agreement** *informal*) (=do what you have agreed) *Employers must honour an agreement to increase salaries.*

go back on an agreement (*also* **renege on an agreement** *formal*) (=not do what you agreed to do) *Republican leaders accused Democrats of trying to renege on an agreement to have a vote.*

be bound by an agreement (=have to obey the conditions of an official agreement) *India is bound by the agreements signed under the World Trade Organization.*

negotiate an agreement (=discuss particular things in order to reach an agreement) *They have been trying to negotiate an agreement with a Chinese company.*

hammer out an agreement (=decide on an agreement after a lot of discussion and disagreement) *Republicans and Democrats are hammering out an agreement to balance the federal budget.*

agreement + VERBS

an agreement breaks down/fails (=it stops working) *The agreement broke down almost immediately.*

an agreement comes into effect/force (=it starts being used) *It cannot be done until the agreement comes into force next month.*

PREPOSITIONS

an agreement with sb/sth *The German car maker signed an agreement with the state government to build a new factory.*

an agreement between sb (and sb) *A military cooperation agreement between the two countries was signed last year.*

under an agreement *Under the agreement, most agricultural prices will remain at the same level.*

an agreement on sth *They signed an agreement on military cooperation.*

PHRASES

the terms of an agreement (=the conditions that people agree on) *Under the terms of the agreement, the debt would be repaid over a 20-year period.*

a breach of an agreement (=an act of breaking an agreement) *Both sides were accusing each other of breaches of the agreement.*

be close to an agreement (=have almost reached an agreement) *Management and unions are close to an agreement about pay.*

2 a situation in which people have the same opinion

ADJECTIVES

unanimous agreement (=everyone agrees) *There was unanimous agreement that the plan was a good idea.*

general/broad/widespread agreement (=most people agree) *There is broad agreement that something needs to be done.*

mutual agreement (=two people or groups agree) *The decision to separate was arrived at by mutual agreement.*

PREPOSITIONS

be in agreement *We were all in agreement that changes needed to be made.*

agreement on sth *There is little agreement on what to do about the problem.*

agreement among sb *There is widespread agreement among scientists on how the disease is spread.*

aid Ac *n*

help, such as money or food, given by an organization or government to a country or to people who are in a difficult situation

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + aid

foreign/international/overseas aid *The country is very poor and relies on foreign aid.*

government/federal/state aid *The school receives government aid.*

legal aid (=free legal services) *People on low incomes can get legal aid.*

financial/economic aid *The government provides financial aid for farmers.*

military aid *The US sent military aid to Pakistan.*

medical aid *The refugees are in urgent need of food and medical aid.*

food aid *We need to provide food aid for over 60,000 people.*

humanitarian aid (=given to people living in very bad conditions) *Ministers agreed to send humanitarian aid, including food and medical supplies.*

emergency aid *The government sent emergency aid to the victims of the earthquake.*

VERBS

give/provide aid *The United States continues to give aid to Israel.*

send aid *EU ministers agreed to send aid.*

ask for/appeal for/call for aid *The Pakistan authorities have asked for aid to help the flood victims.*

get/receive aid *The country is very poor and receives a lot of foreign aid.*

depend on/rely on aid *Millions of people rely on food aid.*

cut off/withdraw aid (=stop giving aid) *The US has threatened to cut off aid to the region.*

qualify for aid (*also* **be eligible for aid**) (=have the right to be given aid) *The project is eligible for aid from the government.*

promise aid *The president promised additional aid for the victims of the hurricane.*

aid + NOUNS

an aid worker *Aid workers warned that the situation was getting worse.*

an aid agency/group *The sanctions could prevent international aid agencies from delivering food and medicine.*

an aid programme/scheme/package *He works for a UN aid programme which helps street children.*

PHRASES

an appeal/request for aid *International aid agencies launched an appeal for emergency aid.*

aim *n*

something you hope to achieve by doing something

ADJECTIVES

the main aim (*also* **the principal/primary aim** *formal*): *The government's main aim is to stay in power.*

a key aim (=used when emphasizing that an aim is very important) *One of the key aims is to help people find work.*

the ultimate/long-term aim (=that you hope to achieve at some time in the future) *The ultimate aim is to produce vehicles that run on clean sources of energy.*

the immediate/initial aim (=that you hope to achieve first) *Their immediate aim was to pay off their debts.*

the general/broad/overall aim *The overall aim of the course is to help students improve their reading and writing skills.*

a common aim (=that people, countries, or organizations share) *The two groups share a common aim.*

the underlying aim (=basic aim, which lies behind all the other things you do) *The government's main underlying aim is now to get growth back into the economy.*

VERBS

sb's aim is to do sth *Our aim is to win the competition.*

have an aim *The scientists all have the same aim – to find a cure for the disease.*

achieve your aim *She achieved her aim of becoming a doctor.*

meet/realize/fulfil/accomplish your aim (=achieve your aim – more formal) *They hope to meet their aim of reducing world poverty within the next five years.*

set out/state the aims of sth *They set out their aims in the party manifesto.*

A

pursue your aims *formal* (=try to achieve them over a long period of time) *The men worked closely together to pursue their aims.*

further your aims *especially disapproving* (=help them to be successful) *The group is prepared to use violence to further its political aims.*

PREPOSITIONS

the aim of sth *The aim of the investigation is to find out what caused the crash.*

with the aim of doing sth *The project was set up with the aim of helping disabled people find places to live.*

PHRASES

aims and objectives (=the things you hope to achieve) *I've written down a list of aims and objectives for the meeting.*

sb's aim in life *His main aim in life is to avoid doing any work.*

THESAURUS: aim

goal
something important that you hope to achieve in the future, even though it may take a long time:
*The country can still **achieve** its **goal** of reducing poverty by a third. | Their **ultimate goal** is to become an independent country. | His **long-term goal** is to win the world championship.*

target
a particular amount or total that you want to achieve:
*The company is on track to **meet** its **target** of increasing profits by 10%. | He **set** himself a **target** of losing 10 kilos.*

objective
the specific thing that you are trying to achieve – used especially about things that have been officially discussed and agreed upon in business, politics etc:
*Their **main objective** is to halt the flow of drugs. | We met to **set** the business **objectives** for the coming year.*

ambition
something that you very much want to achieve in your future career:
*Her ambition was to go to law school and become an attorney. | Earlier this year, he **achieved** his **ambition** of competing in the Olympic Games.*

THESAURUS: aim

aim, goal, objective, the object of sth, the point, intention, ends → **purpose**

air *n*

the mixture of gases around the Earth, that we breathe

ADJECTIVES

fresh air *She opened the window to let in some fresh air.*

clean air *The air is much cleaner next to the sea.*

warm/hot air *Warm air rises and is replaced by cooler and denser air.*

cool/cold air *I could feel the cold air coming in under the door.*

crisp air (=pleasantly cool) *She breathed in the crisp autumn air.*

clear air *I looked up to the stars in the clear night air.*

damp/humid/moist air *Damp air can be bad for your breathing.*

dry air *Dry air and blazing sun made the soil crack.*

polluted air *The air in many cities is heavily polluted.*

stale air (=not fresh and often full of smoke) *The room was full of stale air and tobacco smoke.*

the air is thin (=there is less oxygen because you are in a high place) *People cannot live up there because the air is too thin and there is not enough oxygen to breathe.*

NOUNS + air

the morning/evening/night air *He stepped out and breathed in the cold morning air.*

the sea/mountain/country air *I love the salty smell of the sea air.*

air + NOUNS

air pollution *Most air pollution is caused by cars.*

the air quality *The air quality is very poor on hot days.*

VERBS

breathe in the air *She breathed in the cool mountain air.*

fight/gasp for air (=try to breathe with difficulty) *He clutched his throat as he fought for air.*

let in some air (=let fresh air into a room) *It would be nice to open the door and let in some air.*

put/pump air into sth (=fill a tyre, balloon etc with air) *I need to put some air in the tyres.*

sth fills the air *A smell of freshly brewed coffee filled the air.*

the air turns cooler/warmer (=it becomes cooler or warmer) *In the spring, the air turns warmer.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the air *There was a strong smell of burning in the air.*

PHRASES

a breath of air *I went outside for a breath of air.*

a current of air *The birds are able to glide on a current of warm air.*

a rush/blast/stream of air *There was a cold rush of air as she wound down her window.*

the air is thick with sth (=there is a lot of something in it) *The air was thick with smoke.*

airline *n*

a company that takes passengers and goods to different places by plane

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + airline

a big/major airline *Several major airlines fly between London and New York.*

the national/state airline *KLM is the national airline of the Netherlands.*

a low-cost/budget/no-frills airline (=which has cheap flights) *Low-cost airlines are offering tickets for as little as 20 euros.*

an international airline *The airport is used mainly by international airlines.*

a domestic/regional airline *The domestic airline has a good safety record.*

a commercial airline *Last year, 1.6 billion passengers were carried by commercial airlines.*

VERBS

fly with an airline *"Which airline are you flying with?" "British Airways."*

an airline flies somewhere *The airline flies to Morocco twice a day.*

an airline operates somewhere *The airline operates mainly between Florida and Puerto Rico.*

an airline carries people *Last year, the airline carried over 2 million passengers.*

airline + NOUNS

an airline company *She worked as a pilot for a well-known airline company.*

the airline industry/business *The airline industry faces a challenging time.*

an airline passenger *Airline passengers face a 10 percent increase in air fares.*

alarm *n*

1 a piece of equipment that makes a loud noise to warn you of danger

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + alarm

a fire/smoke alarm *If the fire alarm goes off, leave the building immediately.*

a security alarm *The building has a system of security alarms.*

a burglar alarm (*also* **an intruder alarm** *formal*) (=that tells you when someone is getting into a building without permission) *Neighbours heard the burglar alarm and called the police.*

a car alarm *I was woken by a car alarm in the middle of the night.*

a personal alarm (=that you carry with you in case you are attacked) *If you are nervous, buy a personal alarm.*

VERBS

an alarm goes off (*also* **an alarm sounds** *formal*) (=it suddenly makes a noise) *The thieves fled when an alarm went off.*

set off/trigger/activate an alarm (=make it start working) *A window blew open, setting off the alarm.*

set the alarm (=make it ready to operate) *Did you set the burglar alarm?*

switch off/turn off the alarm *The owner of the shop arrived and switched off the alarm.*

install an alarm (*also* **fit an alarm** *BrE*): *After our neighbours were burgled, we installed a burglar alarm.*

alarm + NOUNS

an alarm button *He hit the alarm button under the desk.*

an alarm system *They have installed an electronic burglar alarm system.*

2 a feeling of fear or worry because something bad or dangerous might happen

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable alarm *When the announcement was made, there was great alarm.*

growing alarm *There is growing alarm in the region over the situation in Iraq.*

sudden alarm *"Don't do that," Matt said in sudden alarm.*

unnecessary/undue alarm *His claims have caused unnecessary alarm among millions of parents.*

public alarm *The radiation leak caused considerable public alarm.*

VERBS

express alarm *Police expressed alarm at the level of drug use.*

cause/create alarm *The proposal has caused great alarm and anxiety.*

PREPOSITIONS

alarm at/over/about sth *There is alarm at the level of pollution.*

with alarm *Britain viewed this development with alarm.*

in alarm *The girl cried out in alarm.*

to sb's alarm *He noticed to his alarm that the fuel tank was nearly empty.*

PHRASES

there is no cause/need for alarm *The minister insisted that there was no cause for alarm.*

alarming *adj* THESAURUS frightening

alien *adj* THESAURUS foreign

alive *adj* living and not dead

Grammar
Alive is not used before a noun.

ADVERBS

still alive *Her grandparents are still alive.*

barely alive (=only just alive) *By the time she was rescued, she was barely alive.*

A

very much alive *He is very much alive and enjoying his retirement in Florida.*

VERBS

keep sb alive *The patient is being kept alive on a life-support machine.*

stay/remain alive *The explorers managed to stay alive in the jungle by eating berries and leaves.*

escape/get out alive *Fortunately, everyone escaped alive from the burning building.*

be found alive *The missing child was found alive and well at a neighbour's house.*

be buried alive *Two skiers were buried alive in an avalanche.*

see sb alive *She was the last person to see him alive.*

PHRASES

alive and well *He's alive and well, and currently living in Australia.*

lucky to be alive *She was lucky to be alive after being involved in a serious car accident.*

more dead than alive *The child was found lying on the ground, more dead than alive.*

THESAURUS: alive

living
thing | **relative** | **artist** | **writer** | **poet** | **songwriter** | **filmmaker**
if someone is living, he or she is alive now. **Living** is also used in the phrase **a living thing** (=an animal or plant that is alive): *All living things need oxygen. | Her son is her only living relative. | He is probably the greatest living American filmmaker.*

live
animals
live animals are not dead:
Many people are against scientists doing experiments on live animals. | Protesters want to stop the export of live sheep and cattle. | The children were excited at seeing ***real live*** *elephants.*

Live is only used before a noun.

animate *formal*
object
an **animate object** is alive and able to move, and therefore different from other types of things:
Young children eventually learn the difference between an animate object, such as a cat, and an inanimate one, such as a ball.

ANTONYMS **alive** → **dead**[1]

allegation *n*

a statement saying that you think someone has done something wrong or illegal, although this has not been proved

Grammar
Usually plural.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + allegation

a serious allegation *Some serious allegations have already been made against him.*

a damaging allegation *One of the most damaging allegations was that the airline did not care about passenger safety.*

a false allegation *She claims the allegations against her are all false.*

a wild allegation *The press have been making wild allegations.*

an unfounded/unsubstantiated allegation (=there is no evidence to support it) *The allegations are unfounded and will easily be disproved in court.*

an allegation is true/untrue *If these allegations are true, they could ruin his career.*

fresh/further allegations (=new allegations) *The newspaper is planning to publish fresh allegations.*

widespread allegations (=by many people) *There were widespread allegations of cheating.*

VERBS

make an allegation *In his article, he makes a number of allegations.*

deny an allegation *The mayor denies all the allegations that have been made against him.*

reject/dismiss an allegation *The company reacted by rejecting all the allegations.*

refute an allegation *formal* (=prove that it is wrong) *He has taken steps to refute the allegations publicly.*

face an allegation *The player faces allegations that he cheated in last week's game.*

publish an allegation *The newspaper published allegations that the president was involved with the Mafia.*

investigate/look into an allegation *The police are investigating allegations of fraud.*

withdraw/retract an allegation (=say that your allegation was a mistake) *They were forced to withdraw their allegations.*

support an allegation *There was no evidence to support these allegations.*

an allegation is levelled against sb *formal* (=it is made against someone) *The same allegation could not be levelled against her husband.*

allergy *n*

a medical condition that makes you ill when you eat, touch, or breathe a particular thing

VERBS

have an allergy (to sth) *She has an allergy to nuts.*

suffer from an allergy *Only a small number of people suffer from this type of allergy.*

cause an allergy *Some food colourings can cause allergies.*

NOUNS + allergy

a food allergy *Food allergies are becoming more common in young children.*

a peanut/milk allergy *Peanut allergies can be very serious.*

a skin allergy (=which makes your skin feel painful or uncomfortable) *Perfumes can cause skin allergies.*

allergy + NOUNS

an allergy test *The doctor sent her to a specialist to have an allergy test.*

alleviate v THESAURUS reduce

alliance n

an arrangement in which two or more countries, groups, or people agree to work together or support each other

ADJECTIVES

a military alliance *Greece was a useful member of the military alliance.*

a political alliance *Three parties have formed a political alliance.*

a strong/close alliance *He forged a strong alliance between his state and the church.*

a loose alliance (=not strong) *A loose alliance of opposition groups formed in 1990.*

a broad alliance (=involving very different groups) *We need a broad alliance of colleges, communities, and businesses.*

an unholy alliance (=very surprising because the people, groups etc have very different opinions) *Politicians on the left and the right have joined together in an unholy alliance against the reforms.*

VERBS

form/make an alliance *In 1902, Japan made an alliance with Britain.*

enter into an alliance with sb *formal* (=make an alliance) *Spain then entered into an alliance with France.*

forge/build an alliance (=work to make an alliance) *They won the election by forging an alliance with the Social Democrats.*

strengthen/cement an alliance (=make it stronger) *He cemented his alliance with France by marrying the French king's daughter.*

join an alliance *Two more countries have been invited to join the alliance.*

PREPOSITIONS

an alliance with sb *Most of the people approve of their country's political alliance with the United States.*

an alliance between sb and sb *There was an alliance between Spain and Portugal.*

in alliance with sb *They have been campaigning in alliance with other organizations.*

allocate Ac v

to officially give something to someone, or decide that something should be used for a purpose

allocate + NOUNS

allocate resources *The government will allocate more resources to regions with serious housing problems.*

allocate money/funds *More funds should be allocated for training.*

allocate an amount/number *Each police officer is allocated a certain number of streets to patrol.*

allocate time *How much time has been allocated for the meeting?*

allocate a space/area/land *Not enough space has been allocated for car parking.*

allocate work/a task *Tasks are allocated according to each worker's skills and experience.*

PREPOSITIONS

allocate sth to sb/sth *More government money will be allocated to repairing old buildings.*

allocate sth for sth *Thirty minutes is the amount of time allocated for lunch.*

allocate sth between/among sb/sth *The resources are allocated between the city's schools.*

allocate sth according to sth *In an election, the seats are allocated according to the proportion of votes each party receives.*

ally n

a person or country that helps and supports another person or country

ADJECTIVES

a close ally *Britain is a close ally of the United States.*

an old ally (=allies for a long time) *The two leaders are old allies.*

a former ally *Mr Rutskoi is a former ally of the president.*

a political ally *The senator is a close friend and political ally of the president.*

an important/key ally *He lost the support of one of his most important allies.*

sb's main ally *Beijing, North Korea's main ally, is being put under pressure by the US.*

a powerful ally *The prince has some powerful allies who he can ask for help.*

a great ally *The two countries were once great allies.*

a staunch ally (=a very loyal ally) *The congresswoman is normally a staunch ally of the administration.*

VERBS

win/gain an ally *He is hoping that he can win new allies by offering to cut taxes.*

find an ally in sb/sth *General de Gaulle found an ally in Konrad Adenauer.*

A

alter Ac *v*

to change, or to make something change

ADVERBS

alter (sth) slightly/a little *His face altered slightly when he saw me.*

alter (sth) completely *This event completely altered his career.*

alter (sth) dramatically (=a lot in a surprising way) *The situation has altered dramatically.*

alter (sth) considerably *People's tastes in food have altered considerably in recent years.*

alter (sth) radically/fundamentally (=completely) *His doctor told him that he would have to radically alter his diet.*

alter (sth) drastically (=in an extreme and sudden way) *The accident drastically altered her life.*

alter (sth) significantly/substantially (=in a very noticeable way) *Property prices did not alter significantly through the year.*

THESAURUS: alter

alter, turn, adapt, evolve, mutate, fluctuate, alternate → **change[1] (1)**

alter, adapt, adjust, turn sth up/down, reform, revise, restructure, transform, revolutionize, distort, twist, misrepresent → **change[1] (2)**

alteration Ac *n*

a change, especially a small one

ADJECTIVES

a slight/minor/small alteration *The editor made a few minor alterations to the text.*

a major/significant alteration *The last major alteration to the law was made in 2009.*

extensive/radical alteration (=one that has a big effect) *The system is in need of radical alteration.*

⚠ Don't say 'a big alteration'. Say **a major alteration** or **a significant alteration**.

VERBS

make an alteration *He made a few alterations to his speech.*

carry out an alteration (=make an alteration – used about big changes to buildings and designs) *The alterations were carried out by a firm of local builders.*

need/require some alterations *The software requires one or two alterations to improve its performance.*

undergo some alterations (=have some alterations – more formal) *The building has undergone several alterations during its long history.*

PREPOSITIONS

an alteration to sth *We need to make a few alterations to the dress before it is ready to wear.*

an alteration in sth *Have you noticed any alteration in his behaviour recently?*

THESAURUS: alteration

alteration, reform, shift, swing, fluctuation, transformation, revolution, shake-up, U-turn → **change[2]**

alternate *v* THESAURUS change[1] (1)

alternative[1] Ac *n*

something you can choose to do or use instead of something else

ADJECTIVES

a good/attractive alternative *If you don't want curtains, blinds are a good alternative.*

a possible/acceptable/satisfactory alternative *I'm busy tomorrow but Wednesday is a possible alternative.*

a cheap alternative *Plastic is a cheap alternative to wood.*

a practical/effective alternative *This treatment represents a practical alternative to surgery.*

the only alternative *If this doesn't work, the only alternative is to buy a new battery.*

a real/serious alternative *Do you think that wind power is a real alternative to other sources of energy?*

a viable alternative (=one that will work because it is as good as something else) *They want to make public transport a viable alternative for car owners.*

a clear/obvious alternative *It's not an ideal solution, but there is no obvious alternative.*

a safe alternative *Will there ever be a safe alternative to nuclear power?*

a healthy alternative *Low-fat cookies are a healthy alternative to cake.*

VERBS

have an alternative *We don't have to stay here – we have alternatives.*

suggest/provide/offer an alternative *I'd like to suggest some alternatives.*

seek/look for an alternative *People are seeking alternatives to meat-based dishes.*

consider/look at the alternatives *We have carefully considered all the alternatives.*

find an alternative *The aim of the research is to find alternatives to oil and natural gas.*

PREPOSITIONS

an alternative to sth *We need more alternatives to imprisonment.*

PHRASES

have no/little alternative (but to do sth) *He had no alternative but to resign.*

leave sb with no alternative (but to do sth) *I was left with no alternative but to seek legal advice.*

alternative² Ac *adj*

1 different and able to be used instead of something else

alternative + NOUNS

an alternative way/approach/method *Maybe there is an alternative way of dealing with the problem.*

an alternative idea/suggestion/proposal *She put forward an alternative suggestion which would cost less money.*

an alternative explanation/interpretation *I can't think of any alternative explanation.*

an alternative solution *The engineers quickly came up with an alternative solution.*

an alternative route *There is an alternative route which avoids all the traffic.*

alternative arrangements *Our flight was cancelled so we had to make alternative arrangements.*

2 different from the normal or traditional type of thing

alternative + NOUNS

alternative medicine/treatment/therapies *Various forms of alternative medicine, including acupuncture, may bring pain relief.*

alternative music/theatre/comedy *The festival is aimed at fans of alternative music.*

alternative energy sources *The need for alternative energy sources such as wind and solar power is now greater than ever.*

alternative lifestyles *In the 1960s, many young people experimented with alternative lifestyles.*

amazed *adj* very surprised

ADVERBS

absolutely/totally/utterly amazed *Her parents were absolutely amazed when they saw the change in her.*

always/constantly/continually amazed *I'm always amazed by how much food gets wasted.*

⚠ Don't say 'very amazed'. Say **absolutely amazed**.

VERBS

look/seem amazed *His friends all looked amazed when they saw him.*

continue to be amazed/never cease to be amazed *I never cease to be amazed by the amount of money she spends on clothes.*

PREPOSITIONS

amazed at sth *The doctors were amazed at how quickly he recovered from his illness.*

amazed by sth *She was amazed by the news.*

amazement *n* a feeling of great surprise

PHRASES

look at/stare at/watch sb in amazement *His friends all stared at him in amazement when told them how much he had won.*

shake your head in amazement *"Wow!" said Jack, shaking his head in amazement.*

a look of amazement *I'll never forget the look of amazement on his face when I told him my news.*

a cry/gasp of amazement *There were cries of amazement when she brought in the birthday cake.*

ADJECTIVES

complete/utter/sheer amazement *To his utter amazement, his application was accepted.*

genuine amazement *"Have you read all those books?" she said with genuine amazement.*

VERBS

express (your) amazement *He expressed amazement at the number of people who had come to help.*

PREPOSITIONS

in amazement *"How did you get here?" she asked in amazement.*

with amazement *I listened with amazement to his story.*

to sb's amazement *To my amazement, he burst into tears.*

amazement at sth *Peter was unable to hide his amazement at how Carla was dressed.*

amazing *adj* THESAURUS excellent

ambiguous Ac *adj*

if something is ambiguous, it is confusing, especially because it can be understood in two very different ways

ADVERBS

highly/very ambiguous *The book's title 'Closing Time' is highly ambiguous.*

somewhat/rather/slightly ambiguous *The law is somewhat ambiguous about this issue.*

deliberately ambiguous *The film has a deliberately ambiguous ending.*

NOUNS

an ambiguous word/term/phrase *'Different' is an ambiguous word – it can be used to praise or to criticize.*

ambiguous language *The language in the minister's statement is highly ambiguous.*

an ambiguous sentence/statement/message *His statement was ambiguous and I wasn't sure what he meant.*

an ambiguous concept *'Privacy' is an ambiguous concept.*

VERBS

leave sth ambiguous *The ending of the story is left deliberately ambiguous.*

A

remain ambiguous *The reasons behind his decision remain ambiguous.*

ambition *n*

a strong desire to achieve something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + ambition

sb's main ambition *What's your main ambition in life?*

sb's great ambition *He didn't achieve his greatest ambition – to be Wimbledon Champion.*

a lifelong/long-held ambition (=one that you have had all your life) *It's been her lifelong ambition to work with horses.*

a personal ambition *Crossing the Sahara was a personal ambition of mine.*

a secret ambition *His secret ambition was to become a pilot.*

a burning/driving ambition (=a very strong ambition) *She had a burning ambition to become a racing car driver.*

career ambitions *The course is designed to help you achieve your career ambitions.*

VERBS

sb's ambition is to be/do sth *My ambition was to be a journalist.*

have an ambition *He had an ambition to be a top cello player.*

achieve/fulfil/realize your ambition (=do what you wanted to do) *It took her ten years to achieve her ambition.*

lack ambition/have no ambition *Many of the students lack ambition.*

nurse/harbour/cherish an ambition (=have it for a long time, especially secretly) *He had nursed an ambition to become a writer for many years.*

end sb's ambition *An injury ended his ambitions of becoming a professional footballer.*

PHRASES

sb's lack of ambition *I was frustrated by their apparent lack of ambition.*

be full of ambition *She was full of ambition when she joined the company.*

sb's dreams and ambitions *He told her all about his dreams and ambitions.*

THESAURUS: ambition

goal, target, objective, ambition → **aim**

ambitious *adj*

1 determined to be successful, rich, powerful etc

ADVERBS

very/highly ambitious *Thompson was highly ambitious and later became Director General of the BBC.*

extremely/fiercely/intensely ambitious *Alfred was intensely ambitious and obsessed with the idea of becoming rich.*

ruthlessly ambitious (=so ambitious that you do not care about the effects on other people) *Stalin was ruthlessly ambitious in his pursuit of power.*

PREPOSITIONS

ambitious for sb (=wanting another person to be very successful) *His mother was ambitious for him and gave him constant encouragement with his studies.*

PHRASES

ambitious for power (=wanting to get power) *Kim was ambitious for power and wanted to become president one day.*

2 trying to do something difficult

ADVERBS

very/highly/hugely/extremely ambitious *The programme of reform is highly ambitious.*

extremely/hugely/enormously/extraordinarily ambitious *The project to build the stadium was enormously ambitious and very expensive.*

over-ambitious/overly ambitious *If you set yourself over-ambitious targets, you will end up feeling a failure.*

NOUNS

an ambitious plan/project/scheme/programme *The company has ambitious plans for expansion.*

an ambitious target/goal *It is an ambitious target, but Leblanc believes it is attainable.*

an ambitious attempt *The crash ends an ambitious attempt to break the world record for flying round the world.*

ambulance *n*

a special vehicle that is used to take people who are ill or injured to hospital

VERBS

call an ambulance/phone for an ambulance *She looked very ill and we decided to call an ambulance.*

send for an ambulance *Send for an ambulance immediately.*

an ambulance arrives/comes *He died before the ambulance arrived.*

an ambulance takes sb somewhere *An ambulance took her to Colchester General Hospital.*

ambulance + NOUNS

the ambulance service *The ambulance service denies it took too long for the ambulance to arrive.*

an ambulance crew *The ambulance crew removed him from the wreckage.*

PREPOSITIONS

by ambulance *Mr Brock was taken to hospital by ambulance.*

PHRASES

an ambulance is on its way (=it is coming soon) *Don't worry – the ambulance is on its way.*

ambush *n*

a sudden attack on someone by people who have been hiding and waiting for them

VERBS

set up/lay an ambush (=prepare an ambush) *The kidnappers had set up an ambush on the road.*

lie/wait in ambush *Armed police lay in ambush behind the hedge.*

stage/carry out an ambush *The rebels staged an ambush that killed 14 soldiers.*

be/get caught in an ambush *The police officers were caught in an ambush when they responded to a call.*

walk/run into an ambush *The soldiers had accidentally walked into an ambush.*

draw/lure sb into an ambush (=make someone come into the place where you have prepared an ambush) *Their plan was to lure the men into an ambush and then kill them.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an ambush *Their leader was shot dead in an ambush last week.*

an ambush on sb *He took part in an ambush on a US patrol.*

amendment Ac *n*

a change that is made to a law or document

VERBS

make an amendment *He asked his lawyer to make some amendments to the document.*

introduce an amendment *The party wants to introduce an amendment to the bill.*

table an amendment *BrE* (=suggest an amendment, especially in Parliament) *A group of MPs will table an amendment to remove the ban.*

pass/accept/approve/adopt an amendment *The amendment was eventually passed by 11 votes.*

reject/defeat an amendment *The Senate rejected the amendment.*

vote on an amendment *Parliament will vote on the amendment next week.*

support/oppose an amendment *Several members of the committee supported the amendment.*

ADJECTIVES

a constitutional amendment *A constitutional amendment does not need the Governor's signature.*

a minor/major amendment *A number of minor amendments have been made to the agreement.*

the First/Second etc Amendment (=in the US Constitution) *Freedom of speech is protected by the First Amendment.*

PREPOSITIONS

an amendment to sth *They introduced an amendment to the building regulations.*

amiable *adj* THESAURUS friendly

amount *n* a quantity of something

ADJECTIVES

a large amount *They still have a large amount of work to do.*

a great amount *I have a great amount of respect for his work.*

a huge/enormous/vast/massive/tremendous amount *A huge amount of progress has already been made.*

a considerable/substantial/significant amount *The house must have cost a considerable amount of money.*

a small/tiny amount *Mix a small amount of flour and water in a bowl.*

a certain amount *You need to have a certain amount of self-discipline to work on your own.*

a surprising amount *There is a surprising amount of agreement among scientists about climate change.*

the full amount *The company agreed to pay her back the full amount.*

the maximum/minimum amount *The maximum amount of luggage allowed is 22 kilos.*

the right/correct amount *It is your responsibility to pay the correct amount of tax by the correct date.*

an equal amount *They spend equal amounts of time in California and New York.*

copious amounts *formal* (=large amounts) *The trees absorb copious amounts of moisture from the soil.*

an inordinate amount *formal* (=too much) *She spends an inordinate amount of time doing simple things like pouring hot water into a teapot.*

Amount or quantity?

You often use **amount** about things that you cannot measure or count. For example, you say: *The team had a certain **amount** of luck* (not 'quantity'). *She has a tremendous **amount** of confidence* (not 'quantity').

You use **quantity** about things you can measure or count: *The plant produces large **quantities** of seeds.* You can also use **amount** in the same way: *The plant produces a large **amount** of seeds.*

A

PHRASES

be filled with anger/be full of anger *His voice was full of anger.*

be seething with anger (=be extremely angry) *Seething with anger and frustration, Polly stood up.*

be shaking/trembling with anger *My aunt was shaking with anger as she left the room.*

a feeling of anger *He was overcome by a sudden feeling of anger against the people who had put him there.*

a fit/outburst of anger (=an occasion when someone suddenly expresses anger) *His occasional outbursts of anger shocked those around him.*

a surge/wave of anger (=a sudden feeling of anger) *She felt a surge of anger.*

VERBS + anger

feel anger *He felt no anger, just sorrow.*

express/show your anger (*also* **vent your anger** *formal*): *Demonstrators expressed their anger by burning American flags.*

cause/provoke/arouse/stir up anger (=make people angry) *The referee's decision provoked anger among the fans.*

fuel anger (=make people even more angry) *The announcement fuelled public anger against the government.*

control/contain your anger *I could not control my anger any longer.*

hide your anger *For a second she was unable to hide her anger.*

anger + VERBS

sb's anger goes away/subsides/fades (=it stops) *I counted to ten and waited for my anger to go away.*

sb's anger grows/rises *Her anger and resentment grew as she drove home.*

ADJECTIVES

deep/great/fierce anger *There is deep anger against the occupying forces.*

growing/rising/mounting anger *There is growing anger among drivers over the rise in fuel prices.*

widespread anger (=among many people) *The decision to build the airport has provoked widespread anger.*

real anger *There is real anger about the amount of money that has been wasted.*

public/popular anger *By now public anger in the US was mounting.*

righteous anger (=anger felt when you think something should not be allowed to happen) *The speech was full of righteous anger against the West.*

PREPOSITIONS

anger at sth/sb *Her anger at him was obvious from her voice.*

anger over/about sth *There was widespread anger over the government's decision to increase taxes.*

anger against/towards sb *All his anger against Edward had gone.*

in anger (=when you are angry) *He said it in anger, and regretted it later.*

angle *n*

the shape that is formed when two straight lines or surfaces meet each other

ADJECTIVES

a right angle (=an angle of 90°) *A square has four right angles.*

a 45 degree/60 degree etc angle *The two lines are at a 45 degree angle.*

a steep/sharp angle *The plane flew upwards at a steep angle into the sky.*

a slight angle *The tool should be held at a slight angle to the surface.*

an acute angle (=an angle of less than 90°) *The rays of the evening sun shone down at an acute angle.*

VERBS

measure/calculate the angle *Measure the angle between the two lines.*

change/adjust the angle of sth *You can adjust the angle of the screen.*

PREPOSITIONS

an angle of 45 degrees/90 degrees etc *Raise the other leg slowly to an angle of 45°.*

the angle between sth *The angle between the two lines should be 60 degrees.*

at an angle *The posts are pushed into the ground at an angle.*

angry *adj*

feeling or showing strong emotions because you think someone has behaved badly, or because a situation seems bad or unfair

ADVERBS

very/really/extremely angry *His comments made me really angry.*

increasingly angry/more and more angry *Passengers became increasingly angry as the delays continued.*

visibly angry (=in a way that is easy to see) *He was visibly angry when a reporter asked another question.*

justifiably angry (=having a good reason to be angry) *Mark was justifiably angry at his punishment.*

NOUNS

people are angry *People are still angry at the way they have been treated.*

an angry man/woman *Henry was a very angry man.*

an angry crowd/mob *An angry crowd gathered outside City Hall.*

angry customers/fans/parents/residents etc *Angry customers demanded their money back.*

an angry face/expression/voice *His voice sounded angry on the phone.*

an angry protest/demonstration *There were angry protests outside government buildings.*

an angry response/reaction *His comments brought an angry response from opposition politicians.*

an angry argument/exchange *The meeting ended in an angry argument.*

an angry scene (=a situation in which people become very angry and often shout at each other) *There were angry scenes outside the court as the prisoner arrived.*

an angry outburst (=when someone suddenly says something in an angry way) *He later apologized for his angry outburst.*

angry words *The two men exchanged angry words.*

an angry letter/phone call *He wrote an angry letter complaining about the service he had received.*

VERBS

get/become angry *The children were misbehaving, and I was starting to get angry.*

feel angry *I felt so angry with her for leaving me.*

look/sound angry *Tony suddenly sounded angry.*

make sb angry *Jesse laughed, which made him even angrier.*

PREPOSITIONS

angry with sb *"Please don't be angry with me," she said.*

angry about/over/at sth *He's still angry about the way the company has treated him.*

PHRASES

angry and frustrated/upset *Anne was angry and upset when she heard the news.*

THESAURUS: angry

annoyed
if you are annoyed about something, you feel a little angry:
I was annoyed because no one had told me the class was cancelled. | *She was* ***annoyed with*** *him for being late.*

Annoyed is not usually used before a noun.

irritated
annoyed and impatient, especially because something keeps happening or someone keeps saying or doing something:
I was ***irritated by*** *their stupid questions.* | *I* ***get irritated*** *when I hear people saying that teachers don't work hard.* | *"Please speak more clearly," she said in a very* ***irritated voice****.*

mad *informal*
very angry:
Dad was ***mad at*** *me for damaging his car.*

Mad is not used before a noun in this meaning.

bad-tempered
a bad-tempered person becomes angry or annoyed easily and behaves in an unfriendly way:
The caretaker was a bad-tempered old man. | *She's always bad-tempered when she doesn't get what she wants.*

Bad-tempered can also be used about situations or events in which people often become angry: *It was a* ***bad-tempered*** *game, and three players were sent off.*

grumpy *informal*
a grumpy person becomes annoyed easily. **Grumpy** is more informal than **bad-tempered**, and sounds less serious:
My husband's always grumpy first thing in the morning. | *You sound like a grumpy old woman.*

in a bad/foul mood
feeling a little angry for a period of time, often for no particular reason. **Foul** sounds more informal than **bad**:
I woke up in a bad mood. | *She's been in a foul mood all morning.*

furious
argument | **row** | **debate** | **attack** | **reaction** | **response**
extremely angry:
The couple had a furious argument. | *The minister's comments provoked a furious reaction.* | *She was* ***furious with*** *him when she found out he'd been lying to her.* | *Ella was absolutely* ***furious at*** *this news.*

irate
customer | **boss** | **husband** | **father** | **parents** | **resident** | **voice** | **letter** | **(phone) call**
extremely angry, especially because you think you have been treated badly or unfairly:
Irate customers rang the store to complain. | *He wrote an irate letter to the editor of the newspaper.* | *Passengers were* ***irate at*** *the delay.*

Irate is often used before a noun.

heated
debate | **discussion** | **argument** | **row** | **exchange** | **talks**
a heated argument, debate etc is one in which people have strong opinions and become angry:

A

VERBS

become/get annoying *The sound of the music was starting to become annoying.*

find sth annoying *I found his attitude to women really annoying.*

PHRASES

How annoying! *"He keeps making a funny noise through his nose." "How annoying!"*

it's so annoying when... *"My computer has just crashed." "It's so annoying when that happens."*

THESAURUS: annoying

irritating
noise | habit | mannerism
annoying – used especially about something that keeps happening or something that someone often does:
The bedside light kept making an irritating buzzing noise. | She has some rather irritating little mannerisms – she keeps saying 'like' all the time (=she has some rather annoying little habits). | *I **found** their constant questions **intensely irritating**.*

tiresome
business | task | woman | man
annoying, especially in a way that makes you feel bored or impatient:
Getting all the necessary documents is a tiresome business. | They began the tiresome task of pulling up all the weeds. | One tiresome woman kept asking endless questions.

infuriating/maddening
thing | smile | habit
very annoying:
The maddening thing was that it was too late to change my ticket. | He had an infuriating habit of not always telling the truth. | It was maddening to be treated like a child.

frustrating
experience | time | morning | afternoon | day | business
annoying because it is difficult or impossible for you to do what you want:
*Searching for information on the internet can be an extremely frustrating experience. | I spent a frustrating afternoon trying to fix the car. | Trying to speak to someone at the bank is a frustrating business. | He **found** his inability to speak **deeply frustrating**.*

trying
time | day | morning | afternoon | experience
annoying because you cannot do what you want, or because of being difficult to deal with:
He had just had rather a trying day at the office. | Applying for a visa can be a very trying experience. | Young children can be extremely trying and you need a lot of patience.

annul *v* THESAURUS cancel

answer[1] *n*

1 something you say or write as a reply

ADJECTIVES

a short/long answer *During the interview, he mostly gave short answers to my questions.*

a one-word answer *It's not very helpful to just give one-word answers such as 'yes' or 'no'.*

an honest/straight answer *The honest answer is that I don't know.*

a definite answer *Can you give me a definite answer tomorrow?*

a satisfactory answer *I didn't get a satisfactory answer from the company.*

VERBS

give sb an answer *I'll give you an answer tomorrow.*

get/receive an answer *She wrote to him, but she never got an answer.*

wait for an answer *Kate was looking at me, waiting for an answer.*

think of an answer *She couldn't think of a suitable answer to his question.*

demand an answer *He demanded an answer to his question.*

PREPOSITIONS

the answer to a question *These are important questions, and we want answers to them.*

in answer to your question *In answer to your question, yes, you can go.*

PHRASES

the answer is no/yes *If it's money that you want, the answer is no.*

the short answer is... (=used when giving a simple, honest, or direct answer to a difficult question) *The short answer is that it can't be done.*

2 something that you write or say in reply to a question in a test or competition

ADJECTIVES

the right/wrong answer *Do you know the right answer to this question?*

the correct/incorrect answer *You get 5 points for each correct answer.*

VERBS

know the answer *Put up your hand if you know the answer.*

guess the answer *If you don't know the answer, try guessing it.*

write the answer *Write your answer in the space provided.*

give/put an answer *I think I gave the wrong answer to question 6.*

PREPOSITIONS

the answer to a question *What was the answer to question 4?*

3 the solution to a problem

ADJECTIVES

a simple/easy answer *I'm afraid there are no easy answers in this type of situation.*

the obvious answer *The obvious answer is to raise taxes, but that would be very unpopular.*

the only answer *Military force is not the only answer.*

the perfect answer (=one that is certain to succeed) *It sounded like the perfect answer.*

the long-term answer (=which will solve problems in the future as well as now) *He believes that wind power is the long-term answer to our growing energy crisis.*

a possible answer *In the next chapter we will discuss a number of possible answers to this problem.*

VERBS

have the answer *He thinks he may have the answer to their problems.*

be the answer *Spending more money is not always the answer.*

look/search for an answer *People have been searching for an answer for years.*

find/come up with an answer *Scientists believe they have found an answer to the problem of climate change.*

know the answer *If anyone knows the answer, it's her.*

the answer comes to sb *The answer to her problem suddenly came to her.*

the answer lies somewhere (=you can find it there) *A lot of people seem to think the answer lies in technology.*

PREPOSITIONS

the answer to a problem *Maybe he has the answer to our problem.*

PHRASES

have all the answers *I wish I had all the answers, but I don't.*

answer² *v*

to give an answer to a question

ADVERBS

answer correctly *You have to answer 80% of the questions correctly in order to pass the test.*

answer honestly *"I don't know where he is," she answered honestly.*

answer fully (=completely) *I hope that I have fully answered your question.*

answer directly (=say what you mean without trying to hide anything) *He didn't answer directly when asked if he knew who had stolen the money.*

VERBS

refuse to answer (*also* **decline to answer** *formal*): *The man shook his head and refused to answer any more questions.*

try/attempt to answer *Sandra tried to answer her daughter's question as honestly as she could.*

anticipation *n*

excited or nervous feelings about something that is going to happen

ADJECTIVES

great anticipation *There was a feeling of great anticipation before the game.*

eager/keen anticipation (=very enthusiastic anticipation) *The crowd waited with eager anticipation for their heroes to arrive on stage.*

growing anticipation *There was growing anticipation among students as the day for exam results approached.*

PREPOSITIONS

in/with anticipation *I was licking my lips in anticipation.*

PHRASES

await/look forward to sth with anticipation (=feel excited because you know something is going to happen soon) *The birth of the baby was awaited with great anticipation.*

antiquated *adj* THESAURUS old-fashioned

antique *adj* THESAURUS old (1)

anxiety *n*

the feeling of being very worried because you think something bad might happen

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable anxiety *There is considerable anxiety about job losses.*

acute/deep anxiety (=which affects someone very strongly) *His enthusiasm was followed by deep anxiety about what lay ahead of him.*

constant anxiety *We lived in a state of constant anxiety about money.*

increasing/growing/mounting anxiety *There is growing anxiety about the rise in violent crime.*

VERBS

cause/create anxiety (*also* **arouse anxiety** *formal*): *The lack of rain is causing anxiety among farmers.*

lead to anxiety/give rise to anxiety (=cause it to happen later) *Stress at work can lead to anxiety and even depression.*

feel/suffer from anxiety *Children often feel anxiety when they are leaving home for the first time.*

reduce/relieve anxiety *The drug helps to reduce anxiety and make you feel more relaxed.*

anxiety grows *As the storm got worse, anxiety grew among the passengers on the ship.*

A

dismiss/throw out/turn down an appeal (=not give permission for a decision to be changed) *His appeal was dismissed and he was sent to prison.*

an appeal fails/succeeds *If the appeal fails, he will serve his full sentence.*

appeal + NOUNS

the appeal process *The appeal process could take as long as three years.*

PREPOSITIONS

an appeal to a court *They made an appeal to the European Court of Human Rights.*

an appeal against a decision/fine/sentence *He made an appeal against the judge's decision.*

on appeal (=after making an appeal) *The sentence was reduced to three years on appeal.*

PHRASES

the right of appeal *He used his right of appeal against the demand for money from the tax department.*

grounds for an appeal (=reasons for making an appeal) *You need to have reasonable grounds for your appeal.*

pending appeal (=until an appeal can take place) *Both men were under house arrest, pending appeal of their convictions.*

3 a quality that makes people like something or someone

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable/a lot of appeal *This film will have considerable appeal for science fiction fans.*

(a) wide appeal (=it attracts many types of people) *The programme has a very wide appeal.*

(a) universal appeal (=everyone likes something) *The Harry Potter books have a universal appeal.*

(an) immediate/instant appeal *Their music had an instant appeal for me when I was young.*

(an) enduring appeal (=continuing for a long time) *The book has had an enduring appeal and it is just as popular now as it was when it was first written.*

VERBS

lose its appeal *The job had lost its appeal and she was starting to get bored.*

have an appeal (*also* **hold an appeal** *formal*): *Being rich and famous held no appeal for him – he just wanted to write songs.*

increase/add to the appeal of sth *The new design adds to the car's appeal.*

give sth appeal *It is the original design that gives the building its appeal.*

understand the appeal of sth *I must admit I have never understood the appeal of golf.*

the appeal lies in sth *The country's appeal lies in its lakes and rivers.*

PREPOSITIONS

the appeal of sth *What is the particular appeal of this island?*

appeal for sb *The programme has great appeal for young audiences.*

appear *v*

1 to start to be seen

NOUNS

a man/woman/boy/girl etc appears *A young man appeared at the door and asked to speak to my sister.*

sb's face/hand appears *The dog's sleepy face appeared in the back window.*

a car/ship/plane appears *A police car suddenly appeared in his rearview mirror.*

the sun/moon/clouds appear *A pale sun had appeared in the sky.*

flowers/leaves/shoots appear (=they start to grow) *The first flowers appear in the spring.*

a crack/hole appears *Cracks are starting to appear in the ceiling.*

a report/study/article/story/picture etc appears (=it is published or shown) *The study first appeared in the 'New England Journal of Medicine'.*

a box/menu appears (=on your computer screen) *A box appears, which contains the following message: 'An error has occurred in your application'.*

ADVERBS

first/originally appear *This article first appeared in the 'New Yorker' magazine.*

suddenly appear *A big hole suddenly appeared in the street.*

magically appear *These genes did not just magically appear – they developed over millions of years.*

PHRASES

appear out of nowhere (=suddenly in a surprising way) *A group of masked men appeared out of nowhere and told him to get in the car.*

THESAURUS: appear

pop up
face | **head** | **name** | **menu** | **sign** | **restaurant**
to appear suddenly. **Pop up** sounds rather informal:
A woman's face popped up from the other side of the fence. | *His name keeps popping up in music reviews.* | *When you press this button, a menu pops up.* | *Michael suddenly popped up and asked us what we were doing.*

come into view
house | **building** | **castle** | **ship** | **mountain** | **coast**
if something comes into view, you start to

see it as you get closer to it, or as it gets closer to you:
At that moment the castle came into view. | The coast of France came into view.

come out
sun | moon | stars
to appear in the sky:
The sun came out from behind a cloud. | I sit by my window watching the stars come out.

loom/loom up
face | figure | shape | building | mountain
to suddenly appear in a frightening way:
A face loomed up out of the darkness. | They both looked up as the tall figure of Hassan loomed over them. | The dark shape of the castle loomed out of the mist. | A huge grey building loomed over the avenue like an enormous battleship. | The mountain looms over this small mining town.

resurface
to appear again after being lost or missing – used especially about people or problems:
The girl's father has resurfaced after six years of no contact. | The issue of inaccurate news reports resurfaced last week.

If you start to be able to see something, you can say it becomes **visible**: *The shape of the baby's head gradually became **visible** on the screen.*

ANTONYMS **appear → disappear**

2 to seem

Grammar
This meaning of **appear** is usually used with an adjective, or with the verb **to be**: *She **appeared** calm at first. | The paintings **appear to be** by the same person.*

PHRASES

it appears (that)... *It appears that all the files have been deleted.*

what appears to be *Police have found what appear to be human remains.*

3 to be seen in public, in a court case, or in a movie, play etc

PHRASES

appear in public *The emperor rarely appears in public.*

appear in court/appear before a judge *Griffiths is due to appear in court next month, charged with murder.*

appear in a film/movie/play/show etc *She first appeared in the movie 'Taxi Driver'.*

appear on television/on screen *The president will appear on national television to talk about the decision.*

appearance *n*

the way someone or something looks to other people

ADJECTIVES

general/overall appearance *They want to improve the town's overall appearance.*

physical appearance *We are often attracted to somebody first by their physical appearance.*

personal appearance *Some men don't care very much about their personal appearance.*

odd/strange/bizarre appearance *Children sometimes stared at him because of his odd appearance.*

distinctive/striking appearance (=unusual and interesting) *The unusual leaves give the plant a distinctive appearance.*

attractive/handsome/pleasing appearance *The hotel didn't have a very attractive appearance.*

the outward appearance (=how a person or situation seems to be, rather than how they really are) *Beneath the outward appearance of confidence, she is very shy.*

youthful appearance (=someone looks young, especially when they are older) *She was no longer a young woman, despite her youthful appearance.*

VERBS

have a ... appearance *The restaurant has a pleasant appearance.*

improve the appearance (*also* **enhance the appearance** *formal*): *Fresh air improves the appearance of the skin.*

spoil the appearance *The metal posts spoiled the appearance of the garden.*

change/alter the appearance *The new factory will change the appearance of the area enormously.*

give sb/sth a ... appearance *His uniform gave him an official appearance.*

give the appearance of doing sth *He likes to give the appearance of being hard-working.*

PREPOSITIONS

the appearance of sb/sth *They've changed the appearance of the whole building.*

PHRASES

take pride in your appearance (=make an effort to look good) *She's the kind of woman who takes pride in her appearance.*

judge by appearances (=make judgements based on the way someone or something looks) *You shouldn't judge by appearances.*

to all appearances (=used when saying how someone or something looks, especially when this is different from the real situation) *He was, to all appearances, a respectable businessman.*

appearances can be deceptive (=the way something seems to be may not be how it really is) *The pupils looked well-behaved – but appearances can be deceptive.*

A

appetite *n* a desire for food

ADJECTIVES

a good/healthy appetite *Growing children should have a healthy appetite.*

a big/huge/enormous/hearty appetite *Most small boys have enormous appetites.*

a voracious/ravenous appetite (=you want a very large amount of food) *The dog had a voracious appetite and was asking for more food.*

a poor appetite (=a desire for less food than you need) *A poor appetite may be a sign of illness.*

a small appetite *If your child has a small appetite, give him or her smaller meals more frequently.*

VERBS

have an appetite *There's lots of food – I hope you have a good appetite.*

lose your appetite *She was so miserable that she completely lost her appetite.*

regain your appetite *He is feeling better and has regained his appetite.*

give sb an appetite (*also* **stimulate your appetite** *formal*): *The exercise and fresh air had given us an appetite.*

work up an appetite (=become hungry by being active) *We went for a long walk to work up an appetite.*

satisfy sb's appetite (=stop someone feeling hungry) *At each mealtime, eat enough to satisfy your appetite.*

spoil/ruin sb's appetite (=make someone not feel like eating a meal) *Don't give the children any more sweets – it will spoil their appetite.*

suppress/take away sb's appetite (=make someone not feel hungry) *The drug helps suppress your appetite.*

PHRASES

loss/lack of appetite *Symptoms include fever and loss of appetite.*

appetizing *adj* THESAURUS **delicious**

applause *n*

the sound of many people hitting their hands together to show that they have enjoyed something

ADJECTIVES

loud applause *There was loud applause as the young man received his award.*

deafening/thunderous/tumultuous applause (=very loud applause) *The band came on stage to thunderous applause.*

wild/rapturous applause (=very excited applause) *The audience burst into wild applause.*

polite applause *There was polite applause from some members of the audience.*

VERBS

break/burst/erupt into applause (=suddenly begin to applaud) *The excited crowd broke into loud applause.*

get/receive/win applause *He got more applause than any other player.*

draw applause (=receive applause – more formal) *Clapton's playing drew applause from the audience.*

applause dies down/away (=people stop clapping) *The applause died down as the curtains began to close.*

PREPOSITIONS

applause for sb *Can we please have a round of applause for our speaker, Mr John Richmond?*

PHRASES

a round of applause (=a short period of applause) *She got a round of applause when she finished.*

a burst of applause (=a short sudden period of applause) *A burst of applause greeted the band as they walked on stage.*

a roar of applause *The models came into the room to a roar of applause.*

a ripple of applause (=applause that comes from only some of the people in the audience) *A ripple of applause followed his remark.*

appliance *n* THESAURUS **machine**

applicable *adj* THESAURUS **relevant**

application *n*

a formal, usually written, request for something such as a job, place at university, or permission to do something

NOUNS + application

a job application *He's made 23 job applications and had 5 interviews.*

a visa application *It can take several weeks for your visa application to be processed.*

a planning application (=asking for permission to build something) *They put in a planning application for a new housing development.*

a loan/grant/mortgage application *His loan application was rejected by the bank.*

ADJECTIVES

a formal application *Turkey made a formal application to join the European Union.*

VERBS

make an application *Students usually make their applications for university in September.*

fill out/fill in an application *I filled out an application for a secretarial job.*

put in/send in/submit an application *The company has submitted a planning application.*

consider an application (=think about it before deciding) *The licensing committee met to consider his application.*

grant/approve an application (=say yes) *Your mortgage application has been approved.*

refuse/reject/turn down an application *He*

received a letter saying that his application had been rejected.

process an application *When I contacted the embassy, they said they were still processing my visa application.*

withdraw your application *The company withdrew its application to build the bridge.*

application + NOUNS

an application form *Simply fill in the application form and return it to your bank.*

PREPOSITIONS

an application for sth *We have put in an application for a grant to repair the roof.*

an application from sb *The university welcomes applications from overseas students.*

PHRASES

a letter of application *The purpose of your letter of application is to get an interview.*

apply *v*

1 to formally ask for something, for example a job

> **Grammar**
> You usually **apply for** something or **apply to** do something.

NOUNS

apply for a job/post *She enjoys working with children so she's applied for a job as a teacher.*

apply for a course *More students are applying for science courses than arts courses.*

apply for permission *We've applied to the council for permission to knock down a wall.*

apply for a licence/passport/visa *Have you applied for a visa for your trip to India?*

apply for a loan/grant *He doesn't have enough money for a new car, but he could apply for a loan.*

ADVERBS

apply directly *If the flight is cancelled, you have to apply directly to the airline to get your money back.*

apply online *To open a bank account, visit your local branch or apply online.*

2 to use something

> **THESAURUS: apply**
> utilize, employ, apply, draw on sth, exploit, resort to sth, exercise, exert → **use**[1]

appointment *n*

an arrangement to see someone, for a professional or medical reason

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + appointment

a hospital appointment *BrE: My hospital appointment lasted half an hour.*

a doctor's appointment *What time is your doctor's appointment?*

a dentist's/dental appointment *She has a dental appointment, so she won't be in until later.*

a medical appointment *Children sometimes miss school because of medical appointments.*

a business appointment *Dennis had an early morning business appointment with a client.*

a morning/afternoon appointment *I asked for a morning appointment.*

VERBS

have an appointment *She has an appointment with the dentist at 5 o'clock.*

make/arrange an appointment *Can you phone the hairdresser and make an appointment?*

book an appointment *BrE*, **schedule an appointment** *AmE* (=make an appointment) *I've scheduled your appointment for 9.30.*

get an appointment (=succeed in arranging one) *It's difficult to get an appointment on Monday morning.*

cancel an appointment *He had to cancel all his afternoon appointments.*

miss an appointment (=not go to an appointment you have arranged) *The train was late so I missed my appointment.*

keep an appointment (=go to an appointment that you have arranged) *Please let us know if you cannot keep your appointment.*

PREPOSITIONS

an appointment with sb *I have an appointment with my lawyer this afternoon.*

an appointment at the doctor's/the hospital etc *Have you booked another appointment at the clinic?*

by appointment (=if you have made an appointment) *The collection can be viewed by appointment only.*

appreciate *v*

1 to realize something or understand that it is important or useful

NOUNS

appreciate the importance/significance/value of sth *To avoid disease in this area, you have to appreciate the importance of clean drinking water.*

appreciate the fact *Younger students don't always appreciate the fact that teachers are trying to help them.*

appreciate the difference *A good manager appreciates the difference between helpful and hurtful criticism.*

ADVERBS

fully appreciate sth *I didn't fully appreciate the dangers of traveling on my own.*

2 if you appreciate something, you are grateful for it

NOUNS

appreciate sb's support/help/efforts *It would be difficult to do the job on my own, so I really appreciate your help.*

appreciate sb's concern *I appreciate your concern but you needn't worry – I'm perfectly safe.*

ADVERBS

greatly/deeply appreciate *We greatly appreciate all the work you've done.*

really appreciate *She really appreciates all the time you've spent helping her.*

genuinely/truly appreciate *I genuinely appreciate the opportunity they've given me to start a new career.*

You use the phrase **I would appreciate it if** when telling someone firmly (not) to do something: *I'm trying to study, so **I'd appreciate it if** you'd make less noise!*

appreciation *n*

1 grateful feelings

ADJECTIVES

deep appreciation *I'd like to express my deep appreciation for all your support.*

genuine appreciation *She thanked him warmly, with genuine appreciation in her voice.*

VERBS

show/express your appreciation *The audience showed their appreciation by cheering loudly.*

2 the act of understanding something and realising that it is important

ADJECTIVES

a great/deep appreciation *She developed a deep appreciation of classical music at an early age.*

a good/full appreciation *To be a good diver you need a full appreciation of the dangers of the sea.*

a growing appreciation *In the West, there is a growing appreciation of the economic importance of China.*

VERBS

have an appreciation of sth *The prince doesn't have an appreciation of the problems that poor people face.*

develop/gain an appreciation of sth *I only developed an appreciation of the difficulties of the job after a few months.*

show/demonstrate an appreciation of sth *The article shows an appreciation of the complex political situation in the country.*

approach[1] Ac *n*

a method of doing something or dealing with a problem

ADJECTIVES

a different/alternative approach *Asking a direct question did not work, so I tried a different approach.*

a new/fresh approach *This is a new approach to teaching languages.*

a traditional approach *Their textbooks follow a very traditional approach.*

a similar approach *They both have a similar approach to management.*

the general/overall approach *Both research projects follow the same general approach.*

a flexible approach (=able to change according to circumstances) *Nowadays, our approach to learning is more flexible.*

a systematic/scientific approach (=following a careful method) *It's best to follow a systematic approach to problem-solving.*

a pragmatic/practical approach (=concerned with practical results, rather than theories or principles) *My approach to my job is very pragmatic.*

a cautious approach (=very careful) *When working with dangerous chemicals, a cautious approach is best.*

VERBS

take/follow/use an approach (*also* **adopt an approach** *formal*): *This book takes an unusual approach to art criticism.*

try an approach *Let's try a new approach.*

prefer/favour an approach *There are signs that the government prefers a radical approach.*

PREPOSITIONS

approach to sth *What is your approach to dealing with difficult behaviour in the classroom?*

approach[2] Ac *v*

1 to start to talk about, think about, or deal with something

NOUNS

approach a subject/issue *The film approached the subject in an interesting way.*

approach a problem *There are many different ways to approach the problem.*

approach a task *Each candidate approached the task in a slightly different way.*

ADVERBS

approach sth cautiously/carefully *He approached the subject of her divorce very carefully.*

PHRASES

approach sth with care/caution *This is a difficult subject and it needs to be approached with caution.*

approach sth in a different way/from a different viewpoint *Maybe we should try and approach the problem in a different way.*

2 to move towards or nearer to someone or something

ADVERBS

slowly approach sb/sth *A truck was slowly approaching them along the highway.*

approach sth cautiously/with caution *She approached cautiously and patted the horse's nose.*

approach sth closely *The animals should not be approached too closely.*

approval *n*

1 the fact of liking someone or something, and believing that they are good

ADJECTIVES

public approval *The policy won a lot of public approval.*

universal approval (=from everyone) *His decision has been met with almost universal approval.*

general approval (=from most people) *McGill's views did not gain general approval in the company.*

VERBS

meet with sb's approval (=be approved of by someone) *Her boyfriend did not meet with her mother's approval.*

win/gain approval *His condemnation of the war won widespread approval.*

seek sb's approval *He constantly sought his father's approval.*

look to sb for approval *They all admired Gordon and looked to him for approval.*

PREPOSITIONS

in/with approval *They clapped their hands in approval.*

approval from sb *Teenagers are desperate for approval from people their own age.*

PHRASES

a look/smile/nod of approval *"You've thought of everything," she said with a look of approval.*

a roar/murmur/chorus of approval (=noises showing approval from a group) *There were murmurs of approval from the crowd.*

2 an occasion when a plan, decision, or person is officially accepted

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + approval

official/formal approval *Finance ministers gave their formal approval in July.*

final approval *The EU has still not granted final approval for the scheme.*

government approval *It can take years for a new drug to receive government approval.*

parental approval (=from someone's parents) *Students must first obtain parental approval.*

VERBS

give (your) approval to sth/give sth your approval *The president has already given his approval to the plan.*

get/win approval (*also* **receive/obtain approval** *formal*): *NASA finally got approval for the mission.*

approval is granted (for sth) (=it is approved) *Approval was granted for the construction work to go ahead.*

require/need approval *A multi-million pound project will require approval by the board of directors.*

seek approval *You will need to make an appointment with the bank to seek approval for the loan.*

submit sth for approval *The final design will be submitted for approval next month.*

PREPOSITIONS

with/without sb's approval *A company cannot be sold without the approval of the shareholders.*

approval by sb *The bill will be submitted for approval by Congress.*

PHRASES

be subject to approval (=need someone's approval before it can happen) *The merger is subject to approval by shareholders.*

sb's seal/stamp of approval (=someone's official approval) *You must not make decisions without your manager's seal of approval.*

approve *v*

1 to think that someone or something is good

Grammar
In this meaning, you usually say that you **approve of** someone or something.

ADVERBS

very much approve *His parents very much approved of his new girlfriend.*

thoroughly/wholeheartedly/heartily approve (=approve very strongly) *I thoroughly approve of the decision to give the money to charity.*

PHRASES

don't altogether approve (=not completely) *I don't altogether approve of zoos – I think animals are happier living in the wild.*

sb would never approve *My mother would never approve of me staying out so late.*

ANTONYMS **approve → disapprove**

2 to officially accept a plan, proposal etc

NOUNS

approve a bill/amendment/resolution (=vote to accept something) *Congress is expected to approve the bill.*

approve a plan/scheme/proposal *If the board approves the plan, construction work will start next month.*

approve a deal/sale/merger *A majority of the shareholders must approve the deal.*

ADVERBS

approve sth unanimously (=everyone in a

group approves something) *The conference unanimously approved a motion condemning the government's actions.*

overwhelmingly approve sth (=almost all of a group approve something) *Parents overwhelmingly approved the proposal to bring back school uniform.*

PREPOSITIONS

approve sth by 100 votes/a large majority etc *The committee approved the plan by 12 votes to 5.*

THESAURUS: approve

pass
law | bill | amendment | resolution
to approve a law or proposal, especially by voting:
The law was passed by a huge majority in Parliament. | Congress passed a bill which made the drug illegal.

ratify
treaty | agreement | deal
to make a written agreement official by signing it or voting about it:
The treaty was ratified by the Senate in 1988. | Australia plans to ratify the deal.

archive *n*

a place where a large number of historical records are stored, or the records that are stored

Grammar
Often plural.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + archive

the national archive *The film has been stored in the National Archives in Washington, DC since 1978.*

a digital/electronic archive *There is an electronic archive of all the previous editions of the newspaper.*

an online archive *The online archive can be accessed by internet users all over the world.*

a film/video/music archive *I spent an afternoon looking through the German National Film Archives.*

a literary archive *The letters formed part of a literary archive of the writer's work.*

a large/huge archive *The museum has a huge archive of the artist's paintings and drawings.*

VERBS

be held/stored/kept in an archive *The documents are held in the national archives.*

search/look through an archive *She spent hours searching the archives for information about her family history.*

create/set up an archive *The National Film Archive was set up in 1952.*

an archive contains sth (*also* **an archive houses sth** *formal*): *The archive contains over 50,000 photographs.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an archive *The records are kept in the national archive in Vienna.*

area Ac *n*

1 a particular part of a country, town etc

ADJECTIVES

a large/vast/huge area *Large areas of rainforest have been destroyed.*

the local area *He quickly made friends in the local area.*

the surrounding area *The tourist office will have a map of the surrounding area.*

a rural area (=in the countryside) *Schools in rural areas are often very small.*

an urban area (=in a town or city) *Ninety percent of the English population live in urban areas.*

a remote/isolated area (=a long way from towns and cities) *The animal has been discovered in a remote area of China.*

a wooded/mountainous area *The plane crashed into trees in a heavily wooded area.*

a coastal area *The bird is found mainly in coastal areas.*

a low-lying area *Low-lying areas are likely to be flooded.*

a residential area (=a part of a town where people live) *They had a large house in a pleasant residential area.*

an industrial area *People living in industrial areas are exposed to these types of chemicals.*

a built-up area *BrE* (=with a lot of buildings close together) *New development will not be allowed outside the existing built-up area.*

a deprived area (=where many poor people live) *He grew up in one of the toughest and most deprived areas of Glasgow.*

an inner-city area (=the central part of a city, where many poor people live) *When will something be done to improve our inner-city areas?*

a geographical area (=one that is shown on a map) *The survey took place in three geographical areas.*

a no-smoking/no-parking etc area (=where people are not allowed to smoke, park etc) *The airport terminal is a no-smoking area.*

VERBS

cover an area *The forest covers a big area of the country.*

live in an area *We live in a nice area of the city.*

move into/out of an area *She had just moved into the area and knew very few people.*

THESAURUS: area

region
a large area of a country or the world:
*The **entire region** was covered in snow. | The earthquake shook China's **northern region**. | The soldiers are fighting in a **mountainous region** of eastern Afghanistan. | They travelled through the **desert regions** of Ethiopia. | Confucius was walking through a **remote region** of China* (=far from other places).

zone
a special type of area, especially one where something happens, or where there are special rules:
*The country is now a **war zone**. | California is in an **earthquake zone**. | I didn't realise that it was a **no-parking zone**. | We crossed two different **time zones*** (=areas where there is a particular time compared to the rest of the world).

district
one of the areas a city or town is officially divided into, or an area of a city where a particular group lives or an activity happens:
*They live in the Chelsea district of Manhattan. | The **financial district** of London is known as 'the City'.*

neighbourhood *BrE*, **neighborhood** *AmE*
an area of a town where people live:
*Payne was born in a **poor neighborhood** of Newark. | I have a decent job, live in a **nice neighborhood**, and have a nice home. | This is a friendly neighbourhood and people often stop to talk to each other in the street. | There are lots of trees **in our neighborhood**.*

suburb
an area outside the centre of a city, where people live:
*We moved to a **quiet suburb** of Boston. | The school is in a **leafy suburb** of Paris* (=one with a lot of trees).

2 a particular subject or type of activity

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + area

a subject area *The course covers four main subject areas.*
an important/key area *Customer service is a key area for improvement.*
the main area *His main area of interest is how young children learn foreign languages.*
a problem area *First they must identify the problem areas in the industry.*
a sensitive/difficult area *Serious illness within a family is a sensitive area.*
a broad area *A broad area of agreement has emerged.*

PHRASES

an area of activity/work/business *There are many laws relating to this area of activity.*
an area of research/study *Genetics is a flourishing area of research.*
an area of life *Communication is important in most areas of life.*
an area of interest *The people taking part in the conference have different areas of interest.*
an area of responsibility *The matter does not fall within my area of responsibility.*
an area of concern (=something someone is worried about) *Crowd violence towards players is another area of concern.*

argue *v*

1 to disagree with someone in words, often in an angry way

ADVERBS

be always/constantly arguing (=argue a lot) *She split up with her boyfriend because they were always arguing.*

PREPOSITIONS

argue about/over sth *The children were arguing about which TV programme to watch.*
argue with sb *Gallacher continued to argue with the referee throughout the game.*

2 to say that you think something is true or that people should do something

ADVERBS

rightly/correctly argue *She rightly argues that it is too soon to judge the success of the project.*
convincingly/persuasively argue (=in a way that makes people believe that what you are saying is right) *He convincingly argued that it would have been impossible for his client to commit the crime.*

NOUNS

argue your case/point/position (=explain the reasons why you think that something is true) *You will have the chance to argue your case in front of the committee.*

argument *n*

1 a situation in which two or more people disagree, often angrily

ADJECTIVES

a big/huge/massive/terrible argument *There was a big argument about whether we should move to a new house.*
a long argument *After a long argument, the guard agreed to let us into the building.*
a heated argument (=involving very strong feelings) *Someone was having a heated argument with a police officer.*
a bitter argument *There are bitter arguments about whether he was a hero or a war criminal.*
a violent argument *The singer was hurt in a violent argument with her husband.*

A

VERBS

have an argument *I could hear my parents having an argument downstairs.*

get into an argument (*also* **become involved in an argument** *formal*): *She didn't want to get into another argument about money.*

start an argument *He was deliberately trying to start an argument.*

cause an argument *Money often causes arguments.*

stop/end an argument *He tried to stop an argument between his brother and a police officer.*

settle an argument (=stop an argument, especially by showing who is right) *We settled the argument by looking the answer up on the internet.*

avoid an argument *I was anxious to avoid an argument.*

win/lose an argument *The party hopes to win the argument about how to reform the health system.*

an argument breaks out (=it starts) *The men were drunk and an argument soon broke out.*

an argument rages (=people argue with a lot of feeling) *An argument is raging about which is the better system.*

PREPOSITIONS

an argument with sb *She had an argument with her best friend.*

an argument between sb and sb *My mother tried to stop the arguments between my brother and me.*

an argument about/over sth *He left after an argument about playing loud music.*

2 a set of reasons that show that something is true or untrue, right or wrong etc

ADJECTIVES

a good/strong/powerful argument *There is a good argument for leaving things as they are.*

a convincing/persuasive/compelling argument (=one that makes you sure that something is right) *He will have to come up with some very convincing arguments.*

a valid argument (=based on good reasons) *I believe this argument is a valid one.*

a reasonable/plausible argument *Their arguments seemed perfectly reasonable to me.*

a weak/flawed/spurious argument (=one that does not work) *I was surprised he offered such a weak argument.*

an unconvincing argument (=one that does not make you believe that something is right) *I found his arguments unconvincing.*

VERBS

put forward/present/offer an argument *I have considered the arguments put forward by both sides.*

make an argument *A similar argument could be made in the case of elderly people.*

come up with an argument (=think of an argument) *Aristotle came up with many arguments for slavery being justified.*

develop an argument *He developed this argument further in later papers.*

support/strengthen/bolster an argument *There is not the slightest scientific evidence to support such arguments.*

undermine/weaken an argument (=make it appear weaker) *This evidence undermines the argument that companies need to offer high pay to attract good staff.*

refute/rebut/counter an argument (=show that it is wrong) *It is hard to refute these arguments.*

reject/dismiss an argument (=say that you are not convinced by it) *The court rejected these arguments.*

accept/agree with an argument *Not everyone accepts these arguments.*

PREPOSITIONS

an argument for/in favour of sth *There is a strong argument for reforming the law.*

an argument against sth *He put forward a powerful argument against the keeping of animals in zoos.*

arid *adj* THESAURUS **dry (1)**

arise *v* THESAURUS **happen**

arm *n*

one of the two long parts of your body between your shoulders and your hands

ADJECTIVES

sb's left/right arm *He had a tattoo on his left arm.*

a broken arm (=with a broken bone) *He can't play, as he has a broken arm.*

bare arms (=not covered by clothes) *She wore a dress which left her arms bare.*

strong arms *His arms were strong and muscular.*

VERBS

wave your arms (=move them from side to side to attract attention) *The man was waving his arms and shouting.*

raise your arm (=lift it up) *Raise one arm above your head.*

break your arm (=break a bone in it) *She broke her arm in a riding accident.*

fold/cross your arms (=bend both arms in front of your body) *He folded his arms across his chest and waited.*

stretch/hold out your arms *She held out her arms and the child ran towards her.*

put/wrap your arms around sb *I put my arms around Bobby and gave him a hug.*

take sb by the arm (=lead someone somewhere holding their arm) *"It's this way," he said, taking me by the arm.*

take/hold sb in your arms (=gently put your arms around someone) *She held a little baby in her arms.*

grab sb's arm (=take hold of it with a sudden movement) *He grabbed my arm and told me to wait.*

PREPOSITIONS

under your arm *Pat was carrying a box under his arm.*

in your arms (=held or carried using your arms) *He had a pile of books in his arms.*

PHRASES

arm in arm (=with your arm linked to someone else's arm) *There were several young couples, walking arm in arm.*

with outstretched arms *He came forward with outstretched arms to welcome her.*

army *n*

the part of a country's military force that is trained to fight on land in a war

VERBS + army

join/go into/enter the army *At 18, I decided to join the army.*

serve in the army (=be a soldier in an army) *He had served in the Indian army.*

leave the army *Why did you leave the army?*

lead/command an army *The general led an army of 18,000 men.*

be drafted into/conscripted into the army (=be made to join the army) *All the young men were drafted into the army.*

be discharged from the army (=be officially allowed to leave your job in the army) *He was discharged from the army because he became mentally ill.*

army + VERBS

an army attacks *The king's army attacked the castle.*

an army fights *When armies fight, it is mostly young men who get killed.*

an army advances *The army advanced slowly towards the village.*

an army withdraws/retreats (=it moves back) *The British army was forced to withdraw from France.*

an army invades sth *The Soviet army invaded Afghanistan in 1979.*

an army marches *The army marched through the town.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + army

a powerful army *China has one of the most powerful armies in the world.*

a small army *The prince had a small army of a few hundred men.*

a private army *The prince has his own private army.*

a standing army (=permanent and existing whether there is a war or not) *The country has a standing army of over 100,000 men.*

the victorious army (=who have won) *Two days later, the victorious German army entered Paris.*

the defeated army *The defeated army were forced to leave the city.*

a foreign/enemy army *Foreign armies have been trying to take control of the country for hundreds of years.*

an occupying/invading army (=an army that enters a place in order to control it) *The invading army attacked the town.*

army + NOUNS

an army officer *Army officers must be good leaders.*

an army base/camp *There is an army base about 5 miles outside the town.*

an army helicopter/truck etc *Army helicopters can take supplies to places that are difficult to reach by road.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the army *Her father was in the army.*

PHRASES

be in command of an army *Wellington was placed in command of the army.*

aroma *n* THESAURUS smell[1]

arrange *v*

1 to organize or make plans for something to happen

ADVERBS

hastily arrange to do sth (=quickly) *They hastily arranged a press conference to explain the situation.*

PREPOSITIONS

arrange for sth to happen/for sb to do sth *She arranged for him to get some work experience in her office.*

PHRASES

as arranged (=in the way that was arranged) *Matthew arrived at 2 o'clock as arranged.*

2 to put things in a particular order or position

ADVERBS

arrange sth carefully *She picked some flowers and arranged them carefully in a vase.*

arrange sth alphabetically *He arranges all his CDs alphabetically according to their titles.*

be neatly arranged *Several pairs of shoes were neatly arranged at the bottom of the wardrobe.*

be beautifully/tastefully arranged *Plates of sandwiches and cakes were beautifully arranged on the tables.*

PHRASES

arrange sth/sb in order of sth *He arranged the children in order of size for the photograph.*

A

arrangement *n*

plans and preparations so that something can happen, or a way of doing something that has been agreed

Grammar
Usually plural in this meaning.

VERBS

make the arrangements *She is busy making the arrangements for her trip.*

change/alter the arrangements *Two people couldn't come on Friday, so we had to change the arrangements.*

cancel the arrangements *The arrangements had to be cancelled after the speaker developed flu.*

discuss the arrangements *We need to discuss the wedding arrangements.*

finalize the arrangements (=decide what you are going to do) *I'm meeting him tomorrow to finalize the arrangements.*

confirm the arrangements (=decide what they will be) *We can confirm the arrangements for the trip later.*

upset the arrangements (=spoil them) *I don't want to upset your arrangements.*

ADJECTIVES

a good/sensible/satisfactory arrangement *Leaving the children with a babysitter seemed like a sensible arrangement.*

a temporary/permanent arrangement *Fran is living with us at the moment, but this is a temporary arrangement.*

a flexible arrangement *I think it is better to keep the arrangement flexible, in case something happens.*

alternative arrangements *If the flight is delayed, you'll have to make alternative arrangements.*

special arrangements *Please inform us if any guests have disabilities or need any special arrangements.*

the necessary arrangements *You should have plenty of time to make the necessary arrangements.*

financial arrangements *As treasurer, you're responsible for all the financial arrangements.*

NOUNS + arrangement

travel arrangements *I'll make my own travel arrangements.*

seating/sleeping arrangements (=where people will sit/sleep) *What are the seating arrangements for dinner?*

wedding/funeral/holiday arrangements *A death certificate was issued so that funeral arrangements could be made.*

PREPOSITIONS

arrangements for sth *They met to discuss arrangements for the trip.*

according to/under an arrangement *Under the arrangement, each shareholder will receive an extra payment.*

PHRASES

come to an arrangement (=agree a way of dealing with a problem) *I'm sure we can come to an arrangement if you can't pay all the money back immediately.*

arrest *n*

if someone is under arrest, the police take them to a police station, because they may have done something illegal

VERBS

make an arrest *The police made several arrests.*

resist arrest *He was charged with resisting arrest and assaulting a police officer.*

avoid arrest *The Mafia boss managed to avoid arrest for many years.*

lead to sb's arrest *The new information led to his arrest.*

arrest + NOUNS

an arrest warrant/a warrant for sb's arrest (=an official order that allows the police to arrest someone) *The authorities issued arrest warrants for two men in their early 20s.*

ADJECTIVES

wrongful/unlawful/false arrest (=arrest without good reason) *He sued the police for wrongful arrest.*

PREPOSITIONS

be under arrest *A man is under arrest, following the suspicious death of his wife.*

arrest for murder/robbery etc *He is under arrest for murder.*

an arrest on charges of sth/on suspicion of sth *Pound was put in prison after his arrest on treason charges.*

PHRASES

put/place/keep sb under arrest *The two agents showed him their badges and placed him under arrest.*

arrival *n*

when someone or something arrives somewhere

ADJECTIVES

late arrival *We would like to apologize for the late arrival of Flight 502 from Los Angeles.*

safe arrival *They gave thanks for their safe arrival, after a long and difficult journey.*

VERBS

announce an arrival *The airline announced the arrival of Flight 702 from Bangkok.*

herald/mark/signal an arrival (=show that someone or something will arrive soon) *The storm clouds signalled the arrival of the summer rains.*

await sb/sth's arrival *The travellers were awaiting the arrival of the ferry.*

arrival + NOUNS

the arrival time/date *Due to work on the tracks, departure and arrival times of some trains may be delayed.*

PREPOSITIONS

on/upon arrival (=when someone arrives somewhere) *You will be met on arrival.*

arrival in a city/country *Shortly after our arrival in London, I received an offer of a job.*

arrival at an airport/school/office *He was arrested soon after his arrival at Chicago's O'Hare Airport.*

the arrival of sb/sth *Older children may misbehave after the arrival of a new baby.*

ANTONYMS **arrival** → **departure**

arrive *v*

to get to the place where you are going

ADVERBS

arrive late *Jo arrived late, as usual, and missed the first class.*

arrive on time *He never arrives on time for meetings.*

arrive early *We arrived early for our plane.*

arrive shortly (=soon) *My parents are due to arrive shortly.*

arrive safely *She phoned to say she had arrived safely.*

finally/eventually arrive *We finally arrived in Perth after 10 days' driving.*

arrive unannounced (=without anyone expecting or knowing you were coming) *He arrived unannounced yesterday and stayed the night.*

PREPOSITIONS

arrive at a station/airport/hotel/house *We arrived at the station just in time.*

arrive in a city/country *He arrived in New York with very little money.*

arrive on an island *The first Europeans arrived on the island in the 17th century.*

⚠ Don't say 'I arrived to my home.' Say **I arrived home** or **I arrived at my house.**

PHRASES

be due to arrive *The next train is due to arrive at 11.04.*

be the first/last (one) to arrive *Billy is always the first to arrive at the office.*

arrive safe and sound (=safely) *It was a great relief when he arrived back safe and sound.*

arrive on the scene (=at the place where an accident, crime etc has just happened) *Two more police cars arrived on the scene.*

as soon as sb arrives *Call me as soon as you arrive.*

THESAURUS: arrive

get
to arrive somewhere. **Get** is more informal than **arrive**:
*What time do you usually **get to** work? | I'll call you as soon as I **get there**. | We didn't **get home** till 5 o'clock the next day.*

come
if someone comes, they arrive at the place where you are:
*What time did the plumber say he would come? | She **came home** yesterday.*

reach
to arrive somewhere, especially after a long journey:
*They **finally reached** Hong Kong at midnight. | We were looking forward to **reaching our destination**.*

get in
plane | train | bus
to arrive somewhere:
What time does your plane get in? | The train gets in at 6.15. | I usually get in from work at around 6 o'clock.

land
plane
to arrive on the ground:
The plane landed about an hour ago. | We finally landed at 2 a.m.

pull in
train | bus | coach
to arrive at a station, or the place where you are waiting, and stop there:
Hundreds of people watched the train pull in. | As we left, another coach pulled in behind us.

dock
ship
if a ship docks, it arrives at a port and stops there, so that it can unload the passengers or goods:
The ship docked at Southampton with 400 passengers on board.

ANTONYMS **arrive** → **leave**[1]

art *n*

the use of painting, drawing, sculpture etc to represent things or express ideas

ADJECTIVES

modern/contemporary art (=from the late 19th century until now) *I think a lot of modern art is rubbish.*

contemporary art (=that is being created now, usually very recently) *There is an exhibition of contemporary Japanese art at the gallery.*

Western art (=art in Europe and North America) *He studied both Chinese and Western art.*

fine art (=art, especially painting, which is

made to be beautiful or affect your emotions, rather than to be useful) *He studied fine art at college.*

abstract art (=that consists of lines and shapes and is not of people, objects etc) *Kandinsky was famous for his abstract art.*

figurative art (=of people, objects, places etc) *Many people prefer figurative art because it is easier to understand than abstract art.*

primitive art (=art by people who live in societies where there is a very simple way of life and no modern technology or industry) *The interest in primitive art came about largely through the work of Gauguin.*

art + NOUNS

art school/college/student *I studied ceramics at art college.*

art history/historian *She teaches art history and women's studies at Sheffield University.*

an art gallery/museum *We spent the day looking around art galleries.*

an art exhibition *There is a big art exhibition in the city hall.*

an art collection *The museum has an interesting art collection including works by Henry Moore and Max Ernst.*

PHRASES

a work of art *Picasso's painting is one of the great works of art of the 20th century.*

article *n*

a piece of writing about a particular subject in a newspaper or magazine

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + article

a newspaper/magazine article *I saw a newspaper article about the college.*

a good/excellent article *I read a good article about him in 'The Observer'.*

an interesting article *There was an interesting article on building your own home.*

a thought-provoking article (=one that is interesting because it makes you think) *I don't agree with everything she says, but it certainly is a thought-provoking article.*

a long/short article *She wrote a short article for the school newspaper.*

a recent article *In a recent article in the Times, she accuses the government of hypocrisy.*

a front-page article *They published a front-page article about the scandal.*

the leading/lead article (=the main article) *The paper's leading article described the government as weak.*

a feature article (=a special article, usually over several pages) *There's a feature article on women business leaders.*

an in-depth article (=which contains a lot of information about someone or something) *There was an in-depth article about the origins of the war.*

VERBS

read/see an article *Did you see the article about him in 'The Independent'?*

write an article (*also* **do an article** *informal*): *'The Times' asked him to do an article on the election.*

publish/carry/run an article (=print it in a newspaper or magazine) *The magazine carried an article on the dangers of being overweight.*

an article appears somewhere *The article appeared in a local paper.*

PREPOSITIONS

an article on/about sth *an article on environmental issues*

an article by sb *I enjoyed that article by the mayor of New York.*

in an article *In a recent article, she described herself as 'madly in love'.*

articulate *adj* THESAURUS ▸ eloquent

artificial *adj* not real or not natural

NOUNS

artificial light/lighting *They use artificial lighting when there isn't enough daylight.*

artificial flowers *There was a vase of artificial flowers on the table.*

an artificial leg/limb/heart etc *He has an artificial leg because he lost a leg in a road accident.*

artificial sweeteners/colours/preservatives/additives *Diet drinks contain artificial sweeteners.*

an artificial environment/situation *An interview is a very artificial situation and people don't react in a natural way.*

artificial fibres *Artificial fibres such as nylon are cheap to produce.*

artificial grass/turf *The baseball game was played on artificial turf.*

an artificial lake/harbour *York University is built around a large artificial lake.*

artificial snow *Some ski resorts use huge amounts of artificial snow.*

VERBS

look artificial *The apples were so shiny that they looked artificial.*

THESAURUS: artificial

man-made
fibre | **material** | **chemical** | **lake** | **reservoir** | **island** | **snow**
man-made materials are made by people. You can also use **man-made** about geographical features such as lakes: *Polyester is a man-made fibre.* | *The town has its own man-made lake, which is popular with swimmers.*

synthetic
fibre | **material** | **fabric** | **chemical** | **drug** | **fuel** | **rubber**

synthetic materials and substances are made using chemical processes or substances, not natural ones:
The sweater is made from synthetic fibres which are designed to be light but very warm. | Amphetamine is a synthetic drug that stimulates the nervous system.

imitation
leather | silk | gold | diamond | pearl | gun | firearm | weapon
imitation materials and objects are made to look like the real thing:
Her shoes were made of imitation leather. | Only an expert can tell if the pearls are imitation.

Imitation can also be used as a noun: *The watch was* ***an imitation****.*

fake
fur | jewellery | pearl | tan | blood
made to look or seem like something else, especially in order to deceive people:
The collar is made of fake fur. | The actors' faces were covered in fake blood.

false
teeth | eyelashes | moustache | leg | nose
artificial – used about parts of the body that are made to look like the real thing:
My dad has false teeth. | The man was wearing a false moustache.

simulated
conditions | effect | flight | tour
not real, but made to look, sound, or feel real, by using special computers or machines:
Soldiers' reactions are tested under simulated combat conditions. | Training for astronauts involves a simulated space flight.

virtual
world | reality | tour
made or experienced using computers, rather than in the real world:
The online club is a virtual world for children where they can chat with each other. | Virtual reality games are becoming more and more popular. | Our website offers customers a virtual tour of the hotel.

ANTONYMS **artificial → real (1)**

artist *n*
someone who produces art, especially paintings or drawings

ADJECTIVES

a famous/well-known artist *The exhibition includes pictures by Andy Warhol and other famous artists.*

a great artist *Picasso was the greatest artist of the 20th century.*

a major/important/leading artist *Diego Rivera was one of Mexico's leading artists of the time.*

a distinguished artist (=respected by a lot of people) *She was painted by several distinguished artists, including Gabriel Rossetti.*

a talented/gifted artist *Her son is a talented young artist who hopes to study at the Royal College of Art.*

a living artist *He is regarded as one of Germany's most important living artists.*

a modern/contemporary artist *Modern artists use a range of different art forms, including film and video.*

a male/female artist *Tracey Emin is one of my favourite female artists – I love all her work.*

an amateur/professional artist *The paintings are mostly by amateur artists.*

a fine artist (=one who creates works of art, not someone who does pictures for magazines, books etc) *It is difficult for fine artists to make enough money to live on.*

a real/serious/true artist *His paintings are very popular, but until now many art critics didn't consider him to be a real artist.*

a struggling artist (=one who is trying to be successful) *When I first met him, he was a struggling artist, and his pictures weren't very expensive.*

an up-and-coming artist (=one who is likely to become successful) *The show features work by up-and-coming artists from China.*

a local artist *The show will feature works by local artists.*

artistic *adj*
relating to art, or relating to people's ability to paint, draw etc

NOUNS

artistic talent/ability/flair *She showed considerable artistic talent at an early age.*

artistic expression (=the expression of ideas or feelings in art) *The school tries to encourage artistic expression among its students.*

artistic freedom *In Russia at that time, there was very little artistic freedom.*

an artistic work *Her artistic works include both paintings and drawings.*

artistic merit (=the quality of being a good work of art) *His paintings have no artistic merit whatsoever.*

artistic temperament (=a type of character that artists are supposed to have, that allows them to feel emotions deeply) *She seems very sensitive to criticism. Perhaps it is part of her artistic temperament.*

ascend *v* THESAURUS climb

ashamed *adj*
feeling very guilty and sorry because of something you have done, or something that someone in your family, group etc has done

Grammar
Ashamed is not used before a noun.

A

ADVERBS

deeply ashamed *She was deeply ashamed of the way she had behaved.*

bitterly ashamed (=very ashamed, in a way that makes you very unhappy) *He was bitterly ashamed when his parents found out what he had done.*

thoroughly ashamed (=very ashamed – used especially when you think someone deserves to feel ashamed) *He should be thoroughly ashamed of what he's done to that poor girl.*

slightly ashamed/a little ashamed *I felt slightly ashamed that I had laughed when she fell over.*

VERBS

feel ashamed *I felt ashamed that I had not helped them.*

look ashamed *Kerry looked ashamed and started to apologize.*

make sb ashamed *When I hear about the behaviour of some English fans, it makes me ashamed to be English.*

PREPOSITIONS

ashamed of sb/sth *Rick felt ashamed of the things he had said.* | *Her parents said they were ashamed of her for what she had done.*

ashamed at sth *I am ashamed at what I did today.*

PHRASES

it's nothing to be ashamed of (=you do not need to feel ashamed) *Everyone cries sometimes – it's nothing to be ashamed of.*

be ashamed to admit sth *She was ashamed to admit that she had never read any of his books.*

I'm ashamed to say *I lied about that too, I'm ashamed to say.*

Ashamed or embarrassed?

You use **ashamed** when you feel guilty and sorry because you have done something bad or wrong: *Ella was **ashamed** of her behaviour at the party.*

Embarrassed is used when you feel uncomfortable, and worry that people will think you are silly: *Boys often feel **embarrassed** when talking about their feelings.*

ask *v*

to speak or write to someone in order to get an answer or in order to get something that you want

NOUNS

ask a question *You can ask questions at the end of the talk.*

ask (for) permission *Don Amato asked permission to marry Candida.*

ask for advice/help/assistance *They were too proud to ask for help.*

ask for sb's opinion *It is always best to ask people for their opinion first.*

ADVERBS

often/frequently ask *Parents often ask me: "How can we teach our children to write?"*

always/constantly ask *People always ask how to spell my name.*

ask politely *"Did you sleep well?" she asked politely.*

ask quietly/softly *"Are you awake?" he asked softly.*

ask hopefully *"Will you be able to fix it?" he asked hopefully.*

ask anxiously/nervously/suspiciously *She asked anxiously whether anything was wrong.*

PREPOSITIONS

ask (sb) about sth *Visitors often ask about the history of the town.*

ask (sb) for sth *He asked his boss for permission to go home early.*

⚠ Don't say 'She asked to him to be quiet.' Say **She asked him to be quiet.**

PHRASES

if you don't mind me asking/my asking *spoken* (=used when politely asking a question) *Are you married, if you don't mind me asking?*

asleep *adj* sleeping

ADVERBS

fast asleep/sound asleep (=sleeping and not easily woken) *The children were fast asleep in their beds.*

half asleep (=almost asleep) *He was lying on the sofa, half asleep.*

dead asleep *AmE* (=completely asleep) *She was dead asleep within five minutes.*

VERBS

fall asleep (=start sleeping) *He rolled over and fell asleep quickly.*

ANTONYMS **asleep** → **awake**

aspect Ac *n*

one part of a situation, idea, plan etc that has many parts

ADJECTIVES

an important/significant aspect *A person's nationality is an important aspect of their identity.*

a key/fundamental aspect (=very important) *Helping people with their problems is one of the key aspects of the job.*

a positive/negative aspect *Tourism has its negative aspects, for example the damage caused to the environment.*

a worrying/disturbing/alarming aspect *The worrying aspect is that the situation is getting worse every year.*

the technical/practical/legal/financial etc aspects *The course focuses on the practical aspects of farm work.*

various/different aspects *We studied various aspects of language development.*

certain aspects *Certain aspects of his plays attracted criticism.*

VERBS

deal with an aspect *The book only deals with one aspect of American history.*

look at/consider/examine/explore an aspect *Managers were asked to look at every aspect of their work.*

cover an aspect (=include it as one of the things that are dealt with) *The training course covers all aspects of business.*

concentrate/focus on an aspect *People tend to concentrate on the political aspect of his films.*

highlight an aspect (=make it easy to notice) *The book highlights the negative aspects of the oil industry.*

PREPOSITIONS

an aspect of sth *Alcoholism affects all aspects of family life.*

assemble *v* THESAURUS build¹

assess *v*

to make a judgment about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it

NOUNS

assess a situation *We'll have to assess the situation carefully, and then decide what to do next.*

assess a student *Students are assessed every six weeks.*

assess sb's performance/progress *The test is intended to assess your performance.*

assess sb's needs *Social workers visit the patients to assess their needs.*

assess the damage *Someone from the insurance company came to assess the damage to the car.*

assess the effect/impact *It is too early to assess the impact of the changes.*

assess the extent of sth *It is difficult to assess the extent of the problem.*

ADVERBS

assess sth carefully *Investors should assess the risk carefully before they invest their money.*

assess sth fully/thoroughly *The authorities have not yet had time to fully assess the situation.*

assess sth accurately *It is important to assess the patient's symptoms accurately.*

assess sth internally (=the grade is decided by a teacher at the same school or university) *The course is assessed internally.*

assess sth externally (=the grade is decided by someone from outside a school or university) *The written part of the test will be assessed externally.*

assessment Ac *n*

a process in which you make a judgment about a person or situation, or the judgment you make

ADJECTIVES

a general/overall/broad assessment (=that covers the main features or parts of something, not the details) *The doctor must make a general assessment of the patient's health.*

a detailed assessment *We need a detailed assessment of what this will cost.*

an accurate assessment *It is too early to make an accurate assessment of the situation.*

sb's personal assessment *What's your personal assessment of the risks?*

a fair assessment *I think the event was a success. Do you think that's a fair assessment?*

an objective assessment (=based on facts, not on feelings or beliefs) *The test results will provide an objective assessment of how much you have improved.*

a realistic/honest assessment *You should not start a business without a realistic assessment of the risks involved.*

an initial assessment (=that is done before anything else) *An initial assessment of the building's condition was carried out by a surveyor.*

VERBS

make/carry out an assessment (*also* **conduct an assessment** *formal*): *The engineers will make an assessment of the damage, and decide what needs to be done.*

do an assessment *more informal* (=make an assessment) *The teacher does a yearly assessment of each child's progress.*

give/provide an assessment *He gave an honest assessment of the risks.*

NOUNS + assessment

a risk assessment *Teachers have to do a risk assessment before taking students on a trip.*

a needs assessment (*also* **an assessment of sb's needs**) *The authorities did a needs assessment to find out what kind of housing was required.*

asset *n*

1 the things that a company owns, that can be sold to pay debts

Grammar
Usually plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

total assets *The company has total assets of over £2 billion.*

financial assets *The value of the Trust's financial assets has risen by almost 30%.*

liquid assets (=the money that a company or person has, and anything else they can easily

exchange for money) *The company has very few liquid assets that it can use to pay back the loan.*

net assets (=assets after tax has been taken away) *When he died, his net assets amounted to £320,000.*

VERBS

have/own/hold assets *She has financial assets worth £250,000.*

buy assets *Foreign investors need dollars to buy American assets.*

sell off assets (*also* **dispose of assets** *formal*): *The firm will have to sell off some of its assets to pay its debts.*

seize/confiscate sb's assets (=take them from someone officially) *The court can seize the assets of criminals.*

freeze sb's assets (=legally prevent money in a bank from being spent, property from being sold etc) *The company's assets were frozen while the investigation was carried out.*

protect/safeguard your assets *The firm's directors failed to take proper action to protect the assets of the company.*

PHRASES

the value of sb's assets *The value of his assets was calculated at over $1 million.*

2 something or someone that is useful because they help you succeed or deal with problems

ADJECTIVES

a great/considerable/major asset *His greatest asset is his sense of humour.*

a valuable/useful asset *A respected brand name is a valuable asset.*

a real asset *Knowledge of the local language is a real asset when you're working abroad.*

PREPOSITIONS

be an asset to sb/sth *She works hard, and is an asset to the firm.*

assignment Ac *n*

1 a piece of work that a student is asked to do as part of their studies

NOUNS + assignment

a homework/school assignment *Don't watch TV until you've done your homework assignments!*

a writing/maths/science etc assignment *The maths assignment was hard.*

VERBS

give sb an assignment (*also* **set sb an assignment** *BrE*): *Our English teacher always gives us a lot of assignments.* | *The teacher set the students an assignment to do in the school holidays.*

do an assignment *Everyone in the class had done the assignment.*

complete/finish an assignment *Most of the students complete their assignments on time.*

hand in an assignment *Could everyone please hand in their homework assignments by Friday?*

PREPOSITIONS

an assignment on sth *He's doing an assignment on the history of his local area.*

2 a piece of work that someone is asked to do as part of their job

ADJECTIVES

a special assignment *He had been sent on special assignment to help the head of security.*

a tough assignment *It's a tough assignment but we think you can do it.*

VERBS

sb's assignment is to do sth *Their assignment was to guard the palace.*

give sb an assignment *Magazines regularly call her to give her assignments.*

carry out an assignment *You can claim for any expenses you have while carrying out the assignment.*

PREPOSITIONS

on (an) assignment *The reporter was on assignment in South America.*

assistance Ac *n* help or support

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + assistance

financial/economic assistance *The council provided financial assistance for the project.*

technical assistance *Most of our time is spent providing technical assistance to companies.*

legal/medical assistance *It was difficult to get good legal assistance.*

government assistance (*also* **federal assistance** *AmE*): *The president pledged federal assistance to rebuild the town.*

military assistance *They appealed to the French government for military assistance.*

emergency assistance *The aid will provide emergency assistance for 2,000 families.*

VERBS

provide/offer assistance *We would be happy to provide assistance.*

give (sb) assistance *Our staff can give assistance with any problems that may arise.*

get/receive assistance *She got no assistance from her family.*

need assistance (*also* **require assistance** *formal*): *Call this number if you need any assistance.*

seek assistance *If side-effects are severe, seek medical assistance.*

ask for assistance (*also* **request assistance** *formal*): *Police are at the scene and have requested assistance.*

promise/pledge assistance *The government has promised financial assistance for victims of the floods.*

PREPOSITIONS

be of assistance *formal* (=help) *"Can I be of assistance?" the receptionist asked.*

assistance to sb/sth *The department provides financial assistance to universities.*

assistance for sth/sb *We need more assistance for people caring for sick relatives.*

assistance from sb *The agency receives no assistance from the government.*

assistance with (doing) sth *He requires assistance with washing and dressing.*

assistance in doing sth *We offer assistance in finding suitable accommodation.*

PHRASES

come to sb's assistance (=help someone) *One of her fellow passengers came to her assistance.*

turn to sb for assistance (=ask them to help) *The elderly sometimes have no one to turn to for assistance.*

with the assistance of sb/sth *He started the business with the assistance of his parents.*

association *n*

1 an organization that consists of people, countries, or groups who have similar interests or aims

ADJECTIVES

an international association *The international association of firefighters will hold a meeting next month.*

a local association *They set up a local association of small businesses.*

a community association *Community associations have said they will fight plans to build a new airport in the area.*

a professional association *Most diving instructors belong to a professional association.*

a public/private association *Public associations such as Trade Unions had their freedom limited.*

VERBS

join an association *He joined the Architects' Association in 2010.*

belong to an association *They belong to the professional basketball players' association.*

set up/form/found an association *The International Air Transport Association was founded in 1945.*

an association meets *The association meets once a year in London.*

PREPOSITIONS

the association of sb *She is a member of the National Association of Social Workers.*

PHRASES

a member of an association/an association member *Association members have to pay a fee every year.*

2 a relationship between people, groups, countries etc

ADJECTIVES

a close association *He has a close association with the town and went to school there many years ago.*

a personal association *She did not investigate the case because of her personal association with Mr Brown.*

a long/long-standing association *He has a long association with the football club.*

a loose association (=not working closely together) *The bombing suspect appears to have only a loose association with terrorist groups.*

VERBS

have an association *She claimed that she had no association with any political organization.*

maintain an association *The group maintains a loose association with the Republican party.*

PREPOSITIONS

an association with sb/sth *He studied at Leyden and maintained a close association with that university.*

the association between sb/sth *The association between the two men led to several scientific discoveries.*

in association with sb/sth *The concerts are sponsored by the Arts Council in association with local businesses.*

PHRASES

freedom of association *Freedom of association is an important civil right.*

assume Ac *v*

to think that something is true, although you do not have definite proof

ADVERBS

automatically assume (=without thinking carefully) *I automatically assumed she would be like her sister, but she was not.*

naturally assume *As the boy looked about ten, I naturally assumed that he should be in school.*

generally/usually/commonly assume *People generally assume that I will not want to work full-time after the baby is born.*

mistakenly/wrongly assume *They wrongly assumed that he wouldn't ask them for money.*

PHRASES

it seems reasonable to assume/we can reasonably assume *It seems reasonable to assume that the two events are connected.*

it is safe to assume/you can safely assume (=be almost certain) *I think it is safe to assume that they won't come back.*

it is widely assumed (=by many people) *It was widely assumed that the bomb was planted by al-Qaeda.*

let us assume *Let us assume for a moment that the average temperature will rise by 5 degrees.*

it is wrong/a mistake to assume *It is a mistake*

A

and angry) *Last week she launched a vitriolic attack on her former colleagues.*

a personal attack (=which criticizes someone's character, especially in an unfair and unkind way) *The debate included some bitter personal attacks.*

VERBS

launch/mount/make/deliver an attack (=make an attack) *He gave a press conference in which he launched a fierce attack upon the Democrats.*

PREPOSITIONS

an attack on sb/sth (*also* **an attack upon sb/sth** *formal*): *The article contained a scathing attack on the leadership of the party.*

PHRASES

be/come under attack (=be criticized) *Plans to reform the education system have come under attack from teachers.*

go on the attack (=start to criticize someone, especially after they have criticized you) *Khan went on the attack, accusing his political opponents of corruption.*

ANTONYMS attack → defence (2)

attack² v

1 to deliberately use violence to hurt a person or damage a place

ADVERBS

viciously/savagely/brutally attack sb *The woman was brutally attacked in her own home.*

physically attack sb *Hospital staff have been physically attacked by patients.*

PREPOSITIONS

attack sb/sth with sth *He was attacked with a broken bottle.*

PHRASES

vulnerable to attack (=easy to attack) *The tanks are vulnerable to attack from the air.*

ANTONYMS attack → defend

2 to criticize someone or something very strongly

ADVERBS

strongly/vigorously attack sb/sth *Opponents have strongly attacked the bill.*

openly/publicly attack sb/sth *In his article, he openly attacked the government.*

repeatedly attack sb/sth (=many times) *The minister has been repeatedly attacked in the media.*

ANTONYMS attack → defend

attain v THESAURUS achieve

attempt n

an act of trying to do something

ADJECTIVES

an unsuccessful/failed/abortive attempt *All attempts to find a cure have been unsuccessful.*

a vain attempt (=that does not succeed) *The teacher made a vain attempt to separate the two boys.*

a doomed/futile attempt (=certain to fail) *His attempt to reach the Pole was doomed from the beginning.*

a brave/bold/valiant attempt (=one that you admire, but that is unsuccessful) *She made a valiant attempt to continue playing, but the pain was too much.*

a successful attempt *The writer has made a successful attempt at showing the panic the characters felt.*

a determined/deliberate/conscious attempt *This was a deliberate attempt to mislead the public.*

a concerted attempt (=in which people work together in a determined way) *The party has made a concerted attempt to have more women candidates.*

a serious/genuine attempt *This is the first serious attempt to tackle the problem.*

a desperate/frantic attempt *Doctors made a desperate attempt to save his life.*

a feeble/weak attempt *She ignored David's feeble attempt at humour.*

a half-hearted attempt (=not trying hard, because you do not think you can succeed) *She made a half-hearted attempt to mop up the spilled milk.*

a blatant attempt (=an obvious attempt to do something bad) *It was a blatant attempt to hide the truth.*

a final/last attempt *The deal is a final attempt to save 5,000 jobs.*

a last-ditch attempt (=a final attempt to achieve something before it is too late) *Negotiators are making a last-ditch attempt to save the agreement.*

repeated attempts *I made repeated attempts to contact her, but without success.*

VERBS

make an attempt *She made several attempts to escape.*

abandon/give up an attempt *The climbers had to give up their attempt to reach the summit.*

fail in an attempt *He failed in his attempt to set a new Olympic record.*

succeed in an attempt *The 16-year-old succeeded in his attempt to sail across the Atlantic Ocean.*

foil/thwart an attempt *formal* (=make it fail) *Alert passengers foiled his attempt to set off a bomb on the airplane.*

an attempt fails/succeeds *All attempts to find a cure have failed.*

NOUNS + attempt

a rescue attempt *Two firefighters were hurt in the rescue attempt.*

an assassination attempt (=an attempt to kill a leader) *A bodyguard was wounded in an assassination attempt on the president.*

an escape attempt *The prisoner has made two previous escape attempts.*

a suicide attempt (=an attempt to kill yourself) *He was admitted to hospital after a suicide attempt.*

a coup attempt (=an attempt to change the government, usually by force) *The rebels left the country after the failed coup attempt.*

PREPOSITIONS

on the first/second etc attempt (*also* **at the first/second etc attempt** *BrE*): *They reached the top of the mountain on their second attempt.*

an attempt at sth *She made an attempt at a smile.*

in an attempt to do sth *She began to run in an attempt to get away.*

despite sb's attempts *The engine refused to start despite all our attempts to make it work.*

attention *n*

1 the activity of listening to, looking at, or thinking about someone or something carefully

VERBS

pay attention to sth/sb *He read the final page, paying particular attention to the last paragraph.*

devote attention to sb/sth *He needs to devote more attention to his schoolwork.*

turn your attention to sth/sb (=start thinking about something or someone else) *She quickly put away the shopping and then turned her attention to preparing dinner.*

focus your attention on sb/sth *I tried to focus my attention on my book.*

give sth/sb your attention (=think about something or someone so that you can deal with a problem) *She promised to give the matter her attention the next day.*

keep/hold sb's attention *This game is fun and is sure to keep the attention of young students.*

bring sth to sb's attention (=tell someone about something so they can deal with it) *Thank you for bringing the problem to my attention.*

attract/catch sb's attention (=make someone see you) *We tried to attract the waiter's attention.*

escape sb's attention (=not be noticed by someone) *Even the tiniest details did not escape her attention.*

sb's attention wanders (=someone stops listening, watching etc carefully) *During the meeting, her attention began to wander.*

ADJECTIVES

sb's full/complete/undivided attention *He gave the task his undivided attention.*

close attention *They listened to the speech with close attention.*

particular/special attention *You should pay special attention to spelling in this exercise.*

scant attention (=not much or not enough) *Merrill paid scant attention to their conversation.*

attention + NOUNS

attention span (=the length of time when you continue to be interested in something) *Young children often have a short attention span.*

PREPOSITIONS

sb's attention is on sth/sb *My attention wasn't really on the game.*

PHRASES

attention to detail *Attention to detail is essential in this job.*

care and attention *The care and attention that has gone into this work is amazing.*

2 interest that people show in someone or something

VERBS

receive/get/attract/draw attention *His books received little attention while he was alive.*

capture sb's attention *The trial captured the attention of the whole country.*

enjoy sb's attention *He was enjoying the attention of his female fans.*

divert/deflect attention away from sth (=make people interested in something else instead) *This story has diverted attention away from his private life.*

command attention (=cause people to show interest) *A comment from a famous actor can command worldwide media attention.*

deserve/merit attention *His work is finally getting the attention it deserves.*

lavish attention on sb/sth (=show a lot of interest in them) *She had been jealous of the attention lavished on Sophie.*

attention turns/shifts (=it moves to someone or something else) *Attention has now shifted to the problems in other European countries.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + attention

public attention *We hope the event will attract public attention.*

media/press attention *The princess received a lot of press attention.*

international/national/world attention *His novel attracted international attention.*

widespread attention *The dispute did not receive widespread attention.*

unwanted/unwelcome attention *He wanted to avoid unwanted attention from the authorities.*

PHRASES

be the focus of attention (*also* **be the centre**

A

audience + VERBS

an audience claps (*also* **an audience applauds** *formal*): *The audience clapped at the end of the movie.*

an audience laughs *He has the ability to make an audience laugh.*

an audience cheers *The audience cheered loudly when he came on stage.*

an audience boos (=they say 'boo' because they do not like the performance) *The play wasn't very good and some of the audience started booing.*

audience + NOUNS

audience participation *The show involves a lot of audience participation and people are asked to come on stage.*

PREPOSITIONS

in front of/before an audience *He is used to performing in front of a live audience.*

in the audience *There must have been at least 200 people in the audience.*

an audience of *An audience of about 50 people came to the talk.*

PHRASES

a member of the audience *Several members of the audience left the film early.*

2 the people who watch or listen to a programme or film, read a magazine etc

ADJECTIVES

a big/large/huge/vast audience *Messages posted on the internet can attract a huge audience.*

a small audience *The show only gets a small audience.*

a young/teenage audience *This is a magazine with a young audience.*

an older audience *The programme mainly appeals to an older audience.*

a worldwide/international audience *Soccer has an ever-increasing worldwide audience.*

a wide/broad/diverse audience (=consisting of many different types of people) *He is an author who appeals to a wide audience.*

a mass audience (=a very large number of people) *Television brought entertainment to a mass audience.*

a mainstream audience (=ordinary people, not people with specialized interests) *The film is aimed at a mainstream audience.*

a viewing audience (=the people who watch a programme) *The show has a viewing audience of 2 million.*

VERBS

have/get an audience *The programme has a big audience every week.*

attract/draw/pull in an audience *The first show attracted an audience of more than 2 million.*

reach an audience *Advertisers use television to reach a large audience.*

appeal to an audience (=be interesting to them) *Teenage actors were used in the film in order to appeal to a younger audience.*

NOUNS + audience

a television/radio audience *Radio audiences have gone down in recent years.*

the target audience *The target audience is mostly men aged 28 to 35.*

audience + NOUNS

audience share (=a part of the total number of people who watch television or listen to the radio) *The TV has 12% of the audience share.*

authentic *adj* THESAURUS real (1)

author Ac *n*

someone who writes books, or someone who has written a book, article, or report

ADJECTIVES

a famous/well-known author *The famous author Ernest Hemingway stayed at the hotel in the 1920s.*

a best-selling author *Ian McEwan is a best-selling author, whose books have been translated into many languages.*

a children's author *'Matilda' was written by Roald Dahl, the famous children's author.*

your favourite author *"Who's your favourite author?" "I really like Charles Dickens."*

a prolific author (=one who writes many books) *She is a prolific author who has published more than 70 books.*

a contributing author (=someone who writes articles for a newspaper or magazine, or who writes part of a book, report etc) *Ms Gomez was a contributing author to Chapter 1 of the report.*

an acclaimed author (=one whose work is admired by many people) *Margaret Atwood is a highly acclaimed author, who has won many awards for her work.*

first author *formal* (=the first of two or more authors, who are mentioned as having written something) *My supervisor was listed as first author, even though I did most of the work.*

PREPOSITIONS

the author of sth *Professor Jones was one of the authors of the report.*

Author or writer?

You use **writer** about anyone who writes books. You usually use **author** about someone whose books are considered to be works of literature.

Author is also used when talking about the person who wrote something: *She is **the author of** a study of childhood illnesses.*

authoritarian *adj* THESAURUS strict (1)

authority Ac *n*

1 the power you have because of your official position

ADJECTIVES

full/complete/total authority *The manager has full authority to make decisions.*

absolute authority (=complete authority over everyone – used especially about the leader of a country) *In those days, the emperor had absolute authority.*

legal authority *US agents have legal authority to bring criminals back from overseas.*

moral authority *The government lacks the moral authority to regenerate the country.*

parental authority *The older children are more likely to resist parental authority.*

VERBS

have authority *Only the head of the department has the authority to make that decision.*

give sb authority *The department was given authority over highways and waterways.*

exercise/exert your authority (*also* **wield authority** *formal*) (=use your authority) *In practice it's very difficult for the president to exercise his authority.*

abuse/misuse your authority (=use your authority in a bad way) *The mayor was accused of abusing his authority and taking bribes.*

exceed/overstep your authority (=do more than you have the power or right to do) *A higher court decided that the judge had exceeded his authority.*

establish/assert your authority (=show people that you have authority) *The new manager was anxious to establish her authority.*

stamp/impose your authority on sth (=show people that you have authority over something) *Robertson quickly stamped his authority on the team.*

lose your authority *He's worried that he is losing his authority over the party.*

undermine/weaken sb's authority (=make someone's authority weaker) *I wasn't trying to undermine your authority.*

challenge sb's authority (=try to take power away from someone) *There had been no one to really challenge his authority.*

question sb's authority (=express doubt about someone's authority or decisions) *Students in secondary schools are more likely to question authority.*

authority + NOUNS

an authority figure (=someone who has the power to tell young people what they can do) *The teacher is an authority figure, like the parent.*

PREPOSITIONS

authority over sb/sth *He has no authority over us.*

in authority (=in a powerful position) *You need to speak to someone in authority.*

PHRASES

be in a position of authority *I've never been in a position of authority before.*

have an air of authority (=look like you have authority, in a way that makes people obey you) *The commander had an unmistakeable air of authority.*

a challenge to sb's authority *The leadership saw the demonstrations as a challenge to their authority.*

2 someone who knows a lot about a subject

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + authority

a great authority *Jourdain was a great authority on English furniture and wrote several books on the subject.*

a world authority *He is a world authority on climate change.*

a leading/noted authority *They consulted leading authorities on the disease.*

the foremost authority (=the one who knows most) *He was considered to be the foremost authority on Spanish paintings.*

a respected authority *She is a highly respected authority on medieval church architecture.*

PREPOSITIONS

an authority on sth *Sue is an authority on Chinese cooking – she used to live in China.*

authorization (*also* authorisation *BrE*) *n*

official permission to do something, or the document giving this permission

ADJECTIVES

official authorization *The two men did not have official authorization to enter the country.*

special authorization *In Britain, the police need special authorization to carry guns.*

written authorization *If you want to go on the school trip, you'll need written authorization from your parents.*

prior authorization (=authorization before something happens) *Under Turkish law, protests must have prior authorization.*

proper authorization *In order to use the computer room, you will need the proper authorization.*

VERBS

have authorization *For security reasons, only certain people have authorization to enter the building.*

A

Disaster was averted only by quick thinking by the plane's captain. | A teachers' strike was ***narrowly averted*** *in January* (=it was only just averted). | *Some scientists believe that nuclear energy is the only way to avert the threat of global warming.*

2 to escape having to do something or deal with something

NOUNS

avoid work *His son would do anything to avoid work.*

avoid a question *Politicians are very good at avoiding difficult questions.*

avoid your responsibility/duty *The federal government is trying to avoid any responsibility for dealing with the problem.*

avoid the issue *It was impossible to avoid the issue any longer.*

THESAURUS: avoid

evade *formal*
taxes | **responsibility** | **question** | **payment** | **justice** | **issue** | **problem**
to avoid having to do something or deal with something:
Companies often hide their profits in order to evade taxes. | The government cannot evade its responsibility to help the refugees. | She skilfully evaded all questions about where she had been the night before.

Evade or avoid?
Evade means the same as **avoid**. **Evade** is more formal and is often used about taxes and responsibilities.

get out of *informal*
agreement | **contract**
to avoid doing something you should do or something you promised to do. **Get out of** is more informal than **avoid**:
The country is trying to get out of its agreement to pay back the money. | We promised we'd go – we can't get out of it now.

3 to not go near a person or place, or not talk about a subject

ADVERBS

carefully avoid *They carefully avoided each other's eyes.*

deliberately avoid *He had a feeling that she was deliberately avoiding him.*

studiously avoid *formal* (=make a deliberate effort to avoid someone or something) *The government has studiously avoided public debate about this subject.*

PHRASES

avoid sb/sth like the plague *informal* (=avoid someone or something as much as you can) *Why did you want to speak to him? You usually avoid him like the plague.*

awake *adj* not sleeping

ADVERBS

be wide/fully awake (=completely awake) *I had been in bed for an hour but was still wide awake.*

be half awake (=not fully awake) *Most of the people on the train were only half awake.*

be hardly/barely awake (=almost sleeping) *George was barely awake and he almost fell down the stairs.*

still awake *It was 11.30, but the children were all still awake.*

VERBS

stay/keep awake (*also* **remain awake** *formal*): *I was tired and it was hard to stay awake.*

lie awake *Kate lay awake worrying about the test.*

keep sb awake *The noise of the planes kept me awake.*

shake sb awake *Ben shook me awake and told me the news.*

jerk awake (=wake with a sudden movement) *There was a bang on the door, and he jerked awake.*

award[1] *n*

a prize or money that someone gets for something they have achieved

ADJECTIVES

a special award *He will receive a special award for his bravery.*

a national/international award *The programme was nominated for two national awards.*

a prestigious award (=a very important and well-respected award) *The Heisman Trophy is US college football's most prestigious award.*

a top/major award *The car won the top award at the British International Motor Show.*

the highest award *The Medal of Honor is the highest military award in the US.*

a literary award *He received numerous state and literary awards, both in Romania and Hungary.*

an annual award *They won the company's annual award for consistent high quality service to customers.*

NOUNS + award

a film/music/poetry award *The winners of this year's music awards have just been announced.*

VERBS

win an award *Tom Cruise won the award for best actor. | We had dinner at an award-winning restaurant.*

get/receive an award *The film has received many awards.*

give sb an award *The award is given each year to the best young designer.*

present sb with an award *The college principal presented the students with their awards.*

be nominated for an award (*also* **be up for an award** *informal*) (=be chosen as one of the people, books etc that could receive an award) *The book has been nominated for several awards.*

pick up/scoop an award (=get an award – used especially in news reports) *The band scooped the award for best album.*

the award goes to sb/sth *The Team Of The Year Award went to the Ladies' England Cricket Team.*

award + NOUNS

an awards ceremony *She received her prize at an awards ceremony.*

an award winner *The four award winners received a total of £1,000 prize money.*

an award scheme *BrE: The award scheme aims to encourage young golfers to improve their technique.*

PREPOSITIONS

an award for sth *The actress won an award for her performance in the film.*

an award from sb/sth *He received the award from the British Academy of Film and Television Arts.*

award[2] *v* THESAURUS give (1)

aware Ac *adj*

1 knowing about or realizing something

ADVERBS

well/fully aware *He is an experienced climber and he is well aware of the dangers that he faces.*

acutely/keenly aware (=very aware, in a way that has a strong effect on your behaviour) *I'm acutely aware of the huge amount of work that still needs to be done.*

more/increasingly aware *People are becoming increasingly aware of the need to protect the environment.*

painfully/uncomfortably aware *He was painfully aware that everyone was looking at him.*

dimly/vaguely aware (=a little aware, although you are not completely sure) *I was dimly aware of the sound of an approaching car.*

suddenly aware *She suddenly became aware of a strange smell.*

VERBS

make sb aware of sth *It is important that young people are made aware of the dangers of taking drugs.*

become aware *He became aware that he was being watched.*

remain aware *Try to remain aware of the risks involved.*

PREPOSITIONS

aware of sth *The company says that it is aware of the problem and it will deal with it soon.*

PHRASES

as you are aware *As you are aware, funds for this project are very limited.*

ANTONYMS aware → unaware

2 knowing about a subject and realizing its importance

ADVERBS

politically aware *Schools must encourage students to become politically aware members of society.*

socially aware *He had become more socially aware and was now doing more things to help other people.*

environmentally aware *We are an environmentally aware company with excellent recycling facilities.*

awareness *n*

knowledge or understanding of a particular subject or situation

ADJECTIVES

growing/increasing awareness *There is an increasing awareness of the effects of mankind's activities on the environment.*

increased awareness (*also* **heightened awareness** *formal*): *There was an increased awareness of the need for education.*

general/public awareness *Public awareness of crime has increased.*

great awareness *There is great awareness of the need for reform.*

keen/acute awareness (=a very strong awareness) *A good teacher has a keen awareness of the needs of his or her students.*

little/no awareness *He has little awareness of the effect of his words on other people.*

VERBS

raise/increase awareness *The government wants to raise awareness about the dangers of smoking.*

create awareness *Companies use advertising to create awareness of their products.*

heighten awareness *formal* (=increase awareness, especially about a problem) *The campaign is intended to heighten people's awareness of the disease.*

have no/some/any awareness *The authorities had no awareness that a problem existed.*

PREPOSITIONS

awareness of/about sth *We want to develop an awareness of the benefits of eating healthy foods.*

awareness among sb *Awareness among the general public of the dangers of drink-driving has definitely increased.*

PHRASES

a lack of awareness *There is still a lack of awareness about the disease, even among some medical professionals.*

awesome *adj* THESAURUS **excellent**

awful *adj* THESAURUS **terrible**

awkward *adj*

1 difficult, embarrassing, or inconvenient

awkward + NOUNS

an awkward question *They asked me a lot of awkward questions.*

an awkward subject/topic *Money was an awkward subject between Steve and his wife.*

an awkward situation/position *It is a very awkward situation and there is no obvious solution.*

an awkward time/moment *You're calling at rather an awkward time – can you call back later?*

an awkward fact *The awkward fact remains that he is not a popular leader.*

an awkward silence/pause *There was a long and awkward silence, and neither of us knew what to say.*

an awkward customer *informal* (=someone who is difficult to deal with) *He is an awkward customer and you have to be careful what you say to him.*

ADVERBS

slightly/a little/rather awkward *There was one slightly awkward moment when he forgot what he was going to say.*

extremely awkward *You are putting me in an extremely awkward position.*

PREPOSITIONS

awkward for sb *I realise this must be very awkward for you.*

awkward about sth (=unhelpful and not doing what you want) *I hope she isn't going to be awkward about the money.*

PHRASES

make things awkward *I don't want to make things awkward for anybody.*

THESAURUS: awkward

hard, tough, demanding, challenging, daunting, awkward, tricky, delicate → **difficult**

awkward, uncomfortable, humiliating → **embarrassing**

2 embarrassed or not relaxed

VERBS

feel awkward *I sometimes feel awkward when I have to give a speech.*

PREPOSITIONS

awkward about sth *I felt awkward about asking her some rather personal questions.*

awkward with sb *We were strangers and felt awkward with each other.*

Bb

baby *n* a very young child

PHRASES

a baby is born *Let me know as soon as the baby is born.*

a baby is due (=is expected to be born) *When is your baby due?*

give birth to a baby *Sue gave birth to a baby boy.*

VERBS + baby

have a baby *She had her first baby when she was 16 years old.*

be having/expecting a baby (=be pregnant) *My wife's expecting a baby.*

deliver a baby (=help a woman to give birth to a baby) *Usually your baby will be delivered by a midwife.*

change a baby (=change its nappy) *Could you change the baby for me?*

feed a baby *She picked up the baby and began to feed her.*

⚠ Don't say 'She is waiting a baby.' Say **She is expecting a baby**.

Have a baby or **be having a baby?**
If a woman **has a baby**, it is born: *She **had the baby** at home* (=it was born at home). You often use **having a baby** when saying that a woman is pregnant: *My sister is **having a baby** and she has to go to hospital for regular check-ups.*

baby + VERBS

a baby arrives (=it is born) *I'd like to decorate the nursery before the baby arrives.*

a baby is conceived (=the woman becomes pregnant) *The baby was conceived soon after they were married.*

a baby cries/screams *The baby cried all night.*

a baby is teething (=teeth are appearing in its mouth) *If your baby starts crying a lot, he or she may be teething.*

ADJECTIVES

a young/small/little/tiny baby *Young babies need a lot of sleep.*

a two-day-old/six-month-old etc baby *You can't go into work with a three-month-old baby.*

a newborn baby (=recently born) *There's plenty of help and advice for people with newborn babies.*

a healthy baby *She gave birth to a healthy baby girl.*

a contented baby (=usually happy) *Danielle was a lovely contented baby.*

sb's first/second etc baby *Is this your first baby?*

a premature baby (=born before the normal time) *Lesley's baby was three weeks premature.*

an unwanted baby *Unwanted babies were frequently abandoned in the streets.*

baby + NOUNS

a baby boy/girl *She's just had a baby girl.*

a baby son/daughter/brother/sister *The little boy now has a baby sister.*

the baby boom (=the period when a lot of babies are born) *He was born in the baby boom of the 1960s.*

baby food/milk/clothes/seat/blanket etc *The baby likes his new baby food.*

back[1] *n*

1 part of the body on the opposite side from the stomach and chest

ADJECTIVES

a bad/sore/aching back *He suffers from a bad back.*

a stiff back *I was suffering from a stiff back and needed to get some treatment.*

sb's lower/upper back *He felt a sharp pain in his lower back.*

a strong back *He had a strong back and was used to carrying heavy loads.*

VERBS

your back hurts/aches *My back aches when I've been sitting in front of my computer for a long time.*

hurt/injure your back *He hurt his back while playing basketball.*

lie on your back *She was lying on her back, staring at the ceiling.*

massage sb's back *She gently massaged his back.*

hit/pat/slap sb on the back *My father slapped me on the back to congratulate me.*

straighten your back *She stood up and straightened her back.*

back + NOUNS

a back pain/injury/problem *More working days are lost in Britain through back problems than through any other single health problem.*

back trouble *She's still experiencing back trouble after the accident.*

a back muscle *He was suffering from a strained back muscle.*

a back exercise *I'll have to do some back exercises in the gym.*

a back massage/rub *She gave him a back massage to relieve the pain.*

PREPOSITIONS

on your back *She was carrying a small child on her back.*

a pain in your back *She complained of a pain in her back.*

with your back to sb/sth *He was standing with his back to the wall.*

PHRASES

keep your back straight *Keep your back straight and bend your knees when lifting things.*

turn your back on/to sb/sth *She turned her back on him.*

give sb a pat/slap on the back *He gave her a slap on the back and wished her luck.*

sit/stand back to back *The two boys were standing back to back.*

2 the part of something that is furthest from the front

PREPOSITIONS

the back of sth *I can see the back of their house from my window.*

at the back *I could see a tin of tomatoes at the back of the cupboard.*

in the back *We put our luggage in the back of the truck.*

down the back *She found some coins that had fallen down the back of the sofa.*

around/round the back *The incident had taken place around the back of the Berkeley cinema.*

to/towards the back *She went towards the back of the hall.*

PHRASES

back to front (=the wrong way round so the back is where the front should be) *He was wearing his pullover back to front.*

THESAURUS: back

rear
the back part of a building or vehicle. **Rear** is more formal than **back**:
*The carpark is situated **at the rear of** the hotel. | They went around **to the rear of** the house.*

ANTONYMS back → front[1]

back[2] *adj*

at, on, or in the back of something

NOUNS

the back page *The sport is on the back page of the newspaper.*

the back row *We were sitting in the back row of the cinema.*

the back door/entrance *The thieves broke in through the back door.*

the back garden *She was sitting in the back garden.*

the back end *The back end of the truck hit our car.*

an animal's back leg/paw *The dog stretched out his back legs.*

a vehicle's back seat *She was sitting in the back seat of the car.*

THESAURUS: back

rear
seat | **entrance** | **door** | **window** | **wall** | **wheel** | **end** | **part**
in the back part of a building or vehicle. **Rear** is more formal than **back**:
The rear seats of the car are very comfortable. | A quiet street led to the rear entrance of her apartment block. | There was some damage to the rear end of the truck.

ANTONYMS back → front[2]

backfire *v* THESAURUS fail (1)

background *n*

1 the kind of family that someone has, or the kind of work or education experience someone has had

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + background

different backgrounds *The two women come from totally different backgrounds.*

social background *Universities aim to attract students from a wide range of social backgrounds.*

ethnic/cultural/religious background (=which race, culture, or religion your family comes from) *London has people from every ethnic background.*

class/socio-economic background (=the kind of class you come from) *Smokers often come from poorer socio-economic backgrounds.*

a working-class/middle-class/upper-class background *She came from a comfortable middle-class background and she had never had to deal with these problems.*

a poor/deprived/disadvantaged background (=from a poor family) *The school has a high percentage of children from disadvantaged backgrounds.*

a wealthy/privileged background (=from a rich family) *All the top jobs were taken by people from privileged backgrounds.*

family background *Many kids lack a stable family background.*

professional background *Managers can come from a wide range of professional backgrounds.*

educational/academic background *The interviewer will ask you about your educational background and work experience.*

VERBS

have a background *She has a scientific background, but is very interested in the arts.*

PREPOSITIONS

from a ... background *Young people from a wealthy background are more likely to go to university.*

a background in sth *Students with a background in chemistry will probably find the course easier.*

PHRASES

come from a background *Mark and I came from very similar backgrounds.*

a range of backgrounds *People from a wide range of backgrounds go to watch football.*

2 the events and facts that explain why something happens in the way it does or why something is like it is

VERBS

give the background (*also* **provide the background** *formal*): *The guide gives a detailed background to the history of the area.*

form the background *The work I did in 2005 forms the background to this research.*

explain the background *Let me explain the background to the decision.*

ADJECTIVES

the historical/political background *The article provides the historical background to the war.*

background + NOUNS

background information/details *He was able to give background information about the events leading up to the accident.*

background knowledge *The students did not have any background knowledge of the subject.*

background reading *This book is good background reading for anyone interested in military history.*

PREPOSITIONS

the background to sth *The background to these concerns has been a deepening crisis in the economy.*

the background for sth *His experiences during the war provided the background for much of his work.*

against a background of sth *The decision was made against a background of political tension.*

backlog *n*

a large amount of work that you need to deal with, which should have been dealt with earlier

ADJECTIVES

a large/huge/enormous/massive backlog *The courts have a large backlog of cases.*

a growing backlog *We have a growing backlog of problems.*

VERBS

have a backlog *I have a huge backlog of work to do.*

clear a backlog (=finish dealing with it) *He had to stay late at the office to clear a backlog of paperwork.*

deal with a backlog *The company is trying to deal with the backlog of orders as soon as possible.*

a backlog builds up (=it develops) *A backlog of questions had built up.*

bad *adj*

1 not good

NOUNS

a bad time/day/year *It has been a bad time for many businesses.*

a bad situation/experience *The situation was so bad that they didn't know what to do.*

bad news *I'm afraid I have some bad news.*

the bad thing/aspect/point *The bad thing is the widening gap between rich and poor.*

a bad effect *Alcohol has a very bad effect on your liver.*

a bad idea/decision *I knew this was a bad idea.*

a bad mood/temper *He was in a bad mood all morning.*

a bad grade/mark *I got bad marks in my test.*

bad weather *The plane was delayed by bad weather.*

bad luck *It was bad luck that it rained on the day of our picnic.*

ADVERBS

pretty bad *It has been a pretty bad week.*

unbelievably/incredibly bad *It is an unbelievably bad state of affairs.*

notoriously bad (=everyone knows that something is bad) *Food at the restaurant is notoriously bad.*

VERBS

get worse *The situation is getting worse.*

PREPOSITIONS

bad for sb/sth *Some people say that meat is bad for your health.*

PHRASES

sth is in (a) bad condition/a bad state *The table was in bad condition.*

THESAURUS: bad

poor

quality | **standard** | **condition** | **design** | **workmanship** | **performance** | **health** | **eyesight** | **diet** | **hygiene**

bad – used especially when something is not as good as it should be. **Poor** is more formal than **bad**:

There were complaints about the poor quality of the materials. | *People criticized the government's poor performance.* | *A poor diet can lead to ill health.* | *The disease spread because of poor hygiene.*

B

a leather bag *She was carrying a smart leather bag.*

a carrier bag (=for carrying shopping, usually made of plastic) *The supermarket no longer gives free carrier bags.*

a shopping bag *BrE*, **a grocery bag** *especially AmE*: *She loaded her shopping bags into the back of the car.*

a school bag *Hey, don't forget your school bag!*

a sports bag *I noticed that the man was wearing trainers and carrying a sports bag.*

a travel bag (=a suitcase or bag you take when travelling) *Your travel bag must not weigh more than 15 kilos.*

a shoulder bag (=one that you carry over your shoulder) *Big shoulder bags are fashionable this year.*

an overnight bag (=a small suitcase or bag for a short stay somewhere) *I put some clothes in an overnight bag and got in the car.*

an evening bag (=a small bag that a woman takes out with her in the evening) *She put her lipstick in a black velvet evening bag.*

Handbag is written as one word.

VERBS

carry a bag *Let me carry the bags.*

put sth in a bag *She put her make-up in her bag.*

open/close a bag *The customs officer opened my bag.*

pack a bag (=put things in it preparing to go somewhere) *Mum packed a bag for a day at the beach.*

unpack a bag *She unpacked her bags and put her clothes away.*

empty a bag *I've emptied my bags and I still can't find it.*

look/search/rummage (around) in a bag (=search for something in a bag) *Ivor was rummaging in the bag for his camera.*

a bag contains sth *The bag contained some old clothes.*

a bag holds sth *I don't think that bag will hold all those books.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a bag *What's in the bag?*

a bag of sth *There was a bag of potatoes on the kitchen counter.*

baggage *n*

the cases, bags etc you carry when travelling

Grammar

Baggage is an uncountable noun. It is not used in the plural. Don't say 'baggages'.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + baggage

hand baggage (=bags that you are allowed to carry with you onto a plane) *You are only allowed one item of hand baggage on the plane.*

excess baggage (=baggage that weighs more than you are allowed to take on a plane) *Passengers will be charged for excess baggage.*

VERBS + baggage

check (in) your baggage (=take it to the desk at an airport when you confirm your arrival for a flight) *I checked in my baggage and waited for my flight.*

carry your baggage *Passengers have to carry their baggage onto the ship.*

pick up/collect your baggage *After picking up our baggage, we went to the arrivals hall to meet my parents.*

search/go through your baggage *Customs officers went through everyone's baggage.*

baggage + NOUNS

baggage allowance (=the amount of baggage you are allowed to take on a plane) *There's a 20 kilo baggage allowance.*

the baggage compartment (=the place on a plane, train, bus, or ship where baggage is carried) *I put my briefcase into the overhead baggage compartment.*

baggage reclaim (*also* **baggage claim** *AmE*) (=the place where you collect your baggage after a flight) *We waited for almost an hour in baggage reclaim.*

PHRASES

an item/piece of baggage *How many pieces of baggage do you have?*

bail *n*

money left with a court of law to make sure that a prisoner will return when his or her trial starts

PHRASES

be released/freed on bail (*also* **be remanded on bail** *BrE*) (=be given bail and allowed to stay out of prison, usually until a trial takes place) *The men were released on police bail after spending 24 hours in custody.*

apply/ask for bail *The defendant did not apply for bail during the 15-minute court hearing.*

be held without bail *The judge ordered that Jones be held without bail.*

VERBS

be granted/given bail *Smith was granted bail when magistrates adjourned the case.*

be refused bail *Carter has been refused bail and will remain in custody.*

get bail *His wife says he hopes to get bail.*

jump bail (*also* **skip bail** *BrE*) (=not return for your trial as you promised) *He jumped bail and fled the country.*

bake *v*

to cook bread, cake, and other food in an oven, using dry heat

ADVERBS

freshly/newly baked *I love the smell of freshly baked bread.*

Bake or roast?
You usually use **roast** about meat. When you **roast** potatoes or other vegetables, you cook them in an oven using oil or fat from meat. You usually use **bake** about bread and cakes. When you **bake** potatoes, you cook them in an oven using dry heat only.

THESAURUS: bake
make, prepare, fix, rustle up, bake, roast, fry, sauté, stir-fry, deep fry, grill, broil, boil, steam, poach, barbecue, microwave → **cook**[1]

balance *n*

1 your ability to stand or walk steadily, without falling

VERBS

lose your balance (=become unsteady) *He suddenly felt weak and he lost his balance and fell over.*

keep your balance (=stay steady) *The sea was so rough that it was hard to keep my balance.*

regain/recover your balance (=become steady again) *He held on to the rope until he regained his balance.*

knock/throw sb off balance *The punch was hard enough to knock him off balance.*

PREPOSITIONS

off balance *The branch knocked him off balance and he fell off his bicycle.*

PHRASES

a sense of balance *Cats have a good sense of balance.*

2 a situation in which there is the right relationship between things

ADJECTIVES

a good/healthy balance *I try to eat a good balance of fish, meat, and fresh vegetables.*

a fine balance (=hard to achieve) *She manages to strike the fine balance between being a boss and being a mom.*

a delicate balance (=easily damaged) *Too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere upsets the delicate balance of gases.*

the right/proper/correct balance *With sport, you have to find the right balance between competition and fun.*

the natural balance *These chemicals will upset the natural balance of the pond.*

VERBS

get/find/achieve/strike a balance (=succeed in getting the balance right) *Finding the right balance between home and work is difficult.*

keep/maintain/preserve a balance *Try to keep a balance between your spending and your earnings.*

upset/disturb/disrupt the balance (=make it less equal or correct) *They don't want to upset the delicate balance of power in the region.*

change/alter/shift the balance *Will this election alter the balance of power in the Senate?*

redress/restore the balance (=make it equal or correct again) *What can be done to redress the balance in favour of the victims of crime?*

the balance changes/alters/shifts *After the strike, the balance of power had changed in favour of the workers.*

PREPOSITIONS

a balance between things *You won't be happy unless you keep a balance between work and leisure.*

PHRASES

the balance of power *The US wants to see the balance of power in Asia maintained.*

the balance of nature *Cutting down the forests seriously upsets the balance of nature.*

your work-life balance (=between your work and the rest of your life) *He is finding it difficult to get a good work-life balance.*

balanced *adj* THESAURUS **fair**, **healthy (2)**

bald *adj*

having little or no hair on your head

VERBS

go bald *He started going bald when he was in his thirties.*

bald + NOUNS

a bald head *The professor was a small man with a bald head.*

a bald patch/spot *He had a bald patch at the back of his head.*

ADVERBS

completely/totally bald *My father went completely bald when he was in his early forties.*

almost bald *His head was almost bald, except for a few hairs at the back.*

prematurely bald (=bald at an unusually young age) *He was tall and prematurely bald.*

ball *n*

a round object that is thrown, kicked, or hit in a game or sport

VERBS + ball

throw a ball *Suzy threw the ball to Matthew.*

catch a ball *He's useless at baseball; he can't even catch a ball.*

play with a ball *The dog was playing with a tennis ball.*

bounce a ball *He was in the yard bouncing a ball against the wall.*

hit/kick/strike a ball *He swung the bat and hit the ball as hard as he could.*

head the ball (=hit a ball with your head in a game of football) *Rooney headed the ball into the top corner.*

pass a ball (=kick or throw it to someone) *He passed the ball to his team-mate.*

get/win the ball *Then the Cowboys managed to get the ball again.*

miss the ball (=not catch or hit it) *I was trying hard but I kept missing the ball.*

drop the ball *He ran in to score when the keeper dropped the ball.*

ball + VERBS

a ball rolls *The ball rolled just past the hole.*

a ball bounces *In tennis, the ball must only bounce once.*

a ball flies/sails/soars (=moves through the air) *The ball flew over the goalkeeper's head and into the net.*

a ball rebounds (=hits something and moves back and away from it again) *The ball hit the goalpost and rebounded.*

a ball hits/strikes sth *The ball hit the ground once before bouncing over the line.*

NOUNS + ball

a tennis/cricket/golf/rugby/soccer ball *She was practising hitting golf balls.*

ball + NOUNS

a ball game *I'm not very good at ball games.*

In American English, a **ball game** means a baseball game: *We watched the **ball game** on TV.*

ballet *n*

a performance in which dancing and music tell a story without any speaking

ADJECTIVES

classical ballet *I love watching classical ballet, because the dancers always look so graceful.*

modern ballet *In modern ballet, the dancers do not have to wear special ballet shoes.*

VERBS

go to the ballet *I sometimes go to the ballet at Covent Garden.*

perform a ballet *Tchaikovsky's ballet was performed for the first time in 1877.*

study/learn ballet *He won a scholarship to study ballet in London.*

ballet + NOUNS

a ballet dancer *She trained as a classical ballet dancer.*

ballet dancing *Ballet dancing is much less popular among men.*

a ballet class/lesson *When I was a child, my mother sent me to ballet lessons.*

a ballet school *He studied at the Royal Ballet School.*

a ballet teacher *Volkova was the best ballet teacher in London.*

a ballet company (=a group of dancers who perform together) *The National Ballet Company will give a performance of 'Sleeping Beauty'.*

ballet shoes *She needs a new pair of ballet shoes.*

balloon *n*

1 a small rubber bag that is filled with air and used as a decoration or toy

VERBS

blow up a balloon (*also* **inflate a balloon** *formal*): *She helped me blow up the balloons for the children's party.*

burst a balloon *He burst the balloon with a pin.*

a balloon floats *I watched the balloon float up into the air.*

2 a large thing that is filled with gas, which flies in the sky

NOUNS + balloon

a hot-air balloon *He wants to go for a trip in a hot-air balloon.*

PHRASES

go up in a balloon *We went up in a balloon over the mountains.*

a balloon comes down *The balloon came down in the middle of a field.*

ban *n*

an official order that prevents something from being used or done

VERBS

put a ban on sth (*also* **place/impose a ban on sth** *formal*): *The government imposed a ban on smoking in public areas.*

lift a ban (=end it) *Following protests, the ban was lifted.*

support/oppose a ban *Would you support a ban on plastic bags?*

give sb a ban/get a ban *He was given a three-match ban after being sent off against Cologne.*

face a ban *He faced a four-year ban after failing a drugs test.*

enforce a ban (=make sure that people obey it) *The police don't seem to be enforcing the ban.*

break/defy a ban (=not obey it) *They have openly defied the international ban on torture.*

comply with a ban (=obey it) *Some countries refused to comply with the ban.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + ban

a complete/total ban *They are seeking a complete ban on nuclear testing.*

an outright/all-out ban (=a complete ban – used for emphasis) *An outright ban on gun*

ownership would not prevent gun crimes, because many guns are owned illegally.

a blanket ban (=including all possible cases or types) *They imposed a blanket ban on beef products from Europe.*

a permanent ban (=forever) *Many people think there should be a permanent ban on whale hunting.*

a lifetime ban *He faces a lifetime ban from athletics.*

an immediate ban *The group has called for an immediate ban on fur farming.*

a three-year/six-month etc ban *She got a twelve-month ban for drinking and driving.*

a temporary ban *There is a temporary ban on fishing in the area, in order to give fish stocks a chance to recover.*

an international/worldwide/global ban *He called for an international ban on landmines.*

a nationwide ban (=everywhere in a country) *There was a nationwide ban on strikes.*

an export/import ban *There is an export ban on this type of technology.*

PREPOSITIONS

a ban on sth *They want a total ban on cigarette advertising.*

PHRASES

call for a ban (=say there should be one) *Senators called for a ban on French products.*

a ban comes into effect/force (=it starts being used) *The ban will come into force on March 29th.*

band *n*

a group of musicians, especially a group that plays popular music

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + band

a rock/jazz/pop/blues etc band *Charlie was a drummer in a jazz band before he joined the Rolling Stones.*

the school band *Helen plays the trumpet in the school band.*

a live band (=one that is actually playing music, not a recording of someone playing music) *There's a live band at the club on Saturday nights.*

a boy band/girl band (=consisting of attractive teenage boys or girls) *He used to sing in a boy band.*

a brass band (=a band of brass instruments such as trumpets and trombones) *A brass band was playing in the park.*

VERBS + band

play/sing in a band (=be a musician or singer in a band) *Budd played in a rock band.*

join a band *He started learning the saxophone and joined the school band.*

form a band (=start one) *They formed their own band and released a single.*

⚠ Don't say 'make a band'.

lead a band (=be the lead singer, musician, or conductor of a band) *He led his own blues band in Memphis during the 1950s.*

conduct a band (=stand in front and direct how they play) *During the set, he was invited up to conduct the band.*

leave/quit a band *Brian quit the band halfway through the tour.*

band + VERBS

a band performs/plays *The band is performing live on Saturday night.* | *The band was playing a song by the Beatles.*

a band strikes up (=starts playing) *The band struck up the national anthem.*

a band records sth *The band has finished recording several songs for the new album.*

a band releases a song/record etc (=makes it available for people to buy) *The band has just released a new song.*

a band tours (=plays in several different cities or countries) *The band plans to tour the UK next summer.*

band + NOUNS

a band member/member of a band *He was one of the original band members.*

a band leader (=the conductor of a brass band, military band, or big band) *Glenn Miller was one of America's favorite big band leaders.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a band *All the guys in the band had long hair.*

with a band *We were the backing singers with his original band.*

bang *n* a sudden loud noise

ADJECTIVES

a loud bang *I was woken by a loud bang on the front door.*

a big bang *There was a big bang, followed by a cloud of smoke.*

a huge/massive/terrific/tremendous bang (*also* **an almighty bang** *BrE*): *The bomb exploded with a massive bang.*

VERBS

make a bang *The washing machine made a loud bang and stopped working.*

go bang (=make a sudden loud noise) *I was driving along the road when the engine suddenly went bang!*

hear a bang *She heard a sudden loud bang outside her window.*

PREPOSITIONS

with a bang *The door shut with a bang.*

bank *n*

1 a business that keeps and lends money

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bank

a big/large/major bank *Deutsche Bank is one of Germany's major banks.*

a high street bank (=one of the ordinary banks that most people use) *There's a lot of competition between the major high street banks.*

a commercial bank (=an ordinary bank, or one that deals with large businesses) *What was the role of UK commercial banks in the debt crisis?*

an investment/merchant bank (=one that buys and sells stocks and shares etc) *Investment banks are able to earn huge amounts of money.*

VERBS + bank

go to the bank *I have to go to the bank at lunchtime.*

pay sth into the bank *She paid the cheque into the bank.*

take sth out of the bank *He took 1,000 euros out of the bank on Friday.*

borrow sth from a bank *You may be able to borrow some money from the bank.*

rob a bank *They killed four policemen while robbing a bank.*

bail out a bank (=give it financial help to stop it failing) *Is it right that governments use taxpayers' money to bail out banks?*

bank + VERBS

a bank lends/loans sth *The bank lent me £10,000 to help me start the business.*

a bank charges (sb) sth *Banks charge interest on bank loans.*

a bank collapses/crashes (=it suddenly fails) *They lost all their savings when the bank collapsed.*

bank + NOUNS

a bank account *I'll put the money into my bank account today.*

your bank balance (=the amount of money in your bank account at a particular time) *You can check your bank balance online.*

a bank statement (=a list showing all the payments into and out of a bank account) *I used to get a written bank statement once a month, but now I have to look online.*

a bank loan *What's the interest rate on your bank loan?*

a bank robber/robbery *The bank robbers were never caught.*

a bank card *You can withdraw money using your bank card.*

a bank note (=a piece of paper money) *He paid with a $10 bank note.*

a bank manager *Could I make an appointment with the bank manager, please?*

a bank clerk (=a junior worker in a bank) *He began his career as a bank clerk.*

bank charges *Will I have to pay bank charges on this account?*

PREPOSITIONS

in a bank *We have very little money in the bank.*

2 land along the side of a river, lake, or canal

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bank

a river/canal bank *He runs along the canal bank every morning.*

the far/opposite/other bank (=the one furthest from you) *There was no bridge to get to the opposite bank.*

VERBS

a river bursts its banks (=the banks collapse and water comes over them) *The river had burst its banks and water was pouring down the streets.*

PREPOSITIONS

on the banks of sth *He enjoys fishing on the banks of the River Tees.*

along the banks of sth *A row of houses was built along the banks of the river.*

bankrupt *adj*

without enough money to pay what you owe

VERBS

go bankrupt *The firm went bankrupt before the building work was completed.*

be made bankrupt (*also* **be declared bankrupt** *formal*) (=a court officially says someone is bankrupt) *Her father was made bankrupt and they had to move out of their home.*

ADVERBS

almost/nearly/virtually bankrupt *The country was virtually bankrupt when he took over.*

In everyday English, you say that a company **goes out of business** when it cannot continue trading.

In more formal or technical English, you say that a company or person is **insolvent** (=they do not have enough money to pay their debts). You can also say that a company **goes into liquidation** (=it closes and sells off everything it has in order to try to pay off its debts).

bankruptcy *n*

the state of being officially unable to pay your debts

VERBS

face bankruptcy *The company now faces bankruptcy.*

be forced into/driven into bankruptcy *Many small firms are being forced into bankruptcy.*

avoid bankruptcy *The airline narrowly avoided bankruptcy.*

PHRASES

be close to bankruptcy *The company was close to bankruptcy following a massive drop in profits.*

be on the verge/brink/edge of bankruptcy (=close to bankruptcy) *He was on the verge of bankruptcy, with debts of over £800,000.*

go into bankruptcy *The business went into*

bankruptcy, owing their customers more than 12 million dollars.

file for bankruptcy (=officially ask to be declared bankrupt) *The company filed for bankruptcy, revealing a net debt of more than $18 billion.*

bar *n*

a place where alcoholic drinks are served

VERBS

go to/into a bar *Tony went into the bar and ordered a drink.*

drink in a bar *He spent all day drinking in a bar.*

hang out in a bar *informal* (=spend a lot of time in a bar) *I was lonely, so I started hanging out in my local bar.*

run a bar (=be in charge of a bar) *Mr Mills and his wife had been running the bar for two years.*

NOUNS + bar

a hotel bar *Would you like to have a drink in the hotel bar?*

a cocktail bar *We arranged to meet in a cocktail bar before going out to dinner.*

a wine bar *He took me to a trendy wine bar.*

bar + NOUNS

bar staff *The bar staff began clearing up at the end of the evening.*

a bar owner/manager *A bar owner can lose their licence for selling alcohol to someone under 18.*

a bar fight *He got in a bar fight over a girl.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a bar *I ended up in a bar near the station.*

at the bar *Several people were at the bar, waiting to be served.*

Bar or pub?

In American English, people usually say **bar**.

In British English, people usually say **pub**.

A **bar** is used about part of another building such as a hotel or restaurant: *They arranged to meet in the hotel **bar**.* The **bar** also means the counter where you can go to buy drinks: *He went over to the **bar** and ordered another pint of beer.*

THESAURUS: bar

bit, lump, scrap, strip, sheet, slice, chunk, hunk, block, slab, cube, wedge, bar, segment, rasher, fragment, crumb, speck, drop → **piece**

barbaric *adj* THESAURUS **cruel (1)**

bare *adj* THESAURUS **empty**, **naked (1)**

bargain *n*

something you buy very cheaply or for much less than its usual price

ADJECTIVES

a good/great bargain *I got some great bargains in the sales.*

an amazing/incredible/fantastic/terrific bargain *The house they bought was an amazing bargain.*

a real bargain *You can sometimes pick up a real bargain in the local market.*

an absolute bargain *I think £100 for a year's membership at a gym is an absolute bargain.*

VERBS

look/search/hunt for a bargain *In January the stores are full of people looking for bargains.*

get a bargain *Shoppers always like to think they are getting a bargain.*

find a bargain *If you shop around, you might find a bargain.*

pick up/snap up a bargain *informal* (=find one) *You can often pick up a bargain at an auction.*

bargain + NOUNS

a bargain price *In the sales you can get a fully fitted kitchen at a bargain price.*

a bargain hunter (=someone looking for a bargain) *Bargain hunters queued for hours before the store opened.*

bargain hunting *We went bargain hunting in the January sales.*

barrier *n*

a problem, rule etc that prevents people from doing something, or limits what they can do

Grammar

Often plural.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + barrier

trade barriers *Removing trade barriers helps to create a free market.*

the language barrier (=the problem of not understanding people who speak a different language) *Living in China was hard for me at first because of the language barrier.*

cultural/racial/class/social barriers *Dr King helped African Americans overcome the racial barriers that held them back for so long.*

artificial barriers *I think the artificial barriers created by society lead to conflict between the sexes.*

a psychological barrier *Being unemployed for a long time creates a psychological barrier to getting a job.*

technical/legal/political barriers *Most of the technical barriers have been solved.*

VERBS

put up/build barriers (*also* **erect barriers** *formal*): *Sometimes managers put up barriers, which can make it hard for staff to communicate with them.*

create/set up barriers *Creating trade barriers may protect jobs in the short term, but will eventually lead to job losses.*

remove/eliminate/get rid of/lift barriers *Will changing the law remove all the barriers to trade?*

break down/tear down barriers *The social barriers between the two communities have gradually broken down.*

cross barriers (*also* **transcend barriers** *formal*) (=avoid barriers that usually exist) *Music has this wonderful ability to cross cultural barriers.*

reduce/lower barriers *We should be trying to reduce barriers between social classes, not create them.*

overcome barriers (=deal with them successfully) *There are still many barriers to overcome.*

PREPOSITIONS

a barrier to sth *The high cost of childcare remains the biggest barrier to women returning to work.*

a barrier between sb/sth *His stupid pride had become a barrier between them.*

base[1] *n*

1 the bottom part of something

ADJECTIVES

a heavy base *The lamp's heavy base prevents it from tipping over.*

a round/square/triangular/circular base *Each of the columns supporting the wall stands on a square base.*

a metal/wooden/concrete base *You need a frying pan with a solid metal base.*

PREPOSITIONS

the base of sth *The base of the statue is made of stone.*

2 a place from where an organization or group does its activities

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + base

a military/naval/air/air-force base *Clark Air Base was the largest air base outside the US.*

sb's home base *The company controls its world operations from its home base in Detroit.*

VERBS

have a base *The airline has its base in London.*

establish a base *The company wants to establish a base in Europe.*

build a base *The US began building military bases inside Afghanistan.*

base + NOUNS

base camp *The mountaineers set up base camp at the foot of the mountain.*

3 a starting point for doing something

ADJECTIVES

a good/excellent base *His work provided a good base for other scientists.*

a solid/firm/strong base (=one that you can build upon) *Learning to play the piano gave me a solid base for learning other instruments.*

a sound/secure base (=one that is dependable and will not change) *A degree provides you with a sound base on which to build your career.*

a broad base (=one that includes many different things or people) *The first year of the course aims to provide students with a broad base of knowledge.*

VERBS

have a base *The family now have a solid base on which to build for the future.*

provide a base *This report will provide the base for future discussions.*

build a base *The company aims to build its customer base by 50%.*

give sb a base/provide sb with a base *His research provided us with a good base for our work.*

PREPOSITIONS

a base for sth *Their manufacturing industry should provide a secure base for future growth.*

base[2] *v* to use something as a basis

Grammar
Base is usually used in the passive, and is always followed by **on** (or **upon** in more formal English).

ADVERBS

base sth mostly/mainly/largely on sth *The students' grades are based mostly on test scores.*

base sth solely/entirely/exclusively on sth (=only on something) *The case against him is based solely on a single complaint from one customer.*

base sth partly on sth *The decision will be based partly on the candidate's qualifications and partly on their interview.*

base sth loosely on sth (=in a way that is not exact) *The movie is based loosely on his life.*

NOUNS

base a decision/judgment/conclusion on sth *I prefer to make a decision based on all the facts.*

base an argument on sth *His argument is based on a misunderstanding of the situation.*

base figures/calculations on sth *These figures are based on data from the Bank of England.*

base results/findings/observations on sth *They based their findings on the statements of people who had witnessed the accident.*

base an assumption/belief/opinion on sth (=something you believe to be true is based on something) *Many of their beliefs seemed to be based on superstition.*

baseball *n*

an outdoor game between two teams of nine

players, in which players try to get points by hitting a ball and running around four bases

ADJECTIVES

professional/amateur baseball *He started playing professional baseball after high school.*

major-league/minor-league baseball *Some kids dream of becoming a major-league baseball player.*

VERBS

play baseball *He plays baseball for the New York Yankees.*

watch baseball *I enjoy watching baseball on TV.*

baseball + NOUNS

a baseball game *Do you want to go to the baseball game?*

a baseball player *Babe Ruth was probably the most famous baseball player of all time.*

a baseball team *He is captain of the Texas Rangers baseball team.*

a baseball fan *58,000 baseball fans crowded into Candlestick Park.*

a baseball bat/cap/glove *He was wearing his baseball cap back to front.*

a baseball stadium/park/field *They're building a new major-league baseball stadium.*

a baseball league *The Chinese Professional Baseball League was formed in 2002.*

basic *adj*

1 used about the most important or necessary part of something, or about something that you need to know in order to understand something

NOUNS

the basic idea/concept *The basic idea is easy to explain.*

basic information/facts *Customers are looking for basic information about the products.*

basic knowledge/understanding/skills *The book assumes that the reader has a basic knowledge of the subject.*

a basic question *The interviewer will ask you some basic questions about your education and work experience.*

a basic part/element of sth *He showed me the basic elements of the system.*

basic rules/principles *Most people understand the basic rules of healthy living.*

a basic right *People have a basic right to control their own lives.*

basic needs (*also* **basic requirements** *formal*): *The body has several basic needs including food, sleep, and exercise.*

basic research/education/training *We need basic research into the causes of mental illness.*

the basic structure/pattern/framework *All computers have the same basic structure.*

basic pay/salary/pension (=the money you get before any special payments) *On top of the basic salary, there are numerous other benefits.*

PREPOSITIONS

basic to sth *These medical techniques are basic to the control of infection.*

THESAURUS: basic

fundamental
principle | belief | values | problem | question | issue | difference | right | aim
more important than anything else – used for emphasis:
Freedom of speech is a fundamental principle of any democracy. | The fundamental problem is a lack of resources. | There are some fundamental differences between their philosophies. | The fundamental aim of education is to prepare students for life. | These values are ***fundamental to*** *our society. | This issue* ***is of fundamental importance****.*

core
business | issue | belief | values | skill | area | part | element | teaching | concern
more important than anything else – used for emphasis:
The company's core business is selling food and household products. | The party has abandoned its core values (=the things that it believes to be most important). *| Information technology is a core part of our work. | The great world religions share many of the same core teachings.*

Core or fundamental?
These words mean the same thing and are used with many of the same collocations. **Fundamental** sounds more formal.

essential
part | element | ingredient | point | feature | aspect | characteristic | difference | problem
used when saying that something is very important, especially because you cannot do something without it, or something cannot exist without it:
Meetings and discussions are an essential part of many jobs. | The essential point is this: either we act now, or the whole future of our planet is uncertain. | One of the essential differences between humans and computers is that humans are more likely to make mistakes. | The essential problem is that we don't have enough time.

central
role | issue | theme | part | question | concern
very important and having a lot of influence or receiving a lot of attention:
Religion plays a central role in her life. | Personal responsibility is a central theme in his work. | For many economists, the central question is how to create a free market which is also a fair one. | Creating jobs is ***central to*** *government policy.*

B

underlying
cause | **aim** | **objective** | **principle** | **factor** | **problem**
underlying causes, aims etc are basic and important, but are not immediately obvious, or not stated directly:
When treating any health problem, it's always important to consider the underlying causes. | *Their underlying aim was to increase profits.* | *Painting and photography are very different, but many of the underlying principles are the same.*

THESAURUS: basic

plain, crude → **simple**

2 not high level, or not advanced

NOUNS

a basic knowledge/understanding *I only have a very basic knowledge of the Chinese language*
a basic skill *Students learn basic skills such as reading and writing.*
a basic technique *The course covers the basic techniques of sailing.*
basic training *The new police officers receive three months of basic training.*
basic equipment/tools *Hospitals are short of basic equipment such as needles and bandages.*
a basic model *The basic model only costs $100, but it has a very small memory.*

THESAURUS: basic

elementary
course | **level** | **textbook**
elementary courses, books etc teach students about the most basic parts of a subject:
I only took an elementary course in biology. | *The book is designed for adults at elementary level.* | *He published a series of elementary textbooks on astronomy.*

rudimentary
knowledge | **skills** | **training** | **tools** | **equipment**
if you have a rudimentary knowledge of something, you know a little about it. Rudimentary tools and equipment are very basic and can only be used for doing very simple things:
She only had a rudimentary knowledge of the sport when she started playing. | *The soldiers are given rudimentary training in handling explosives.* | *Many of the schools are without rudimentary equipment such as blackboards.*

Rudimentary or basic?
Rudimentary sounds a little more formal than **basic**. **Rudimentary** is often used about the simplest and most basic things.

plain
language | **English**
plain language uses simple and clear words, so that you cannot misunderstand the meaning:
The poem uses plain language which anyone can understand. | *She explained what the document meant in plain English.*

primitive
method | **technology** | **tools** | **weapons** | **form**
primitive methods, tools etc are very basic compared to more modern ones, and are usually not as good:
The primitive methods of construction meant that houses only lasted for a few years. | *The recording was made using very primitive technology.* | *The workers had to use very primitive tools when building the temple.* | *Their primitive weapons were useless against tanks and machine guns.* | *The people got food from hunting and from primitive forms of agriculture.*

crude
method | **attempt** | **version** | **form** | **shelter**
made or done using very basic methods or materials, and therefore not very accurate or effective:
The researchers used a rather crude method of measuring productivity. | *The myths were a crude attempt to explain the origins of the universe.* | *The plant breeders used a crude form of genetic engineering.* | *They made a crude shelter out of a few branches and some leaves.*

basis *n*
the facts, ideas, or things from which something can be developed

ADJECTIVES

a good basis *Love and trust form a good basis for marriage.*
a sound/firm/solid basis *Drama school may provide a sound basis for an acting career.*

VERBS

be/form the basis of sth *This research will form the basis of a book.*
provide a basis for sth *The poem provided the basis for an interesting class discussion.*
become the basis of/for sth *His design became the basis for the new engine.*
serve as a basis for sth *The document will serve as a basis for negotiations.*
establish/lay the basis for sth (=create something from which something can be developed) *The agreement established a sound basis for international commerce.*

PHRASES

on the basis of sth (=because of a particular fact or situation) *A decision will be made on the basis of your answers to a number of questions.*
have no basis in fact (=not be true) *Many of these rumours have no basis in fact.*

basket *n*

a container made of thin pieces of plastic, wire, or wood woven together, used to carry things or put things in

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + basket

a shopping basket *She paid for the apples and put them in her shopping basket.*

a wastepaper basket *BrE*, **a waste basket** *AmE*: *He threw her letter in the wastepaper basket.*

a picnic basket *We took a picnic basket and a rug.*

a laundry/clothes basket (=for dirty clothes) *Will you please put your dirty socks in the laundry basket?*

a bread/fruit/flower basket *There was a bread basket on the table.*

a dog basket *The puppies were sleeping in the dog basket.*

VERBS

put sth in/into a basket *Put the fruit in the basket on the table.*

take sth from/out of a basket *We were all surprised when she took a little dog out of her basket.*

carry/hold a basket *She was carrying a basket of flowers.*

a basket is filled with sth *The basket was filled with loaves of bread.*

PREPOSITIONS

a basket of sth *A basket of logs sat next to the fire.*

in a basket *Is the dog in his basket?*

PHRASES

a basket full of sth *She prepared baskets full of food.*

basketball *n*

a game played indoors between two teams of five players, in which each team tries to win points by throwing a ball through a net

VERBS

play basketball *She has been playing basketball since she was 12.*

watch basketball *I often watch basketball on TV.*

basketball + NOUNS

a basketball game/match *Are you going to the basketball game?*

a basketball player *He dreams of becoming a professional basketball player one day.*

a basketball team *He plays for the New York Knicks basketball team.*

a basketball court *The college has several indoor basketball courts.*

a basketball league *She plays in the American Basketball League.*

a basketball tournament/competition *The Philadelphia 76ers won a four-team basketball tournament.*

a basketball coach *My dad used to be a high school basketball coach.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + basketball

professional/amateur basketball *Professional basketball players can earn a lot of money.*

college/high school basketball *Joe used to play college basketball and he's very fast on the court.*

Basketball or basket?

⚠ Don't confuse **basketball** (=the game) and **basket** (=the thing that you throw the ball into). Don't say 'I like playing basket'. Say **I like playing basketball.**

bath *n*

1 an occasion when you wash your body in a bath

VERBS

have a bath *BrE*, **take a bath** *AmE*: *She usually has a bath in the evening.*

give sb a bath *He's upstairs giving the baby a bath.*

need a bath *After a week of camping, I really needed a bath.*

run a bath (=put water in a bath) *I went upstairs and ran a bath.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bath

a quick bath *Do I have time for a quick bath?*

a long bath *A long hot bath is a great way of relaxing.*

a hot/warm/cool bath *Why don't you have a nice warm bath?*

a relaxing/soothing/luxurious bath (=which makes you feel relaxed or very comfortable) *Treat yourself to a long luxurious bath.*

bath + NOUNS

bath time (=the time when someone usually has a bath) *Come on, Lucy, it's bath time.*

bath water *The bath water is getting cold.*

a bath towel *She handed him a soft white bath towel.*

2 *BrE* a long container for washing yourself in

VERBS

get in/into the bath *Old people often have difficulty getting into the bath.*

get out of the bath *I had to get out of the bath to answer the phone.*

soak in the bath *Try soaking in the bath to ease your aching muscles.*

lie in the bath *He's been lying in the bath for an hour.*

fill/empty the bath *I forgot to empty the bath.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the bath *"Where's Ben?" "He's in the bath."*

This meaning of **bath** is used in British English. In American English, people say **bathtub**.

battery *n*
an object that provides a supply of electricity for something such as a radio, car, or toy

ADJECTIVES

a flat battery *BrE*, **a dead battery** *AmE* (=with no more electricity in it) *The car's got a flat battery.*

a low battery (=with little electricity in it) *He could see the battery was low on his laptop.*

a rechargeable battery (=one that you can use again after putting more electricity in it) *The camera uses rechargeable batteries.*

a spare battery (=an extra one, in case you need it) *Take a torch and spare batteries.*

NOUNS + battery

a car/torch/phone battery *Have you checked your mobile phone battery?*

VERBS + battery

change/replace the battery (=put a new battery in something) *You may need to change the battery in the smoke alarm.*

charge/recharge a battery (=put more electricity in it) *It takes eight hours to fully recharge the battery.*

use batteries (*also* **run on batteries**) *The clock runs on two 9-volt batteries.*

put a battery in sth *She had put new batteries in the radio.*

drain/discharge a battery (=make it lose electricity) *If you forget to turn your car's lights off, it drains the battery.*

disconnect a battery *We had to disconnect the battery to stop the burglar alarm from ringing.*

battery + VERBS

a battery runs out/runs down (=there is no more electricity in it) *I think the batteries are running out.*

battery + NOUNS

battery power *You can plug your laptop in or use it on battery power.*

a battery charger (=a piece of equipment for charging batteries) *Don't forget to pack your battery charger.*

battle *n*

1 a fight between opposing people or armies

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + battle

a fierce battle *They captured the town after a fierce battle with government soldiers.*

a bloody battle (=with a lot of killing and injuries) *The temple was the scene of a bloody battle in 1984.*

a pitched battle (=a violent battle between groups of people, usually not soldiers) *Students fought pitched battles with police during the demonstrations.*

a gun battle *Two men were left wounded after the gun battle.*

a street battle *He was killed in a street battle in 1998.*

VERBS

fight a battle (*also* **engage in/wage a battle** *formal*): *He pretended he was a soldier, going to war and fighting battles.*

do battle (=fight) *The army was ready to do battle again.*

win/lose a battle *Who won the Battle of Gettysburg?*

a battle rages (=a fierce battle happens) *People hid in basements while the battle was raging.*

PREPOSITIONS

a battle between sb *He was injured in a battle between rival gangs.*

a battle against sb *Why did the Celts lose the battle against the Romans?*

the battle for sth *The battle for the Atlantic intensified.*

in battle *Richard III was killed in battle in 1485.*

PHRASES

lead/send sb into battle *He died leading his men into battle.*

prepare (sb) for battle *Every general has his own method for preparing his troops for battle.*

ready for battle *Every ship was ready for battle.*

the field of battle *They showed great courage on the field of battle.*

2 an attempt to solve a difficult problem or change an unpleasant situation

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + battle

a long/lengthy battle *His long battle with alcoholism is no secret.*

a tough/hard battle (=difficult) *He faces a tough battle to prove his innocence.*

a fierce/bitter battle *The two companies fought a bitter battle to win the contract.*

a running battle (=that continues or is repeated over a long time) *Her running battle with mice has not yet ended.*

an uphill battle (=very difficult) *For most people losing weight is an uphill battle.*

a constant battle *As a student, life was a constant battle against debt.*

a losing battle (=one that is going to fail) *She was fighting a losing battle to stop herself from crying.*

a legal/courtroom battle *They wanted to avoid an expensive courtroom battle.*

VERBS

fight a battle (*also* **wage a battle** *formal*): *The police are fighting a tough battle against crime.*

do battle with sb *They had to do battle with producers to keep the scene in the movie.*

win/lose a battle *It's essential to win the battle against inflation.*

face a battle *Paul faces a frantic battle to be fit for the match in November.*

PREPOSITIONS

a battle with sth *She died after a long battle with cancer.*

a battle against sth *The battle against car crime continues.*

a battle between sb *The battle between James and his insurance company has not yet been resolved.*

a battle for sth *Scientology has fought long battles for acceptance as a religion.*

a battle over sth *There would be a battle over who paid for dinner.*

beach *n*

an area of sand or small stones at the edge of the sea or a lake

ADJECTIVES

a crowded beach *In the summer the beaches get very crowded.*

a quiet beach (=with few people on it) *The beaches on this side of the island are quieter.*

a deserted/empty beach (=with no one on it) *We took a boat to a deserted beach.*

a sandy/rocky beach *Corfu is known for its sandy beaches.*

a white/golden beach (=with white or golden sand) *The house was beside a dazzling white beach.*

a private/public beach *The hotel has its own private beach.*

a secluded beach (=one that is peaceful, has few people, and is not near other places) *We had a picnic on a small secluded beach.*

an unspoilt beach (=not made worse by tourism) *The island is famous for its unspoilt beaches.*

VERBS

lie on the beach *I find it boring just lying on the beach all day.*

go to the beach *They've gone to the beach for the weekend.*

walk on/along the beach *She loved to walk along the beach in the early morning.*

beach + NOUNS

a beach holiday *BrE*, **a beach vacation** *AmE* (=spent mainly at the beach) *She loves beach holidays, while he prefers city breaks.*

a beach resort (=a place near a beach where people go on holiday) *This is one of the most popular beach resorts in Greece.*

PREPOSITIONS

on the beach *We've been on the beach all day.*

at the beach *They spent the morning at the beach.*

bear *v*

to bravely accept or deal with a painful, difficult, or upsetting situation

PHRASES

can't bear/be unable to bear sth *Fiona was unable to bear the thought of selling the house.*

can hardly bear sth (=find something very difficult or upsetting to do) *He was so ashamed that he could hardly bear to look at her.*

be hard to bear *The situation was very hard to bear.*

be more than sb can bear *He sometimes felt the grief was more than he could bear.*

as hot/long/much etc as you can bear *Make the water as hot as you can bear.*

bear + NOUNS

bear the pain *He knew that he couldn't bear the pain much longer.*

bear the heat/cold *Some people find it hard to bear the heat in the summer.*

bear the strain/pressure *Mark couldn't bear the pressure of the job any longer.*

bear the thought *I can't bear the thought of living without you.*

beard *n*

hair that grows around a man's chin and cheeks

ADJECTIVES

a long/short beard *The old man had a long white beard.*

a pointed beard *He had a small moustache and a pointed beard.*

a full/luxuriant beard (=with a lot of hair) *He wore a luxuriant beard that was red in colour.*

an unkempt beard (=not neat or clean) *His beard was tangled and unkempt.*

a straggly beard (=long and not neat) *The young man had a scraggly red beard.*

a neatly/closely trimmed beard *His closely trimmed beard had turned the color of snow.*

VERBS

have a beard *Karl Marx had a beard.*

wear/sport a beard (=have a beard – used in written descriptions) *The actor sported a neat black beard.*

grow a beard *He's not old enough to grow a beard.*

shave (off) your beard *When he shaved off his beard, he looked a lot younger.*

trim your beard (=cut it, especially to make it look neat) *He trimmed his beard in the mirror.*

stroke your beard *Karlinsky stroked his beard and smiled.*

beat *v*

to defeat someone in a game, race, election etc, especially by getting more points, votes etc than them

ADVERBS

easily beat sb *Jason easily beats me at chess every time we play.*

narrowly beat sb (=by only a few points, votes etc) *New Zealand narrowly beat South Africa.*

comfortably beat sb (=by more than a few points, votes etc) *He comfortably beat the other candidates in the election.*

comprehensively beat sb (=in a clear and definite way that leaves no doubt) *It was only the second time we had been so comprehensively beaten.*

soundly beat sb (=in a clear and definite way that leaves no doubt) *In each event she soundly beat her opponents.*

PREPOSITIONS

beat sb at tennis/golf/chess etc *My brother always beats me at chess.*

beat sb by 3 points/2 goals/20 votes etc *The Italian team beat France by two points.*

PHRASES

beat sb into second/third etc place *He was beaten into second place in the Monaco Grand Prix.*

beat sb hands down *informal* (=beat someone very easily) *He should be able to beat them all hands down.*

Beat or defeat?

Beat is more informal and is the usual word to use in everyday spoken English. **Defeat** is more formal and is the usual word to use in writing.

When talking about wars and fighting, you usually use **defeat**: *The Greeks **defeated** the Persians in a famous battle.*

beautiful *adj*

very nice to look at, or giving you a lot of pleasure

NOUNS

a beautiful woman/girl/baby *Marilyn Monroe was one of the world's most beautiful women.*

beautiful face/hair/eyes *She has beautiful blonde hair.*

a beautiful place/country/city *South Africa is a very beautiful country.*

beautiful countryside/scenery/view *From the terrace there is a beautiful view over Sorrento.*

beautiful day/morning/weather (=with blue skies and a lot of sunshine) *The weather was beautiful and the sky was blue all day.*

beautiful music *The music was so beautiful that it almost made me want to cry.*

a beautiful book/film/poem *He wrote some of the most beautiful poems ever written.*

a beautiful flower *Her husband bought her some beautiful flowers for her birthday.*

a beautiful voice *He sings with a beautiful deep voice.*

a beautiful sound/smell/taste *The roses have a beautiful smell.*

VERBS

look beautiful *Diana looked beautiful in a long silk dress.*

ADVERBS

really/absolutely beautiful *Thank you for the flowers. They're absolutely beautiful.*

incredibly/extraordinarily beautiful (=extremely beautiful) *Fall in New England is incredibly beautiful.*

stunningly/breathtakingly beautiful (=extremely beautiful in a surprising way) *The Arctic dawn is stunningly beautiful.*

hauntingly beautiful (=beautiful, and often a little sad, in a way that you remember for a long time) *The singer had a hauntingly beautiful voice.*

exquisitely beautiful (=beautiful in a delicate way) *An exquisitely beautiful butterfly landed on the leaf.*

Describing men

You don't normally use **beautiful** about men. You use **good-looking** or **handsome**.

THESAURUS: beautiful

handsome

man | boy | prince | face | features

a handsome man or boy looks very attractive:

Dan was a strong handsome man. | She dreamt that a handsome prince would marry her.

Handsome is also sometimes used in literature, to describe a good-looking woman who has a strong face: *His mother was a tall **handsome** woman.*

good-looking

man | woman | boy | guy | girl | couple | face

a good-looking person looks attractive. **Good-looking** is much more common in spoken English than **handsome** or **beautiful**:

*There are no good-looking men in our office. | Her husband is **incredibly good-looking** – he looks like a movie star. | Do you **think he's good-looking**?*

pretty

girl | woman | child | baby | face | dress | clothes | flower | village | town | garden | colour

a pretty woman, girl, or baby looks nice and has a nice face. A pretty thing or place looks nice, but is usually not very big:

What a pretty little baby! | She has a very pretty face. | That's a pretty dress you're wearing. | They stayed in a pretty little village in the mountains. | The curtains are a very pretty colour.

You can also use **pretty** about names that sound nice: *Annalise? That's a **pretty name**.*

attractive
woman | **man** | **girl** | **town** | **location** | **appearance**
an attractive person looks nice, in a way that makes you want to have a relationship with him or her. An attractive place or thing is nice to look at:
I think she's a very attractive woman. | *It is an attractive town and there are plenty of things to see.* | *If food has an attractive appearance, it often seems to taste better as well.* | *A lot of men* ***found*** *her* ***attractive****.*

cute *informal*
baby | **kid** | **boy** | **girl** | **animal** | **dog** | **puppy** | **picture** | **face**
nice to look at – used about animals, babies, and children:
The baby is very cute. | *What a cute little dog!* | *There was a cute picture of a kitten.*

In informal American English, people also use **cute** about someone who looks attractive in a way that makes you want to have a relationship with him or her:
I think Joe's really ***cute****!*

lovely *BrE spoken*
place | **house** | **garden** | **view** | **smile** | **colour** | **picture** | **day** | **weather** | **name**
very nice:
They have a lovely house in the country. | *He has a lovely smile.* | *The weather has been* ***absolutely lovely****.* | *I think Natasha is a lovely name.* | *She* ***looks lovely*** *in her wedding dress.*

gorgeous *spoken*
dress | **man** | **woman** | **girl** | **place** | **colour** | **flowers** | **day** | **weather**
extremely nice to look at – used mainly by women:
I love your dress. It's gorgeous! | *He is always surrounded by gorgeous women.* | *His eyes are a gorgeous blue colour.* | *The weather has been gorgeous all week.*

glorious
weather | **day** | **morning**
glorious weather is very good, with blue sky and a lot of sunshine:
Everyone was at the beach, enjoying the glorious weather. | *It was a glorious sunny day.* | *It was a glorious September morning.*

picturesque
village | **town** | **surroundings** | **setting** | **view** | **house** | **cottage** | **harbour** | **landscape** | **countryside**
a picturesque place is pleasant to look at, especially because it is old and interesting:
We stayed in the picturesque village of Herisau. | *The hotel is situated in picturesque surroundings.* | *Picturesque cottages surround the village green.*

magnificent
view | **scenery** | **setting** | **surroundings** | **building** | **palace** | **animal** | **horse**
very big, beautiful, and impressive:
There were magnificent views over the old city. | *The train travels through some magnificent scenery.* | *The Bengal tiger is a magnificent animal.*

stunning
view | **scenery** | **countryside** | **setting**
used about people who look very beautiful, or about places that are very beautiful and impressive:
There is a stunning view of the city. | *Alaska has some stunning scenery.* | *The whole place is* ***simply stunning****.* | *You* ***look stunning*** *in that outfit.*

breathtaking/spectacular
view | **scenery** | **landscape** | **beauty**
a breathtaking or spectacular view is very beautiful and impressive in a surprising way:
There are breathtaking views from the top of the mountain. | *The river flows through some spectacular scenery.*

exquisite
object | **flower** | **jewellery** | **detail** | **beauty**
used about things that have very beautiful small details:
The museum is full of exquisite objects that were made by skilled craftsmen. | *The plants have exquisite blue flowers.* | *The statues are carved in exquisite detail.*

ANTONYMS **beautiful → ugly (1)**

beauty *n*
a quality that makes someone or something very nice to look at or listen to

ADJECTIVES

great beauty *She was a woman of great beauty.*
natural beauty *Visitors are attracted by the island's natural beauty.*
breathtaking/stunning beauty (=great and surprising beauty) *The region is famous for the breathtaking beauty of its mountains.*
exquisite beauty (=great beauty because something is very delicately made) *Visitors are impressed by the exquisite beauty of the carving.*
sheer beauty (=the fact that something is so beautiful) *The sheer beauty of the music made him want to cry.*
unspoilt beauty *They want to protect the unspoilt beauty of the desert.*
feminine beauty *She represented the ideal of feminine beauty at the time.*

VERBS + beauty

admire/enjoy the beauty of sb/sth *He was admiring the beauty of the stars in the night sky.*

share) *I want my own bedroom – I hate sharing with my sister.*

a hotel bedroom *All the hotel bedrooms have a telephone and a balcony.*

separate bedrooms *She and her husband have separate bedrooms.*

a single bedroom (=with a bed for one person) *We have one single bedroom and two doubles.*

a double bedroom (=with a big bed for two people) *I'd like to book a double bedroom for two nights, please.*

a twin bedroom (=with two single beds) *Would you prefer a double or a twin bedroom?*

an en suite bedroom (=with its own bathroom) *The hotel has 100 en suite bedrooms.*

VERBS

share a bedroom with sb *He shares a bedroom with his two brothers.*

bedroom + NOUNS

the bedroom door/window/wall/floor etc *Did you shut the bedroom window?*

bee *n*

a black and yellow flying insect that makes honey

VERBS

a bee buzzes *Bees buzzed around the flowers, collecting pollen.*

a bee stings (=it makes a hole in your skin which is often painful) *She was stung by a bee as she walked through the field.*

a bee flies somewhere *A bee flew in through the open window.*

keep bees *My dad used to keep bees and sell the honey.*

bee + NOUNS

a bee sting *For most people, a bee sting is painful, but not serious.*

PHRASES

a swarm of bees (=a large group of bees) *A swarm of bees flew out of the hive.*

begin *v* THESAURUS start[1] (1), (2)

beginner *n*

someone who has just started to do or learn something

ADJECTIVES

an absolute/complete/total beginner *I was a complete beginner and I had never played golf before.*

a real beginner *If you are a real beginner, you won't understand even the most basic words of the language.*

a false beginner (=someone who has studied before, but is still at a low level) *The course is for students who are false beginners.*

beginning *n*

the start or first part of an event, story, period of time etc

VERBS

mark the beginning of sth (=be the beginning of something) *This event marked the beginning of a ten-year worldwide depression.*

signal/herald the beginning of sth (=show that something will happen soon) *The release of Mandela signalled the beginning of the end of South Africa's racist system.*

see the beginning of sth (=be the time when something important starts to happen) *The 1970s saw the beginning of a technological revolution.*

ADJECTIVES

a new beginning *The country needed a new government and a new beginning.*

⚠ Don't say 'a fresh beginning'. Say **a new beginning** or **a fresh start**.

PREPOSITIONS

at the beginning *The store opened at the beginning of February.* | *There is a quotation at the beginning of the book.*

in the beginning *In the beginning I found the work quite hard.*

since the beginning *Since the beginning of the year, 238 soldiers have been killed.*

from the beginning *I opposed this war from the beginning.*

PHRASES

right from/at the beginning from/at the very beginning (=used for emphasis) *He had been lying to me from the very beginning.*

from beginning to end *This piece of work was a challenge from beginning to end.*

start at the beginning (=start a story or activity at the first part) *Just start at the beginning and tell us exactly what happened.*

sth is just/only the beginning (=used to emphasize that many more things will happen) *Signing the contract is just the beginning of a long process.*

THESAURUS: beginning

start

the beginning of something, or the way something begins. **Start** is a little less formal than **beginning**:

*Tomorrow marks **the start of** the presidential election campaign.* | *It was not a **good start to** the day.* | *The runners lined up for **the start of the race**.* | *We wanted to give our marriage a **fresh start*** (=one in which you forget about all the problems and bad things that have happened). | *I **knew from the start** that it wasn't going to be an easy climb.*

commencement *formal*
the beginning of something – used especially in official contexts:
Tomorrow ***marks the commencement of*** *the academic year. | The* ***commencement of*** *the contract is on January 1st.*

origin
the point from which something starts to exist:
He wrote a book about ***the origins of*** *the universe. | One idea concerning* ***the origin of*** *human language is that humans began to copy the sounds of nature. | The tradition* ***has its origins*** *in medieval times.*

Origin is often used in the plural.

the onset of sth
the time when something bad begins, such as illness, old age, or cold weather:
An active lifestyle can delay the ***onset of*** *many* ***diseases*** *common to aging. | The weather became colder, marking the* ***onset of winter.***

dawn *literary*
the beginning of an important period of time in history:
People have worshipped gods ***since the dawn of civilization.*** *| Apples have been with us* ***since the dawn of time.*** *| Here we are, at the* ***dawn of a new age*** *of genetics and the biosciences. | At the* ***dawn of*** *the 21st* ***century****, nations depend more on each other than at any other point in human history.*

birth
the beginning of something important that will change many people's lives:
We have seen the ***birth of democracy*** *in South Africa. | The* ***birth of*** *the environmental* ***movement*** *was in the 1960s. | This was the* ***birth of*** *a new* ***nation****.*

ANTONYMS **beginning → end[1] (1)**

behave *v*
to do things that are good, bad, sensible etc

ADVERBS

behave badly/disgracefully/outrageously *I think he behaved very badly towards you.*
behave differently *Children sometimes behave completely differently at home and at school.*
behave oddly/strangely *The dog's owner noticed that it was behaving oddly.*
behave sensibly/responsibly *I'm sure you'll behave sensibly while I'm away.*
behave properly *These kids don't know how to behave properly in restaurants.*
behave impeccably (=extremely well) *We expect you to behave impeccably when you are on a field trip representing your school.*

PREPOSITIONS

behave with dignity/courage etc *These people behaved with great dignity even when they were abused and insulted.*

PHRASES

behave like/as if/as though (=as if a particular thing is true, usually when it is not) *He behaved as if he had never met me before.*

behaviour *BrE*, behavior *AmE n*
the way that someone behaves and the things that they do

ADJECTIVES

good/bad behaviour *It is important to reward good behaviour.*
normal/abnormal behaviour *They thought their son's behaviour was perfectly normal.*
aggressive/violent/threatening behaviour *His behavior became increasingly violent.*
strange behaviour *What could be causing her strange behaviour?*
antisocial behaviour *Antisocial behaviour such as spitting and swearing in public will not be tolerated.*
acceptable/unacceptable behaviour *This sort of behavior is completely unacceptable.*
appropriate/inappropriate behaviour *formal* (=suitable/not suitable in a situation) *Inappropriate behaviour must not be ignored.*
human/animal behaviour *The scientific study of human behaviour is known as psychology.*
criminal behaviour *There are many theories as to what causes criminal behavior.*

behaviour + NOUNS

behaviour problems *She teaches children with behaviour problems.*

VERBS

change your behaviour (*also* **modify your behaviour** *formal*): *He has no reason to change his behaviour.*
affect/influence sb's behaviour *The genes we inherit influence our behaviour.*
examine/observe sb's behaviour *Scientists examined the behaviour of mice injected with the drug.*
explain sb's behaviour (=be or give a reason for it) *That's the only way I can explain her behaviour.*
excuse sb's behaviour (=make someone's bad behaviour acceptable) *He's very tired, but that doesn't excuse his behavior.*
apologize for sb's behaviour *David apologized for his behaviour towards me.*
sb's behaviour gets better/improves *His behaviour in school has improved.*
sb's behaviour gets worse (*also* **sb's behaviour deteriorates** *formal*): *Children's behaviour often deteriorates when they are anxious about something.*

VERBS

get/gain a benefit (*also* **gain/derive a benefit** *formal*): *If you do not exercise regularly, you are unlikely to get any benefit.*

enjoy the benefits *We're enjoying the benefits of living in a warm climate.*

have the benefit of sth *I never had the benefit of a university education.*

reap the benefits (=enjoy the advantages of something you have worked hard to get) *He was looking forward to reaping the benefits of all his hard work.*

bring/provide benefits *The new bridge has brought considerable benefits.*

have benefits *Breastfeeding has health benefits for both baby and mother.*

see/appreciate the benefit of sth (=realize that it brings advantages) *Some English people can't see the benefit of learning another language.*

sth outweighs the benefits (=something is more important than the benefits) *Make sure that the risks don't outweigh the benefits.*

PREPOSITIONS

the benefits of sth *What are the benefits of wearing contact lenses?*

benefit for/to sb *This project will have benefits for everyone involved.*

the benefit from sth *Some patients will get no benefit from this treatment.*

with/without the benefit of sth *Most people manage without the benefit of servants.*

PHRASES

be of benefit to sb (=be useful or helpful to someone) *His coaching has been of benefit to all the players.*

be to sb's benefit (=be helpful to someone) *They oppose all change unless it is to their benefit.*

for the benefit of sb (=for someone to use) *There is also a gym for the benefit of staff.*

for your own benefit (=for yourself) *He used the money for his own benefit, instead of using it to help other people.*

THESAURUS: benefit

benefit, merit, virtue, the good/great/best thing about sth, the beauty of sth is that → **advantage**

benevolent *adj* THESAURUS kind²

best *adj, n*

better than anything else or anyone else

Grammar

As a noun, **best** is always used in the phrase **the best**.

PHRASES

one of the best *It's one of the best restaurants in New York.*

easily the best/by far the best (=much better than the others) *The series was easily the best TV drama this year.*

the very best (=the best – used for emphasis) *The very best athletes compete at the Olympics.*

the best in the world/the country *The university is one of the best in the world.*

NOUNS

the best way *The best way to learn a language is to live in a country where it is spoken.*

the best thing (to do) *The best thing to do is to apologize immediately.*

the best place to be/live *London is the best place to be if you like going to the theatre.*

the best person for the job *I've worked with her before and I believe she's the best person for the job.*

best + ADJECTIVES

the best possible *We sold the house at the best possible time.*

the best available *The tuition we offer here is the best available.*

ANTONYMS best → worst

best-selling *adj* THESAURUS successful (3)

bet *n*

an agreement that someone will be given money if something happens, and lose money if it does not happen

VERBS

put/place/lay a bet *She placed a bet on a horse called Lucky.*

make a bet *He made a bet with her that she couldn't be silent for three hours.*

win/lose a bet *France won the game and I won my bet.*

have a bet *Are you going to have a bet on the race?*

put a bet on (sth) *He asked his brother to put a bet on for him.*

take/accept a bet (=accept someone's money as part of a bet) *They're taking bets on the result of the election now.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bet

a £50 bet/$100 bet etc *Someone placed a £1,500 bet on the horse at odds of 14–1.*

a big/small bet *He felt confident enough to make a big bet.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bet on sth *I put a bet on a race and I lost my money.*

for a bet *He dived off the bridge for a bet.*

better *adj, adv*
the comparative form of 'good' or 'well'

ADVERBS

much better/a lot better *The weather is much better today.*
slightly better/a little better (*also* **a bit better** *informal*): *She woke up feeling slightly better.*
infinitely better (=very much better) *The new system is infinitely better than the old one.*
marginally better (=only very slightly better) *The team did marginally better in the next game.*
even better *The show was even better than I expected.*

VERBS

get better *The situation should get better soon.*
feel better *Are you feeling any better?*

PHRASES

there is nothing better than sth *There is nothing better than having praise from someone whose work you respect.*

ANTONYMS **better** → **worse**

bewildering *adj* THESAURUS **confusing**

bias Ac *n*
an unfair attitude which makes you treat one person or group better or worse than another

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bias

political bias *New reporting is often affected by political bias.*
personal bias *During the job interview, you should be careful to avoid personal bias towards or against the candidate.*
ideological bias (=a bias that comes from a particular way of thinking about the world) *Historical accounts often contain some political or ideological bias.*
liberal/right-wing/left-wing etc bias *Many Republicans claim that the US media has a liberal bias.*
a strong/marked bias *There is a strong bias against older women.*
a clear/obvious/blatant bias *The press showed a clear bias towards the ruling party.*
racial/cultural bias *There is evidence of racial bias in some court cases.*
gender bias (=a bias concerning men and women) *There is a gender bias in many toys: pink kitchens for the girls, blue cars for the boys.*
patriotic bias (=a bias in favour of your country) *There is a patriotic bias in favour of the England team.*
media bias *The candidate complained of media bias against him in the run-up to the election.*

VERBS

have a bias against/in favour of sb *The college has a bias in favour of middle-class students.*
show/display/demonstrate bias *The referee is not allowed to show any bias toward either team.*
accuse sb of bias *He accused the newspaper of having a liberal bias.*
avoid bias *Teachers are careful to avoid bias towards any student.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bias against sb *The article shows a bias against women.*
a bias towards/toward/in favour of sb *An analysis of national television news revealed a significant bias towards the government.*
without bias *The information must be presented without bias.*

PHRASES

be free from bias *The news is supposed to be free from bias.*
anti-American/anti-intellectual etc bias *He accused the newspaper of having an anti-French bias.*
pro-British/pro-government etc bias *Israel accused them of a pro-Arab bias in their Middle East policies.*

bicycle *n*
a vehicle with two wheels that you ride by pushing its pedals with your feet

VERBS

ride a bicycle *Riding a bicycle is very good exercise.*
△ Don't say 'drive a bicycle'.
get on/get off your bicycle *I got on my bicycle and cycled over to Rob's house.*
mount your bicycle *formal* (=get on it) *Sara mounted her bicycle and rode off.*
pedal a bicycle *I used to see her pedalling her bicycle around town.*
fall off/be knocked off your bicycle *He was knocked off his bicycle by a careless driver.*

bicycle + NOUNS

a bicycle ride *They went for a 50 km bicycle ride.*
a bicycle helmet *Always wear a bicycle helmet.*

PREPOSITIONS

on a bicycle *They saw a few boys on bicycles.*
by bicycle *In many cities, it is too dangerous for children to travel by bicycle.*

Bicycle or bike?
In everyday English, people usually say **bike**: *I ride my **bike** to work.* **Bicycle** sounds rather formal.

bid *n*
1 an offer to pay a particular price for something, especially at an auction

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bid

a high/low bid *There were several high bids for the painting.*

an opening bid (=the first bid at an auction) *The opening bid was only $10.*

a final bid *She was successful with a final bid of £9,500.*

the winning bid *A wealthy Chinese businessman made the winning bid for the painting.*

a rival/competing bid (=competing with someone else's bid) *Shareholders will have to choose between two rival bids for the football club.*

VERBS

make a bid *A film company made a bid for the film rights to the book.*

put in a bid/place a bid (*also* **submit a bid** *formal*) (=officially make a bid) *Property developers have put in a bid for the land.*

receive a bid *They received four bids for the company.*

attract a bid *The business attracted bids of over £2 billion.*

accept a bid *An auctioneer may refuse to accept any bid below a certain price.*

reject a bid *The team has rejected a bid for its top player.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bid for sth *They put in a bid for the house.*

a bid by/from sb *The company rejected a bid by US Airlines.*

in a bid to do sth *Stores installed cameras in a bid to reduce crime.*

PHRASES

a bid for freedom (=an attempt to escape) *The prisoners made a bid for freedom but they were soon recaptured.*

big *adj*

1 large in size

NOUNS

a big house/building *They live in a big house in New York.*

a big country/city/place *Canada is a big country.*

a big road/river *There is a big road outside the school.*

a big company/organization *His father works for a big oil company.*

a big smile/grin *She came out of the room with a big smile on her face and said "I've got the job!"*

Using big about people

When you use **big** about people, it usually means that they have a lot of muscles, or they are fat: *He was accompanied by two **big** bodyguards.* | *I'm getting too **big** for these jeans.*

You also use **big** about people in your family who are older than you: *She's my **big** sister* (=my older sister).

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bid

a successful bid *The agency made a successful bid for funding.*

an unsuccessful/failed bid *He made a failed bid for the presidency.*

a desperate bid *Knox made a desperate bid to stop the ball reaching the goal.*

a rescue/escape bid *Helicopters were brought in to help with the rescue bid.*

a takeover bid (=an attempt to buy another company) *Staff are afraid that the takeover bid will threaten their jobs.*

a hostile bid (=an attempt to buy another company that does not want to be bought) *The company faces a hostile bid from a major US firm.*

VERBS

make a bid *The party is making a serious bid for power.*

launch/mount a bid *The city launched a bid to host the 2012 Olympic Games.*

succeed/fail in a bid to do sth *We succeeded in our bid to reach the final.*

a bid succeeds/fails *The bid failed when officials rejected the plan.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bid for sth *The ex-president made another bid for power.*

ANTONYMS big → small (1)

2 very noticeable, important, or serious

NOUNS

a big effect/impact *The internet has had a big effect on our lives.*

a big difference *There is a big difference in the price.*

a big change *It was a big change in my life.*

a big advantage/disadvantage *Our team had a big disadvantage, because we had never played together before.*

a big problem *Don't worry – it's not such a big problem.*

a big mistake *Marrying him was the biggest mistake she had ever made.*

THESAURUS: big

big, significant, major, notable, key, essential, vital, crucial/critical, paramount, historic, landmark, momentous → **important (1)**

ANTONYMS big → small (1)

3 large in number or amount

NOUNS

a big increase/decrease *There has been a big increase in the number of people looking for work.*

a big cut/reduction/fall *The sign says there are big price reductions.*
a big profit/loss *The company announced big profits.*
a big population *The city has a big population.*

You usually say a **large amount**, not a 'big' one. You also usually say **large numbers** of people/things, not 'big' ones.

THESAURUS: big

Senses 1, 2, & 3

Academic Writing
In academic writing, it is better to use a more formal word instead of **big**. For example, you can say *a **large** area* instead of 'a big area' or *a **major** cause* instead of 'a big cause'. You can find more information about these alternative words below.

large
number | amount | quantity | proportion | increase | profit | area | man | woman
large means the same as **big**, but is more formal. You use **large** when talking about the size, number, or amount of something:
The museum attracts a large number of visitors. | The computer can store large amounts of data. | Large areas of the forest have been destroyed. | He pointed to a large man in dark glasses.

Big or large?
You don't use **large** when talking about the importance or seriousness of something.
For example, you say *a **big** problem* (not a 'large' one), *a **big** mistake* (not a 'large' one), and *a **big** effect* (not a 'large' one).

great
success | change | difference | number | variety | advantage | honour | mistake
very big – often used when something is very impressive, important, or serious:
The show was a great success. | We are living in a time of great change. | The store sells a great variety of household goods. | It is a great honour to receive this award.

major
part | role | factor | problem | issue | change | cause | source | contribution | impact
big and important:
Women's health is a major part of our work. | He played a major role in the team's success. | Pollution is a major problem. | There has been a major change in government policy. | Long working hours are a major cause of stress.

considerable
amount | number | degree | proportion | part | interest | importance | influence | success | progress
large in amount, number, or degree. **Considerable** is used especially in formal English:
They have already spent a considerable amount of money. | A considerable number of children live in one-parent families. | His writings are of considerable importance.

substantial
amount | number | part | proportion | increase | progress | change
large in amount or number. **Substantial** is used especially in formal English:
They invested a substantial amount of money. | A substantial number of his poems were written there. | The disease affects a substantial proportion of the population. | Substantial progress has been made in the last twenty years.

ANTONYMS big → small (1)

4 famous

THESAURUS: big

well-known, legendary, eminent, celebrated, big, renowned, notorious, infamous, unknown, little-known, obscure, minor → **famous**

Words meaning 'very big' see → **huge**

bike *n* a bicycle

VERBS

ride a bike *I learned to ride a bike when I was six.*
go somewhere by bike/on a bike *I usually go to work by bike.*
get on/off a bike *He got off his bike and walked with her for a while.*
rent a bike (*also* **hire a bike** *BrE*): *You can rent bikes and explore the island's cycle paths.*

NOUNS + bike

a racing bike *He bought a cool new racing bike.*
a mountain bike (=a strong bicycle for riding over rough ground) *They went out for a ride on their mountain bikes.*
an exercise bike (=used for exercising indoors) *I usually go on the exercise bike first at the gym.*

bike + NOUNS

a bike ride *I like going for long bike rides in the country.*
a bike race *The Tour de France is a famous bike race.*
a bike rack (=a metal frame that you can attach your bike to) *All stations should provide bike racks for passengers.*
a bike shed (=a small building for keeping

bikes in) *They used to meet behind the bike sheds at school.*

a bike lane (=a part at the side of a road for bikes to ride in) *He was riding in the bike lane.*

PREPOSITIONS

by bike *You can explore the area by bike.*

on a bike *Ben came past the house on his bike.*

B

bill *n*

1 a written list showing how much you have to pay for something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bill

a big/huge bill *We got a huge bill for the repairs to the house.*

an electricity/gas/phone etc bill *The gas bill keeps going up every year.*

legal/medical bills *If you have no insurance, how do you pay your medical bills?*

a hotel bill *He paid the hotel bill by credit card.*

a tax bill *There are various ways you can reduce your tax bill.*

an unpaid bill *She had unpaid bills amounting to £3,000.*

an itemized bill (=giving details about each thing on it) *An itemized phone bill lists every call you have made.*

VERBS

pay a bill *Have you paid the phone bill?*

settle a bill (=pay all the money that you owe) *She went down to the lobby to settle the bill for their rooms.*

foot the bill/pick up the bill (=pay for something, especially when you do not want to) *Taxpayers will probably have to foot the bill for the project.*

ask for the bill (=ask for the bill in a restaurant) *If you're ready to go, I'll ask for the bill.*

get/receive a bill *They'll have a shock when they get the bill.*

run up a bill (=have to pay a lot of money for using or doing something) *It's easy to run up a big bill on your mobile phone.*

send sb a bill *Send me your bill and I will pay you in full.*

face a bill (=have a lot to pay on a bill) *They were facing a mounting legal bill.*

cut/reduce a bill *We need to find a way to cut our fuel bill.*

share the bills (=each pay part of them) *My housemates and I share the bills.*

a bill comes to sth (=it is for that amount) *The bill came to $60.*

PREPOSITIONS

the bill for sth *The bill for the repairs came to $650.*

In American English, people often use **check** about a bill in a restaurant: *The waiter brought the **check**.*

2 a written proposal for a new law

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bill

a defence/finance/education etc bill *Monday's debate on the defence bill lasted all night.*

a controversial bill (=causing a lot of disagreement) *There is a controversial bill to increase taxes on pensions.*

VERBS

pass/approve a bill (=accept it so it becomes law) *The Senate passed the bill by 96 votes to 3.*

vote for/against a bill *The opposition parties are planning to vote against the bill.*

veto a bill (=not allow it to become law) *The president said he would veto the bill.*

reject/throw out a bill *They rejected a bill to limit arms exports.*

introduce/bring in a bill (=start using it) *The government introduced a bill to provide stiffer penalties for terrorists.*

propose a bill (=suggest it) *He proposed a bill to ban smoking in public areas.*

debate a bill *The bill is still being debated in Parliament.*

PHRASES

a bill becomes law *It will be several months before the bill becomes law.*

a bill goes through Parliament *We want this bill to go through Parliament as quickly as possible.*

bin *n BrE*

a container for putting waste in

NOUNS + bin

a rubbish/waste bin *The rubbish bin needs emptying.*

a wastepaper bin (=for paper you throw away) *I threw the letter straight in the wastepaper bin.*

a litter bin (=a bin in a public place) *Please put all your rubbish in the litter bin.*

a recycling bin (=for rubbish that you can recycle) *Those plastic cartons can go in the recycling bin.*

a wheelie bin (=a big bin on wheels kept outside a house) *They come to empty the wheelie bins on Friday.*

VERBS

put/throw sth in the bin (*also* **chuck sth in the bin** *informal*): *Just put the wrapper in the bin.*

bingo *n*

a game played for money or prizes, in which numbers are chosen by chance and called out, and if you have the right numbers on your card, you win

VERBS

play bingo *My sister likes to play bingo.*

win money at bingo *Vera won £20 at bingo.*

bingo + NOUNS

a bingo hall (*also* **a bingo parlor** *AmE*): *The old cinema had been made into a bingo hall.*

a bingo game/a game of bingo *They raised money for charity by organizing bingo games.*

a bingo card *I crossed off all the numbers on the top line of the bingo card.*

bird *n*

a creature with wings and feathers that can usually fly

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bird

a wild bird *There are hundreds of different kinds of wild birds in the area.*

a migratory bird (=that moves to different regions for summer and winter) *Migratory birds stop here on their way to Africa.*

a flightless bird (=that cannot fly) *The emu is a large flightless Australian bird.*

a wading bird (=a bird with long legs that stands in water to catch fish) *The lake is home to many different types of wading birds.*

a game bird (=that people shoot and eat) *They hunt game birds such as ducks and pheasants.*

Songbird and **seabird** are usually written as one word.

VERBS

a bird flies *Some birds fly incredible distances.*

a bird soars (=flies very high in the sky) *We watched birds soar in the blue sky above.*

a bird swoops (=it suddenly flies down) *The bird swoops on its prey.*

a bird flaps its wings (=it moves its wings up and down) *The baby birds were trying to flap their wings.*

a bird sings (=makes musical sounds) *I woke up to hear the birds singing outside.*

a bird chirps/twitters (=makes short high sounds) *Birds chirped to one another from different branches of the tree.*

a bird squawks (=makes a loud unpleasant sound) *The bird in the cage started squawking.*

a bird nests (*also* **a bird builds a nest**) *Many birds are nesting on the river banks.*

a bird lays its eggs *The bird lays a single egg on the ground.*

a bird pecks (at) sth (=makes small movements with its beak) *Some birds were pecking at the remains of a sandwich.*

a bird perches (=stands on something above the ground) *Beautiful white birds perched on the tree's branches.*

a bird migrates (=flies to different regions for summer and winter) *The birds migrate from South America to North American breeding grounds.*

a bird hops (=makes small jumping movements) *A small bird was hopping across the grass.*

bird + NOUNS

a bird species/a species of bird *Many of the island's bird species need protection.*

a bird reserve/sanctuary (=a place where birds are protected) *This part of the coast is now a bird sanctuary.*

Birdwatcher, **birdwatching**, and **birdsong** are usually written as one word.

PHRASES

a flock of birds (=a large number of birds together) *Suddenly a flock of birds flew up into the sky.*

a bird of prey (=that hunts and eats small animals) *A big bird of prey was circling over our heads.*

birth *n*

the time or process when a baby comes out of its mother's body

PHRASES

sb's date of birth *especially BrE*, **sb's birth date** *especially AmE* (=the day, month, and year you were born) *Please give your name, address, and date of birth.*

sb's place/country of birth *I wanted to find out my father's place of birth.*

the time of birth *They believe that the position of the planets at the time of birth determines a person's fate.*

birth + NOUNS

the birth rate (=the number of babies born somewhere) *The country's birth rate has decreased dramatically.*

a birth defect (=something wrong with a baby when it is born) *About 11% of babies have birth defects.*

a birth certificate (=an official document showing when and where you were born) *Her birth certificate says she was born in 1972.*

VERBS

give birth (=produce a baby from your body) *Most women in Britain give birth in hospital.*

celebrate sb's birth *They are celebrating the birth of their first child.*

register a birth (=officially tell a government department that a baby has been born) *Failing to register a birth is illegal.*

attend a birth *In Britain most fathers attend the birth of their children.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + birth

a premature birth (=when a baby is born before the normal time) *Smoking in pregnancy has been linked to premature birth.*

a multiple birth (=when a woman has two or more babies at the same time) *The chance of a multiple birth is about 1 in 100 for the average woman.*

a home birth (=when a woman gives birth at

home, not in a hospital) *I decided I wanted a home birth for my second child.*

a hospital birth *Many women choose hospital births.*

a natural birth (=one that does not involve medical assistance or drugs) *She wanted a natural birth.*

a difficult/easy birth *It was a difficult birth and she took a long time to recover.*

PREPOSITIONS

at birth *He only weighed 2 kilos at birth.*

from birth *Henry has been blind from birth.*

the birth of sb *My husband was there at the birth of both our children.*

THESAURUS: birth

start, commencement, origin, the onset of sth, dawn, birth → **beginning (1)**

birthday *n*

the day that is an exact number of years after the day you were born

ADJECTIVES

Happy Birthday! (=said to someone on their birthday) *Happy Birthday, Linda!*

sb's 1st/18th/40th etc birthday *It's Mum's 50th birthday tomorrow.*

sb's next birthday *She'll be 18 on her next birthday.*

VERBS

have a good/nice etc birthday *Did you have a nice birthday?*

get sth for your birthday *What did you get for your birthday?*

give sth to sb for their birthday *I never know what to give him for his birthday.*

celebrate sb's birthday *He will celebrate his 90th birthday on August 25th.*

remember sb's birthday (=remember to send a card or present) *She always remembers my birthday.*

forget sb's birthday (=forget to send a card or present) *Oh no! I forgot his birthday.*

mark sb's birthday (=celebrate it by doing something) *The book was published to mark his 70th birthday.*

birthday + NOUNS

a birthday card *Don't forget to send her a birthday card.*

a birthday present *Have you got Lou a birthday present yet?*

a birthday party *Can you come to my birthday party next Saturday?*

birthday celebrations *the president's 60th birthday celebrations*

a birthday treat (=something special you do on your birthday) *What would you like to do for a birthday treat?*

a birthday meal *Where are you going for your birthday meal?*

a birthday cake *She had a birthday cake with 21 silver candles on it.*

PREPOSITIONS

on sb's birthday *That photo was taken on my birthday.*

for sb's birthday *He always buys her expensive presents for her birthday.*

bit *n informal*

1 a small piece of something

ADJECTIVES

a little/tiny/small bit *The floor was covered in tiny bits of glass.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bit of sth *He wedged the door open with a bit of wood.*

PHRASES

fall/come to bits (=separate into many different parts because of being old or damaged) *The book was so old that I was afraid it would fall to bits.*

take sth to bits (=separate the parts of something) *Tony loves taking old radios and computers to bits.*

break/smash (sth) to bits *The vase fell and smashed to bits on the concrete floor.*

rip/tear sth to bits *She grabbed the letter and ripped it to bits.*

be blown to bits (=be completely destroyed by a bomb) *The aircraft was blown to bits.*

THESAURUS: bit

bit, lump, scrap, strip, sheet, slice, chunk, hunk, block, slab, cube, wedge, bar, segment, rasher, fragment, crumb, speck, drop → **piece**

2 a little or a small amount

ADJECTIVES AND PHRASES

a little bit *She only ate a little bit.*

just a bit *Just a bit of sugar for me.*

not the faintest/slightest bit (=not at all) *They didn't seem the faintest bit surprised.*

bite[1] *v*

to use your teeth to cut, crush, or chew something

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

bite into sth *When he bit into the apple, he found it had a delicious taste.*

bite off sth *She bit off a piece of bread.*

bite through sth *The mice had bitten through one of the power cables.*

bite sb on the leg/hand etc *The dog bit the boy on his leg.*

be badly bitten (=in a way that causes a serious injury) *The child was lucky not to have been badly bitten.*

NOUNS

bite your nails *I wish I could stop biting my nails.*

You also use **bite** about insects and snakes making a hole or mark on someone's skin: *I got **bitten** by a mosquito.*

bite[2] *n*

1 the act of using your teeth to cut or crush food, so that you can eat it

ADJECTIVES

a big/large bite *Pierce took a large bite of his sandwich.*

a small/little bite *She ate her food in little bites.*

VERBS

take a bite *She picked up the sandwich and took a bite.*

have a bite *Can I have a bite of your apple?*

PREPOSITIONS

a bite of sth *Chew each bite of food slowly.*

a bite from/out of sth *The dog had taken a bite out of the roast beef.*

PHRASES

in one bite *Antonio can eat a burger in one bite.*

2 an injury caused by an animal or insect biting you

NOUNS + bite

an insect/mosquito etc bite *My arm was covered in insect bites.*

a dog/snake etc bite *Thousands of people die from snake bites every year.*

ADJECTIVES

a nasty bite *BrE: It looks like a nasty bite.*

VERBS

give sb a bite *Some fish can give you a nasty bite.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bite from an insect/animal *The disease is passed through a bite from an infected mosquito.*

bitter *adj*

1 having or causing strong feelings of anger, unhappiness, or disappointment

VERBS

feel bitter *Patsy feels very bitter about losing her job.*

sound bitter *Howard was trying hard not to sound bitter.*

ADVERBS

increasingly bitter *He became increasingly bitter about what had happened.*

NOUNS

a bitter battle/dispute *He was involved in a bitter dispute with his former employer.*

a bitter fight/struggle *There was a bitter struggle between them for control of the company.*

a bitter debate *The country now faces a bitter debate over the issue of abortion.*

a bitter disappointment *The result was a bitter disappointment for us.*

a bitter blow (=something that affects you very badly) *His death was a bitter blow to her.*

a bitter memory *She had bitter memories of her relationship with Alan.*

bitter rivals *The two businessmen are bitter rivals.*

PREPOSITIONS

bitter about sth *He was still bitter about the way he had been treated.*

PHRASES

know/learn/find out sth from bitter experience (=because of unpleasant experiences in the past) *Jane had learned from bitter experience that love doesn't always last.*

2 having a strong taste which is not sweet

NOUNS

a bitter taste *The medicine had a bitter taste.*

bitter oranges/lemons *Bitter oranges are good for making marmalade.*

black *adj, n*

the darkest colour, like the sky at night

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

completely black *The screen went completely black.*

deep/dark black *The adult birds have deep black feathers.*

jet black (=very dark – used especially about someone's hair) *He had jet black hair.*

pitch black (=a place is completely dark, so that you cannot see anything) *It was pitch black inside the cave.*

matt black (=black that is not shiny) *The board was painted with matt black paint.*

PREPOSITIONS

in black *Fenella was dressed entirely in black.*

PHRASES

as black as night/coal/pitch/ebony *Her eyes were as black as coal.*

black with soot/dirt/smoke *His face and hands were black with dirt.*

black and white *A black and white dog was sitting outside the shop.*

blade *n*

the flat cutting part of a tool or weapon

ADJECTIVES

a sharp blade *Be careful – the blade is very sharp.*

B

a blunt/dull blade (=not sharp) *This blade is too blunt to cut anything.*

NOUNS + blade

a razor blade (=for removing hair from your face or body) *I need to buy some razor blades.*

PREPOSITIONS

the blade of a knife/sword/saw *She rinsed the blade of the knife under running water.*

blame[1] *v*

to say or think that someone or something is responsible for something bad

PREPOSITIONS

blame sb for sth *Marie still blames herself for Patrick's death.*

blame sth on sb *Don't try to blame everything on me.*

ADVERBS

always blame sb/sth *You can't always blame other people for what happens.*

unfairly blame sb *I felt that I was being unfairly blamed for their problems.*

be widely blamed (=by many people) *The authorities have been widely blamed for making the situation worse.*

PHRASES

be the one to blame (=be the person who should be blamed) *I'm the only one to blame for what has happened.*

be partly to blame *Some people think that television is partly to blame for the increase in violence among young people.*

have no one to blame but yourself *He should have checked that there was enough fuel in the car, so he has no one to blame but himself.*

blame[2] *n*

responsibility for a mistake or for something bad

VERBS

get the blame (=be blamed) *I always get the blame for his mistakes!*

take/accept the blame (*also* **shoulder the blame** *formal*) (=say that something is your fault) *No one was prepared to take the blame for the disaster.*

put/pin the blame on sb (*also* **lay/place the blame on sb** *formal*) (=blame someone, especially when it is not their fault) *Don't try to put the blame on me.*

shift the blame (onto sb) (=blame someone for something you did) *She always tried to shift the blame onto her brother.*

apportion/assign blame *formal* (=find someone to blame for something) *He seemed to want to apportion blame for her death.*

absolve sb from blame *formal* (=say that something is not their fault) *He was absolved of all blame.*

the blame lies with sb (=used to say that someone is responsible for something bad) *In this case, the blame lay with the police.*

PREPOSITIONS

the blame for sth *Much of the blame for the current crisis lies with the government.*

PHRASES

accept your share of the blame *The media must accept its share of the blame for this problem.*

place the blame squarely/firmly on sb (=blame someone in a very definite way) *The investigation placed the blame squarely on the mayor.*

blank *adj* with nothing on it

NOUNS

a blank sheet of paper *He was staring at a blank sheet of paper, wondering what to write.*

a blank screen *When I turned on my computer, all I got was a blank screen.*

a blank space *Write your answer in the blank space under the question.*

a blank expression/look/face (=showing no emotion) *She was looking out of the window with a blank expression on her face.*

VERBS

go blank (=become blank) *The screen suddenly went blank.*

leave sth blank *You can leave the last page blank – I'll fill it out later.*

PHRASES

my mind went blank (=you suddenly can't remember something) *In the interview my mind went blank and I couldn't think of anything to say.*

THESAURUS: blank

bare, blank, hollow, free, vacant, deserted, uninhabited, unoccupied → **empty**

blanket *n*

a cover for a bed, usually made of wool

ADJECTIVES

a thick/heavy/warm blanket *She gave me a thick blanket to keep me warm.*

VERBS

wrap sb in a blanket *The baby was wrapped in a blanket.*

cover sb/sth with a blanket *His mother covered him with a blanket and put a cushion behind his head.*

throw a blanket over sb/sth *She threw a blanket over the sleeping child.*

pull a blanket up/over you *He pulled the blanket over his head and went to sleep.*

huddle under the blankets (=lie under the blankets with your body curled up) *He lay huddled under the blankets, his eyes closed.*

PREPOSITIONS

under/beneath a blanket *They were nice and warm under the blankets.*

blaze[1] *n*

a big dangerous fire – used especially in news reports

ADJECTIVES

a huge/massive blaze *Four people died in a huge blaze at the factory.*

VERBS + blaze

put out a blaze (*also* **extinguish a blaze** *formal*) (=stop it burning) *Staff managed to put out the blaze before firefighters arrived.*

fight/battle/tackle a blaze *Nearly 80 firefighters fought the blaze for three hours.*

control a blaze (*also* **bring a blaze under control**) *It took several hours to control the blaze at the hotel.*

start a blaze *The blaze was started accidentally.*

cause/spark a blaze *An electrical fault sparked the blaze.*

blaze + VERBS

a blaze breaks out (*also* **a blaze starts**) *The blaze broke out on the third floor of the building.*

a blaze spreads *The blaze quickly spread to a neighbouring house.*

a blaze destroys sth *The blaze destroyed most of the school.*

blaze[2] *v* THESAURUS burn[1] (1)

bleak *adj*

without anything to make you feel happy or hopeful

NOUNS

a bleak future/prospect/outlook *My father lost his job and we faced a bleak future.*

a bleak picture/impression *The report painted a bleak picture of life in this war-torn country.*

a bleak vision/view *Orwell's book contains a very bleak vision of the future.*

a bleak place/landscape *The landscape is very bleak in winter, when there are no leaves on the trees.*

a bleak look/smile/expression (=without any hope) *She came out of the hospital with a bleak look on her face.*

bleak despair *His mood was one of bleak despair.*

VERBS

look/seem bleak *The company has lost a lot of money and the future looks bleak for the workforce.*

remain bleak *The economic situation remains bleak.*

ADVERBS

pretty bleak (=rather bleak) *Things are pretty bleak at the moment.*

THESAURUS: bleak

grim, gloomy, bleak, drab, dreary, disheartening → **depressing**

bleed *v* to lose blood from your body

ADVERBS

bleed heavily/profusely (=a lot) *He was bleeding heavily and he looked very pale.*

bleed easily *She bleeds easily and she has to be careful not to cut herself.*

PREPOSITIONS

bleed from a wound/a part of your body *The boy was bleeding from a cut on the side of his head.*

PHRASES

stop the bleeding *If you hold up your arm, it will help to stop the bleeding.*

bleed to death *She bled to death before the doctors could save her.*

blessing *n*

1 something that is good about a situation, which makes you feel pleased

ADJECTIVES

a great blessing *Having my parents living nearby has been a great blessing, as they often take care of the children while I work.*

a real blessing *The dishwasher has been a real blessing!*

a mixed blessing (=it has both good and bad effects) *Living next to a supermarket is rather a mixed blessing.*

VERBS

count your blessings (=think about how lucky you are) *The weather is terrible and we're counting our blessings that we decided to cancel our trip.*

sth can/could be a blessing (=it can/could be a good thing) *Not being able to speak the language can be a blessing sometimes.*

PREPOSITIONS

sth is a blessing for sb *The higher prices for corn have been a blessing for farmers.*

PHRASES

it's a blessing (that)... *It's a blessing no one was badly hurt.*

sth is a blessing in disguise (=something that seems unlucky, but actually has a good effect) *The fire was a blessing in disguise, as the insurance paid for the house to be completely redecorated.*

B

blossom *n*

a flower or the flowers on a tree or bush

NOUNS + blossom

cherry/apple/orange/peach blossom *The cherry blossom is very beautiful at this time of year in Japan.*

PHRASES

sth is in blossom (=it has flowers on it) *I visited when the apple trees were in blossom.*

sth is in full blossom (=it has a lot of flowers on it) *The cherry tree was in full blossom.*

the blossom comes out (=it appears) *The blossom usually comes out in May.*

the blossom is out (=it has appeared) *The orange blossom is out already.*

blow *n*

1 something bad that causes difficulty, sadness, or disappointment for someone

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + blow

a big/major blow *Not being selected for the team came as a big blow.*

a serious/heavy blow *The banking crisis was a serious blow to the economy.*

a severe/terrible/awful blow *The news was a terrible blow for his family.*

a bitter/cruel blow *Their defeat was a bitter blow.*

a devastating/crushing/shattering blow (=one that has an extremely bad effect) *Losing her husband was a devastating blow.*

a body blow (=a very severe blow, which makes someone or something very likely to fail) *The scandal could be a body blow to his political career.*

a mortal/fatal/death blow (=one that causes something to finish or fail completely) *The star's departure dealt a mortal blow to the show.*

the final blow *The final blow was when the company announced that it was closing down.*

VERBS

suffer/receive/take a blow *The team suffered a blow when they lost their best player.*

deal a blow to sb/sth *The 1982 drought dealt a devastating blow to the country.*

deliver a blow *Opinion polls delivered a nasty blow to the Tory leader.*

inflict a blow *The arrests inflicted a serious blow to the organization.*

soften/cushion the blow (=make it easier to deal with) *To soften the blow, the company agreed to pay them a year's salary.*

PREPOSITIONS

a blow to sth/sb *He had suffered a blow to his pride.*

a blow for sb/sth *The closure of the school will be a big blow for the students.*

PHRASES

come as a blow to sb (=be a blow) *His sudden death came as a huge blow to us all.*

be a bit of a blow *BrE informal* (=be disappointing) *The result was a bit of a blow for the team.*

2 the act of hitting someone or something hard

ADJECTIVES

a heavy/hard/powerful blow *The injury was caused by a heavy blow to the chest.*

a glancing blow (=hitting someone or something on the side) *Their car was struck a glancing blow by a big truck.*

the fatal blow (=which kills someone) *They could not prove which of his attackers struck the fatal blow.*

VERBS

receive/take a blow *During the game, he received a blow to the head.*

give sb a blow *The other boxer gave him a powerful blow to the jaw.*

strike/deliver a blow *Who struck the first blow?*

aim a blow at sb/sth *I aimed a blow at his nose.*

land a blow (=succeed in hitting someone when you try to) *She managed to land one blow on the side of his head.*

dodge a blow (=move so that a blow does not touch you) *I managed to dodge the blow.*

exchange blows (=hit each other) *The girl watched as the two men exchanged blows.*

rain blows on sb (=hit someone many times) *Terrified and angry, she rained blows on him.*

PREPOSITIONS

a blow to/on sth *He died from a blow to the back of the head.*

a blow from sth/sb *A blow from someone's elbow broke his nose.*

PHRASES

come to blows (=start hitting each other as a result of an argument) *They often argued and on one occasion almost came to blows.*

with one blow/with a single blow *He knew how to kill a man with a single blow.*

blue *adj, n*

the colour of the sky or the sea on a fine day

TYPES OF BLUE

dark/deep blue *She had deep blue eyes.*

pale/light blue *He was wearing a pale blue shirt.*

bright/brilliant blue *The sky is bright blue.*

navy blue (=very dark blue) *I bought a navy blue sweater.*

sky blue (=blue like the colour of the sky) *The staff wear sky blue uniforms.*

electric blue (=very bright blue) *The fish were electric blue.*

PREPOSITIONS

in blue *Who's the woman in blue?*

PHRASES

a shade of blue *The room is decorated in different shades of blue.*

blunt *adj* THESAURUS honest, sharp (1)

board *n*

1 a flat vertical surface used for writing or showing information on

VERBS

write sth on the board *The teacher wrote the word 'democracy' on the board.*

put sth (up) on the board *She put a notice on the board saying when the next meeting would be.*

Noticeboard is usually written as one word: *There was a message pinned on the noticeboard.* **Noticeboard** is used in British English. In American English, people say **bulletin board**.

Blackboard and **whiteboard** (=used by a teacher for writing on in a classroom) are usually written as one word. **Scoreboard** (=used for showing the score in a game) and **billboard** (=a big board for advertisements) are written as one word.

2 a flat piece of wood that you do something on

NOUNS + board

a cutting/drawing/ironing etc board *I need a cutting board for the bread.*

Breadboard, **skateboard**, **chessboard**, and **surfboard** are written as one word.

boat *n*

a vehicle that travels across water

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + boat

a small/little/tiny boat *They left me alone in a small boat in the middle of the ocean.*

a fishing boat *The fishing boats go out to sea early in the morning.*

a sailing boat *BrE*, **a sailboat** *AmE*: *The lake was full of sailing boats.*

a rowing boat *BrE*, **a rowboat** *AmE*: *We took a rowing boat out on the river.*

a canal boat (*also* **a narrow boat** *BrE*) (=for use on canals) *We had a holiday on a canal boat in France.*

a pleasure boat (=a small boat that people use on a lake, river etc) *The river is frequently used by pleasure boats, particularly in the summer.*

VERBS + boat

sail a boat *We sailed the boat across the ocean.*

row a boat *They were rowing the boat as fast as they could.*

take a boat out *Why don't we take the boat out on the river?*

get/climb/step onto a boat *I helped her get onto the boat.*

get/jump/step off a boat *He jumped off the boat into the water.*

launch a boat (=put it in the water) *Where's the best place to launch the boat?*

steer a boat (=control it so that it goes in a particular direction) *She steered the boat towards the shore.*

tie up/moor a boat (=tie it to something so that it stays in that place) *The boy jumped on to the bank and tied up the boat.*

anchor a boat (=put a metal object attached to the boat by a rope into the water, so that the boat stays in that place) *He anchored his boat about 25 metres from the beach.*

meet sb off the boat *Her family were waiting to meet her off the boat.*

boat + VERBS

a boat sails somewhere *The boat sailed into the harbour.*

a boat sinks *Our boat sank in a storm.*

a boat capsizes/overturns (=turns over in the water) *He stood up suddenly and the boat capsized.*

a boat rocks (=moves from side to side in the water) *The little boat was rocking in the wind.*

a boat drifts (=moves without any power) *The boat drifted out to sea.*

boat + NOUNS

a boat trip *You can take a boat trip to the islands.*

a boat race *There's a boat race on the river tomorrow.*

PREPOSITIONS

by boat *The beach can only be reached by boat.*

in a boat *I've never been in a boat before.*

on a boat *Everyone on the boat was seasick.*

Boat or ship?
A **boat** is smaller than a **ship**.

body *n*

the physical structure of a person or animal

ADJECTIVES

the human body *There are billions of cells in an adult human body.*

the female/male body *Many of his pictures are of the female body.*

the upper/lower body *This is a good exercise to strengthen the upper body.*

a good/great/fantastic body *He was tall and had a great body.*

a muscular body *Brad had a lean muscular body.*

sb's thin/slim/slender body *She wrapped the robe around her slim body.*

a dead body *She had never seen a dead body before.*

B

sb's whole body *Her whole body was shaking with fear.*

VERBS

sb's body aches *He was exhausted and his body ached all over.*

sb's body shakes/trembles *Her body trembled because she was so nervous.*

sb's body lies somewhere *Her body was lying on the floor.*

body + NOUNS

body weight *You have exactly the right body weight for your height.*

body size/shape *We encourage women to accept their body shape.*

body temperature *His body temperature was dangerously low and they wrapped him in a foil blanket.*

body language (=the movements and expressions that show what you feel) *If you look at his body language, you can see that he is lying.*

body fat *Males have less body fat than females.*

PHRASES

all over sb's body *I had bruises all over my body.*

boil *v* THESAURUS **cook**[1]

boiling *adj* THESAURUS **hot**

bold *adj*
showing that you are not afraid of taking risks and making difficult decisions

NOUNS

a bold move/step *The newspapers described her resignation as a bold move.*

a bold decision *People praised his bold decision to cut income tax by 5%.*

a bold attempt *It was a bold attempt to win back public confidence.*

a bold statement/assertion/claim *She makes the bold claim that many of his poems were in fact written by his wife.*

a bold initiative *Investors welcome the company's bold initiatives.*

a bold experiment *Telling the story from his point of view was a bold experiment, and it worked.*

THESAURUS: bold

courageous, heroic, bold, daring, valiant, adventurous, intrepid, fearless → **brave**

bomb *n*
a weapon that explodes and causes a lot of damage

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bomb

a huge/massive bomb *The building was destroyed by a massive bomb.*

a terrorist bomb *The aircraft was blown apart by a terrorist bomb.*

an unexploded bomb *The workmen found an unexploded bomb.*

a homemade bomb *Officers discovered several homemade bombs in the trunk of his car.*

a car bomb *The car bomb killed 21 shoppers.*

a roadside bomb (=left next to a road) *The vehicle was totally destroyed by a roadside bomb.*

a nuclear/hydrogen/atomic/atom bomb *The US dropped atomic bombs on two Japanese cities.*

a time bomb (=that is set to explode at a particular time) *The time bomb was planned to cause the maximum carnage.*

bomb + VERBS

a bomb explodes/goes off *A 200-pound bomb went off in the car park.*

a bomb blows sth up (=destroys it completely) *A bomb blew up flight 103, killing 270 people.*

a bomb falls on sth *A bomb fell on the cathedral during the war.*

VERBS + bomb

set off/let off a bomb (*also* **detonate a bomb** *formal*) (=make it explode) *The area was cleared and the army detonated the bomb.*

drop a bomb (=from a plane) *Enemy planes dropped over 200 bombs during the raid.*

plant a bomb (=put one somewhere) *It is thought that right-wing extremists planted the bomb.*

make/build a bomb *He had enough explosives to make about 80 bombs.*

defuse a bomb (=make it safe so that it does not explode) *Police closed off the area while they defused the bomb.*

bomb + NOUNS

a bomb blast/explosion *The restaurant was destroyed in a massive bomb blast.*

a bomb attack *No one has yet claimed responsibility for the bomb attack.*

bomb damage *The building suffered extensive bomb damage during the war.*

a bomb scare (=when people think there might be a bomb somewhere) *There was a bomb scare and we all had to leave the building.*

a bomb site (=a place destroyed by a bomb) *They've pulled down so many buildings around here it looks like a bomb site.*

bomb-making equipment *Police found guns and bomb-making equipment in the house.*

bond Ac *n*
something that unites two or more people or groups, such as love or a shared interest

ADJECTIVES

a close/strong bond *A strong bond had developed between the members of the team.*

a common bond (=one that people share) *They shared a common bond – a love of music.*

a special bond *There was a special bond between Alan and his brother.*

an emotional bond *He finds it difficult to form emotional bonds with other people.*

VERBS

form/forge a bond (=begin to have a bond, which then grows) *Most dogs form a strong bond with their owner.*

create/establish a bond (=cause one to form) *He told his problems to his friend and this established a close bond between them.*

have a bond *Twins often have a very special bond.*

feel a bond *The people of the island feel a strong bond.*

strengthen a bond *Sharing common aims has strengthened the bond between our two nations.*

break/destroy a bond *The years spent apart had not broken the bonds of affection between them.*

develop a bond (=gradually form a bond over a long period) *Over the six years we worked together, we developed a very close bond.*

a bond exists *The bond that existed between my parents made me feel safe and secure.*

be linked/joined/united by a bond *The two countries are linked by bonds of language, religion, and culture.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bond of friendship/affection/trust etc *The president spoke about the lasting bond of friendship between the US and the UK.*

a bond between people *There is a strong emotional bond between a mother and her child.*

bone *n*

one of the hard white parts inside the body that form a skeleton

ADJECTIVES

a broken bone *The X-ray showed that I had a broken bone in my wrist.*

strong/healthy bones *Vitamin C is essential for healthy bones, teeth, and gums.*

brittle/fragile bones (=easily damaged or broken) *Old people often have fragile bones.*

NOUNS + bone

sb's thigh/hip/ankle etc bone *He fell off the horse, fracturing his collar bone.*

chicken/fish etc bones *She got a fish bone stuck in her throat.*

animal/human bones *The team found stone tools and animal bones at the site.*

VERBS

break a bone *Most rugby players end up breaking a bone or two during their career.*

fracture a bone (*also* **crack a bone** *informal*) (=partly break it so that a line appears on the surface) *Sally fell, fracturing a bone in her leg.*

PHRASES

pieces/fragments/splinters of bone (=small pieces that have broken off a larger piece) *The small fragments of bone and pottery found at the site are hundreds of years old.*

bonus *n*

1 an extra amount of money given to someone, especially as a reward for good work in their job

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bonus

a big/huge bonus *Bankers get paid big bonuses if the bank has a good year.*

an annual bonus *Each worker receives an annual bonus.*

a special bonus *The company paid its top trader a special bonus of $1.2 million.*

a cash bonus *Long-term savers qualify for a cash bonus.*

a Christmas bonus *Employees receive a Christmas bonus.*

VERBS

get/earn/receive a bonus *You will receive a bonus if you finish the work on time.*

give/pay/award sb a bonus *A £2 million bonus was awarded to the chief executive.*

qualify for a bonus *To qualify for this bonus, you must keep the money in your account for a year.*

bonus + NOUNS

a bonus system/scheme *The company offers a profit-related bonus scheme.*

2 something good that you did not expect

ADJECTIVES

an unexpected bonus *The money was an unexpected bonus.*

an added/extra/additional bonus *The free drink that came with the meal was an added bonus.*

a big/real/great bonus *His skills will be a big bonus for the team.*

a welcome bonus *The sunny weather was a welcome bonus.*

book[1] *n*

a set of printed pages that are held together in a cover so that you can read them

NOUNS + book

a history/travel/science/poetry etc book *Not much is written about her in the history books.*

a library book *I need to return my library books.*

a recipe book (=which tells you how to cook different foods) *I got the idea from a recipe book.*

a paperback book (=with a thin card cover) *She took a paperback book out of her bag and began to read.*

B

a hardback book (=with a thick stiff cover) *Hardback books are often very heavy.*

a paper book (=one that is printed on paper, not electronically) *Paper books are less tiring for your eyes.*

You use **e-book** about an electronic book that you can read on a screen: ***E-books** are now becoming more popular than paper books.*

Textbook, **schoolbook** and **phonebook** are usually written as one word.

Cookbook (= a book that tells you how to cook different foods) is written as one word. It is used especially in American English. British people usually say **cookery book**.

VERBS + book

read a book *What book are you reading at the moment?*

look through a book *I looked through the book until I found the right section.*

write a book *He's written several interesting travel books.*

publish a book *The book is published by Penguin.*

borrow a book (*also* **take out a book** *BrE*) (=from a library) *You can borrow up to six books from the library.*

return a book (=give it back) *Please return all your books before the end of term.*

book + VERBS

a book comes out (=it is published for the first time) *The book first came out about a year ago.*

book + NOUNS

a book review *She had a book review published in the student magazine.*

PREPOSITIONS

a book about sth/sb *She wrote a book about her experiences.*

a book on a subject *This section has books on politics and economics.*

in a book *In his latest book, he tackles the subject of climate change.*

PHRASES

the cover of a book *His picture is on the cover of the book.*

the back of the book *It tells you the price on the back of the book.*

a chapter/section of a book *The first chapter of the book is about his childhood.*

Bookshop, **bookstore**, **bookseller**, and **bookshelf** are usually written as one word.

book² *v*

to arrange to stay in a hotel, eat in a restaurant, go to a theatre, or travel on a plane etc at a particular time in the future

ADVERBS

book early/in advance/ahead *The restaurant is very popular, so it's a good idea to book ahead.*

book online (=on the internet) *It's much easier to book tickets online.*

be fully booked (=all the seats, tickets etc are sold) *I'm afraid that show is fully booked.*

be booked solid (=all the seats, tickets etc are sold for a long period) *The hotel is booked solid for the whole of August.*

book + NOUNS

book a holiday/vacation *People often book their holidays in January.*

book a trip/flight *I booked the whole trip on the internet.*

book a ticket *It's cheaper if you book your train ticket in advance.*

book a table (=in a restaurant) *I'll book a table for 7.30 tomorrow evening.*

book a room/hotel *Ross found a good hotel and booked a room.*

book a seat *She booked me a seat on the 9 a.m. flight.*

booking *n*

an arrangement to travel by train, use a hotel room, eat at a restaurant etc at a particular time in the future

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + booking

a hotel/room booking *I'll make the hotel booking today.*

an online/phone/postal booking *Most hotels take online bookings.*

early/late booking *Early booking is recommended because places are limited.*

advance booking *The cinema charges £1 a ticket for advance booking.*

a group booking (=a booking for a large number of seats, rooms etc) *There's a 20% discount for group bookings.*

VERBS

make a booking *I made a booking for two nights.*

confirm a booking (=say definitely that you are going to travel etc) *Please confirm your booking 48 hours before your flight.*

cancel a booking *If you cancel the booking, there will be a small charge.*

take/accept a booking *Postal bookings are only accepted up to three days before the event.*

have a booking *The hotel clerk asked me if I had a booking.*

change a booking *I'll phone the airline and try to change the booking.*

booking + NOUNS

a booking form *You can complete the booking form online.*

a booking fee *Ticket agencies charge a booking fee.*

a booking system *The airline uses an automated booking system.*

boom *n*

a sudden increase in business activity

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + boom

an economic boom *The country is experiencing an economic boom.*

a great boom *The great stock market boom ended and many people lost all their savings.*

a property/housing boom (=a sudden increase in house prices) *People made a lot of money in the 1980s property boom.*

a consumer/spending boom (=a sudden increase in the amount people spend) *The consumer boom was followed by a deep recession.*

a credit boom (=when people borrow a lot) *He was worried that the credit boom could result in a financial crisis.*

an investment boom *The investment boom is over.*

a building/construction boom *There's been a recent construction boom in the area.*

VERBS

experience/enjoy a boom *China has been enjoying a remarkable economic boom.*

cause/lead to a boom *The tax cuts led to an economic boom.*

fuel a boom (=add to it) *The energy crisis is fuelling a boom in alternative energy.*

boom + NOUNS

the boom years/times *The development was planned during the boom years of the late 1980s.*

PREPOSITIONS

a boom in sth *The company has enjoyed a boom in sales.*

booming *adj* THESAURUS successful (3)

boost[1] *v*

1 to make someone feel more confident

NOUNS

boost sb's confidence/self-confidence *The victory boosted the team's confidence.*

boost sb's morale *The president's visit was intended to boost morale.*

boost sb's ego (=make someone feel good about themselves) *David did his best to boost my ego, and told me that I could easily find another girlfriend.*

boost hopes of sth *The good news about exports boosted hopes of an economic recovery.*

2 to make something more successful

NOUNS

boost the economy *The government cut taxes in order to boost the economy.*

boost sales/profits/trade *The agreement will boost trade between the two countries.*

boost earnings *She worked extra hours to boost her earnings.*

boost production *The introduction of new technology should help to boost production.*

boost growth *They want to boost economic growth.*

ADVERBS

boost sth greatly/considerably/significantly *The deal will significantly boost the firm's position in the market.*

boost sth dramatically (=in a great and sudden way) *The party's share of the vote was boosted dramatically.*

boost sth artificially *The drug can artificially boost energy levels.*

VERBS

help boost sth *An attractive cover can help boost sales of a book.*

boost[2] *n*

something that helps someone feel more confident, or helps something be more successful

ADJECTIVES

a big/major/significant boost *Her acting career got a big boost when she was chosen to appear in the film.*

a huge/great/tremendous boost *The new factory will give the town's economy a tremendous boost.*

a real boost *The money will be a real boost to the local area.*

a financial boost *Advertising offers a financial boost for free internet services.*

a psychological boost *Saturday's win was a huge psychological boost.*

a welcome/much-needed boost *The new laws will give a much-needed boost to the police in their fight against crime.*

an extra/further boost *Give your body an extra boost by eating more fresh fruit and vegetables.*

NOUNS + boost

a morale boost (=something that gives you encouragement) *The prime minister's visit was intended to give the troops a morale boost.*

a confidence boost (*also* **a boost to your confidence**) *The team needed a confidence boost after last week's 4-0 defeat.*

an ego boost (=something that makes you feel that you are very important or special) *It's a real ego boost when people recognize you in the street.*

VERBS

give sb/sth a boost *Winning the competition has given his confidence a boost.*

provide a boost to sb/sth *The good news provided a significant boost to Japan's stock market.*

B

exciting happens. **Dull** is more formal than **boring** and is used mainly in writing:
The film was rather dull and I wished I had stayed at home. | A world without music would be a very dull place. | Derby was a dull man who spent most of his life in business meetings. | It looks like another dull day outside (=the sky is grey and there is no sunshine). | *We have five children, so* ***there's never a dull moment*** *in our house.*

You can use **dull** about colours that are not very bright or exciting: *The room was painted a* ***dull*** *dark green colour.*

tedious
process | task | job | work | journey | wait | paperwork | debate | business
very boring and taking too long, so that you feel impatient:
Applying for a visa is a long and tedious process. | Jake began the tedious task of sorting through his papers. | After a tedious journey, we finally arrived in Paris. | Checking that all the names are correct is a tedious business (=a tedious thing to have to do).

monotonous
voice | work | job | task | diet | routine | existence
something that is monotonous is boring because it is always the same and does not change:
The speaker's voice was very monotonous and I found myself falling asleep. | Factory work is monotonous and unchallenging. | He ate a monotonous diet of fish and rice. | Her life followed the same monotonous routine of making meals and taking the children to school. | He has won the race every year, ***with monotonous regularity*** (=used when the same thing keeps happening and you know it will happen again).

mundane
matter | issue | task | details | world
relating to ordinary things that you do every day, rather than more exciting things:
Instead of philosophy and politics, he preferred to talk about more mundane matters. | His duties included mundane tasks such as getting us out of bed in the mornings. | Her boss wasn't interested in the mundane details of her life. | Our world must seem very mundane compared to hers.

humdrum
life | existence | routine | job | work
boring because nothing new or interesting ever happens:
He wanted to escape from his humdrum life at the office. | Yasmin saw travel as a way out of her humdrum existence. | When the excitement was over, he could get back to his humdrum routine.

dry
subject | topic | report | debate | reading
a dry subject, piece of writing etc is boring because it is very serious and does not contain any humour:
Economics can be rather a dry subject and it is difficult to make it interesting for students. | Books on statistics are usually dry reading.

dreary
place | town | suburb | landscape | life | weather
not interesting, and making you sad or bored:
The town is a dreary place in the winter. | Films were a way of escaping from their dreary lives. | The English weather was cold and dreary (=very grey and with no sunshine).

ANTONYMS **boring → interesting**

bottle *n*
a plastic or glass container with a narrow top, used for keeping liquids in

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + bottle

a plastic/glass bottle *The countryside is littered with old plastic bottles.*

a water/beer/wine/milk etc bottle *Bring a water bottle in case you get thirsty.*

a medicine/perfume/shampoo bottle *It's important to keep medicine bottles away from children.*

an empty bottle *There were empty bottles all over the floor.*

a bottle is half-full/half-empty *The bottle was already half-empty.*

VERBS

open a bottle *Do you want me to open another bottle of beer?*

drink a bottle *I was so thirsty that I drank the whole bottle.*

fill a bottle with a liquid *She filled the bottle with water.*

pour liquid into/out of a bottle *He carefully poured the sauce out of the bottle.*

bring a bottle *Come to my party, and bring a bottle.*

bottle + NOUNS

a bottle bank (=a place where bottles are collected for recycling) *I usually take our bottles to the bottle bank.*

a bottle top *Don't just throw the bottle top on the floor.*

a bottle opener *I need a bottle opener to open this bottle of wine.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bottle of sth *Do you want another bottle of beer?*

bottom[1] *n*

1 the lowest part of something

ADJECTIVES

the very bottom (=the lowest part – used for emphasis) *It is a day's ride down to the very bottom of the Canyon.*

VERBS

sink to the bottom *The ship sank to the bottom of the sea.*

PREPOSITIONS

the bottom of sth *The bottom of the bath is very dirty.*

at the bottom *I parked at the bottom of the hill and walked up to the top. | There is a note at the bottom of the page.*

on the bottom *Lobsters live on the bottom of the ocean. | The skin on the bottom of my feet is very hard.*

to the bottom *She slid to the bottom of the slope.*

PHRASES

right at/to the bottom (=at or to the lowest part – used for emphasis) *My name was right at the bottom of the list.*

THESAURUS: bottom

the underneath/the underside
the bottom surface on the outside of something:
You will find the serial number ***on the underneath*** *of the computer. | The mechanic checked* ***the underside of*** *the car.*

the foot
stairs | staircase | steps | ladder | mountain | hill | cliff | wall | page | statue | tree
the bottom of the stairs, a mountain, a page etc:
She had just reached the foot of the stairs when she saw Ben entering the yard. | There was a small village at the foot of the mountain. | The note at the foot of the page says where the quote is from.

base
statue | lamp | spine | back | neck | skull | tree | column | wall
the lowest part of something, or the wide part on which something stands:
Flowers were left at the base of the statue. | The lamp has a square base. | She felt a slight pain at the base of her spine.

bed
sea | river | lake | ocean
the ground at the bottom of an area of water:
The fish feed mainly on the sea bed. | They found some interesting stones on the river bed.

Seabed and **riverbed** are often written as one word.

foundations
building | house
the layer of cement and stones that forms the bottom of a building:
The earthquake shook the foundations of the building. | The builders have begun laying the foundations for the house.

ANTONYMS bottom → top[1] (1)

2 the least successful or important position in an organization or group

ADJECTIVES

the very bottom *He's a man who has gone from the very top to the very bottom.*

VERBS

start at the bottom *He started at the bottom and worked his way up to become managing director.*

PREPOSITIONS

the bottom of sth *The school is near the bottom of the league table.*

at the bottom *We must help those at the bottom of society to cope.*

PHRASES

second/third etc from (the) bottom (=in a list or table showing results) *The team is currently fourth from bottom.*

the bottom of the ladder/pile/heap (=used especially to describe the poorest or least powerful people in a group) *Welfare cuts have reduced the income of those at the bottom of the pile.*

ANTONYMS bottom → top[1] (2)

bottom[2] *adj*

at a lower level than the other one or other ones

NOUNS

the bottom drawer/shelf *My passport is in the bottom drawer of my desk.*

the bottom layer/row *The bottom layer must be strong enough to support the layers of bricks above it.*

the bottom half/part *There were only two windows in the bottom half of the building.*

the bottom step/stair *Jenna sat on the bottom step.*

the bottom corner *Look at the bottom left-hand corner of your screen.*

sb's bottom lip *Her bottom lip trembled and she started to cry.*

ANTONYMS bottom → top[2] (1)

boundary *n*

1 the real or imaginary line that marks the edge of a country or area of land

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + boundary

a national/international boundary *In the age*

B

of the internet, national boundaries are becoming less important.

a state boundary *The train crossed the state boundary.*

a city boundary *The new housing estates stretch beyond the old city boundaries.*

the northern/southern etc boundary *The road runs along the southern boundary of the city.*

a political/geographical/administrative boundary *Reforms could extend the geographical and political boundaries of the EU.*

a natural boundary *Here, the Andes forms a natural boundary between Argentina and Chile.*

VERBS

mark/form a boundary *The River Jordan marks the boundary between Israel and Jordan.*

cross a boundary *At the river, we crossed the boundary into the next county.*

extend a boundary *He extended the boundaries of his empire.*

draw/redraw a boundary *In the mid-1990s the government redrew the country's internal boundaries.*

boundary + NOUNS

a boundary dispute *They were involved in a boundary dispute with a neighbour.*

PREPOSITIONS

the boundary between sth and sth *The road marks the boundary between the two districts.*

within a boundary *They are not allowed to graze their cattle within park boundaries.*

2 the limit of something

ADJECTIVES

a clear boundary *They attempt to maintain clear boundaries between their working and family lives.*

traditional boundaries *These women were willing to take risks and step outside traditional boundaries.*

cultural boundaries *Silent films can cross cultural boundaries.*

VERBS

cross/cut across a boundary *This work crosses the boundary separating poetry and prose.*

push back/extend the boundaries (=do things that have not been done before) *Science has pushed back the boundaries of human knowledge.*

establish/set/define a boundary *When raising a child, it is important to set boundaries regarding acceptable behaviour.*

PREPOSITIONS

the boundary between sth and sth *The boundary between art and advertising is not always clear.*

within the boundaries of sth *Politicians must act within the boundaries of the law.*

bow[1] *v*

to bend the top part of your body forward after you finish a performance or as a greeting

NOUNS

bow your head *In Japan, it is polite to bow your head when you meet someone.*

ADVERBS

bow deeply *He walked to the front of the stage and bowed deeply.*

bow politely/respectfully *"Good evening Sir," she said, bowing respectfully.*

PREPOSITIONS

bow to sb *At the end of the show the actors bow to the audience.*

bow[2] *n*

the act of bending the top part of your body as a sign of respect or at the end of a performance

ADJECTIVES

a deep bow *He made a deep bow and left the room.*

a slight bow *The servant gave a slight bow and handed him the letter.*

VERBS

give/make a bow *She gave a bow when she met him.*

take a bow (=make a bow at the end of a performance) *The actors came back on stage to take a bow.*

box *n*

a container for putting things in, especially one with four straight sides

ADJECTIVES

a cardboard/wooden/plastic/metal box *We packed all our things into big cardboard boxes.*

an empty box *He lifted the lid and found the box was empty.*

NOUNS + box

a lunch box (*also* **a sandwich box** *BrE*): *His mum always put an apple in his lunch box.*

a storage box (=for storing things in) *The house was full of plastic storage boxes.*

a money box (=used by a child for keeping money in) *How much have you got in your money box?*

cash box (=used especially by a shop for keeping money in) *Thieves stole £100 from a cash box at the school.*

a jewellery box *BrE*, **a jewelry box** *AmE*: *She kept all her rings in a jewellery box by her bed.*

Toolbox and **shoebox** are usually written as one word.

VERBS

open a box *You can open the box to check the contents.*

shut/close a box *He shut the box and locked it.*
empty a box *The robbers emptied all the boxes, which contained cash and jewellery.*
a box contains sth *The box contained old letters and other documents.*

PREPOSITIONS

in/inside a box *He put the machine back in its box.*
a box of sth *He produced a box of matches and lit the candle.*

PHRASES

the lid of a box *She closed the lid of the box.*
a box full of sth/filled with sth *I have boxes full of old toys in the garage.*

boy *n* a male child or a young man

ADJECTIVES

a little/small boy *Little boys love toy trains.*
a young boy *My family moved to Britain when I was a young boy.*
a baby boy (=a son) *Lucy has had a baby boy.*
a teenage boy *The movie is about the adventures of two teenage boys.*
a 10-year-old/12-year-old etc boy *A 14-year-old boy has won an award for bravery.*
a good/nice boy (=a well-behaved boy) *Kevin is a good boy who never gets in trouble.*
a bad/naughty boy *That naughty boy has spilt water all over the floor!*
a clever/smart boy *Some of the boys in my class are really clever.*
a big boy (=an older boy – used especially when saying that someone is old enough not to need help or advice from an adult) *You don't need me to go with you – you're a big boy now.*
sb is the golden boy (=the one who everyone admires) *Peter was always the golden boy at school.*

Little boy or small boy?
You use **little boy** especially when showing your feelings about the boy, for example when you think he is cute. You use **small boy** especially about a boy who is small in size.

boy + NOUNS

boy band/boyband (=a pop group that consists of attractive teenage boys) *He used to be a singer in a boy band.*

Paperboy (=a boy who delivers newspapers) and **choirboy** (=a boy who sings in a choir) are usually written as one word.

PHRASES

become interested in boys *Girls become interested in boys at a very young age.*
boys will be boys (=used when saying that you expect boys and young men to behave a little badly sometimes) *Boys will be boys and it's normal for there to be some fighting in the playground.*

boycott *n*
a form of protest in which people refuse to buy a country's or company's goods, or refuse to take part in something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + boycott

an economic/trade boycott *It's not clear whether economic boycotts really work.*
an international boycott *North Korea has been the subject of an international boycott for many years.*
a nationwide boycott (=in all of a country) *They organized a nationwide boycott of the movie.*
a mass boycott (=involving a large number of people or organizations) *There was a mass boycott of the election.*

VERBS

put a boycott on sth (*also* **impose a boycott on sth** *formal*) (=start a boycott) *The United States imposed a boycott on trade with Cuba.*
organize a boycott *The students organized a boycott of the company's products.*
call for a boycott *The senator called for a boycott on all French goods.*
end/lift a boycott *He hopes to persuade Western countries to lift their boycott.*
threaten a boycott *Athletes are threatening a boycott of the Olympic Games.*
support a boycott *Many people do not support the boycott.*

PREPOSITIONS

a boycott of sth *In 1955 Martin Luther King organized a boycott of the city's bus services.*
a boycott on/against sth *They want a boycott on all Canada's seafood products.*

boyfriend *n*
a man that you are having a romantic relationship with

ADJECTIVES

sb's first boyfriend *Josh was my first boyfriend.*
sb's new boyfriend *Her parents were anxious to meet her new boyfriend.*
a steady/long-term boyfriend (=that you have had a long relationship with) *I asked if she had a steady boyfriend.*
an old boyfriend/ex-boyfriend/former boyfriend (=someone who was your boyfriend before) *I met an old boyfriend from college.*

VERBS

have a boyfriend *I have a boyfriend in the US.*
split up with your boyfriend *Helen has just split up with her boyfriend.*
leave your boyfriend *She left her boyfriend because he was boring.*

be sb's boyfriend *I told her that I wanted to be her boyfriend.*

brain *n*

1 the thing inside your head that you use for thinking, feeling, and controlling your body

ADJECTIVES

the human brain *The human brain is extremely complex.*

brain + NOUNS

brain damage/a brain injury *The baby suffered permanent brain damage.*

brain cells *The disease destroys brain cells.*

a brain tumour *BrE*, **a brain tumor** *AmE*: *He died of a brain tumour at the age of 49.*

PHRASES

the left/right side of the brain *Damage to the left side of the brain can cause problems with language.*

2 the ability to think clearly and learn quickly

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + brain

a good/quick brain *It was obvious that Ann had a good brain.*

a business brain (=the ability to make good business decisions) *We need someone who has a business brain.*

VERBS

have brains (=be intelligent) *She had more brains than her husband.*

use your brain *It's easy if you just use your brain.*

rack your brains (=try very hard to think of something) *If we all rack our brains, we should come up with some ideas.*

pick sb's brains (=ask someone for ideas) *I thought I'd pick Greg's brains about what to take with us.*

brainy *adj* THESAURUS intelligent

branch *n*

1 a part of a larger organization

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + branch

the London/New York etc branch *He works for the Paris branch of an American bank.*

the main branch *The main branch of the New York Public Library was officially opened in 1911.*

a local/regional branch *Her father had got a job in the local branch of a building society.*

a high street branch (=on one of the main streets in a town or city) *The increase in online banking has led to the closure of many high street branches.*

the nearest branch *The website tells you where the nearest branch of the store is.*

an overseas branch (=in a foreign country) *The company has just opened its first overseas branch in Paris.*

VERBS + branch

have a branch *The bank has branches all over the country.*

open/close a branch *The store opened its first branch in 1959.*

a branch opens/closes *Many local branches are having to close.*

establish a branch *The university wants to establish a branch in Australia.*

branch + NOUNS

a branch office *They have just set up a branch office in Boston.*

a branch meeting *The next branch meeting will be on May 5th.*

PREPOSITIONS

a branch of sth *He was the secretary of the local branch of the union.*

2 a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk

ADJECTIVES

a low/high branch *The bird flew down onto the lowest branch of the tree.*

the top/upper branches *The top branches were swaying in the wind.*

an overhanging branch *The overhanging branches of the tree formed a tunnel.*

the spreading branches *They sat under the spreading branches of an oak tree.*

VERBS

prune/cut back a branch *Prune the branches of the tree in winter.*

chop off a branch *We could chop off some branches to make a fire.*

brand *n*

a type of product which has its own name and is made by a particular company

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + brand

a leading/top brand *Choose one of the leading brands of paint.*

a popular brand *The store has all the popular brands of breakfast cereal.*

sb's favourite brand *BrE*, **sb's favorite brand** *AmE*: *The shop no longer sells my favourite brand of soap.*

a well-known/famous brand *A dangerous chemical has been found in a well-known brand of bottled water.*

a global/international brand *The fashion company attempted to build a global brand.*

a luxury/premium brand (=an expensive brand) *Cheap copies pose a threat to some luxury brands.*

own brand *BrE*, **store brand** *AmE* (=sold by a particular store under its own name) *A supermarket's own brand should cost less than the nationally advertised brands.*

brand + NOUNS

a brand name *The brand name is well known to the public.*

a brand image (=the way a product or organization seems to the public) *A company carefully protects its brand image.*

brand loyalty (=the tendency to always buy a particular brand) *Advertising is used to sell a product and create brand loyalty.*

brand awareness (=the number of people who have heard of a brand) *The aim of the campaign is to increase brand awareness.*

the brand leader (=the brand that sells the most) *It is the brand leader for herbs and spices in the UK.*

brave *adj*

showing that you are not afraid to do things or be in situations that other people find dangerous or difficult

NOUNS

a brave man/woman/girl etc *The firefighters were all brave men.*

a brave soldier *Brave soldiers have given their lives to defend our country.*

a brave smile *Her tears were replaced by a brave smile.*

brave words *Despite these brave words he felt very frightened.*

a brave attempt/effort *He made a brave attempt to deal with the problem.*

a brave fight/battle *Sadly, Mr Shaw died last week after a brave fight against cancer.*

a brave decision *It was a brave decision to start again in a new country.*

a brave step/move *Trying to enter this market is a brave move for the company.*

a brave act/deed (=something brave you have done) *There were many stories about his brave deeds.*

a brave soul *often humorous* (=brave person) *A few brave souls were making their way through the deep mud.*

ADVERBS

incredibly/amazingly/exceptionally brave
I think he was incredibly brave to do a parachute jump.

PHRASES

put a brave face on (sth) (=pretend that you are happy when you are upset) *The team tried to put a brave face on their defeat.*

You can also use **brave** as a noun: *The United States is the land of the free and the home of* ***the brave****.*

THESAURUS: brave

courageous
man | **woman** | **person** | **leader** | **decision** | **act** | **action** | **effort** | **stand** | **battle**
very brave – used especially about someone who does something because they believe it is right, or who fights against a disease for a long time:
She was a courageous leader who fought for democracy all her life. | *Their courageous actions saved many lives.* | *Her father died after a long and courageous battle with Parkinson's disease.*

heroic
effort | **attempt** | **achievement** | **act** | **deed** | **struggle** | **resistance** | **figure**
very brave and admired by many people:
The team made a heroic effort to rescue the miners. | *Rebuilding the city after the floods was a heroic achievement.* | *Mandela is a heroic figure for millions.*

bold
move | **step** | **decision** | **attempt** | **initiative**
showing that you are willing to take risks, especially by making difficult decisions or suggesting things that other people may disagree with:
It was a bold move to set up his own company. | *We need someone who is not afraid to make bold decisions.* | *None of his colleagues is* ***bold enough*** *to say it in public, but there is a widespread feeling that the president has failed.*

daring
raid | **mission** | **rescue** | **escape** | **exploits** | **robbery** | **pilot**
brave because you are willing to take great risks:
They set off on a daring mission to free the hostages. | *The men made a daring escape from prison.* | *Many people have seen films about the daring exploits of James Bond* (=daring and exciting actions).

valiant
effort | **attempt** | **fight** | **struggle** | **defender**
brave. **Valiant** is often used when someone is unsuccessful, even though they try hard:
The cinema was forced to close down, despite all their valiant efforts. | *The team put up a valiant fight, but they lost 2-1.*

Valiant is only used before a noun.

adventurous
traveller | **visitor** | **spirit** | **life**
an adventurous person likes going to new places and trying new things, even though they seem unusual or far away:
Jordan has a lot to offer the adventurous traveller. | *The old lady has certainly led an adventurous life.* | *If you are* ***feeling adventurous****, there are many unusual dishes you can try.*

intrepid
explorer | **traveller** | **pilot** | **aviator** | **astronaut** | **reporter**
willing to go on a dangerous journey or do dangerous things. **Intrepid** sounds rather

a complete breakdown *She had a complete breakdown and had to be admitted to a mental hospital.*

a severe/serious breakdown *He suffered a severe mental breakdown in 1959.*

VERBS

have/suffer a breakdown *After months of stress, he had a breakdown.*

be heading for a breakdown (=be likely to have one soon) *Jo is heading for a breakdown if she doesn't take some time off work.*

PHRASES

on the verge of a breakdown (=very close to having a breakdown) *Amy was on the verge of a nervous breakdown and needed rest and quiet.*

breakfast *n*

the meal you have in the morning

ADJECTIVES

a big breakfast *Most people don't eat a big breakfast nowadays.*

a light breakfast (=a small one) *She ate a light breakfast of toast and coffee.*

a good/proper breakfast (=with plenty of food) *I think kids need a good breakfast before they go to school.*

a quick/hasty/hurried breakfast *I grabbed a quick breakfast and ran to the bus stop.*

a leisurely breakfast (=not hurried) *On Sunday mornings I like to have a leisurely breakfast.*

an early/late breakfast *We had an early breakfast and left before 7.30.*

a full English breakfast (=a big hot breakfast with bacon, egg, toast etc – used especially in hotels) *I'll have the full English breakfast.*

a continental breakfast (=coffee and bread with butter and jam – used especially in hotels) *The charge for the room includes a continental breakfast.*

a cooked/fried breakfast (=bacon, egg, toast etc) *She likes to start the day with a cooked breakfast.*

NOUNS + breakfast

a buffet breakfast (=one in a hotel, where you serve yourself from a range of dishes) *A buffet breakfast is served in the hotel's elegant dining room.*

VERBS

have/eat breakfast *Paul got up and had breakfast.*

have sth for breakfast *I usually have toast for breakfast.*

make breakfast *She wandered into the kitchen to make breakfast.*

finish your breakfast *Hurry up and finish your breakfast.*

skip/miss breakfast (=not eat breakfast) *Be sure to eat at least three meals a day and don't skip breakfast.*

breakfast + NOUNS

the breakfast things/dishes (=plates, spoons, bread etc that you have used at breakfast) *Dad was clearing away the breakfast things.*

(a) breakfast cereal *Many breakfast cereals are high in sugar.*

breakthrough *n*

an important discovery or achievement that happens after trying for a long time

VERBS

make a breakthrough *Detectives think they may have made a breakthrough in their hunt for the murderer.*

achieve a breakthrough *We achieved this breakthrough almost by accident.*

represent a breakthrough *This discovery represents a major breakthrough in the search for a cure.*

a breakthrough comes *The breakthrough came after a day of meetings between management and workers.*

ADJECTIVES

a big/major breakthrough *Researchers believe they are on the verge of a big breakthrough.*

a significant/important breakthrough *The agreement is seen as a significant breakthrough in relations between the two countries.*

a technological/scientific/medical breakthrough *Recent medical breakthroughs have brought fresh hope to people with the disease.*

a historic breakthrough *The president described the trade agreement as a historic breakthrough.*

PREPOSITIONS

a breakthrough in sth *Scientists have made significant breakthroughs in the treatment of breast cancer.*

breath *n*

the air that you take into or send out of your lungs when you breathe

ADJECTIVES

a deep breath (=in which you breathe a lot of air in slowly) *She took a deep breath and knocked on the door.*

a shallow breath (=a quick one that is not deep) *She was taking quick shallow breaths and seemed to be in pain.*

bad breath (=that has an unpleasant smell) *Smoking gives you bad breath.*

VERBS

take a breath (=breathe in) *Pause at the end of the sentence and take a breath.*

hold your breath (=not breathe out for a few seconds or minutes) *How long can you hold your breath underwater?*

let your breath out *Let your breath out slowly and relax.*

draw breath *formal* (=breathe) *I hid behind the door, hardly daring to draw breath.*

get your breath back (*also* **catch your breath**) (=start breathing normally again, especially after resting for a short time) *He had to sit down until he'd got his breath back.*

be gasping for breath (=have difficulty breathing, especially because you have been using a lot of effort) *By the time I reached the bus stop, I was gasping for breath.*

be fighting/struggling for breath (=find it very difficult to breathe) *He stumbled through the smoke, fighting for breath.*

pause for breath (=stop doing something, especially talking) *She talked solidly for five minutes, hardly pausing for breath.*

PHRASES

be out of breath (=have difficulty breathing after running, hurrying etc) *Andrew hurried in, slightly out of breath.*

be short of breath (=be unable to breathe easily, because you are ill) *She was so short of breath that it was an effort to speak.*

shortness of breath (=when you are unable to breathe easily) *Symptoms include dizziness and shortness of breath.*

a sharp intake of breath (=when you breathe in very quickly and suddenly, especially because of shock) *Richard took a sharp intake of breath as the hot cheese burned his tongue.*

breathe *v*

to take air into your lungs and send it out again

ADVERBS

breathe deeply (=take long slow breaths of air) *She breathed deeply in the cool night air.*

breathe heavily/hard (=breathe loudly, especially after exercise) *He was breathing hard by the time he reached the top of the hill.*

breathe fast/rapidly (=breathe quickly because of illness, fear etc) *I noticed that Freddie was breathing rapidly just before he fainted.*

breathe slowly *Breathe slowly and try to relax.*

breathe softly/gently *His wife lay next to him, breathing softly.*

breathe steadily/evenly/regularly *He forced himself to breathe steadily and remain calm.*

breathe normally/properly *The patient said that he felt a sharp pain in his chest and was unable to breathe normally.*

breathe easily *Sucking a mint may help you breathe more easily when you have a cold.*

NOUNS

breathe (in) some air *It was wonderful to be outside and breathe some fresh air.*

breathe (in) fumes (=breathe harmful gas or smoke) *These children are breathing traffic fumes all day long.*

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

breathe in (=take air into your lungs) *It felt good to breathe in some country air.*

breathe out (=send air out) *Breathe out slowly, and relax.*

PHRASES

can/cannot breathe *He held her so tight that she could not breathe.*

can hardly breathe (=breathe with great difficulty) *It was so hot that I felt as though I could hardly breathe.*

breathe through your nose/mouth *This cold makes it hard to breathe through my nose.*

have trouble/difficulty breathing (*also* **struggle to breathe**) *In high altitudes some people have trouble breathing.*

breathing *n*

the process of breathing air in and out

ADJECTIVES

deep breathing *The yoga class starts with some deep breathing exercises.*

shallow breathing (=with small breaths) *She was very ill and her breathing became more shallow.*

heavy breathing (=loud breathing, especially by someone who is sexually excited) *When I picked up the phone, all I heard was heavy breathing.*

sb's breathing is regular *Walk around until your breathing becomes regular again.*

NOUNS

breathing exercises *Breathing exercises can help you relax.*

breathing difficulties/problems *If you develop breathing difficulties, go and see your doctor.*

breathing apparatus/equipment *Firefighters use special breathing apparatus when they go into burning buildings.*

breathtaking *adj* THESAURUS impressive

breeze *n* a gentle wind

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + breeze

a cool breeze *It was bright and sunny with a cool breeze.*

a warm breeze *The warm breeze blew into the room.*

a gentle/soft/mild breeze *It was a beautiful day with a blue sky and a gentle breeze.*

a light/slight/faint breeze *The curtains moved slightly in the light breeze.*

a stiff/strong breeze *There was a stiff breeze that morning, just right for sailing.*

a cold/chilly breeze *A cold breeze blew off the water.*

a sea/ocean breeze *The boats were moving up and down in the sea breeze.*

a summer breeze *He felt the soft summer breeze against his skin.*

B

VERBS

a breeze blows *There was a strong breeze blowing when I went out.*

a breeze drifts/wafts (=blows very gently) *A cool breeze drifted through the window.*

a breeze rustles/ruffles/stirs sth (=blows something, making a slight noise) *A light breeze ruffled the leaves in the trees.*

a breeze comes off/from/into etc *There was just a very faint breeze coming off the ocean.*

THESAURUS: breeze

breeze, draught, gale, hurricane, typhoon, tornado, cyclone → **wind**

breezy *adj* THESAURUS **windy**

bribe *n*

money or a gift that you give someone to persuade them to do something for you, especially illegally

VERBS

offer (sb) a bribe *Some of the team were offered bribes to perform badly.*

accept/take a bribe *The judge was charged with taking bribes.*

pay a bribe *It was claimed that the company paid bribes to win the contract.*

give (sb) a bribe *He was arrested for trying to give the policeman a bribe.*

bridge *n*

a structure built over a river, road etc that allows people or vehicles to cross from one side to the other

NOUNS + bridge

a railway bridge *BrE*, **a railroad bridge** *AmE*: *Go under the railway bridge and turn right.*

a road bridge *The government plans to construct a new road bridge to the island.*

a suspension bridge (=one that hangs from strong steel ropes) *San Francisco has a famous suspension bridge.*

a toll bridge (=one that you pay to go across) *There is a toll bridge across the River Severn when you go into Wales.*

VERBS

build a bridge (*also* **construct a bridge** *formal*): *The bridge was built in 1902.*

cross a bridge *An estimated 150,000 cars cross the bridge each day.*

a bridge crosses sth *A pretty stone bridge crosses the little river.*

a bridge spans sth *formal* (=crosses a wide area) *By 1875 a railroad bridge spanned the Missouri.*

a bridge links/connects sth with sth *There's a bridge linking the island with the mainland.*

PREPOSITIONS

a bridge across/over sth *We walked across one of the bridges over the River Avon.*

over/across a bridge *We drove around the harbour and came back over the bridge.*

brief Ac *adj* continuing for a short time

NOUNS

a brief period/time *He lived there all his life, apart from a brief period during the war.*

a brief spell (=a short time) *After a brief spell in teaching, Sarah started her own business.*

a brief moment *The old lady's gaze rested on her for a brief moment.*

a brief pause *There was a brief pause before he replied.*

a brief visit/stay *The president met other world leaders during a brief visit to Geneva.*

a brief look/glance/glimpse *He gave her a brief look.*

a brief appearance *He made a brief appearance in front of reporters outside his home.*

VERBS

keep/make sth brief *Let's keep this conversation brief – I have a plane to catch.*

ADVERBS

relatively brief *The relatively brief period of time he spent in Australia changed his life.*

THESAURUS: brief

brief, quick, temporary, short-lived, short-term, fleeting, momentary, passing, ephemeral → **short (1)**

brief, concise, succinct, pithy → **short (3)**

bright *adj*

1 shining strongly, or with plenty of light

NOUNS

bright light *The bright light hurt his eyes.*

bright sunlight/sunshine/sun *He walked out into the bright sunlight.*

a bright day/morning *It was a bright sunny morning.*

a bright sky *Ella loved the bright skies of southern Australia.*

a bright room (=with plenty of light) *The room is bright and spacious.*

a bright star *Betelgeux is one of the brightest stars in the night sky.*

a bright flash *There was a bright flash in the sky and then a rumble of thunder.*

ADVERBS

blindingly/dazzlingly bright (=in a way that hurts your eyes) *The sun was already dazzlingly bright.*

THESAURUS: bright

strong
light | sunlight
strong light is very bright:
The plant grows best in strong light. | Photographs fade if they are exposed to strong sunlight.

brilliant
light | sunshine | sun | moon
brilliant light is extremely bright:
Brilliant light streamed through the window. | The garden was full of brilliant spring sunshine.

Brilliant is only used before a noun.

dazzling
light
a dazzling light is so bright that you cannot look at it:
The dazzling light of a torch shone in his eyes.

blinding
light | flash | glare
a blinding light is very bright and makes you unable to see for a short time after you have looked at it:
There was a sudden blinding light, followed by a huge explosion. | A blinding flash lit up the sky.

harsh
light | sunlight | glare
a harsh light is too bright and is unpleasant to look at:
In the harsh light of the kitchen, she looked older than she was. | The goggles protect your eyes from the harsh glare of the snow.

light
room | space
a light building or room is bright because there are big windows:
The dining room was light and airy. | I need a nice light space in which to work.

well-lit
area | room | street | office
a well-lit place has plenty of light and it is easy to see clearly, usually because of electric lights:
Always park in a well-lit area. | The well-lit streets were full of people.

THESAURUS: bright

good, fine, nice, bright, beautiful/glorious, clear, cloudless, dry → **sunny**

2 bright colours are strong and not pale

NOUNS

a bright colour *The room was painted in bright colours.*

bright red/yellow/blue etc *Wendy always wears bright red lipstick.*

a bright shade *His face went a bright shade of purple.*

THESAURUS: bright

brilliant
very bright:
*Dancers dressed in **brilliant colours** filled the stage. | **Brilliant white** walls give the room a light feel.*

Brilliant is only used before a noun.

vivid
very strong and bright, especially in a way that is attractive:
*The sky was a **vivid blue**. | Fish have such beautiful **vivid colours**.*

vibrant
very strong and bright, especially in a way that is exciting:
*These rich **vibrant colours** look lovely with dark hair. | The room was decorated in **vibrant reds** and greens.*

dazzling
a dazzling white colour is extremely bright to look at:
*The boy had **dazzling white** teeth. | The beach is famous for its **dazzling white** sands.*

garish
too bright and unpleasant to look at:
*He uses rather **garish colours** in his paintings. | The door was painted a **garish yellow**. | Her clothes **looked garish** and cheap.*

3 intelligent

THESAURUS: bright

clever, smart, bright, brilliant, gifted, wise, cunning, brainy → **intelligent**

brilliant *adj* THESAURUS **bright (1), (2), clever (2), intelligent**

brisk *adj* THESAURUS **fast[1] (1)**

brittle *adj* THESAURUS **fragile, hard (1)**

broad *adj*

1 measuring a long distance across

THESAURUS: broad

broad, thick → **wide (1)**

2 consisting of a lot of different types of things

THESAURUS: broad

broad → **wide (2)**

broadband *n*

a system for using the internet that allows you to stay connected all the time

ADJECTIVES

high-speed broadband *With high-speed broadband you can download films and videos very quickly.*

VERBS

have broadband *Do you have broadband at home?*

broadband + NOUNS

a broadband provider (=a company that provides broadband) *Which is the cheapest broadband provider?*

a broadband connection *I can't send the email because my broadband connection isn't working.*

broadband speed *My broadband speed is really slow.*

broadband access *Some areas do not have broadband access.*

broadcast *n*

a programme on the radio or on television

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + broadcast

a live broadcast (=one shown at the same time as events are happening) *NBC produced a 30-minute live broadcast from the White House.*

a radio/television broadcast *The president addressed the nation in a live television broadcast.*

a satellite broadcast *The match was shown live in a worldwide satellite broadcast.*

a news broadcast *His death was reported on the BBC's evening news broadcast.*

an election broadcast (=one shown before an election to persuade people to vote for a party) *The Labour Party's election broadcast was seen by an audience of 10 million.*

a party political broadcast (=made in order to advertise a political party) *That was a party political broadcast on behalf of the Conservative Party.*

An **internet broadcast** is often called a **webcast**: *The **webcast** is aimed at young people.*

VERBS

make/do/produce a broadcast *The charity made a television broadcast appealing for money.*

give a broadcast *The Queen gives a television broadcast to the nation every Christmas.*

watch/hear/listen to a broadcast *Most viewers who watched the broadcast agreed with the president.*

brochure *n*

a thin book giving information or advertising something

ADJECTIVES

a free brochure *Would you like a copy of our free brochure?*

a colour brochure *Please write or call for our colour brochure.*

a glossy brochure (=with shiny pages) *Products always look nice in glossy brochures.*

NOUNS + brochure

a travel/tourist brochure (*also* **holiday brochure** *BrE*): *We've looked in all the travel brochures, but can't decide where to go on our vacation.*

a company/college/hotel brochure *I'll send you a copy of our company brochure.*

a sales brochure *The kitchen looks just like the one in the sales brochure.*

a course brochure *You'll find details about the English class in the course brochure.*

VERBS

read a brochure *The first step is to read the course brochure, then complete the application form.*

flick through a brochure (=look at the pages quickly) *She was flicking through a brochure about kitchen products.*

it says in the brochure (that)... *It says in the brochure that the price includes all your meals and accommodation.*

broken *adj*

1 damaged and split into pieces

NOUNS

a broken leg/arm/nose/bone *A broken arm can take several weeks to heal.*

broken glass/a broken window *He stepped on some broken glass and cut his foot.*

a broken bottle/cup/plate *I tried to glue the broken plate together.*

broken furniture/chair *We repair broken furniture.*

VERBS

get broken *How did the window get broken?*

2 if a machine is broken, it does not work: *The washing machine is broken.* | *My watch is broken.*

THESAURUS: broken

down

computers | **system** | **network**

if a computer system is down, it is not working, usually for a short period:

Our computers are down at the moment, so I can't check. | *The system was down all afternoon, so we went home.* | *The network went down at 11.00 p.m.*

out of order

toilet | **elevator** | **lift** | **photocopier**

not working – used about things that are used by the public:

The toilets were all out of order. | *We had to use the stairs because the elevator was out of order.*

You can say that a machine **doesn't work** or **won't work**: *The photocopier **won't work**.*
You say that an engine or car **won't start**: *I was late for work because the car **wouldn't start**.*
In spoken English, you can also say that part of a machine or vehicle **has gone**: *The hard drive on my laptop **has gone**.*

brother *n*

a boy or man who has the same parents as you

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + brother

an older/elder brother *I have two older brothers.*

a big brother (=older brother – more informal) *Jake was my big brother and I admired him.*

a younger brother *Do you have any younger brothers?*

a little/kid brother (=younger brother – more informal) *My little brother was always annoying me.*

a baby brother (=one who is a baby, or who is much younger) *Mum let me hold my new baby brother.*

a twin brother *Luke and his twin brother Sam went everywhere together.*

a half-brother (=the son of just one of your parents) *I never really liked my half-brother.*

brown *adj, n*

the colour of earth, wood, or coffee

TYPES OF BROWN

light/pale/soft brown *Her hair was light brown.*

dark/deep brown *He removed his dark brown jacket.*

rich brown *Cook the butter and sugar until the mixture turns a rich brown colour.*

dull/muddy brown *The carpet is a rather unattractive dull brown.*

reddish brown *Some of the leaves had reddish brown spots.*

golden brown *Cook until the cheese on top is golden brown.*

chestnut brown (=a red-brown colour) *She had glossy chestnut brown hair.*

chocolate brown (=dark brown) *He was dressed in a chocolate brown suit.*

PREPOSITIONS

in brown *He was dressed in brown.*

brush[1] *n*

a tool with hairs or plastic threads fastened to a handle, used for cleaning, painting, making your hair tidy etc

ADJECTIVES

a fine brush (=a thin brush) *Using a fine brush, paint eyes and a mouth on the doll.*

a soft brush *I clean my teeth with a very soft brush.*

a stiff brush *Scrub the wood thoroughly with water and a stiff brush.*

NOUNS + brush

a clothes brush *BrE* (=used for removing dust from clothes) *He used a clothes brush to remove the dust from his jacket.*

a scrubbing brush *BrE*, **a scrub brush** *AmE* (=a stiff brush used for cleaning things) *I had to get down on my knees with a scrubbing brush to clean the floor.*

Paintbrush, **toothbrush**, **hairbrush**, and **nailbrush** are usually written as one word.

VERBS

use a brush *If you look at the painting closely, you can see how the artist uses his brush.*

clean sth with a brush *Houseplants can be cleaned with a soft brush.*

put sth on with a brush (*also* **apply sth with a brush** *formal*): *The paint is applied with a brush or a roller.*

brush + NOUNS

a brush stroke (=a mark made with a paintbrush) *You can see the brush strokes when you look closely at the painting.*

PHRASES

a dustpan and brush (=a special container for putting dust etc in and a brush) *She got a dustpan and brush and swept up the broken glass.*

brush[2] *v* THESAURUS clean[2]

brutal *adj* THESAURUS cruel (1)

bubble *n* a ball of air or gas

NOUNS + bubble

an air/gas bubble *Gas bubbles in any liquid tend to rise to the surface.*

bubble + VERBS

a bubble bursts/pops *The bubble got bigger and bigger until it burst.*

a bubble forms *Bubbles began to form as the liquid started to boil.*

a bubble floats *The bubbles are floating on the surface of the water.*

VERBS + bubble

blow bubbles *The children were blowing bubbles in the air.*

form bubbles *The gas in the beer forms bubbles.*

burst a bubble *He burst the bubble with his finger.*

budget *n*

the money that is available to someone, or a plan of how it will be spent

a historic building (=an old building of historical interest) *Most of the historic buildings are from the 18th century.*

a derelict building (=empty and in very bad condition) *Near the canal there are a number of derelict buildings.*

VERBS

design a building *He wanted to design a building that people would enjoy visiting.*

put up a building (*also* **erect a building** *formal*) (=build it) *They're putting up a lot of new buildings around here.*

convert a building (=change it so it can be used for something different) *The building has been converted into apartments.*

demolish a building (*also* **pull down/knock down/tear down a building** *more informal*): *All the old buildings were demolished.*

bullet *n*

a small piece of metal that you fire from a gun

VERBS + bullet

fire a bullet *Police fired rubber bullets into the crowd.*

spray bullets (=fire a lot of bullets) *The soldier lifted the machine gun and sprayed bullets at the wall.*

bullet + VERBS

a bullet hits/strikes sb/sth *The first bullet hit him in the back.*

a bullet misses sb/sth *The bullet narrowly missed her heart.*

a bullet flies somewhere *Bullets were flying around our heads.*

a bullet whistles past (=moves fast making a noise) *I heard a bullet whistle past me.*

a bullet ricochets off sth (=hits something and moves away from it again) *The bullet ricocheted off a wall.*

bullet + NOUNS

a bullet wound *He was brought into hospital with a bullet wound in his leg.*

a bullet hole *There were two bullet holes in the windscreen.*

ADJECTIVES

a stray bullet (=one that is not intended to hit that person or thing) *He was tragically killed by a stray bullet.*

PHRASES

a hail/volley of bullets (=a lot of bullets fired together) *Officers were met by a hail of bullets from the house.*

be riddled with bullets (=be hit by a lot of bullets) *The car was riddled with bullets.*

bulletin *n*

a short news report, or a short statement giving information

NOUNS + bulletin

a news bulletin *We interrupt this program to bring you a special news bulletin.*

an information bulletin *The club produces a weekly information bulletin.*

a radio/television bulletin *The standard television bulletin lasts 15 minutes.*

a weather bulletin *The weather bulletin said it was going to rain.*

ADJECTIVES

an electronic/online bulletin *The college's online bulletin is updated every few days.*

an official bulletin *An official bulletin will be released to the press later today.*

an hourly/daily/weekly/monthly etc bulletin *They broadcast an hourly news bulletin about the storm.*

a regular bulletin *The club produces a regular bulletin informing members about interesting events.*

the latest bulletin *The latest bulletin is now available online.*

VERBS

issue/release/put out a bulletin *The office issued a bulletin warning people about the storm.*

broadcast a bulletin *National television broadcast regular bulletins about the president's medical condition.*

bumpy *adj* THESAURUS rough (1)

bunch *n*

a group of things that are fastened, held, or growing together

PHRASES

a bunch of flowers/roses/herbs etc *I picked a bunch of flowers from the garden.*

a bunch of grapes/bananas/fruit *She served the cheese with a bunch of black grapes.*

a bunch of keys *A bunch of keys dangled from his belt.*

burden *n*

something difficult or worrying that you have to deal with

ADJECTIVES

a heavy/great/huge/terrible burden *Caring for elderly relatives can be a heavy burden.*

an intolerable burden (=one that is too hard for someone to deal with) *Too many exams can place an intolerable burden on young people.*

an unfair/undue burden *The new legislation put an unfair burden on employers.*

a financial burden *Paying for extra staff would impose too great a financial burden on schools.*

NOUNS + burden

the tax burden *These changes will ease the tax burden for small businesses.*

VERBS

be/become a burden *I don't want to be a burden to my children when I'm old.*

bear/carry a burden (=have something difficult or worrying to deal with) *At the age of 16, Suzy bore the burden of providing for her family.*

shoulder/take a burden (=accept responsibility for something) *Why should taxpayers shoulder this burden?*

place/put a burden on sb (*also* **impose a burden on sb** *formal*): *This situation places the main burden of family care on women.*

share the burden *I was glad my brother was there to share the burden.*

shift the burden onto sb (=put it onto someone else) *These changes are intended to shift the burden of paying for pollution from the taxpayer to the polluter.*

ease/reduce/lighten the burden *Smaller classes would ease the burden for teachers.*

a burden falls on/upon sb *The tax burden falls most heavily upon the poorest people.*

PREPOSITIONS

the burden on sb *This would reduce the burden on those least able to pay.*

be a burden to sb *The house is a burden to us and I don't think we can keep paying for it.*

PHRASES

the burden of responsibility *He felt unable to cope with the burden of responsibility.*

a burden of guilt *She carried a heavy burden of guilt for not having been able to protect her child.*

lift the burden from sb's shoulders (=take it away or make it less severe) *I feel as if a great burden has been lifted from my shoulders.*

bureaucracy *n*

a very complicated official system with a lot of rules

ADJECTIVES

unnecessary/excessive bureaucracy *People are always complaining about the amount of unnecessary bureaucracy in local government.*

a faceless bureaucracy (=in which you do not have human contact with someone) *Many big organizations seem like faceless bureaucracies.*

NOUNS + bureaucracy

government/state bureaucracy *There is so much government bureaucracy that it is difficult for people to set up their own business.*

VERBS

cut/reduce bureaucracy *Teachers want to cut bureaucracy in schools.*

increase/create more bureaucracy *The new system will only create more bureaucracy for farmers.*

deal with bureaucracy *Small businesses have to deal with a lot of bureaucracy.*

In more informal English, people often use the phrase **red tape** when talking about unnecessary rules and regulations: *There's a mountain of* ***red tape*** *to get through, before you can get a visa.*

burn[1] *v*

1 to produce flames

NOUNS

a fire burns *There was a wood fire burning in the front room.*

a candle/cigarette burns *She left a candle burning next to her bed.*

a house/building/forest/car etc burns *The trees were still burning.*

ADVERBS

burn down (=be destroyed by fire) *If your house burned down, would the insurance cover it?*

burn brightly *A coal fire was burning brightly in the kitchen.*

burn fiercely *Many buildings were burning fiercely.*

burn steadily *The candle burned steadily.*

burn merrily (=in a way that looks cheerful) *A fire burned merrily in the grate.*

PHRASES

burn to the ground (=be completely destroyed by fire) *The building burned to the ground after it was struck by lightning.*

burn out of control *The fire has been burning out of control for three days.*

THESAURUS: burn

blaze
fire
to burn very brightly with a lot of flames and heat:
They had their meal in the dining room, where a lovely fire was blazing.

flicker
flame | candle | fire
to burn with an unsteady light that appears and disappears quickly:
They watched the flames flicker in the fireplace. | The candle flickered in the wind. | The fire flickered and then went out.

smoulder *BrE*, **smolder** *AmE*
cigarette | cigar | fire
to burn slowly and continuously, producing smoke but no flames:
A cigarette smouldered in the ashtray. | The fire was still smouldering a week later.

B

B

You can also say that a building, vehicle etc is **on fire**: *Someone said our house was **on fire**.* If something is burning with a lot of flames, you can say that it is **ablaze** or **alight**: *Soon, the whole city was **ablaze**. | By the time the fire engines got there, the factory was **alight**.*

2 to hurt someone or damage something with fire or something hot

NOUNS

burn your hand/fingers/tongue etc *She burned her hand on a hot pan.*

burn a letter/document etc *Burn this letter after you read it.*

burn a hole in sth *The cigarette had burned a hole in the carpet.*

ADVERBS

be badly/severely burned *His face had been badly burned in the fire.*

burn a house/building etc down (=destroy it with fire) *They threatened to burn our house down.*

PHRASES

be burned to the ground (=be completely destroyed by fire) *The entire village was burned to the ground.*

be burned to death *Anyone inside the truck would have been burned to death.*

be burned at the stake (=be burned in a fire as a punishment) *In those days, witches were burned at the stake.*

THESAURUS: burn

set fire to sth (*also* **set sth on fire**)
to make something start burning so that it gets damaged:
Protesters set fire to cars. | Sparks from the fireplace could have set the rug on fire.

scorch
to damage the surface of something by burning it so that a dark mark is left on it:
I accidentally scorched my shirt with the iron. | The heater was left on all night and it scorched the wall.

scald
yourself | tongue | mouth | skin
to burn yourself with very hot liquid or steam:
I scalded myself with boiling water. | The coffee was so hot it scalded his tongue.

singe
hair | eyebrows | moustache | beard | fingers | fur
to damage something by burning it slightly so that the ends or edges are burned:
I singed the hairs on my arm. | The flames were hot enough to singe your eyebrows.

ignite *technical*
fuel | oil | petrol | fire | gas | fumes | vapour
to make something start to burn:
The gas is ignited by an electrical spark. | It appears that he lit a cigarette which ignited the petrol fumes.

burn² *n*

an injury caused by fire, heat, or chemicals

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + burn

serious/severe/terrible burns *The man suffered serious burns.*

minor/superficial burns (=not serious) *She is being treated for minor burns.*

a cigarette burn *His body was covered in cigarette burns.*

first-degree burns/second-degree burns/third-degree burns *He has third-degree burns and will spend months in hospital.*

Different levels of burns
First-degree burns are not serious and the skin is red and a little painful. **Second-degree burns** are more serious and there are blisters on the skin. **Third-degree burns** are extremely serious and painful, and the skin is badly damaged.

VERBS

have burns *He had burns to his legs.*

suffer/receive burns *A firefighter suffered serious burns when he tried to rescue two people from a burning house.*

cause burns *Some chemicals can cause burns if you spill them on your skin.*

burn + NOUNS

a burn mark *You can still see the burn mark on my hand.*

burst *v* THESAURUS break¹ (1)

bus *n*

a large vehicle that people pay to travel on

VERBS

go/travel by bus *I usually go to work by bus.*

go on the bus/use the bus (=travel by bus) *It's easier to go on the bus than to drive.*

get/take/catch a bus *I took a bus to San Francisco.*

ride a bus *AmE: It was the first time Craig had ridden a bus downtown by himself.*

get on/off a bus *Several more passengers got on the bus.*

wait for a bus *We were waiting for the bus for half an hour.*

miss the bus (=be too late to get on it) *He woke up late and missed the bus.*

a bus goes/leaves *The last bus went ten minutes ago.*

a bus comes/arrives *I waited and waited but the bus didn't come.*

buses run (=go at regular times) *The buses run less frequently on a Sunday.*

ADJECTIVES

a bus is full *The bus was full, so we had to wait for the next one.*

a bus is late *Sometimes the bus is late, and we're late for school.*

a crowded bus *He made his way to the front of the crowded bus.*

the last bus *The last bus is at midnight.*

a double-decker bus (=one with two levels for passengers) *London is famous for its red double-decker buses.*

NOUNS + bus

a school bus *I saw her waiting for the school bus.*

a shuttle bus (=one that makes regular short journeys between two places) *There's a shuttle bus between the hotel and the beach.*

bus + NOUNS

a bus ride/journey/trip *It's a 20-minute bus ride into town.*

a bus lane (=a part of the road where only buses are allowed to drive) *You can be fined for driving in a bus lane.*

a bus service *It's a small village but there is a good bus service.*

a bus driver *The bus driver asked everyone to move down the bus.*

a bus stop *Let's get off at the next bus stop.*

a bus station *Dad met me at the bus station.*

a bus ticket *He checked our bus tickets.*

a bus pass (=a card that allows you to make several bus journeys) *Most of the students have a monthly bus pass.*

a bus fare (=the money you pay for a bus journey) *I didn't have enough money for my bus fare.*

a bus timetable *BrE*, **a bus schedule** *AmE*: *The bus timetable changes on January 31st.*

PREPOSITIONS

by bus *The best way to get there is by bus.*

on a bus *There were a lot of people on the bus.*

the bus to/from a place *The bus to the beach takes 10 minutes.*

the bus for a place (=that you use to go there) *Is this the bus for the city centre?*

business *n*

1 the activity of making money by producing or buying and selling goods, or providing services

VERBS

do business *They are starting to do business in China and India.*

conduct/carry on business *formal* (=do business) *I like the way they conduct their business.*

go into business (=start working in business) *A lot of university graduates want to go into business.*

set up/start up in business *The bank gave me a loan to help me set up in business.*

stay in business (=continue operating) *Some stores are finding it hard to stay in business.*

go out of business (=stop doing business because of financial problems) *In a recession, smaller firms often go out of business.*

⚠ Don't say 'make business'. Say **do business**.

business + NOUNS

a business deal *She was just about to complete a big business deal.*

a business meeting *He was late for an important business meeting.*

a business trip *Her father was frequently away on business trips.*

business activities *Her family did not know anything about her business activities.*

business interests (=business activities, or shares in companies) *Both companies have substantial business interests in Indonesia.*

a business plan *Together, they came up with a business plan.*

a business venture (=a new business activity that involves taking risks) *It is unwise to invest all your money in one business venture.*

a business leader *Business leaders have said that barriers to trade should be removed.*

NOUNS + business

the music/entertainment/computer etc business *She has been in the music business for thirty years.*

PREPOSITIONS

in business *By his early twenties he was in business as a printer.*

on business (=in connection with your work) *Are you here on business?*

THESAURUS: business

trade
the buying and selling of goods and services, especially between countries:
Trade between European countries became easier after the introduction of the euro. | *The two countries signed a* ***trade agreement****.*

commerce
the buying and selling of goods and services. **Commerce** is more formal than **business**, and is used when talking about business activities in general:
One of the roles of the federal government is to regulate commerce. | *London became a great* ***centre of commerce****.* | *the local* ***chamber of commerce*** (=an organization which the companies and shops in an area belong to)

e-commerce
the buying and selling of goods and services on the internet:
E-commerce is a fast-growing part of the US economy.

2 an organization that produces or sells goods or provides a service for money

VERBS + business

have/own a business *He had always wanted to have his own business.*

run a business *His daughter Susan now runs the business.*

start/set up a business *When you're starting a business, you have to work long hours.*

establish a business *She overcame many financial difficulties to establish her business.*

build (up)/develop a business *He spent years trying to build a business in Antigua.*

grow a business (=make it larger) *We borrowed money to help us grow the business.*

expand a business *He has had to expand his business to cope with demand.*

take over a business (=take control of it) *When my father retired, I took over the business.*

business + VERBS

a business does well/thrives/flourishes (=it is successful) *The business thrived, and they opened two more stores.*

a business collapses/fails *Thirty percent of small businesses fail in the first year of operation.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + business

big business (=big companies in general) *Big business does so much damage to the environment.*

a small/medium-sized business *Hundreds of small businesses have closed.*

a successful/profitable/thriving business *Within a few years she had established a thriving business in London.*

a software/publishing/construction/furniture etc business *He and his brother run a construction business.*

an import/export business *Kingwell had an export business in New Zealand.*

a family business (=owned and controlled by one family) *For many years the hotel was a family business.*

business + NOUNS

a business partner *Margie was his wife and also his business partner.*

a business manager *We need to take on a business manager.*

3 the amount of work a company does

ADJECTIVES

business is good/brisk *People want our products and business is good.*

business is bad/slow *During the recession, business was very bad.*

business is down (=not as good as before) *Business is down over last year.*

new business *What is the best way to get new business for your company?*

business + VERBS

business is booming (=is very good and increasing) *Business is booming for mobile phone companies.*

business picks up (=becomes better) *Hopefully, business will pick up soon.*

VERBS + business

do good/brisk business (=sell a lot) *The fish market does brisk business every morning.*

get/win/attract business *They have been cutting their prices to win business.*

generate business *Karen will focus on generating new business from existing clients.*

drum up business (=try to get more work) *She took her product to shows and exhibitions to drum up business.*

compete for business *The two companies were competing for business.*

lose business *Local shops lost business when the road was temporarily closed.*

businessman/businesswoman *n*

a man or woman who works in business

ADJECTIVES

a successful businessman/businesswoman *Her aim was to become a successful businesswoman.*

a wealthy/rich businessman/businesswoman *The ship was owned by a wealthy businessman.*

a good businessman/businesswoman (=good at doing business) *She had researched the costs, like any good businesswoman.*

a shrewd/astute businessman/businesswoman (=able to understand situations in business and make good decisions) *Are you a shrewd businessman, quick to see how to make a profit?*

a leading/prominent businessman/businesswoman *In many cities, prominent businessmen financed city centre improvements.*

busy *adj*

1 if you are busy, you have a lot to do

NOUNS

a busy person/man/woman *He's a very busy man and he doesn't have much free time.*

a busy day/week/weekend *You look like you've had a busy day.*

a busy time *The start of term is always a busy time for teachers.*

a busy life *I sometimes wish my life wasn't so busy.*

a busy schedule *The president has a very busy schedule.*

ADVERBS

too busy *Many people say they are too busy to do any exercise.*

really/extremely busy *I've been really busy recently, and haven't had time to write to him.*

VERBS

keep sb busy *I have enough work to keep me busy.*

PREPOSITIONS

busy with sb/sth *Mr Haynes is busy with a customer at the moment.*

THESAURUS: busy

hectic
day | **morning** | **week** | **schedule** | **life** | **lifestyle** | **round**
used about a time when you are very busy:
It's been a very hectic day at the office. | *She has taken some time out of her hectic schedule to be here with us today.* | *Her life was a hectic round of parties* (=she had to go to a lot of them). | ***Things have been hectic*** *all day.*

THESAURUS: busy

packed, busy, overcrowded, teeming → **crowded**

2 full of people or vehicles and a lot of activity

NOUNS

a busy road/street *Take care when crossing busy roads.*

a busy intersection/junction *The two cars collided at a busy intersection.*

a busy place *Hospitals are busy places.*

a busy city/town *London is a huge busy city.*

a busy airport/station/port *Chicago is known for its busy port.*

a shop/store/restaurant is busy *The stores are always busy just before Christmas.*

VERBS

get busy *It was 8 p.m. and the restaurant was getting busy.*

THESAURUS: busy

crowded
room | **hall** | **shop** | **store** | **street** | **city** | **train** | **bus** | **boat** | **station** | **airport** | **restaurant**
full of people:
She looked around the crowded room for her friend. | *He pushed his way through the narrow crowded streets.* | *We met in a crowded sushi restaurant.* | *The town is always* ***crowded with*** *visitors in summer.*

congested
road | **street** | **city** | **area**
full of traffic, so that cars can only move slowly:
The congested roads and lack of parking spaces are putting off visitors. | *The area is* ***heavily congested*** (=badly congested).

The time when the trains and roads are busy with people travelling to work is called **the rush hour**: *The trains are really crowded in* ***the rush hour****.*

button *n*

1 a small round flat object on your shirt, coat etc that you pass through a hole to fasten it

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + button

a shirt/skirt/coat etc button *I'm not very good at fastening shirt buttons.*

the top/bottom button *He was wearing a white shirt with the top button undone.*

VERBS

fasten/do up a button *He quickly did up the buttons on his shirt.*

unfasten/undo a button *I can't undo the buttons on the back of this dress.*

a button is missing *Two of the buttons on the jacket were missing.*

a button comes off sth *A button has come off my skirt.*

sth has lost a button *His favourite shirt had lost a button.*

sew on a button *It only takes a minute to sew on a button.*

PREPOSITIONS

the buttons of/on sth *He undid the buttons of his shirt.*

2 a small part of a machine that you press to make it do something

VERBS

press/push a button *He pressed a button and the doors slid open.*

hit a button (=quickly press a button) *He hit the alarm button by the door.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + button

the on/off button *When one of her songs comes on the radio, I reach for the off button.*

the record/play/pause button *Can you press the pause button?*

PREPOSITIONS

the button on sth *I could see him pressing the buttons on his phone.*

PHRASES

at the touch/push of a button (=just by pressing a button) *You can access any information at the touch of a button.*

PREPOSITIONS

by/according to sb's calculations *By my calculations, we need to raise about £10,000.*

call[1] *v*

1 to say or shout something

ADVERBS

call softly (=quietly) *He called softly into the darkness.*

call loudly *She called loudly enough for everyone at the bar to hear.*

call sb over (=call someone to come to you) *He called the waitress over and ordered a cup of coffee.*

call sb back (=call someone to come back) *I was just about to leave when he called me back.*

call out (=to shout something or say it aloud, rather than saying it quietly or in your head) *He kept calling out in his sleep.*

NOUNS

call sb's name *I called her name but she didn't hear me.*

call the register *BrE* (=say the names of students in a class, to check who is there) *At the beginning of each day, the teacher calls the register.*

PREPOSITIONS

call to sb *In the distance, someone was calling to her.*

call for sb/sth *Your mother's been calling for you – didn't you hear her?*

call sb into your office/study/room etc *The head teacher called me into her office.*

2 to use a telephone to contact someone or something

NOUNS

call sb's number *I called your number, but there was no reply.*

call (sb) a cab (*also* **call (sb) a taxi** *BrE*): *Would you like me to call you a cab?*

call (for) a doctor/ambulance *There was no time to call a doctor.*

call (for) the police *Get off my land or I'll call the police!*

ADVERBS

call back (=call again) *Sam's not here at the moment – can you call back later?*

call (sb) collect *AmE* (=the person receiving the call pays for it) *He was calling collect from a pay phone.*

In British English, you say **reverse the charges**.

PHRASES

call sb on the phone *He called me on the phone and said "You've got the job!"*

wait for sb to call *She sat by the phone waiting for Dan to call.*

call[2] *n*

an occasion when you speak to someone on the telephone

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + call

a phone/telephone call *I had a phone call from Barbara in Australia.*

a quick call *This is just a quick call to make sure you're OK.*

a local call *Local calls are free at weekends.*

a long-distance call *I'd like to make a long-distance call.*

an international call *International calls are getting much cheaper these days.*

a collect call *AmE* (=one paid for by the person who receives it) *Can I make a collect call to Florida, please?*

an emergency call (=to the police, fire service, or ambulance service) *The police normally respond immediately to an emergency call.*

VERBS

give sb a call (=phone someone) *I'll give him a call later today.*

make a call *He made three calls, the first of which was to Lily.*

get/receive/have a call *At 11 in the evening we got a call from the police.*

there is/was a call *There was a call for you while you were out.*

answer a call *We're sorry that we cannot answer your call right now.*

take a call (=answer one) *Monica took the call upstairs.*

return sb's call (=call someone after they have tried to call you) *I left a message for her but she didn't return my call.*

expect a call *She's expecting a phone call from Matt.*

calm[1] *adj*

1 relaxed and quiet, not angry, nervous, or upset

VERBS

remain/stay/keep calm *I tried to stay calm and ignore their comments.*

feel calm *He felt calm and in control.*

look/seem calm *She always looks so calm.*

NOUNS

a calm person *My dad's a very calm person.*

a calm voice *She spoke in a calm voice to reassure the child.*

a calm manner *Karen answered in her usual calm manner.*

calm confidence/assurance/authority *He spoke with the calm confidence of a priest.*

calm determination *Her worry was replaced by calm determination.*

calm discussion *We need calm discussion to solve these problems.*

ADVERBS

perfectly calm (=completely calm) *James felt perfectly calm as he walked into the room.*

remarkably calm *Ella had seen the accident but she seemed remarkably calm about it.*

PHRASES

beneath sb's calm exterior (=used when someone seems calm but is not really calm) *Beneath the calm exterior is a very troubled man.*

THESAURUS: calm

sleepy, peaceful, tranquil, calm, dead → **quiet (3)**

2 not affected by strong wind

ADVERBS

perfectly calm (=completely calm) *The sea was perfectly calm.*

calm² *n*

1 a situation in which people are not angry, upset, or excited and everything is quiet

ADJECTIVES

an uneasy calm (=which could end at any moment) *An uneasy calm settled over the country as the peace talks continued.*

relative/comparative calm *The relative calm is slowly attracting more tourists back to the area.*

VERBS + calm

maintain calm *Police were brought in to maintain calm on the streets.*

restore calm (=bring back calm) *The government is struggling to restore calm after several days of violent protests.*

keep your calm (=not become angry or upset) *She kept her calm and said, "We had better call for a doctor."*

bring calm *It is hoped that the peace talks will bring calm to the region.*

call/appeal for calm *The president appealed for calm following a series of bombings.*

break/shatter the calm (=end it) *The calm was suddenly shattered by a loud explosion.*

calm + VERBS

calm descends on sth *formal* (=a place becomes calm) *The crowds went home and calm descended on the streets.*

calm returns *Calm returned after a week of violence and rioting.*

PHRASES

an appeal for calm *Political leaders made an appeal for calm.*

a period of calm *The city is enjoying a brief period of calm after days of fighting.*

an oasis of calm (=a calm place that is very different from everything around it) *The park provides an oasis of calm in the centre of the city.*

2 the feeling you have when you are very relaxed and not worried about anything

ADJECTIVES

deep calm *He closed his eyes and felt a sense of deep calm.*

inner calm *She turned to religion in search of some kind of inner calm.*

PHRASES

a feeling/sense/state of calm *These breathing exercises can create a sense of calm and well-being.*

a moment of calm *He had the chance to sit down and enjoy a rare moment of calm.*

calorie *n*

a unit for measuring the amount of energy that food will produce

ADJECTIVES

low-calorie *She's on a low-calorie diet at the moment.*

high-calorie *You mustn't eat too many high-calorie foods.*

sb's daily calories *Americans get 22% of their daily calories from snacks.*

extra/excess calories *Exercise burns up extra calories.*

VERBS

have/contain calories *These yoghurts have approximately 90 calories per pot.*

count calories (=control your weight by eating fewer calories) *Women tend to count calories more than men.*

burn/burn up/burn off calories (=use up the calories you have eaten) *Even gentle walking will help you to burn up calories.*

eat calories (*also* **consume calories** *formal*): *The best way to lose weight is to eat fewer calories.*

calorie + NOUNS

calorie intake (=the amount of calories someone eats) *There are several ways you can reduce your calorie intake.*

calorie content *The calorie content of the food is listed on the package.*

PHRASES

be high/low in calories (=contain a lot of calories/a few calories) *Peanuts are very high in calories.*

a calorie-controlled diet *I went on a sensible calorie-controlled diet to try to lose weight.*

camera *n*

a piece of equipment used to take photographs or make films or television programmes

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + camera

a digital camera *I uploaded the pictures from my digital camera.*

a good/expensive camera *You don't need an expensive camera to take good photos.*

C

C

THESAURUS: cancel

call off
strike | protest | talks | deal | search | game | match | meeting | party | wedding
to cancel something that has been planned to happen. **Call off** sounds more informal than **cancel** and is often used in news reports:
The union refused to call off the strike. | The deal was called off at the last minute. | Julia called off their wedding because she wasn't sure he was right for her.

postpone
meeting | game | match | show | concert | trial | election | trip | decision
to decide to do something at a later time, instead of the time that was officially planned:
Tonight's town council meeting has been postponed until next Tuesday. | Liverpool's match against Arsenal was postponed because of fog. | Defence lawyers asked for the trial to be postponed.

shelve (*also* **put sth on ice** *informal*)
plan | proposal | idea | project | programme | report
to decide not to continue with something that has been planned, although it may be considered again at some time in the future:
The plan was shelved to save money. | The company decided to put the project on ice.

lift
ban | sanctions | restriction | blockade | curfew | martial law
to end an official order that stops or limits someone from doing something:
The state lifted its ban on gambling in casinos. | They want the US to lift economic sanctions against Cuba.

repeal
law | act | bill | legislation | amendment | statute
to officially end a law, so that it no longer has any authority:
They want Parliament to repeal the laws on hunting. | The act was repealed by the new socialist government.

annul *formal*
election | result | marriage
to officially decide that something has no legal authority and is therefore cancelled:
Opposition parties have asked the Supreme Court to annul the election. | In 1960, he married a 15-year-old, but the marriage was annulled because of the bride's age.

In informal English, people say that something **is off** (=it has been cancelled):
*I'm afraid the party **is off**.*

cancer *n*

a very serious disease in which cells in one part of the body start to grow in a way that is not normal

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cancer

lung/stomach/breast/bowel etc cancer *He died of stomach cancer.*

skin cancer *Australia has one of the highest rates of skin cancer.*

terminal cancer (=cancer that cannot be treated, which will cause you to die) *My aunt has terminal cancer and she is not expected to live very long.*

VERBS

have/suffer from cancer *Her father suffers from a rare form of cancer.*

get/develop cancer (*also* **contract cancer** *formal*): *One in three people will develop cancer at some stage in their lives.*

die of/from cancer *He died of cancer last year.*

treat cancer *The drug is used to treat cancer.*

cause cancer *Everyone knows that smoking causes cancer.*

prevent cancer *The new treatment may be used to prevent cancer.*

screen sb for cancer (=check to see if someone has cancer) *Doctors are encouraging people to get screened for cancer regularly.*

be diagnosed with cancer (=a doctor says that someone has cancer, after examining them and doing tests) *Each year 40,000 women are diagnosed with breast cancer in the UK.*

survive cancer (*also* **beat cancer** *informal*): *Many people survive cancer.*

a cancer spreads *The cancer had spread to his stomach.*

cancer + NOUNS

cancer research *Millions of dollars are spent each year on cancer research.*

cancer cells *Chemotherapy is treatment with drugs which destroy cancer cells.*

a cancer patient *Less than 8% of lung cancer patients are alive five years after diagnosis.*

cancer treatment *The Christie Hospital is one of the foremost cancer treatment hospitals in the UK.*

a cancer ward (=a part of a hospital for cancer patients to stay in) *He was moved to a cancer ward in the local hospital.*

PHRASES

the risk of cancer *Smoking increases the risk of cancer.*

a type/form of cancer *There are over 200 different types of cancer.*

treatment for cancer *The drug can be used as a treatment for cancer.*

sb's fight/battle/struggle against cancer *He died after a long struggle against cancer.*

candid *adj* THESAURUS honest

candidate *n*

someone who is competing in an election or being considered for a job

ADJECTIVES

a suitable candidate *No suitable candidate could be found.*

the successful/winning candidate *The successful candidate will start on a salary of £25,000.*

a good/strong/promising candidate *He looks like a very strong candidate for the job.*

a possible/potential/prospective candidate (=who might be given a job or position) *There were two women who were possible candidates.*

a likely candidate *His recent experience makes him a likely candidate for the post.*

the ideal/perfect candidate *The ideal candidate will have experience of leading a sales team.*

an obvious candidate *There is no obvious candidate for the position of Chairman.*

a presidential candidate *What is the system for selecting presidential candidates?*

a parliamentary candidate (=for the job of Member of Parliament) *He was selected as his local party's parliamentary candidate.*

a Republican/Democratic/Labour etc candidate *This part of Florida usually supports Republican candidates.*

VERBS

stand as a candidate (=compete in an election) *Lee stated that he did not intend to stand as a candidate in the presidential elections.*

nominate/put up a candidate (*also* **put sb forward as a candidate**) (=suggest someone for election) *The protest group has put up its own candidate for the election.*

interview a candidate (=for a job) *The human resources manager will interview the candidates first.*

choose a candidate (*also* **select a candidate** *formal*): *We will choose the best candidate, regardless of age.*

vote for a candidate *How many people voted for each candidate?*

PREPOSITIONS

a candidate for sth *There are only three candidates for the job.*

candle *n*

a stick of wax with a string through the middle, which you burn to give light

VERBS + candle

light a candle *She lit a candle in the church.*

blow out a candle *Can you blow out all the candles on your birthday cake?*

put out a candle (*also* **extinguish a candle** *formal*) (=make it stop burning) *Always make sure that you put out all the candles.*

candle + VERBS

a candle burns (=it gives out light) *The house was dark except for one candle burning in a window.*

a candle flickers (=the flame moves in an unsteady way) *As the door opened, the candles flickered.*

a candle goes out (=it stops burning) *There was a sudden gust of wind, and all the candles went out.*

a candle lights sth *The bedroom was lit by a single candle.*

ADJECTIVES

a lighted/burning candle *A procession moved through the village carrying lighted candles.*

a flickering candle *The church was full of white flickering candles.*

a scented candle (=one that smells nice) *Scented candles keep the air smelling sweet.*

candle + NOUNS

a candle flame *The candle flame flickered.*

candle wax *There were drops of candle wax all over the table.*

a candle holder *She used an old wine bottle as a candle holder.*

Candlelight and **candlestick** are usually written as one word.

candy *n AmE*

a sweet food made from sugar or chocolate

VERBS

eat candy *Eating too much candy is bad for your teeth.*

buy/get candy *He wanted money to go to the store and buy some candy.*

candy + NOUNS

a candy bar *She was eating a candy bar.*

a candy wrapper (=the paper that covers the candy) *You shouldn't throw candy wrappers in the street.*

a candy store *The family ran a candy store in Brooklyn.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + candy

chocolate candy *Do you like chocolate candy?*

PHRASES

a piece of candy *Would you like a piece of candy?*

a box of candy *He gave me a box of candy as a present.*

Candy is used in American English. In British English, people say **sweets**.

cap *n* a hat

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cap

a baseball cap *He was wearing a sweater and a baseball cap.*

carbon *n*

a chemical substance that is found in coal, oil etc

carbon + NOUNS

carbon emissions (=the amount of carbon gases that are produced by cars, factories etc) *In recent years carbon emissions have increased dramatically, because more and more people are using cars.*

sb's carbon footprint (=the amount of carbon gases that a person or organization produces through their activities) *The company wants to reduce its carbon footprint.*

carbon credits (=permission to produce a particular amount of carbon gases, which countries and companies can buy and sell as a way of reducing the damage to the environment) *Countries that meet their emissions targets can sell carbon credits to those falling behind.*

carbon trading (=the buying and selling of permissions to produce carbon gases) *The Australian prime minister supports carbon trading to reduce greenhouse gases.*

carbon offsetting (=a system in which you can balance the amount of carbon gases you produce, by contributing to schemes that will reduce the overall amount of carbon that is produced) *You can use carbon offsetting schemes to reduce the amount of damage caused to the environment, for example when you are flying.*

carbon polluter *The US is the world's biggest carbon polluter.*

PHRASES

a low-carbon economy (=an economy that produces very little carbon dioxide) *The president wants the US to change to a low-carbon economy.*

carbon-neutral (=taking the same amount of carbon gases out of the atmosphere as the amount you produce) *A carbon-neutral home produces its own energy and stores it to heat the home.*

card *n*

1 a small piece of plastic which you use to pay for goods or to get money

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + card

a credit card (=one you use to buy things and pay later) *He put all the shopping on his credit card.*

a debit card (*also* **a check card** *AmE*) (=one you use to pay for things directly from your account) *I paid for the tickets by debit card.*

a cash card (*also* **an ATM card** *especially AmE*) (=one you use to get cash from a machine) *You should report stolen cash cards immediately.*

a valid card (=one with dates etc that are legal and correct) *We accept cash and valid cards.*

a phone card (=one that you can use in some public telephones) *You can use this phone card in several countries.*

a store/charge card (=one that allows you to buy things from a particular shop and pay for them later) *Store cards often have high rates of interest.*

a stolen card *The man tried to pay using a stolen card.*

VERBS

pay by card *Can I pay by card?*

put sth on your card (=pay using a credit card) *I'll put the restaurant bill on my card.*

use your card *I don't use my card if I can pay by cash.*

accept/take a card (=allow you to pay by card) *Big hotels will accept most cards.*

apply for a card *How do I apply for a debit card?*

issue a card *Please contact the bank that issued your card.*

cancel a card *If your card is stolen, you must cancel it immediately.*

card + NOUNS

sb's card number/details *Enter your card number here.*

the card holder (=the person that a card belongs to) *One in ten store card holders owes more than £500.*

2 a small piece of plastic or paper containing information

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + card

an identity card/ID card (=one that proves who you are) *All US citizens must carry an identity card.*

a membership card *Do you have a membership card for the library?*

a student card (=that proves you are a student) *Entrance is free if you have a student card.*

a business card (=with your name and company details on it, for giving to people to keep) *I'm having 100 business cards printed.*

a smart card (=one with an electronic part that records information) *Using a smart card with all your personal data on it, you can travel anywhere in the world.*

a swipe card (=one that you slide through a machine) *You need a swipe card to get into the gym.*

a SIM card (*also* **a Sim card**) (=one in a mobile phone that stores your information and allows you to use a network) *You can put your old SIM card into your new phone so you don't lose all your numbers.*

VERBS

carry a card (=have one with you) *Motorists could soon be forced to carry an ID card.*

show a card *You have to show your student card at the door.*

flash a card (=show one very quickly) *He*

flashed his card at the guard and walked straight in.

swipe a card (=slide it through a machine) *When you swipe your card, the door opens.*

3 a piece of folded card with a picture on the front that you give to people on special occasions

NOUNS + card

a birthday card *I must remember to send him a birthday card.*

a greetings card *BrE*, **a greeting card** *AmE* (=a card you give to people on special occasions) *They sell greetings cards and small gifts.*

a Christmas/Eid/Diwali etc card *We got over 100 Christmas cards last year.*

a thank-you card *She gave me a box of chocolates and a thank-you card.*

a get-well card (=for someone who is sick) *Katie's in hospital so I'm going to send her a get-well card.*

a leaving card *He was so unpopular that no one wanted to sign his leaving card.*

VERBS

send (sb) a card *Sally always sends me a card on my birthday.*

give (sb) a card *I like giving cards at Christmas.*

get/receive a card (from sb) *Did you get a card from David?*

sign a card *Everyone in the office signed his leaving card.*

write/put sth on a card *I can't think of anything funny to write on her card.*

4 a small piece of stiff paper with pictures and signs on, for playing a game

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + card

playing cards *Five playing cards were laid out on the table.*

a high/low card *The person with the highest card goes first.*

the winning/losing card *He put down the winning card and punched the air with delight.*

a trump card (=one chosen to have a higher value than other cards) *You have to play a trump card if you have one.*

VERBS

play cards *Four men were playing cards in the bar.*

deal cards (=give some to each player) *Deal seven cards to each player.*

shuffle cards (=mix them up) *Who wants to shuffle the cards?*

cut the cards (=divide a pack of cards into two) *First, ask someone to cut the cards.*

put down/play a card *The first card he put down was the three of clubs.*

card + NOUNS

a card game *My favourite card game is poker.*

a card trick *Let me show you a card trick.*

a card player *Rose was a skilful card player.*

PHRASES

a game of cards *Let's have a game of cards.*

a pack of cards *BrE*, **a deck of cards** *AmE* (=a set of 52 cards) *He took out a pack of cards.*

a suit of cards (=one of the four types of cards) *The four suits of cards are hearts, diamonds, clubs, and spades.*

a hand of cards (=a set of cards that a player has to play in a game) *This is a terrible hand of cards.*

care[1] *n*

1 the process of looking after someone, especially because they are ill, old, or very young

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + care

health care/medical care *Our patients get good standards of medical care.*

child care *Mothers are usually responsible for child care.*

patient care (=care of someone who is ill) *The changes should lead to better patient care.*

specialist care *Her father is very ill and needs specialist care.*

proper care *It's important to give your pets proper care.*

intensive care (=in a special part of a hospital, for very seriously ill people) *He was rushed to the intensive care unit at Alder Hey Hospital.*

constant/round-the-clock care (=all day and all night) *He cannot do anything for himself and needs round-the-clock care.*

day care (=care of people, especially children, during the day) *Some businesses provide day care for the children of employees.*

residential care (=for ill or old people in a place where they stay) *Residential care for the elderly can be very expensive.*

short-term/long-term care *The home provides long-term care for people with severe disabilities.*

VERBS

provide care *The charity provides care and shelter for homeless people.*

need care (*also* **require care** *formal*): *She had an aging mother who required constant care.*

receive care *Every citizen has the right to receive health care.*

PREPOSITIONS

in sb's care *It was better for him to be in the care of someone who loved him.*

under sb's care (=officially looked after or treated by someone) *She is under the care of a top heart specialist.*

care + NOUNS

a care worker *BrE* (=someone whose job is looking after people) *She's a part-time care worker in a nursing home.*

C

careless use *Careless use of chemicals can be dangerous.*

careless handling *The government was criticized for its careless handling of the crisis.*

a careless driver *My aunt was hit by a careless driver and she had to go to hospital.*

VERBS

get/become/grow careless *People get careless about mixing drink and pills.*

PREPOSITIONS

be careless about (doing) sth *Some restaurant workers are careless about washing their hands.*

be careless with sth *Journalists are often careless with the facts.*

be careless of sth *He was careless of his own safety.*

it is careless of sb (to do sth) *It was careless of him to leave the door unlocked.*

THESAURUS: careless

clumsy
attempt | handling | fingers | hands | movements
not doing something skilfully, or moving in a careless way so that you break or drop things:
He made a clumsy attempt to apologize. | The government's clumsy handling of the affair has only made the problem worse. | With cold clumsy fingers she began fastening her coat. | I'm so clumsy, I spilt milk all over the floor.

sloppy
work | job | thinking
careless and lazy in the way you do your work, or in your behaviour generally. **Sloppy** sounds rather informal and is used mainly in spoken English:
*The teacher said she didn't want any more sloppy work. | The previous builder did a very sloppy job. | The government had been in power for too long and they started to **get sloppy**.*

reckless *especially written*
driving | disregard | behaviour | spending
doing dangerous or stupid things without thinking about your own or other people's safety:
The driver of the car was arrested for reckless driving. | His actions showed a reckless disregard for human life.

irresponsible
behaviour | owner | lending
careless in a way that might affect other people, especially when this could cause serious accidents or problems:
Crew members could have lost their lives due to his irresponsible behaviour. | Some irresponsible owners allow their dogs to wander around the streets on their own. | It's irresponsible for parents to let their children smoke.

thoughtless
remark | comment
not thinking about the effects of your actions on other people, in a way that seems rather careless:
*With that one thoughtless remark, she had got them all into trouble. | She realised **it was thoughtless of** her not to say where she was going.*

tactless
remark | thing to say | question
carelessly saying something that upsets or embarrasses someone, without intending to do this:
*He kept making tactless remarks about her appearance. | I'm sorry – it was a tactless question. | **It was tactless of** her to say that it had been a boring evening.*

casual
attitude | way | manner
showing that you do not care very much about something and do not think it is important:
*Nigel has a very casual attitude towards his work. | She mentioned the incident in a casual way. | They seem very **casual about** what time people come into work.*

negligent
conduct
careless about something that you are responsible for, so that serious mistakes are made – used especially when someone will be officially punished for this:
He was found guilty of negligent conduct and was dismissed from his post. | The court decided that the doctor was negligent.

caring *adj* THESAURUS **kind²**

carpet *n*
heavy woven material for covering floors, or a piece of this material

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + carpet

a thick carpet *The thick carpet felt warm under her feet.*

a threadbare/worn carpet (=very thin and in bad condition) *She gazed gloomily at the dirty walls and the threadbare carpet.*

the bedroom/living room etc carpet *The bedroom carpet was brown.*

VERBS

fit/lay a carpet (=cut it to fit a room and fix it to the floor) *Will it cost extra to have the carpet fitted?*

make/weave a carpet *Young girls were trained to weave carpets.*

carry out *v* THESAURUS **do**

cartoon *n*
a funny drawing or set of drawings in a newspaper or magazine, or a short film that is made by photographing a series of drawings

cartoon + NOUNS

a cartoon character *The little mouse is one of the world's most famous cartoon characters.*

a cartoon strip *The 'Peanuts' cartoon strip was created by Charles M. Schulz.*

a cartoon series *'The Simpsons' is a very popular cartoon series.*

VERBS

watch a cartoon *He's in the living room, watching a cartoon on TV.*

draw a cartoon *She draws cartoons for one of the national newspapers.*

ADJECTIVES

a political cartoon *Political cartoons are often very cruel.*

an animated cartoon *formal* (=a cartoon film) *There is a large selection of animated cartoons produced for children.*

carve *v* THESAURUS **cut[1] (1)**

case *n*

1 a matter that is dealt with by a law court or by the police

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + case

a court case *There was a lot of publicity surrounding the court case.*

a criminal case *It was the longest and most expensive criminal case in US history.*

a murder/fraud/robbery etc case *He had been a witness in a murder case.*

a libel case (=when someone claims that something that has been written about them is untrue) *A libel case was brought against the newspaper.*

a divorce case *Things can get nasty in a divorce case.*

a civil case (=involving a disagreement between people, not a crime) *He is involved with civil cases, not criminal ones.*

a landmark case (=one that establishes a principle for the first time) *It was a landmark case in the regulation of the internet.*

a high-profile case (=one that gets a lot of attention) *They consulted a lawyer who has handled some high-profile cases.*

VERBS

bring a case (against sb) *There was not enough evidence to bring a case against him.*

hear/try a case (=listen to the evidence before making a judgment) *The case will be heard by a federal judge.*

decide a case *A panel of judges will decide his case.*

settle a case (=end it finally) *He paid a $15,000 fine to settle the case.*

prosecute/defend a case (=try to prove that someone is guilty or not guilty) *He defended his case himself.*

win/lose a case (=be successful or unsuccessful in proving someone guilty or not guilty) *Lomax was a brilliant lawyer who had never lost a case.*

adjourn a case (=stop it for a short time) *The case was adjourned until next month for further reports.*

dismiss/throw out a case (=officially stop it from continuing) *The case was thrown out by New York State's highest court.*

investigate a case *The police investigating the case had missed vital evidence.*

drop a case (=not continue with it) *The case was dropped because of a lack of evidence.*

solve a case *The police are making efforts to solve the case.*

PREPOSITIONS

a case against sb *She lost her case against the newspaper.*

PHRASES

a case comes/goes to court *When the case finally came to court, they were found not guilty.*

a case comes/goes to trial *By the time her case went to trial, her story had changed.*

2 an example of a particular situation, problem etc

ADJECTIVES

a clear case *It was a clear case of poor management.*

a simple case *His action appeared to be a simple case of cowardice.*

a classic case (=a very typical example) *This is a classic case of blaming the victim.*

an extreme case *In extreme cases, the building may have to be demolished.*

a special case *Farm workers say they must be treated as a special case.*

a rare/isolated case *There are rare cases of people being attacked by these animals.*

a similar case *I know of two similar cases.*

PREPOSITIONS

a case of sth *This is another case of science being misrepresented.*

in one case/in this case etc *In one case, a woman had to wait four hours for treatment.*

3 a set of reasons why something should happen or be done

ADJECTIVES

a good/strong/powerful case *There is a good case for caution.*

a convincing/compelling/persuasive case *He makes a convincing case for change.*

stroke a cat *She tried to stroke the cat, but it walked away.*

let/put the cat out (=let it go outside or make it go outside) *Can you let the cat out?*

cat + NOUNS

cat food *We need to buy some more cans of cat food.*

a cat flap (=a special small door for a cat to go in and out of a house) *The cat was getting too fat to fit through the cat flap.*

cat litter (=small grains for a cat to use as a toilet) *You should change cat litter daily.*

C

catalogue (*also* catalog *AmE*) *n*

a complete list of things that you can look at, buy, or use

NOUNS + catalogue

a clothes/furniture/gardening etc catalogue *She saw the sweater in a clothes catalogue.*

a mail order catalogue (=which allows you to buy goods by post, without going to a store) *He bought the coffee machine from a mail order catalogue.*

an exhibition catalogue *The exhibition catalogue tells you about the history of each picture.*

a library catalogue *I tried to find the book I wanted in the library catalogue.*

ADJECTIVES

a free catalogue *I asked them to send me a free catalogue.*

an online catalogue (=which you can look at on the internet) *The online catalogue shows all the books they have available.*

an illustrated catalogue (=with pictures) *The company has an illustrated catalogue of all their products.*

VERBS

look/flick/browse through a catalogue *She was flicking through a catalogue of women's fashions.*

order/buy sth from a catalogue *I was thinking of ordering the seeds from a catalogue.*

send off for a catalogue *You can send off for a free catalogue.*

produce/publish a catalogue *The company publishes a catalogue of all its products.*

catastrophe *n*

a terrible event in which there is a lot of destruction, suffering, or death

ADJECTIVES

a major catastrophe *The fire was a major catastrophe for the area.*

a terrible catastrophe *Then came the terrible catastrophe of 1914, when the First World War started.*

a global/world catastrophe *A nuclear war would be a global catastrophe.*

a national catastrophe *For fans, losing the game was a national catastrophe.*

an environmental/ecological catastrophe *A sudden rise in world temperatures could cause an environmental catastrophe.*

a natural catastrophe *Natural catastrophes such as floods and earthquakes cannot be prevented.*

an economic catastrophe *The country faces an economic catastrophe.*

a nuclear catastrophe *People are worried that there could be another nuclear catastrophe like the one at Chernobyl.*

a humanitarian catastrophe (=one which has a terrible effect on a lot of people's lives) *The earthquake caused a humanitarian catastrophe and thousands of people were left homeless.*

VERBS

cause/lead to/result in a catastrophe *The decision could lead to an economic catastrophe.*

prevent/avoid a catastrophe (*also* **avert a catastrophe** *formal*): *Firefighters prevented a catastrophe by putting out the fire before it could spread.*

face a catastrophe *The country is facing a catastrophe after being hit by three deadly storms.*

be heading for a catastrophe (=a catastrophe will happen soon) *According to some scientists, the planet is heading for a catastrophe because of the effects of global warming.*

a catastrophe happens/takes place (*also* **a catastrophe occurs** *formal*): *Fortunately, this kind of catastrophe occurs very rarely.*

category Ac *n*

a group of people or things that are all of the same type

ADJECTIVES

the main category *There are two main categories of evidence.*

a special category *Until very recently, female poets were placed in a special category.*

a distinct/separate category (=clearly different from others) *Drivers fall into two distinct categories.*

a broad/general category *Computer viruses fall into three broad categories.*

a major category *Theft is one of the major categories of crime.*

the same/a different category *In my opinion, this crime belongs in the same category as murder.*

VERBS

belong to/in a category *A lot of plants belong in this category.*

fall into/come into a category *The data we collected fell into two categories.*

fit into a category *There were classes for beginners and for advanced students, but I didn't fit into either category.*

put/place sb/sth in a category *I would put this book in the category of adventure story.*

group sb/sth into categories *The courses are grouped into three categories: basic, intermediate and advanced.*

divide/split sth into categories *The exhibition of 360 paintings is divided into three categories.*

create a category *The government wants to create a new category for this type of offence.*

form a category *This type of book forms the largest single category.*

a category includes sth *This category included skilled workers such as engineers, carpenters, and builders.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a category *The winner in each category will receive a prize.*

cause[1] *n*

1 a person, event, or thing that makes something happen

ADJECTIVES

a common cause of sth *Stress is a common cause of sleep problems.*

the main/primary cause of sth *Smoking is the main cause of lung disease.*

a major/leading cause of sth *In this country, debt is a major cause of homelessness.*

a direct/indirect cause *Government policies are the direct cause of the problems facing the economy.*

the root cause (=the most basic cause) *It is time to tackle the root causes of crime.*

the underlying cause (=the basic cause, especially one that is not obvious) *Current treatments deal with the symptoms rather than underlying causes of the disease.*

the probable/likely cause *The probable cause of the fire was an electrical fault.*

VERBS

find/discover the cause *The flight is being delayed while entineers try to discover the cause of the problem.*

determine/establish/identify the cause (=discover definitely what it is) *A team of experts is at the scene of the accident, trying to determine the cause.*

investigate the cause *Police are still investigating the cause of the fire.*

PHRASES

cause of death *The official cause of death was given as drowning.*

die of/from natural causes (=die of illness, old age etc, not because of an accident or crime) *He died from natural causes, probably a heart attack.*

cause and effect *The relationship between cause and effect in mental illness is complex.*

2 an aim, belief, or organization that a group of people support or fight for

ADJECTIVES

a good cause (=one that is worth supporting, for example a charity) *The money we are raising is for a good cause.*

a just cause (=one that is good and right) *The rebels believed that they were fighting for a just cause.*

a noble cause (=one that is morally good) *He died for a noble cause.*

a worthy/deserving cause (=a good cause which deserves people's support) *The Red Cross is a very worthy cause.*

the Nationalist/Republican etc cause *The election results were a serious blow to the Nationalist cause.*

VERBS

support a cause *Giving money is only one way of supporting a good cause.*

fight for a cause *Young people often want to fight for a cause.*

champion a cause (=publicly support it) *He has championed the cause of renewable energy since the 1980s.*

advance/further/promote a cause (=help to achieve an aim) *He did much to advance the cause of freedom.*

PHRASES

be committed to a cause (=support a cause very strongly) *We are committed to the cause of racial justice.*

be sympathetic to a cause (=understand it, and possibly support it) *They hope the new president will be sympathetic to their cause.*

all in a good cause (=done in order to help or raise money for people) *I didn't mind looking silly since it was all in a good cause.*

cause[2] *v*

to make something happen, especially something bad

NOUNS

cause a problem *Heavy rain has been causing serious problems on the roads.*

cause trouble *I decided not to complain because I didn't want to cause trouble.*

cause damage/injury *These insects can cause severe damage to crops.*

cause a disease *Scientists are trying to find out what causes the disease.*

cause pain *The infection can cause severe pain.*

cause death *The famine caused the death of 400,000 people.*

cause an accident *75% of accidents are caused by speeding.*

cause a delay *Bad weather caused delays at many airports.*

cause chaos/disruption *Floods caused chaos across much of the country.*

VERBS

hang from the ceiling *The lamp hung from the ceiling.*

PREPOSITIONS

on the ceiling *There was an enormous spider on the ceiling.*

from floor to ceiling *The bookcases covered the walls from floor to ceiling.*

celebrated *adj* THESAURUS famous

celebration *n*

an occasion or party when you celebrate something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + celebration

a big celebration *The big celebration usually takes place on Christmas Eve.*

a small/little celebration *We're having a small celebration for Dad's birthday.*

a special celebration *There's a special celebration tonight to mark the school's 50th anniversary.*

Christmas/New Year/wedding etc celebrations *They invited me to join in their New Year celebrations.*

a birthday/anniversary celebration *He is planning a very special 40th birthday celebration.*

a family celebration *Everyone's coming here for a family celebration.*

a victory celebration *Some football fans were arrested during the victory celebrations.*

a double celebration (=for two good things) *It's a double celebration for our first wedding anniversary and my birthday.*

VERBS

have a celebration *The villagers were having a celebration of some kind.*

hold/host a celebration *formal: The company is holding a celebration for its 75th anniversary.*

go to a celebration (*also* **attend a celebration** *formal*): *He was too ill to attend his son's birthday celebrations.*

join in the celebrations *You're welcome to come and join in the celebrations!*

celebration + NOUNS

a celebration dinner/meal/party *There will be a celebration dinner at the Red Lion Hotel.*

PREPOSITIONS

a celebration of/for sth *He took an active role in celebrations for the town's 50th anniversary.*

PHRASES

a celebration takes place *The celebrations took place in a stadium.*

a celebration to mark sth (=a celebration of something) *They are organizing celebrations to mark the completion of the building.*

celebrity *n* a famous living person

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + celebrity

a TV/television celebrity *He is one of Britain's most famous TV celebrities.*

a major/minor celebrity *He became a minor celebrity after appearing on a reality TV show.*

a sports celebrity *Sports celebrities can make a lot of money from advertising.*

a media celebrity (=one who is seen a lot on television, in magazines etc) *She's a famous fashion model and media celebrity.*

a national/international celebrity *This exclusive resort attracts international celebrities.*

a local celebrity *They've invited a local celebrity to open the new shopping centre.*

celebrity + NOUNS

a celebrity guest *He has interviewed many celebrity guests on his radio show.*

celebrity status (=someone's position as a celebrity) *She used her celebrity status to raise money for charity.*

celebrity gossip (=stories about celebrities, especially about their private lives) *'NOW' magazine brings you the latest celebrity gossip.*

celebrity culture (=in which people pay a lot of attention to celebrities) *Magazines, TV, and the internet are obsessed with celebrity culture.*

cell *n*

the smallest part of a living thing that can exist independently

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cell

a blood/nerve/brain/muscle etc cell *No new brain cells are produced after birth.*

a human/animal/plant cell *How do viruses get inside plant cells?*

a living/dead cell *Every living cell has a nucleus.*

a normal/abnormal cell *The test enables doctors to detect abnormal cells.*

a cancer cell *Already there are many treatments which destroy cancer cells.*

a healthy cell *Drugs that kill cancer cells also kill healthy cells.*

a stem cell (=one that divides and repairs the body, and may be used in medical treatment) *Stem cells could be used to replace any body part.*

VERBS

a cell divides *White blood cells divide rapidly.*

cell + NOUNS

the cell wall (=the outside part of a cell) *The cell walls of plants are made from a tough material called cellulose.*

cell division *The embryo grows by cell division.*

cell phone, cellphone *n AmE*

a small phone that you can carry with you

VERBS

call sb on his/her cell phone *Why don't you call him on his cell phone?*

use a cell phone *It is illegal to use a cell phone while driving.*
a cell phone rings *Her cell phone started ringing in the middle of the meeting.*
switch on/off a cell phone *Please make sure that your cell phone is switched off.*
charge a cell phone (=put electricity into it) *How often do you charge your cell phone?*

cell phone + NOUNS

a cell phone number *What is your cell phone number?*
a cell phone company *Which cell phone company do you use?*
a cell phone call *The company is offering unlimited free cell phone calls at weekends.*

PREPOSITIONS

on a cell phone *She was speaking on her cell phone.*
from a cell phone *I can't make calls from my cell phone.*

Cell phone is used in American English. In British English, people say **mobile phone**, or **mobile** (informal).
In more formal American English, people say **cellular phone**. In informal American English, people say **cell**.

censor *v*

to remove parts of books, films, letters etc, because they are considered unsuitable for political, moral, or religious reasons

ADVERBS

be heavily censored (=a lot of parts have been removed) *The report had been heavily censored by the authorities.*

censorship *n*

removing parts of books, films, letters etc, because they are considered unsuitable for political, moral, or religious reasons

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + censorship

government censorship *Newspaper reports about the war are subject to government censorship.*
political censorship *The decision to ban the film resulted in accusations of political censorship.*
strict/heavy censorship *There was heavy censorship of all letters sent by prisoners.*
press/media censorship (=censorship of newspapers, television etc) *I don't agree with press censorship – I think it goes against the right to free speech.*
film censorship *Film censorship was controlled by a special government department.*

VERBS

impose censorship on sth (=start controlling what is said or written and remove parts that are considered unsuitable) *The authorities imposed strict censorship on all newspapers and television networks.*

PREPOSITIONS

censorship of sth *In some countries there is strict censorship of the media.*

PHRASES

the abolition of censorship *Some people are calling for the abolition of censorship.*

central *adj* most important

NOUNS

a central role/part *The report emphasizes the central role of science in industry.*
a central feature *This mix of cultures is a central feature of modern British society.*
a central issue *Education is a central issue for the government.*
a central concern *Environmental problems are now a central concern.*
a central theme/idea *What would you say is the central theme of the book?*
a central figure *During this time he was a central figure in American politics.*
the central question *The central question is: could this accident have been prevented?*
the central argument *Let's consider the central argument for reducing the voting age.*

PREPOSITIONS

central to sth *Her religion was central to her life.*

PHRASES

of central importance *The mining industry was of central importance to the country's economy.*

THESAURUS: central

principal/chief, primary, core, central, prime, predominant → **main**

centre *BrE*, center *AmE n*

1 the middle of an area or object

NOUNS + centre

the city/town centre *The government has its main offices in the city centre.*

ADJECTIVES

the very centre *In the very centre of the room was a large round table.*
the exact centre *She placed the cake in the exact centre of the plate.*

PREPOSITIONS

the centre of sth *Check that the centre of the cake is cooked.*
in the centre *There was a fountain in the centre of the courtyard.*
at the centre *People used to believe that the Earth was at the centre of the universe.*
through the centre *10,000 protesters marched through the centre of London.*

C

PHRASES

right in the centre *The hotel is right in the centre of the village, close to all the shops.*

2 a place where there is a lot of a particular type of business or activity

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + centre

a financial centre *Boston is a leading financial centre.*

a business/commercial centre *The company has branches worldwide in 15 major business centres.*

a trading centre *The town was a trading centre for the Romans.*

a cultural centre *Paris was then the cultural centre of Europe.*

a tourist centre *Our destination was Queenstown, a tourist centre set amid mountains and lakes.*

a major/important centre *The region has been named as a major centre of international terrorism.*

a world/international/national centre *The Asian Pacific Rim is a world centre of economic activity.*

PREPOSITIONS

a centre of/for sth *Zurich is an international centre of finance.* | *The city became a centre for the paper industry.*

3 a building which is used for a particular purpose or activity

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + centre

a shopping centre *They are building a huge new shopping centre just outside the town.*

a sports centre *You could join an exercise class at your local sports centre.*

an arts centre (=for art, music, theatre, film etc) *Shall we go to the concert at the arts centre on Saturday?*

a conference centre *Westgate Hotel has 60 bedrooms and a conference centre.*

a tourist information centre *For further details contact the Tourist Information Centre.*

a visitor centre *The forest has a visitor centre with a shop and café.*

a research centre *A new research centre has just been opened at King's College Hospital.*

a training centre *He was a new recruit at the police training centre.*

a health/medical centre *The village has a small school and a health centre.*

a community centre (=where people can go for social events, classes etc) *The church is used as a community centre.*

a youth centre *BrE* (=where young people can go to meet and take part in activities) *The money will be used to provide a youth centre.*

a leisure centre *BrE* (=for sport and other leisure activities) *There's a leisure centre with a swimming pool, a sauna, and a gymnasium.*

a day centre/day care centre *BrE* (=where old, sick etc people can go during the day to be looked after) *A new day centre for the over 70s has recently opened.*

PREPOSITIONS

a centre for sth *He is a senior economist at the Centre for Economic and Business Research.*

century *n*

one of the 100-year periods before or after the year of Christ's birth, or any period of 100 years

ADJECTIVES

the 18th/20th etc century *The movie is set in the 18th century.* | *He has a collection of 19th-century art.*

the early/mid/late 18th/20th etc century *By the late nineteenth century, the town had a population of over 10,000.*

the last/next century *The house was built in the early part of the last century.*

this century (*also* **the present century** *formal*): *The present century has seen a big rise in international terrorism.*

⚠ Don't say 'in this century'. Just say **this century**.

VERBS

date from the 15th/18th etc century (=something was built, made, or started at that time) *The present church dates from the 13th century.*

a century sees something (=used when saying that something happens during that century) *The nineteenth century saw major developments in science.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the 18th/20th etc century *The game was invented in the sixteenth century.*

for centuries *This plant has been used for centuries to reduce pain.*

during a century *During this century, the US became the most powerful nation on earth.*

PHRASES

the beginning of the century *At the beginning of the century, there were more single than married people.*

the end of the century *He wrote his books towards the end of the 19th century.*

the turn of the century (=the time when one century ends and another begins) *The town was expanding at the turn of the century.*

the first/second half of the century *In the second half of the century, people's wages began to rise.*

the early/latter part of the century *The latter part of the century saw great progress in organic chemistry.*

half a century/a quarter of a century *The civil war lasted for half a century.*

ceremony *n*

a formal event, when people say or do special or traditional things

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + ceremony

a religious ceremony *Did you have a religious ceremony when you got married?*

a special ceremony *The winners will receive their awards at a special ceremony in London.*

a short/brief ceremony *He became acting president in a brief ceremony yesterday.*

a simple ceremony *The gymnasium was opened in a simple ceremony on 26 May.*

a grand/elaborate ceremony *The inhabitants of the town organized a grand ceremony to mark the occasion.*

a solemn ceremony (=a very serious one) *There was a solemn ceremony in the city cathedral.*

a traditional ceremony *African traditional marriage ceremonies were not recognized by the state.*

a wedding/marriage ceremony *It was a beautiful wedding ceremony.*

a funeral ceremony *Funeral ceremonies have been held since ancient times.*

the opening/closing ceremony (=at the beginning or end of a special event) *I stayed for the closing ceremony.*

a prize-giving/awards ceremony *A prize-giving ceremony will take place tomorrow night at the university.*

a graduation ceremony *His proud parents attended his graduation ceremony.*

VERBS

hold a ceremony *A ceremony was held in Berlin to mark the occasion.*

attend a ceremony (=be at it) *I attended the ceremony at the cathedral.*

perform/conduct a ceremony (=be in charge of it) *The Bishop of Louisiana performed the ceremony.*

PHRASES

a ceremony takes place *The ceremony took place on 13 June at 2.30.*

take part in a ceremony *Women will be taking part in the ceremony for the first time.*

be present at a ceremony *The French ambassador was present at the ceremony.*

certain *adj*

1 confident and sure, without any doubts

ADVERBS

absolutely/completely certain *He was absolutely certain that he was right.*

almost certain *I'm almost certain I left my keys on the kitchen table.*

fairly certain (*also* **pretty certain** *informal*): *The team was fairly certain they would win.*

VERBS

feel certain *She felt certain that he did not intend to harm her.*

PREPOSITIONS

certain about/of sth *You can't be certain about anything these days.*

2 if something is certain, it will definitely happen or is definitely true

ADVERBS

almost/virtually certain *It is almost certain that she is innocent.*

VERBS

it seems certain (that)... *It now seems certain that he will have to resign.*

seem/look/appear certain to do sth *The mission seemed certain to end in failure.*

NOUNS

certain death *They escaped certain death by jumping out of the car before it went over the cliff.*

certain defeat *The team seemed to be heading for certain defeat.*

PHRASES

by no means certain/far from certain (=not certain at all) *Victory was by no means certain.*

certainly *adv*

without any doubt

ADVERBS

almost certainly *They have almost certainly gone home.*

most certainly (=used when you are very sure about something) *"Giving up smoking has made a real difference." "It most certainly has."*

Certainly not! *"Are you going with him?" "Certainly not!"*

certificate *n*

an official document that states information about someone or something, or shows that someone has a qualification

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + certificate

a birth/marriage/death certificate *In order to get a passport, you'll need your birth certificate.*

a medical certificate *In the UK, you need to produce a medical certificate if you are off work for more than a week.*

a degree certificate (=showing that someone has a degree)

a teaching certificate (=showing that someone is qualified to teach)

VERBS

have a certificate (*also* **hold a certificate** *formal*): *Do you have a teaching certificate?*

issue a certificate *The certificate will be issued upon payment of the fee.*

receive a certificate *Everyone who takes part in the race receives a certificate.*

PREPOSITIONS

a certificate of sth *The diamonds have a certificate of origin.*

chair *n*

a piece of furniture for one person to sit on, which has a back

VERBS

sit in/on a chair *She sat in her favourite chair.*

pull/draw up a chair (=move a chair nearer someone or something) *Pull up a chair and look at these pictures.*

take a chair (=sit down in one in a particular place) *Brian took a chair beside his wife.*

sink/slump/flop into a chair (=sit down in a tired or unhappy way) *Greg groaned and sank into his chair.*

collapse in/into a chair (=sit down suddenly because you are very tired or upset) *Eileen collapsed into a chair and burst out crying.*

get up from your chair (*also* **rise from your chair** *formal*): *He got up from his chair and walked to the window.*

lean back in your chair *He leant back in his chair and took out his pipe.*

ADJECTIVES

a comfortable chair (*also* **a comfy chair** *informal*): *There was a low glass table surrounded by comfortable chairs.*

a hard chair *I sat on a hard chair in the corridor and waited.*

an empty chair (=with no one using it) *He put his feet on an empty chair.*

chair + NOUNS

a chair leg/arm/back/seat *The chair leg has broken.*

Prepositions with chair

You sit **on** a hard chair. You sit **in** a soft comfortable chair.

chairman *n*

the person who is in charge of an organization, committee, or meeting

VERBS

appoint sb chairman *He was appointed Chairman of the World Cup Organizing Committee.*

elect sb chairman *The board of directors elected her chairman.*

take over as chairman *He will take over as chairman of the airline SpiceJet.*

serve as chairman *He has served as chairman of the US firm since 2010.*

a chairman resigns/stands down *The chairman was forced to resign following the scandal.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + chairman

a company/committee/club chairman *The club chairman is responsible for hiring and firing managers.*

a party chairman *She was elected party chairman by a large majority.*

the deputy/vice chairman (=the position directly below the chairman) *She is deputy chairman of the school's Parent-Teacher Association.*

the executive chairman *The executive chairman is involved in the company's day-to-day management.*

PREPOSITIONS

the chairman of a company/committee/meeting *He became chairman of the company about five years ago.*

Chairman, chairwoman, chairperson, or chair?

Chairman is used about both men and women. People often use **chairperson** or **chair** instead of **chairman**, to avoid the reference to men.

You can also call a female **chairman** a **chairwoman**.

challenge Ac *n*

something that tests your ability or skill, especially in a way that is interesting

ADJECTIVES

a big/great/huge/major challenge *The bridge will be a major challenge for the engineers.*

biggest/greatest challenge *Our biggest challenge is finding the money.*

a new/fresh challenge *Ross is looking for a fresh challenge.*

a tough/formidable/daunting challenge (=a very difficult one) *The mountain presents a formidable challenge to climbers.*

a real challenge *Winning the championship will be a real challenge.*

an intellectual/physical/technical etc challenge *I enjoy the intellectual challenge of solving problems.*

VERBS

face a challenge *The new government faces some difficult challenges.*

meet a challenge (=deal with it successfully) *I am confident that we can meet the challenge.*

rise to the challenge (=find the skills, abilities etc you need to deal with it successfully) *It was a difficult project but we rose to the challenge.*

deal with/tackle a challenge *Governments have only just begun to deal with the challenge of global warming.*

accept/take up a challenge *The new team captain says he is ready to take up the challenge.*

like/love/enjoy a challenge (*also* **relish a challenge** *more formal*): *She is relishing the challenge of learning a new language.*

present/pose a challenge (=be a difficult challenge) *Large classes present a challenge for teachers.*

challenging *adj* THESAURUS difficult

champion *n*

someone or something that has won a competition, especially in sport

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + champion

a world/European/national champion *At 22, he was the youngest world champion in the history of the game.*

an Olympic champion *She's a top international athlete and an Olympic champion.*

the defending/reigning champion (=the one who won last time) *He defeated the defending champion in the National Grand Prix.*

a former champion *He is a former world heavyweight champion.*

a great champion *Like all great champions, he is dedicated to his sport.*

a worthy champion (=one who deserves to be champion) *The Australians played well and are worthy champions.*

a junior champion (=in a young age group) *The cycling team includes the British junior champion, Andrew Wright.*

a boxing/tennis/golf etc champion *He became the world boxing champion at the age of 22.*

the 100/200 etc metres champion *She is the world 100 metres champion.*

champion + NOUNS

a champion swimmer/boxer/cyclist etc *Dan had been a champion swimmer in high school.*

VERBS

become champion *It took him only three years to become champion.*

be crowned champion (=become champion) *The next year, the team were crowned rugby champions of the world.*

championship *n*

a competition to find which player or team is the best in a particular sport

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + championship

the world championship *Twenty-nine nations competed in the world championship.*

a national/international championship *It was the final game of the international championship.*

the British/European etc championship *The team failed to qualify for the European Championship.*

a golf/swimming/tennis championship *The Women's Golf Championship was won by Paula Creamer.*

the league championship (=in which a group of soccer teams play against each other) *Arsenal are expected to win the League Championship this year.*

a major championship *He has never won a major championship.*

a junior championship (=for younger players or teams) *She reached the final of the junior championship when she was 15.*

VERBS

win/lose a championship *He won three national championships at Oklahoma.*

compete in/take part in a championship *Players from all over the world will be taking part in the championship.*

qualify for a championship (=be good enough to be in it) *Only 26 players will qualify for the World Championship.*

a championship is held/takes place *The championships are being held next Sunday at the San Jose Arena.*

championship + NOUNS

a championship game/race/fight *He was playing in his first championship game of the season.*

the championship finals *His team lost in the European Championship finals.*

a championship competition/tournament *When is the next motorcycling championship competition?*

PREPOSITIONS

in a championship *He came second in the championship.*

chance *n*

1 the possibility that something will happen, especially something you want

ADJECTIVES

a good/strong chance (=something seems likely) *I think there is a good chance that he will say yes.*

a high chance (=something seems very likely) *These diseases have a high chance of being passed on to the next generation.*

a small/slight/slim chance *He only has a very small chance of being elected.*

little/not much chance *The prisoners knew there was little chance of escape.*

no chance *There is no chance of the same thing happening again.*

a real/realistic chance *Only go to court if you think you have a realistic chance of winning.*

a reasonable/decent chance *If you study, you have a reasonable chance of passing the test.*

a one in three/four/ten etc chance *People in their 30s have a one in 3,000 chance of getting the disease.*

a 50-50 chance/an even chance (=an equal chance that something will or will not happen)

C

I'd say there is a 50-50 chance that the deal will go through.

a million-to-one/one in a million chance (=something is extremely unlikely) *It must have been a million-to-one chance that we'd meet.*

a sporting chance (=a fairly good chance) *The proposals had at least a sporting chance of being accepted.*

an outside/remote chance (=a very small chance) *He still has an outside chance of winning the championship.*

VERBS

have a chance of doing sth *I think you have a good chance of getting the job.*

give sb a chance *These treatments give the patient a high chance of survival.*

increase/improve the chance of sth *The book shows you how to improve your chance of success.*

reduce/lessen the chance of sth *The talks were aimed at reducing the chance of war.*

jeopardize the chance of sth (=make something much less likely to happen) *This could jeopardize any chance of peace.*

PHRASES

sb's chances of success *What are the team's chances of success?*

sb doesn't stand a chance (=they do not have a chance) *I didn't think that we stood a chance against such an experienced team.*

be in with a chance (=it is possible that someone can win, succeed etc) *He knows that he is still in with a chance of winning the election.*

2 an opportunity to do something

VERBS + chance

get/have the chance to do sth *I'd like a job in which I get the chance to travel.*

give sb/offer/provide the chance to do sth *I was given the chance to play the main part in the play.*

take a chance (=accept an opportunity) *If I was offered the chance to be in the team, I'd take it.*

deserve a chance *Every kid deserves a chance in life.*

wait for a chance *Ralph was waiting for a chance to introduce himself.*

jump at a chance (=use an opportunity eagerly) *Ed jumped at the chance to earn some extra money.*

grab/seize a chance (=quickly use an opportunity) *As soon as she stopped speaking, I grabbed the chance to leave.*

deny sb the chance (=stop someone having an opportunity) *She could not deny him the chance of becoming a father.*

miss/lose a chance *He missed a chance to score just before half time.*

throw away/squander a chance (*also* **blow a chance** *informal*) (=not accept or use an opportunity by being careless or stupid) *Your parents will be angry if you throw away the chance to go to college.*

chance + VERBS

a chance comes up (*also* **a chance arises** *formal*) (=it happens) *When the chance came up, we took it.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + chance

another chance/a second chance *The interview went badly, and I didn't think they would give me a second chance.*

sb's last/only chance *This is my last chance to try to pass the exam.*

a good/great chance *Temporary work gives you a good chance to try out different jobs.*

a real chance *I haven't yet had a real chance to talk to her about it.*

sb's big chance (=a good and important one) *This is your big chance to show everyone how good you are.*

a fair chance *Did everyone have a fair chance to express their opinion?*

a rare chance *Visitors will get a rare chance to see inside a working mine.*

PREPOSITIONS

a chance for sth *The event provides a chance for open discussion.*

PHRASES

the chance of a lifetime (=one that you are very unlikely to have again) *If you don't decide soon, you'll have missed the chance of a lifetime.*

now is your chance (=you have the opportunity to do something now) *If you ever wanted to be in a movie, now's your chance.*

given half a chance/given a chance (=if there is any opportunity to do something) *Goats will eat anything, given half a chance.*

change[1] *v*

1 to become different

ADVERBS

change a lot/a great deal/considerably *The town has changed a lot since I was last here.*

change completely/totally *His life had completely changed since he met Anya.*

change dramatically (=a lot, especially in a surprising way) *The landscape has changed dramatically over the past hundred years.*

change fundamentally/radically/drastically (=completely, in a way that has a big effect) *The political situation has fundamentally changed since the election.*

change slightly/a little *After she died, the world seemed to change slightly.* | *The wind changed slightly and there was a hint of rain in the air.*

change rapidly/quickly *The market for phones is changing rapidly.*

sb/sth has hardly changed (=they are almost the same as before) *In 60 years the school had hardly changed.*

change slowly/gradually *Working conditions are gradually changing, with an increase in the number of people working longer hours.*

change constantly/all the time *The English language is changing all the time.*

change permanently/forever *Something happened that would change her life forever.*

change overnight (=very suddenly) *My financial position changed overnight and I was suddenly trying to think of ways of spending money.*

PREPOSITIONS

change to/into sth *Hope changed to despair.*

change from sth *She has changed from a shy schoolgirl into a confident young woman.*

PHRASES

change for the better/worse (=in a way that is better or worse) *According to his teachers, his attitude has changed for the better recently.*

sb/sth has changed out of all recognition (=they seem completely different) *She has changed out of all recognition since she left home.*

times have changed (=the situation is different now) *Times have changed since you could go out without locking your doors.*

things change (=situations always change) *He used to love his work, but things change.*

THESAURUS: change

alter

situation | position | attitude | voice | tone | face | expression

to change. **Alter** sounds more formal than **change**. It is used especially about very small or very big changes, or in negative sentences:

*The situation has **altered dramatically** in recent weeks. | His attitude has altered a little and he seems more relaxed. | Her tone suddenly altered and she said, "Come as soon as you can."*

adapt

person | species | company

to change so that you can deal with a new situation:

Some people find it hard to adapt to living in a foreign country. | Species have to adapt to different environments. | Companies that failed to adapt went bankrupt.

evolve

species | animal | humans | bird | plant | idea | plan | system

if a species of animal or plant evolves, it gradually changes over a period of time and develops into a different species. If an idea, plan or system evolves, it gradually develops:

*Many researchers believe our species evolved in Africa. | The animal has evolved to survive under very difficult conditions. | Do you think that humans have stopped evolving? | The idea for the film was slowly beginning to evolve in his mind. | The plan evolved in discussions between various world leaders. | The Chinese writing system **evolved into** a complex system very different from picture writing.*

mutate

virus | gene

if a virus or gene mutates, it changes and becomes a different organism:

*The virus has **mutated into** a much more dangerous form of the disease. | Genes often mutate and change their characteristics.*

fluctuate

price | value | number | rate | level | weight | speed | temperature

to keep changing to a higher or lower level and then back again:

*Share prices on the New York Stock Exchange **fluctuated wildly**. | The number of students in the class **fluctuates between** about 8 **and** 15. | Her weight **fluctuated between** 120 **and** 140 pounds.*

alternate

to keep changing from one thing to another and back again – used especially about people and their moods:

*His parents **alternate between** feelings of pride **and** moments of frustration and desperation. | Kate Winslet has **alternated between** big-budget Hollywood films **and** much smaller British films.*

2 to make something become different

NOUNS

change your name/address *Miriam changed her name to Mary.*

change your plans/decision *We had to change our plans at the last minute because of the strike.*

change the law/system/rules *The protesters want the law to be changed.*

change the way you do sth *Technology is changing the way people work.*

change your opinion/attitude/outlook *I've changed my opinion about her since then.*

change your mind (=decide to do something different) *I've changed my mind – I'm not going out tonight.*

change the subject/topic (=talk about something different) *"Let's change the subject," she said suddenly. "I don't want to talk about this any more."*

change jobs/career *I'm too old to change career now.*

change sb's life *You should read this book – it could change your life.*

change direction/course *The ship suddenly changed direction.*

change colour *BrE*, **change color** *AmE*: *It's autumn and the leaves are changing colour.*

C

change society/the world *She was young and idealistic, and wanted to change the world.*

ADVERBS

change sth completely/totally *I have completely changed my diet, and my weight is starting to come down.*

change sth forever *It was an event which changed our lives forever.*

PREPOSITIONS

change sb/sth into sb/sth *Farmland is being changed into housing estates.*

C

THESAURUS: change

alter

way | situation | position | structure | cells | character | shape | balance | law

to change something. **Alter** sounds more formal than **change**. It is used especially about very small or very big changes, or in negative sentences:

*The government has agreed to alter the way judges are appointed. | There was nothing we could do to alter the situation. | The cells have been **genetically altered** to produce proteins that protect the body's immune system. | This could **radically alter** the balance of power in the Arab World.*

adapt

equipment | room | film | recipe

to change something so that it can be used for a different purpose, or so that it is suitable for someone:

*The bathroom has been **specially adapted** for disabled people. | The film is adapted from a Michael Crichton novel about a theme park with real dinosaurs.*

adjust

volume | temperature | colour | brightness | position | level | rate

to make small changes so that something is more suitable or is more how you want it:

How do you adjust the volume on the television? | He tried to adjust the position of his chair.

reform

system | law | economy

to change a law, system, organization etc, so that it is fairer or more effective:

They want to reform the health care system. | There is urgent need to reform the law. | As president, Museveni reformed the police and the armed forces.

revise

plan | policy | opinion | idea | decision | constitution | rules | version | estimate

to change something because of new information and ideas:

The company has been forced to revise its business plans. | The court revised its opinion after hearing new evidence. | Parliament voted in January to revise the constitution. | The contract is a revised version of an earlier agreement.

restructure

company | business | economy | industry | operations

to make big changes to a company, organization etc in order to make it more efficient, often with the result that a lot of people lose their jobs:

*The company has been **restructured from top to bottom** in order to make it more competitive. | Government plans to **radically restructure** the economy were met with widespread opposition. | Amdahl Corporation is restructuring its European operations.*

to change something completely

transform

way | life | society | economy | country | region | image | character

to change something completely, especially so that it is much better:

*His discovery **completely transformed** the way we think about space and time. | Education can transform people's lives. | Putin transformed the Russian economy. | Bright colours can transform the character of a room.*

revolutionize (*also* revolutionise *BrE*)

way | understanding | industry | business | treatment | medicine

to completely and permanently change the way people do something or think about something. **Revolutionize** sounds even stronger than **transform**, and is often used about a new idea or invention:

The internet has revolutionized the way we shop. | The drug could revolutionize the treatment of HIV patients in developing countries.

to change something in order to deceive people

distort

truth | facts | argument

to explain facts, statements etc in a way that makes them seem different from what they really are:

He believes the film distorts the truth about what really happened that day. | There has been a deliberate attempt to distort the scientific facts about global warming.

twist

facts | truth | words | meaning

to explain facts, statements etc in a way that makes them seem different from what they really are. **Twist** is more informal than **distort** and is used especially when someone does this deliberately and dishonestly for their own advantage:

Defence lawyers twist the facts, and guilty men are allowed to go free. | When leaders twist the truth they should be held responsible. | He accused reporters of twisting his words.

change² *n*

a situation in which someone or something becomes different, or the act of making something different

ADJECTIVES

a big/major/huge/massive change *Going to a new school is a big change for children.*

a slight/small/minor change *A few minor changes were made to the programme.*

social/political/economic change *Demands for political and social change are growing.*

an important/significant/change *There have been some important changes to the law.*

a dramatic/drastic change (=very big, especially in a surprising way) *The Industrial Revolution was a period of dramatic change.*

a fundamental/radical change (=affecting the most basic parts of something) *Reducing waste requires a fundamental change in attitude.*

sweeping/far-reaching changes (=affecting many things or people) *There are likely to be sweeping changes in the company.*

a complete change *I've had the same hairstyle for years and want a complete change.*

a subtle change (=difficult to notice) *I sensed a subtle change in our relationship.*

gradual/rapid/sudden change *Industry was experiencing a period of rapid change.*

a marked change (=very noticeable) *There was a marked change in his behaviour.*

a pleasant/nice/refreshing change *It's a refreshing change to hear people saying good things about teenagers.*

a proposed change (=that has been suggested) *Not everyone is in favour of the proposed changes.*

NOUNS + change

climate change *The effects of climate change can be seen in Antarctica.*

a career change *The website has information for people considering a career change.*

a temperature change *Fish cannot cope with sudden temperature changes.*

a personality change *A head injury can cause a personality change.*

VERBS + change

make a change *We've had to make some changes to the design.*

cause a change *Pregnancy causes big changes in a woman's body.*

bring (about) change (=cause change) *The war brought about radical social change.*

introduce a change *A number of changes were introduced after the accident.*

undergo a change (=be affected by a change) *Farming was undergoing considerable change during this time.*

implement a change (=make the change that another person has suggested) *The changes suggested in the report still have not been fully implemented.*

see/notice/observe a change *I saw a big change in her when I met her again.*

deal with/cope with/adapt to change *She finds it hard to cope with change.*

feel like a change (=want to do something different) *I felt like a change, so I decided to walk to work.*

change + VERBS

change happens/takes place (*also* **change occurs** *formal*): *Language change is happening all the time.*

a change affects sb/sth *The changes affect both new and existing customers.*

PREPOSITIONS

a change in sth *A change in personality may mean a person is depressed.*

PHRASES

the pace/rate of change *People sometimes feel alarmed by the pace of technological change.*

a change for the better/worse (=it becomes better or worse) *There was a change for the better in the patient's condition.*

a sea change in sth (=a very big change) *There has been a sea change in attitudes to divorce over the past 50 years.*

THESAURUS: change

alteration
a change, especially a small one that happens naturally or gradually, or one that is made in order to improve something:
I noticed a ***slight alteration in*** *her behaviour. | They had to make some* ***alterations to*** *the design.*

reform
a change made to a system or law in order to improve it:
He called for a ***reform of*** *our outdated voting system. | Many people opposed the* ***economic reforms****.*

shift
a change, especially in people's attitudes or in the way they do things, or in the position of someone or something:
There has been a ***shift in*** *public opinion about the war. | There needs to be a major* ***shift away from*** *road transport to rail transport. | After he died, there was a* ***dramatic shift*** *in the balance of power.*

swing
a big change, especially in someone's opinions or moods:
The drug can cause ***mood swings****. | There has been a big* ***swing toward*** *the Democrats* (=many more people are supporting them).

C

fluctuation
a change in something – used when something changes often:
*There are frequent **fluctuations in** the value of the dollar. | The graph shows **temperature fluctuations** over the past month. | She was used to **fluctuations in** his mood.*

a great change

transformation
a change in which something or someone becomes completely different:
*There has been a complete **transformation in** his attitude since he became a father. | They watched her **transformation from** a shy local girl **to** a famous movie actress.*

revolution
a complete change in ways of thinking or working:
*The 1970s saw the beginnings of a new **technological revolution**. | Einstein's General Theory of Relativity **led to a revolution in** scientific thinking.*

shake-up
a situation in which a lot of changes are very quickly made in a system or organization in order to make it more effective:
*The administration is planning a **thorough shake-up of** the welfare system. | The department has not performed well and is badly in need of a shake-up.*

U-turn
a complete change, so that you do the opposite of what you said you were going to do before – used especially about politics:
*The government was forced to **do a U-turn** after angry protests about their taxation policy.*

channel Ac *n*
a television or radio station and all the programmes that it broadcasts

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + channel

a television/radio channel *NTV is the country's most popular television channel.*
a news/movie/sports channel *What's on the movie channel tonight?*
a digital channel *You can watch digital channels on your computer.*
a commercial channel (=paid for by companies advertising on it) *On commercial channels they have advertisement breaks.*
a satellite channel (=using signals sent from a machine in space) *There are now dozens of satellite channels to choose from.*
a cable channel (=using signals sent through a wire) *ABC announced its plans for a new cable channel.*
a terrestrial channel (=not using satellite) *Channel 5 is the newest terrestrial channel.*

VERBS

watch a channel *The kids are always watching the cartoon channel.*
change/switch channels *He kept switching channels.*

PREPOSITIONS

a programme is on a channel *What channel is 'The Simpsons' on?*

chaos *n*
a situation in which everything is happening in a confused way and nothing is organized or arranged in order

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + chaos

total/complete/utter chaos *When we arrived, there was total chaos.*
economic/political/social chaos *The country faced widespread famine and economic chaos.*
traffic chaos *The first day of the holidays often brings traffic chaos.*

VERBS

cause/create/bring chaos *Snow has caused chaos on the roads this morning.*
end in chaos *The game ended in chaos when supporters ran onto the pitch.*
be thrown/plunged into chaos *A serious accident has thrown the roads into chaos.*
descend/slip into chaos (=gradually become completely confused and disorganized) *After the invasion, the country descended into chaos.*
chaos ensues (=it happens as a result of something) *A decade of civil war and chaos ensued.*
chaos reigns (=there is chaos and everything is out of control) *Everyone was trying to talk at once and for a while chaos reigned.*

PREPOSITIONS

in chaos *The kitchen was in chaos.*

PHRASES

be in a state of chaos *Nick's bedroom is permanently in a state of chaos.*
a scene of chaos *I came home to a scene of chaos, with food and empty bottles everywhere.*
chaos and confusion *Heavy flooding has caused chaos and confusion throughout the country.*
be on the brink of chaos (=be about to become completely confused and disorganized) *The peace talks were on the brink of chaos.*

chapter Ac *n*
one of the parts into which a book is divided

ADJECTIVES

the first chapter (*also* **the introductory/opening chapter** *formal*): *The introductory chapter gives an outline of the subject matter.*
the last/final chapter (*also* **the concluding chapter** *formal*): *In the final chapter, you find out who the murderer is.*

the next chapter (*also* **the following chapter** *formal*): *This theme will be developed in the next chapter.*

earlier/later chapters (=ones before/after this one) *These points will be explored in more detail in later chapters.*

the previous/preceding chapter *The method is described in the previous chapter.*

VERBS

be divided into chapters *The book is divided into ten chapters.*

see chapter 2/3 etc (=used in books to direct a reader to a chapter) *His scientific claims were never justified (see Chapter 16).*

a chapter deals with/discusses sth *This chapter discusses power, and how people use it.*

PREPOSITIONS

a chapter about/on sth *There's a whole chapter about William Shakespeare.*

in a chapter *These points will be discussed in Chapter 8.*

PHRASES

the beginning/end of a chapter *His character is introduced at the beginning of the first chapter.*

character *n*

1 a person in a book, play, film etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + character

the main/central/leading character *Alec is the central character in the play.*

a minor/supporting character *Two of the minor characters get killed.*

a male/female character *He is the most sympathetic male character in the book.*

a television/movie/cartoon character *Who's your favourite television character?*

a comic/tragic character (=a funny or sad one) *Homer Simpson is a great comic character.*

a fictional/fictitious character (=not existing in real life) *People sometimes forget that television characters are fictional.*

a believable/convincing character (=seeming like a real person) *The characters were totally convincing.*

a memorable character *The extraordinary Mrs Jewkes is the novel's most memorable character.*

a sympathetic character (=one you like) *In the book, Jeff isn't a sympathetic character.*

an interesting character *For me, the nurse is the most interesting character.*

VERBS

play a character *I wanted to play the character of Danny.*

create a character *He created several memorable characters.*

2 the qualities which make someone a particular kind of person

ADJECTIVES

a strong character *You need brains and a strong character to be a leader.*

sb's true character *She is unaware of his true character.*

character + NOUNS

a character trait (=a quality that someone has) *Your greatest character trait is your honesty.*

a character flaw (=a bad quality that someone has) *Few people have no character flaws at all.*

PHRASES

be in character/out of character (=be typical or untypical of someone's character) *His unkindness on that occasion was entirely out of character.*

a side of sb's character (=a part of someone's character) *He had revealed a side of his character I hadn't seen before.*

characteristic *n*

a quality or feature of something or someone that is typical of them and easy to recognize

ADJECTIVES

physical characteristics *I want you to describe the man's physical characteristics.*

personal/individual characteristics *What are the personal characteristics that a leader requires?*

a human characteristic *The power of speech is an entirely human characteristic.*

certain characteristics *Successful organizations all have certain characteristics in common* (=they have the same characteristics).

the main characteristic of sth *A new interest in art was one of the main characteristics of this period.*

an essential/important characteristic *An essential characteristic of good teaching is that it creates interest in the learner.*

a common/shared characteristic (=that people or things share) *There are some common characteristics between the two painters.*

a unique characteristic *Every city has its own unique characteristics.*

a distinguishing/distinctive characteristic (=separating someone or something from others of the same type) *The blue feathers are the distinguishing characteristic of the male bird.*

a defining characteristic (=one that makes someone or something the kind of person or thing that they are) *The democratic nature of local government is one of its key defining characteristics.*

VERBS

have a characteristic (*also* **possess a characteristic** *formal*): *He has all the characteristics of a great sportsman.*

show a characteristic (*also* **exhibit a characteristic** *formal*): *A material may exhibit the characteristics of both a liquid and a solid.*

C

share a characteristic *The group shared one characteristic – they were all under 25.*

inherit a characteristic (=get it from your parents) *We all inherit physical characteristics from our parents.*

charge[1] *n*

1 the amount of money you have to pay for goods or services

ADJECTIVES

a small charge *For a small charge you can use the hotel pool.*

high/low charges *Lawyers' charges can be very high.*

an extra/additional charge *He had to pay an extra charge because the equipment was damaged when he returned it.*

a fixed/standard charge *There's a fixed charge for having a dental check.*

a minimum charge *Some restaurants operate a minimum charge at busy times.*

a daily/monthly/annual charge *The daily charge for car rental is 50 euros.*

a one-off charge (=that you only pay once) *There is a one-off charge to have the service set up.*

hidden charges (=ones that are not immediately obvious) *Make sure there are no hidden charges.*

a nominal charge (=very small) *Residents can use the tennis courts for a nominal charge.*

NOUNS + charge

a service charge (=for service in a hotel, restaurant etc) *The bill for the meal includes a 10% service charge.*

an admission charge (=for being allowed to enter a place) *There is no admission charge to the museum.*

a delivery charge (=for taking goods somewhere) *How much is the store's delivery charge?*

VERBS

pay a charge *There will be a charge to pay if you return the car late.*

make a charge *We make no charge for this service.*

introduce/impose a charge *The government introduced a charge for visa applications.*

increase/reduce a charge *Unfortunately, it has been necessary to increase our charges.*

waive a charge (=say it does not have to be paid) *The bank has agreed to waive the charge this time.*

PREPOSITIONS

a charge for sth *There is a charge for the use of the swimming pool.*

PHRASES

free of charge (=with no cost) *Delivery is free of charge.*

at no (extra) charge (=with no cost) *Breakfast may be served in your bedroom at no extra charge.*

THESAURUS: charge

price, value, charge, fee, fare, rent, rate, toll → **cost[1] (1)**

2 an official statement by the police that someone may be guilty of a crime

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + charge

murder/burglary/drugs charges *He appeared in court on drugs charges.*

criminal charges *The investigation resulted in criminal charges against three police officers.*

a serious charge *He was accused of dangerous driving, but the more serious charge of murder was withdrawn.*

a trumped-up charge (=based on false information to make someone seem guilty) *The opposition leader was arrested on trumped-up charges.*

VERBS

face charges *He faces charges of tax evasion.*

deny/admit a charge *All three men denied the charge of murder.*

plead guilty to a charge (=say formally in court that you are guilty) *The youth pleaded guilty to a charge of burglary.*

press/bring charges (=make someone be brought to court for a crime) *Sometimes the victim of an assault does not want to press charges.*

drop/withdraw the charges (=decide not to go on with a court case) *They will drop the charges if we pay them £10,000.*

dismiss the charges (=say that a court case should not continue) *If there is insufficient evidence, the court will dismiss the charges.*

PREPOSITIONS

charges against sb *The charges against him were eventually dropped.*

a charge of (doing) sth *She denied a charge of assaulting her husband.*

PHRASES

be released without charge *She had been arrested twice and released without charge.*

be convicted of/on a charge (=be judged to be guilty) *McCorley was convicted on a charge of assault.*

be acquitted of/on a charge (=be judged to be not guilty) *Both men were acquitted of all charges.*

charge[2] *v*

to ask someone for a particular amount of money for something

NOUNS

charge a fee *Lawyers charge high fees.*

charge a price *Some companies charge different prices for the same product.*
charge a rate *The club charges a higher rate for non-members.*
charge a fare *The airline charges the same fare for children and adults.*
charge interest *They charge a lower rate of interest than the other banks.*
charge commission (=charge money for selling something) *The gallery charges 50% commission on every painting.*
charge (sb) a fine/penalty *You will be charged a fine if you return your library book late.*

PREPOSITIONS

charge for sth *The hospital charges for parking.*
be charged at 2 dollars/25p etc *Calls will be charged at 44p per minute.*

charity *n*

1 an organization that gives money, goods, or help to people who are poor, sick etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + charity

a cancer/animal/homeless etc charity *The event raised thousands of pounds for a cancer charity.*
a local charity *All the money raised goes to local charities.*
a national/international charity *The Red Cross is a well-known international charity.*
a registered charity (=an official one) *How can I check that it is a registered charity?*

VERBS

give/donate sth to charity *I like to give a small amount of what I earn to charity.*
go to charity (=be given to charity) *Any profit that she makes from her writing goes to charity.*
support a charity (=give money to one) *Do you support any charities?*
set up/establish a charity *We set up the charity soon after our son died of cancer.*

charity + NOUNS

charity work *She spends a lot of her time doing charity work.*
a charity worker *Charity workers say these reforms will not help the poor.*
a charity appeal *BrE*, **a charity drive** *AmE* (=an occasion when a charity asks for money) *The organization is launching a charity appeal for a new air ambulance.*
a charity shop *BrE* (=which sells things people have given to get money for a charity) *I usually give all our old clothes to the charity shop.*
a charity event (=one organized to collect money for a charity) *She spoke at a charity event in aid of famine relief.*
a charity concert/show *The band appeared at a charity concert for free.*

PREPOSITIONS

for charity *The festival raises a lot of money for charity every year.*
a charity for sb/sth *Shelter is a British charity for the homeless.*

2 money and help from other people, given to someone who is too poor to look after himself or herself

VERBS

rely on/depend on charity *She doesn't like to rely on charity from other people.*
ask for/accept charity *Some people are too proud to ask for charity.*
not want charity *The refugees say they do not want charity. They want to be back in their own homes.*

charm *n*

a special quality someone or something has that makes people like them

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable/immense charm *He was a man of great charm.*
personal charm *He has a lot of personal charm and he gets on well with people.*
boyish charm (=like a young man or boy) *Women seem to love his boyish charm.*
feminine charm (=that a woman has) *She decided to use a little feminine charm.*
special/unique charm *These old films have their own special charm.*
a certain charm (=some charm) *The idea of moving to a Greek island does have a certain charm.*

VERBS

have charm *Richard was clever and he had a lot of charm.*
use your charm *She knew when to use her charm in order to get what she wanted.*
turn on the charm (=deliberately show a lot of charm) *If you turn on the charm, I'm sure you'll get the job.*
lack charm (*also* **be lacking in charm**) *A lot of new buildings lack charm.*
sth loses its charm (=it no longer seems good or enjoyable) *He was getting older, and travel was losing its charm.*

PHRASES

be part of sb's/sth's charm *The house is a long way from anywhere and that is part of its charm.*
it is impossible to resist sb's charm *Women say that it was impossible to resist Clooney's charm.*
fall for sb's/sth's charms (*also* **succumb to sb's/sth's charms** *formal*) (=allow yourself to be influenced by their charms) *Thomas seemed to be succumbing to Sylvie's charms.*

C

to check they are the same) *The company's figures are checked against the official data.*

check² *n*

the process of finding out if something is safe, correct, true, or in the condition it should be

ADJECTIVES

a quick check *A quick check showed that the car had been stolen.*

a thorough/careful check *An engineer gave the computer a thorough check.*

a regular check *Despite regular checks, the drains had become blocked.*

a routine check (=happening as a normal part of a process) *I went to the doctor for a routine health check.*

a random check (=done without any definite pattern) *Customs officials were carrying out random checks on cars.*

a spot check (=a quick check of one thing in a group, done to obtain information) *They do spot checks to make sure that all the products leave the factory in good condition.*

a medical check *People over 60 should have regular medical checks.*

NOUNS + check

a safety/security check *Airport security checks can take a long time.*

a health check *The dog was given a thorough health check.*

a background check (=done to get information about someone's previous work, education, family etc) *The company conducts background checks on its employees.*

a credit check (=done to get information about someone's financial history) *Banks usually do a credit check before they give you a loan.*

a virus check (=for computer viruses) *The computer is running a virus check.*

Check or checkup?
When talking about a medical examination to find out if you are healthy, you often say **checkup**: *When was your last dental **checkup**?*

VERBS

do/make a check *I did a quick check to make sure all the lights had been switched off.*

carry out/run a check (*also* **conduct a check** *formal*) (=do a check, especially one that you often do) *The police carried out a check on the car's registration number.*

have a check *BrE: Always have a final check to make sure you've got your ticket and passport.*

give sth a check *I'd like you to give the car a careful check.*

PREPOSITIONS

a check on sb/sth *There should be more checks on the performance of doctors.*

PHRASES

keep a (close) check on sb/sth (=check someone or something regularly) *His teacher was keeping a close check on his progress.*

checkup, check-up *n*

a general medical examination that a doctor gives you, to make sure you are healthy

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + checkup

a medical/dental checkup *The doctor will see her for a general medical checkup.*

a regular checkup *Dentists recommend regular checkups.*

a routine checkup (=one that is done regularly, not because there is a particular problem) *Don't worry – it's just a routine checkup.*

an annual/yearly/monthly etc checkup *She went for her annual checkup at the hospital.*

a health checkup *You should get a health checkup before travelling.*

VERBS

have a checkup *It is important to have regular checkups.*

go for a checkup *I went for a checkup at the dentist.*

give sb a checkup *The doctor gave him a checkup and said he was fine.*

cheek *n*

the soft round part of your face below each of your eyes

ADJECTIVES

pink/rosy cheeks *She was a cheerful girl with rosy cheeks.*

red cheeks *His cheeks were all red and he looked embarrassed.*

flushed cheeks *Her cheeks were flushed and her eyes sparkled when she saw him.*

pale cheeks *Tears ran down her pale cheeks.*

chubby cheeks (=rather fat cheeks) *The little boy had chubby cheeks.*

hollow/sunken cheeks *His dull skin and hollow cheeks made him look ill.*

Different kinds of cheeks
Pink or **rosy cheeks** look healthy. **Red cheeks** look embarrassed. **Pale cheeks** look worried or ill. **Chubby cheeks** look a little fat – used especially about babies. **Flushed cheeks** mean you look hot, excited, embarrassed, or you have been using a lot of effort. **Hollow** or **sunken cheeks** look very ill, for example because you have not eaten for a long time.

VERBS

sb's cheeks flush (=they become red) *Joanna's cheeks flushed with embarrassment*

sb's cheeks burn (=they feel hot) *Her cheeks burned as she remembered his kiss.*

kiss sb on the cheek/kiss sb's cheek *He leant over and kissed her on the cheek.*

touch/stroke sb's cheek *She stroked his cheek gently.*

cheerful *adj* THESAURUS happy

cheese *n* a solid food made from milk

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cheese

a strong cheese *This is one of the strongest French cheeses.*

a mild cheese *The cheese is mild and creamy.*

a hard/soft cheese *Camembert is my favourite soft cheese.*

goat's/sheep's cheese *Goat's cheese often has a surprisingly strong taste.*

grated cheese (=cut into small pieces) *Sprinkle the grated cheese over the pasta.*

PHRASES

a piece/slice of cheese *Would you like a piece of cheese?*

bread and cheese *Lunch was bread and cheese.*

chef *n* THESAURUS cook²

chemical Ac *n*

a substance used in chemistry or produced by a chemical process

ADJECTIVES

dangerous/harmful/hazardous chemicals *The sign on the truck said that it was carrying hazardous chemicals.*

toxic/poisonous chemicals (=harmful to people and other living things) *The chemicals that were released were highly toxic.*

industrial/agricultural chemicals *Some deaths from cancer are related to industrial chemicals.*

household chemicals (=used for cleaning etc in the home) *Keep household chemicals out of reach of children.*

VERBS

use chemicals *Farmers use chemicals to kill insects that would destroy their crops.*

produce chemicals *Some plants produce toxic chemicals to protect themselves.*

release chemicals *When we laugh, our brains release chemicals that make us feel good.*

contain chemicals *Tobacco smoke contains thousands of different chemicals.*

be exposed to chemicals *Many of the workers at the factory were regularly exposed to dangerous chemicals.*

a chemical reacts with another chemical *In a rocket, two chemicals react with each other to provide a great deal of heat.*

chemical + NOUNS

a chemical reaction *The carbon dioxide is produced as a result of a chemical reaction.*

a chemical element (=a basic substance that consists of one type of atom) *Silver is a chemical element whose symbol is Ag.*

a chemical compound (=a substance that consists of two or more elements) *DNA is a complex chemical compound.*

a chemical symbol *The chemical symbol for Hydrogen is H.*

the chemical industry *The chemical industry is one of the most important industrial sectors.*

a chemical plant/factory *There has been an explosion at a chemical plant in Germany.*

chemical weapons (=poisonous chemicals used as weapons) *The treaty banned chemical weapons.*

chess *n*

a board game for two players, in which you try to trap one of your opponent's pieces, called the king

VERBS

play chess *Do you want to play chess?*

chess + NOUNS

a chess match/game *He could play four chess matches at the same time.*

a chess set *She gave him a beautifully carved wooden chess set.*

a chess player *Even good chess players make mistakes.*

a chess piece (=one of the objects that you move around the board) *Some of the chess pieces were missing.*

a chess championship/tournament *Ray's taking part in a chess tournament.*

a chess club *Paul was a member of the school chess club.*

a chess move *You first have to learn the basic chess moves.*

Chessboard is usually written as one word.

PHRASES

a game of chess *Perhaps we could have a game of chess later.*

chest *n*

the front part of your body between your neck and your stomach

ADJECTIVES

a broad chest *He was a tall man with a broad chest.*

a powerful/muscular chest *His arms were folded across his powerful chest.*

a hairy chest *His shirt was unbuttoned, revealing a hairy chest.*

a bare chest *The workmen all had bare chests.*

a bad chest *BrE* (=one that is making you cough or giving you pain) *I'm not going running today – my chest is bad.*

C

choice *n*

1 the action of choosing between different people or things, or the opportunity to choose between them

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + choice

a difficult choice *He called his decision to leave "the most painful and difficult choice of my life."*

a stark choice (=a choice between two unpleasant things that you must make) *We faced a stark choice: steal or starve.*

(a) free choice (=you are free to choose any thing or person) *Students have an entirely free choice of what to study at university. | In most countries, marriage is based on free choice.*

an informed choice (=one in which you know enough about something to make a good decision) *The patient should have enough information to make an informed choice.*

consumer choice (=the opportunity for people to choose between a range of different things to buy) *If these shops close, it will limit consumer choice.*

parental choice (=the opportunity for parents to choose between a range of different schools for their children) *The aim is to extend parental choice in education.*

VERBS

have a choice *Students have a choice between German and Spanish.*

make a choice (=choose something) *One of our course advisers can help you to make your choice.*

exercise choice *formal* (=make a choice) *Everyone should have the right to exercise choice in matters of relationships.*

give/offer sb a choice *Her doctor gave her a choice: take medicine or lose weight.*

be faced with a choice *He was faced with a difficult choice.*

influence sb's choice *Many factors will influence your choice of career.*

have no choice/not have any choice (=have to do or accept something) *The men had no choice but to obey.*

leave sb with no choice *I was left with no choice but to resign.*

PREPOSITIONS

a choice between sth and sth *She was faced with a choice between her job and her husband.*

a choice of sth *You should take more care with your choice of clothes.*

by choice (=because you choose to) *Some people live alone by choice.*

PHRASES

freedom of choice *Patients should have more freedom of choice.*

sth is a matter of (personal) choice (=it depends on what you prefer) *The way you feed your baby is a matter of personal choice.*

given the choice (=if you had a choice) *Given the choice, I probably wouldn't work.*

2 the range of people or things that you can choose from

ADJECTIVES

a wide choice *There is a wide choice of designs.*

a good/excellent etc choice *It was a lovely hotel with a good choice of food.*

a limited choice *There used to be a limited choice of TV channels.*

VERBS

offer/provide a choice *Which university offers the widest choice of subjects?*

PHRASES

be spoilt for choice *BrE* (=have a lot of good things to choose from) *If you find old buildings fascinating, you'll be spoilt for choice in this area.*

3 the person or thing that someone chooses

ADJECTIVES

a good/great/excellent choice *This plant is a good choice if your garden is shady.*

the right/wrong choice *I think you've made the right choice.*

the perfect choice *This hotel is the perfect choice for those who like comfort.*

a sensible choice *They thought that he was a sensible choice for the job of captain.*

personal choice *I like strong colours, but that's just my own personal choice.*

sb's first/second choice (=what they like most, or like almost most) *Tennis was not his first choice of sport at school.*

NOUNS + choice

a career choice *Do we ask teenagers to make career choices too early?*

a lifestyle choice *Our lifestyle choices can affect how long we live.*

PREPOSITIONS

sb's choice of sth *The sofa can be covered in your choice of material.*

choose *v* to decide which one you want

ADVERBS

choose sth carefully/with care *I could tell he was choosing his words carefully as he spoke.*

PREPOSITIONS

choose between sth (and sth) *For dessert we could choose between ice cream and apple tart.*

choose from sth *You can choose from a wide range of options.*

choose sb/sth over sb/sth (=choose one person or thing instead of another) *London was chosen over all the other candidates to host the 2012 Olympics.*

choose sb for a job/post *Why did you choose him for the job?*

choose sth as sth *The company chose Seattle as its base.*

chop *v* THESAURUS **cut**[1] **(1)**

chore *n*

a small job that you have to do regularly, especially work that you do to keep a house clean

ADJECTIVES

household/domestic chores *I spend my day off doing household chores like washing and ironing clothes.*

the daily/everyday/day-to-day chores *When you're working it can be hard to find time for the daily chores.*

VERBS

do the chores *I stayed at home and did the chores.*

help (out) with the chores *Do your children help with the chores?*

become a chore (=become something boring, that you do not want to do) *Visiting his mother every week was starting to become a chore.*

Christmas *n*

the period of time around December 25th, the day when Christians celebrate the birth of Christ

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + Christmas

Merry/Happy Christmas! (=something you say to people at Christmas) *Merry Christmas and a happy New Year everyone.*

a family Christmas *We always have a family Christmas at home.*

a traditional Christmas *Mum likes to have a traditional Christmas for all the family.*

a white Christmas (=with snow on the ground) *We haven't had a white Christmas in England for years.*

a good/nice Christmas *Did you have a good Christmas?*

VERBS

have/spend Christmas somewhere *No one wants to spend Christmas alone.*

celebrate Christmas *How does your family usually celebrate Christmas?*

give sb sth for Christmas *What can I give Dad for Christmas?*

get sth for Christmas *I got a new watch for Christmas.*

wish sb a happy Christmas (=say that you hope someone enjoys Christmas) *They called to wish us a happy Christmas.*

Christmas + NOUNS

Christmas Day (=December 25th) *We spent Christmas Day with my parents.*

Christmas Eve (=December 24th, the day before Christmas Day) *The children were too excited to sleep on Christmas Eve.*

the Christmas holiday(s) *The Christmas holiday starts next week.*

Christmas dinner/lunch *All the family come to our house for Christmas dinner.*

a Christmas party *What are you wearing to the Christmas party?*

a Christmas present/card *The children couldn't wait to open their Christmas presents.*

Christmas shopping (=the activity of buying Christmas presents) *Have you done your Christmas shopping yet?*

Christmas carols (=songs sung at Christmas) *Children go from door to door singing Christmas carols.*

a Christmas tree *There were lots of gifts under the Christmas tree.*

Christmas decorations *When do you put your Christmas decorations up?*

a Christmas stocking (=a long sock which children leave in their house on Christmas Eve to be filled with presents) *I put some small gifts in the children's Christmas stockings and hung them on the bedroom door.*

PREPOSITIONS

at Christmas *Hopefully, we'll see you at Christmas.*

for Christmas *Are you going home for Christmas?*

chubby *adj* THESAURUS **fat**[1] **(1)**

chunk *n* THESAURUS **piece**

church *n*

1 a building where Christians go to worship

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + church

the local church *He plays the organ in his local church.*

a parish church *BrE* (=the main Christian church in a particular area) *St Luke's is the parish church for all the villages in this area.*

a Catholic/Protestant/Baptist/Methodist church *I went to Mass at the nearest Catholic church.*

VERBS

go to church (*also* **attend church** *formal*) (=go to a regular religious ceremony in a church) *My parents didn't go to church.*

church + NOUNS

a church service (=a religious ceremony in a church) *There's a church service at 10.30 every Sunday morning.*

a church hall (=a large room in or next to a church) *The dance was held in the church hall.*

church bells *I could hear the church bells ringing.*

church music *His music is strongly influenced by the church music he heard as a child.*

a church wedding (=in a church) *She wants to have a church wedding.*

C

sb's home/native city (=where they were born or grew up) *He said that he never wanted to leave his home city.*

an industrial city *Sheffield is an industrial city in the north of England.*

an ancient/historic city *The statue was found near the ancient city of Ephesus.*

a cosmopolitan city (=full of people from different parts of the world) *San Francisco is a very cosmopolitan city.*

city + NOUNS

the city centre *BrE*, **the city center** *AmE*: *The hotel is in the city centre.*

a city street *Traffic was moving slowly along the city streets.*

the city limits *AmE* (=the edge of a city) *New developments are being built outside the city limits.*

city life *He was tired of city life.*

PHRASES

in the heart of a city *The cathedral is right in the heart of the city.*

on the outskirts of a city (=on the edge) *There were several bombings on the outskirts of the city.*

civil Ac *adj*

relating to the people who live in a country

NOUNS

civil rights (=rights to vote, be treated fairly etc that everyone should have) *African-Americans marched in defence of their civil rights.*

civil liberties/liberty (=the right to be free to do what you want within the law) *Detention without trial threatens our civil liberties.*

civil war (=fighting between groups from within the same country) *His family fled Spain during the Spanish civil war.*

civil disobedience (=the refusal to obey some laws as a protest, usually without violence) *Gandhi was known for advocating non-violent civil disobedience.*

civil unrest/disturbances (=when people protest or behave violently) *Troops have been called in to deal with civil disturbances.*

civilization (*also* civilisation *BrE*) *n*

a society that is well organized and developed

ADJECTIVES

an ancient/early civilization *The achievements of Egypt's ancient civilization were remarkable.*

modern civilization *Technology is one of the benefits of modern civilization.*

a great civilization *History students read about the great civilizations of India and China.*

human civilization *Art was important in the development of human civilization.*

Western civilization (=of Europe and North America) *They were interested in the spread of Western civilization.*

VERBS

a civilization flourishes (=is very successful) *Ancient Greek civilization flourished for more than a thousand years.*

PHRASES

a threat to civilization *Climate change could be the greatest threat to our civilization.*

since the dawn of civilization *formal* (=since when civilizations started to exist for the first time) *Wars have happened since the dawn of civilization.*

the decline of a civilization (=a situation in which it stops being successful) *They are concerned about the decline of western civilization.*

claim[1] *v*

to state that something is true

Grammar

Claim is often used with **that**: *He **claims that** he has done nothing wrong.* You can also use **claim** with an infinitive: *They **claim to be** the world's largest music company.* | *He **claimed to have earned** over $5 million.*

ADVERBS

rightly/rightfully claim sth (=claim something that is true) *This hotel can rightly claim to have the best views on the island.*

justifiably/legitimately claim sth (=rightly claim) *The factory can justifiably claim to be one of the most modern in Europe.*

falsely/wrongly claim sth *Some companies falsely claim that their products have health benefits.*

VERBS

try/attempt to claim sth *She tried to claim that she had never seen him before in her life.*

NOUNS

claim responsibility for sth (=say that you are responsible for something bad) *A terrorist group called a newspaper claiming responsibility for the attack.*

claim (the) credit for sth (=say that you are responsible for something good) *Political parties always claim the credit for economic growth.*

claim victory (=say that you are the winner) *The president will not be able to claim victory until all the votes are counted.*

claim your innocence *Hussain has always claimed his innocence, saying Khan died when his own gun went off.*

Instead of saying **claim your innocence**, you can say **maintain your innocence**: *Davis has always **maintained his innocence**.*

claim[2] *n*

a statement that something is true

ADJECTIVES

a false claim *The company was making false claims about the effectiveness of its products.*

a claim is untrue *A lot of the claims you read on the internet are untrue.*

a claim is unfounded/unsubstantiated *formal* (=not based on truth or evidence) *Workers' claims of cruel treatment are completely unfounded.*

extravagant/ridiculous/outrageous claims *formal* (=clearly not true) *Companies try to sell more products by making extravagant claims about them.*

competing/conflicting claims (=saying that different things are true) *Voters are confused by the competing claims of the different political parties.*

VERBS

make a claim *They make ridiculous claims about the benefits of the diet.*

bring/lodge a claim (=claim something officially or legally) *She's bringing a claim of unfair dismissal against her employer.*

deny/reject/dismiss a claim *Government officials denied claims that the country possessed chemical weapons.*

accept a claim *Some people refuse to accept the claim that sunlight is bad for your skin.*

support a claim (*also* **back up a claim**) *The court found no evidence to support his claim.*

challenge a claim *The article challenges the claims companies make for their skincare products.*

investigate a claim *Detectives are investigating claims of dishonesty by government officials.*

base a claim on sth (=use something to show that a claim is true) *She has no evidence on which to base her claim that she deserves special treatment.*

PREPOSITIONS

claims about/of sth *His friends didn't believe his claims about having no money.*

PHRASES

a claim does not stand up (=it is clearly not true) *The government's claims to have solved the problem simply don't stand up.*

clammy *adj* THESAURUS **damp (1)**

clandestine *adj* THESAURUS **secret[1]**

class *n*

1 a period of time during which someone teaches a group of people

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + class

a French/history/music/dance etc class *I learned something interesting in my psychology class today.*

a beginners'/intermediate/advanced class *He started with a general computer course and then took some more advanced classes.*

an evening class/a night class *Mum goes to an evening class on Tuesdays.*

VERBS

go to a class (*also* **attend a class** *formal*): *You could try attending a yoga class.*

have a class *What classes do you have this morning?*

take a class (=go to classes as a student) *I'm taking some art classes at the moment.*

teach a class *One of the other teachers was ill so I taught her class.*

miss a class *Students who miss classes fall behind with their work.*

a class is held/takes place *The classes are held in a local school.*

PREPOSITIONS

in class *He was a shy boy who rarely spoke in class.*

PHRASES

be late for class *David was late for class again.*

2 one of the groups in a society that people are divided into according to their jobs, income, education etc

ADJECTIVES

the middle class *Most people say they belong to the middle class.*

the working/lower class *At this time most of the working class was very poor.*

the upper class *Members of the upper classes didn't have to work.*

social class *He belonged to a higher social class than his colleagues.*

the ruling/dominant class (=the people who have power) *For a long time, French was the language of the ruling class.*

the professional class (=people with professional jobs) *Doctors, lawyers, and teachers are all members of the professional class.*

a privileged class (=people who have advantages because of their wealth, social position etc) *Holidays abroad used to be only for the privileged classes.*

VERBS

belong to a class *We asked people what class they belonged to.*

class + NOUNS

the class system *He felt he was a victim of the class system.*

classified *adj* THESAURUS **secret[1]**

C

scrub
floor | **pan** | **hands** | **(finger)nails**
to clean something by rubbing it hard with a brush and some water:
She was on her knees, scrubbing the floor. | I worked in the kitchen scrubbing the pans. | I ***scrubbed*** *the dirt* ***off*** *my hands.*

polish
shoes | **glasses** | **car** | **table** | **furniture** | **floor**
to rub something in order to make it shine, usually with a cloth:
His shoes were always ***well polished****. | She polished the glasses until they sparkled.*

dust
furniture | **chair** | **shelves**
to remove dust from somewhere using a cloth:
She found the letter when she was dusting some shelves in his study. | Don't forget to dust on top of the cupboards.

vacuum
carpet | **rug** | **floor** | **house** | **room** | **car**
to clean something using a special machine that sucks dirt off the floor:
It took me nearly an hour to vacuum the carpets. | She had vacuumed the whole house before her mother arrived.

rinse
hair | **hands** | **mouth** | **clothes** | **cloth** | **plate** | **dish** | **glass** | **cup** | **vegetables** | **lettuce**
to wash something quickly by pouring water on it, in order to remove soap, shampoo, dirt etc:
Rinse your hair thoroughly to get rid of the shampoo. | She ***rinsed out*** *her dirty clothes. | Polly went into her little kitchen and* ***rinsed out*** *two glasses. | I* ***rinsed off*** *the soap.*

You use **rinse out** about using water to clean the inside of a cup, pan etc, or to clean a cloth, some clothes etc. You also **rinse out** your mouth with a liquid to make it clean.

cleanse *formal*
skin | **wound**
to clean your skin or a wound thoroughly:
The cream is good for cleansing the skin. | Use salt water to cleanse the wound.

disinfect
surface | **wound** | **equipment** | **shoes** | **clothing** | **hands** | **house** | **room**
to use chemicals to clean something, in order to prevent the spread of disease:
It is important to disinfect the wound. | Staff must disinfect their hands before they go into the operating theatre. | I had to disinfect the room with bleach.

sterilize (*also* **sterilise** *BrE*)
needle | **instrument** | **equipment** | **milk** | **water**
to make something safe to use by heating it or using chemicals, by killing all the bacteria:
Always use sterilized needles, and only use them once. | Make sure that you sterilize the water before you drink it.

cleanse *v* THESAURUS clean²

clear *adj*

1 easy to understand

NOUNS

clear instructions *The instructions are clear and easy to follow.*

a clear explanation *His explanation wasn't very clear and I wasn't sure what to do.*

clear advice/guidance *The doctor's advice was very clear: lose weight.*

a clear warning *Police must give a clear warning before firing their weapons.*

a clear message/signal/indication *The voters have sent a clear message to the government.*

a clear statement *You should give a clear statement of your intentions.*

sb's position is clear *My position is absolutely clear: I am not in favour of these changes.*

ADVERBS

absolutely/perfectly clear *Their answer was perfectly clear.*

crystal clear (=extremely clear) *The instructions on the packet are crystal clear.*

VERBS

make sth clear *Children may have difficulty in making their feelings clear.*

PREPOSITIONS

clear about/on sth *The law is very clear on this point.*

PHRASES

make it clear that... *She made it clear that she did not want any help.*

make yourself clear (=express yourself in a way that is easy to understand) *Please tell me if I'm not making myself clear.*

far from clear/by no means clear (=very unclear) *Her explanation was far from clear.*

2 used when saying that someone is sure about something and understands it well

NOUNS

a clear idea/understanding/picture *This booklet will give you a clear idea of what the course involves.*

a clear sense of sth *She had a very strong will and a clear sense of purpose.*

a clear objective/aim *The US entered the war without any clear objectives.*

VERBS

get sth clear (=understand something properly) *I'm just trying to get clear exactly what you mean.*

PHRASES

be clear in sb's mind *The layout of the house was still clear in his mind.*

3 impossible to doubt, question, or make a mistake about

NOUNS

clear evidence/signs *There is clear evidence that smoking is bad for health.*

a clear case/example of sth *It was a clear case of theft.*

a clear distinction *There used to be a clear distinction between work and leisure.*

a clear winner/victory *He is the clear winner.*

ADVERBS

not entirely clear *Sam's reasons for leaving were not entirely clear.*

painfully clear (=very clear – used especially about something that causes problems or is embarrassing) *It became painfully clear that I had got it wrong.*

abundantly clear *formal* (=extremely clear) *By July the scale of the problem had become abundantly clear.*

PHRASES

as clear as day/daylight (=extremely clear) *His reason for contacting me was suddenly as clear as day.*

4 easy to see through, rather than coloured or dirty

NOUNS

clear water/liquid *The water was so clear that you could see down to the bottom of the lake.*

clear glass *The walls are made of clear glass.*

ADVERBS

crystal clear (=extremely clear) *You can go diving in crystal clear water.*

THESAURUS: clear

transparent
plastic | **silk** | **varnish** | **film** | **tape** | **screen**
clear – used about materials and solid things. **Transparent** is a little more formal than **clear**:
The bottles are made of transparent plastic. | a transparent silk nightdress | The cream forms a transparent film on your skin. | Fry the onions until they are almost transparent.

see-through
dress | **blouse** | **top** | **bag**
made of a very thin material that you can see through – used especially about clothes:
She wore a black see-through dress. | He kept the map in a see-through plastic bag.

You use **opaque** about something that is difficult to see through: *The bathroom windows are made of opaque glass.*

5 if the sky is clear, there are no clouds

THESAURUS: clear

good, fine, nice, bright, beautiful/glorious, clear, cloudless, dry → **sunny**

clever *adj*

1 a clever person is intelligent and good at thinking of ideas and ways of doing things

NOUNS

a clever boy/girl/man/woman *My uncle is a very clever man.*

a clever person *She was surrounded by clever people when she was at college.*

a clever politician/lawyer *Smith escaped going to prison because he had a clever lawyer.*

Clever is often used to describe people who are good at tricking other people, for example lawyers and politicians. It is also used to describe people who you admire for their intelligence, especially in British English. In American English, people usually say **smart**.

ADVERBS

how clever *How clever of you to remember!*

THESAURUS: clever

clever, smart, bright, brilliant, gifted, wise, cunning, brainy → **intelligent**

2 a clever idea, plan, method etc is interesting or unusual and works well

clever + NOUNS

a clever idea *What a clever idea!*

a clever way of doing sth *The brochure suggests several clever ways in which you can save energy in your home.*

a clever use of sth *There is a clever use of space in the kitchen.*

a clever trick *He used a clever trick to confuse his opponent.*

a clever gadget/device *They use a clever little gadget for peeling the oranges.*

a clever piece of software *He wrote a clever piece of software which can find the information you want for you.*

ADVERBS

extremely/really clever *She came up with an extremely clever way of solving the problem.*

C

NOUNS

climb a mountain/hill/peak/slope *Hillary and Tenzing climbed the mountain in 1953.*

climb the stairs/steps/staircase *The old man slowly climbed up the stairs.*

climb a tree/ladder/wall *Kids love climbing trees.*

climb a rope *In order to reach the sails, you had to climb a rope.*

VERBS + climb

go climbing *We used to go climbing together in the Alps.*

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

climb up/down/over sth *She climbed down the ladder.*

climb out of/off sth *He climbed out of the pool and sat down.*

climb onto sth *Fans climbed onto the roof to get a better view.*

THESAURUS: climb

ascend *formal*
stairs | steps | staircase | mountain | hill | ladder
to climb up something:
Diana ascended the stairs to her room. | They ascended the mountain by the light of the moon.

Ascend or climb?
Ascend is much more formal than **climb** and is used mainly in written descriptions. **Ascend** is only used about going up, whereas **climb** can be used about going up, down, or over something.

go up
stairs | steps | staircase | mountain | hill | ladder | tree
to move up something:
The three children went noisily up the stairs. | The car went up the hill.

mount
stairs | steps | stage | platform | horse
to climb up something, or climb onto something. **Mount** sounds rather formal:
The women watched them curiously as they mounted the stairs. | The audience cheered as the band mounted the stage. | The prince mounted his horse and rode off.

scale *formal*
wall | fence | mountain | peak | cliff
to climb to the top of something very high:
The prisoners escaped by scaling a high barbed wire fence. | She was the youngest person ever to scale the mountain.

scramble
to climb somewhere quickly and with difficulty, using your hands to help you, especially when you are walking:
*They **scrambled up** the steep rocky bank.*

clamber
to climb somewhere with difficulty, using your hands to help you:
*At last we saw the two girls **clambering down** the slope to safety. | Everyone **clambered onto** the back of the truck.*

clinic *n*

a place people can visit to get medical treatment or advice

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + clinic

a health/medical clinic *Children are given vaccinations at their local health clinic.*

a hospital clinic *You can be tested for infection at a special hospital clinic.*

a private clinic *Fees at private clinics are usually very high.*

an outpatient clinic (=in a hospital, for people who do not need to stay there) *There's an outpatient clinic for people with diabetes.*

VERBS

go to a clinic (*also* **attend a clinic** *formal*): *Pregnant women should attend an antenatal clinic at least once a month.*

hold a clinic (=arrange for a clinic to take place) *The hospital holds vaccination clinics once a fortnight.*

PREPOSITIONS

at/in a clinic *I have an appointment at the clinic.*

clock *n*

an instrument that shows what time it is

VERBS

look/glance at the clock *She looked at the clock. It was eight thirty.*

wind (up) a clock (=turn a key to keep it working) *It was one of those old clocks that you have to wind up.*

the clock says eight/nine etc (=shows a particular time) *The clock said five so I went back to sleep.*

a clock strikes eight/nine etc (=makes a number of sounds to show the hour) *I heard a church clock strike eleven.*

a clock ticks (=makes regular quiet sounds) *There was no sound in the room apart from a clock ticking.*

a clock stops (=stops working) *My bedside clock had stopped at 6 a.m.*

an alarm clock goes off (=rings at a particular time) *What time do you want the alarm clock to go off tomorrow?*

set an alarm clock (=move the controls so that it will make a noise at a particular time) *She set her alarm clock for 7.15.*

ADJECTIVES

a clock is fast/slow (=shows a later or earlier time than the real time) *There's no need to hurry – that clock's fast.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + clock

an alarm clock (=that makes a noise to wake you up) *He forgot to set his alarm clock.*

a grandfather clock (=an old-style tall clock that stands on the floor)

a digital clock (=that shows the time as numbers that keep changing)

PHRASES

the hands of/on a clock (=the long thin pieces that point at the numbers) *The hands on the clock moved so slowly.*

the face of a clock/the clock face (=the front part that you look at) *I couldn't see the clock face from where I was sitting.*

close[1] *v*

to make something stop being open, or to stop being open

close + NOUNS

close your eyes/mouth/lips *I closed my eyes and tried to sleep.*

close a door/window/gate *Don't forget to close the gate.*

close the curtains/blinds *Can you close the curtains for me?*

close a book *Harry closed the book and put it back on the shelf.*

close a bag/suitcase/purse *It's difficult to close the suitcase.*

close a box/jar *He put the letter in the box and closed it.*

close a drawer/lid *He carefully closed the drawer.*

NOUNS + close

a door/gate closes *The door slowly closed behind him.*

sb's eyes close *His eyes closed and he fell asleep.*

ADVERBS

close sth firmly *Maggie closed the door firmly and went through to the kitchen.*

close sth tightly/tight (=used especially about your eyes) *He closed his eyes tightly and pulled the trigger.*

close sth carefully *Sabine closed her bag carefully.*

sth closes shut *The door suddenly closed shut.*

sth does not close properly (=not completely) *The car door doesn't seem to close properly.*

PREPOSITIONS

close (sth) behind you *She heard the door close behind her.*

THESAURUS: close

shut

door | **eyes** | **window** | **gate** | **drawer** | **book** | **box** | **suitcase** | **lid**

to close something:

She shut the door with a loud bang. | *He told the audience to shut their eyes.* | *She shut the book and got up.*

Shut or close?

Shut and **close** mean the same. Because they have different vowel sounds, they can have a slightly different feeling. **Shut** is used more when the action is quick, firm, or noisy. **Close** is used more when the action is slow, careful, or gentle.

With some words you can only use **close**. You **close the curtains** (not 'shut' them). You **close a bag/wallet/jar/container** (not 'shut' it).

slam

door | **gate** | **lid**

to close a door or lid quickly and noisily, especially because you are angry:

She left the room, slamming the door behind her. | *The boy slammed the lid of his desk.*

You can also say **slam sth shut**: *He **slammed** the drawer **shut**.*

draw

curtains | **blind**

to close curtains or a blind by pulling them along a rail:

I drew the curtains and went upstairs to bed. | *The blinds were still drawn in his office.*

lock

door | **gate** | **box** | **drawer** | **safe** | **car** | **room** | **house**

to close something with a key or a special number or code, so that other people cannot get in:

She locked the front door behind her. | *Don't forget to lock the car.*

seal

jar | **bag** | **box** | **container** | **hole** | **gap** | **chamber**

to close something so that no air or liquid can get in or out:

Seal the jars and store them in a cool place. | *The uranium is stored in **hermetically sealed** containers* (=completely sealed, so no air at

all can get in or out). | *It is better to seal gaps in window frames, in order to avoid loss of heat.*

Seal is most commonly used as an adjective participle: *The vegetables are sold in **sealed** containers, in order to keep them fresh.*

If you **seal** an **envelope**, you stick down the top part, so that it is completely closed.

ANTONYMS close → open² (1)

close² *adj, adv*

1 not far away

PHRASES

close at hand (=very near) *If there are any problems, the library staff are always close at hand.*

in close proximity to sb/sth *formal* (=close to someone or something) *In this city, the rich live in close proximity to the poor.*

at close quarters (=when you are very close) *The picture looks even more magnificent at close quarters.*

at close range (=firing a gun from very close) *He was shot in the head at close range.*

VERBS

get/come close (*also* **draw close** *written*): *She felt a little afraid as they drew close to the house.*

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

close to sb/sth *The hotel is close to the railway station.*

close together *They sat close together on the sofa.*

close behind/beside sb *The rest of the group followed close behind him.*

close by (=near to a place) *All her relatives live close by.*

THESAURUS: close

close, nearby, neighbouring, surrounding, local → **near**

2 if you are close to doing something, you are very likely to do it soon

PHRASES

close to tears (=very nearly crying) *She was exhausted and close to tears.*

close to death *He was close to death, but his condition has improved a little.*

close to extinction *The Hawaiian crow is close to extinction.*

close to retirement *Several of the firm's employees are close to retirement.*

close to collapse/bankruptcy *One of the big investment banks was rumoured to be close to collapse.*

VERBS

come close to (doing) sth *Only once has he come close to losing his temper.*

bring sb/sth close to (doing) sth *His speech brought me close to tears.*

ADVERBS

perilously/dangerously close *Three years ago, the theatre came perilously close to closure.*

agonizingly/tantalizingly close (=extremely close to achieving something) *The French came agonizingly close to winning the match.*

3 used when talking about looking at, thinking about, or watching something very carefully

NOUNS

a close look *She moved forward to take a close look at the painting.*

a close examination *A closer examination of the facts soon solved the mystery.*

close attention *Pay close attention when the teacher reads the instructions.*

close scrutiny (=careful and thorough examination) *The investigation included close scrutiny of video images of the incident.*

close inspection *Closer inspection revealed that the rocks were from an earlier period.*

close supervision *Initially there will be close supervision of the trainee.*

a close study *Their research involved a close study of two communities.*

PHRASES

keep a close eye/watch on sb/sth (=watch someone or something carefully) *They have to keep a close eye on their finances.*

4 used when talking about a good relationship between people

NOUNS

a close friend *He is a close friend of Prince Charles.*

a close colleague/associate *He discussed the problem with some of his close colleagues.*

a close friendship/relationship *He found it hard to form close relationships with other people.*

close ties/links *The president has said that he wants closer ties with China.*

a close bond *There has always been a close bond between the sisters.*

close cooperation *Close cooperation is needed between team members.*

PREPOSITIONS

close to sb *Guy was very close to his older sister.*

closed *adj*

1 not open

NOUNS

a door/gate is closed *The bedroom door was closed.*

a window/shutter is closed *All the windows were closed when they left the house.*
a curtain/blind is closed *She kept the curtains closed during the daytime.*
sb's eyes are closed *His eyes were closed and he looked like he was asleep.*
sb's mouth is closed *It is polite to eat with your mouth closed.*

ADVERBS

tightly/firmly closed *Her mouth was tightly closed.*
partially/partly closed *One eye was partly closed.*
fully closed *I checked that all the windows were fully closed.*

VERBS

keep sth closed *He always keeps the door of his office closed.*
remain closed *His eyes remained closed while he listened to her.*

Closed or shut?
Shut means the same as **closed**. You can say that a door, gate, or someone's mouth or eyes are **shut** or **closed**. You don't usually use **shut** about curtains or blinds. You don't say that something is 'partly shut'. You say that it is **partly closed**.
You don't use **shut** before a noun. **Closed** is sometimes used before a noun: *He listened with closed eyes.*

ANTONYMS closed → open[1] (1)

2 if a store, bank, museum etc is closed, it is not open and people cannot enter or use it

NOUNS

a shop/store/bank/office is closed *The flower shop is closed on Sunday.*
a gallery/museum is closed *The museum is closed for a few days at Christmas.*
a market is closed *Japanese financial markets remained closed for a national holiday.*

ADVERBS

temporarily closed *The palace is temporarily closed for structural repairs.*
permanently closed *The bridge is permanently closed because it is unsafe.*

VERBS

remain closed *The park will remain closed until the end of the month.*

PHRASES

closed to the public/visitors *The church is currently closed to the public because of restoration work.*
closed for repairs/maintenance/refurbishment *The Grand Opera House remains closed for repairs.*

Closed or shut?
Shut means the same as **closed**. **Shut** is mainly used in spoken English. Signs on buildings say **closed**, not 'shut'. You usually say **temporarily/permanently closed**, not 'temporarily/permanently shut'.

ANTONYMS closed → open[1] (2)

cloth *n*

1 material used for making things such as clothes

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cloth

woollen/linen/silk cloth *His suit was made of dark grey woollen cloth.*
fine cloth *His waistcoat was made of fine cloth.*
coarse cloth (=rough cloth made from thick threads) *The shawl was made of coarse cloth.*

VERBS

make/manufacture/produce cloth *The cloth is made on a machine called a loom.*
weave cloth *The cloth is woven by hand.*
dye cloth *The cloth is dyed and then washed.*

cloth + NOUNS

a cloth cap/coat/bag *A tall man wearing a cloth cap suddenly appeared.*
a cloth merchant *Her family were wealthy cloth merchants.*

2 a piece of cloth used for a particular purpose

ADJECTIVES

a damp/wet cloth *She cleaned the surfaces with a damp cloth.*
a clean cloth *Cover the wound with a clean cloth.*

VERBS

clean/wipe sth with a cloth *The waitress was wiping the tables with a damp cloth.*
wrap sth in a cloth *He wrapped the gun in a cloth.*
cover sth with a cloth *The body was covered with a cloth.*
lay/put/spread a cloth over sth *The priest laid a linen cloth over the altar.*

Tablecloth (= which you put on a table), **facecloth** (=which you use for washing your face), and **dishcloth** (=which you use for washing plates) are usually written as one word.

clothes *n* the things that people wear

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + clothes

new/old clothes *I like your new clothes.*
clean/dirty clothes *I can't wait to get out of these dirty clothes.*

C

good/nice/beautiful/expensive/fashionable clothes *The magazine was full of pictures of people wearing expensive clothes.*

warm/dry/wet clothes *It's cold in the mountains and you'll need plenty of warm clothes.*

designer clothes (=made by a well-known designer) *She spends hundreds of pounds on designer clothes.*

work/school/sports clothes *He changed out of his work clothes.*

formal clothes *It's best to wear formal clothes for an interview.*

smart clothes *BrE* (=nice neat clothes that you wear for formal occasions) *Do you have to wear smart clothes to work?*

casual clothes *Most people feel more comfortable in casual clothes.*

sb's best clothes *They wore their best clothes for the photograph.*

ordinary/everyday clothes *Everyone else was wearing ordinary clothes.*

second-hand clothes (=not new) *Charity shops sell second-hand clothes at low prices.*

children's clothes/baby clothes *You don't have to pay tax on children's clothes in the UK.*

winter/summer clothes *The shops are already full of winter clothes.*

baggy clothes (=that do not fit tightly) *She always wears baggy clothes that hide her figure.*

scruffy/shabby clothes (=dirty and untidy) *I didn't want to go to the restaurant in scruffy clothes.*

VERBS

wear clothes *She always wears beautiful clothes.*

be dressed in ... clothes *The man was dressed in ordinary clothes.*

put your clothes on *I told him to get up and put some clothes on.*

take your clothes off (*also* **remove your clothes** *formal*): *She took off her clothes and slipped into bed.*

change your clothes *I usually change my clothes as soon as I get home from work.*

PHRASES

a change of clothes (=another set of clothes to put on) *He only took a small bag with a change of clothes.*

THESAURUS: clothes

clothing
used when talking in general about a type of clothes, or about making or selling clothes. Also used in the phrase **a piece/item/article of clothing** (=one of the things that someone wears):
*You'll need to take some **warm clothing**. | It is important to wear **protective clothing** at all times. | a clothing manufacturer | a clothing retailer | Police found **a piece of clothing** in the bushes. | I took **a change of clothing** with me.*

garment *formal*
something that you wear. Garment is often used when talking about people and companies that make clothes, or when talking about a type of clothes:
*They work in the **garment industry**. | **Garment workers** are often poorly paid. | The clothes are made in **garment factories** in Asia. | The burqa is a garment worn by some Muslim women, which covers the head and body.*

dress
a particular style of clothes:
*Casual dress is not appropriate for an interview. | The picture shows a group of men **in evening dress**. | You have to wear **fancy dress** for the party* (=clothes that make you look like a particular type of person, which you wear for fun). *| The local people were wearing their **traditional dress**.*

Dress is not used on its own in this meaning – it needs to have an adjective before it.

wear
used about types of clothes sold in a shop, in the following phrases. Don't use **wear** on its own:
*The shop sells **children's wear**. | Can you tell me where the **women's wear** department is? | **Designer wear** can be very expensive. | He preferred **casual wear** to formal clothes.*

Wear is often used to form nouns, for example **sportswear** and **menswear**. **Wear** is not used on its own.

gear *informal*
clothes for a particular sport or activity:
*She was wearing her **running gear**. | Have you got all your **sports gear**?*

wardrobe
all the clothes that you own, or all the clothes that you wear at a particular time of year:
*Her wardrobe consisted mainly of smart clothes for work. | I will need a new **summer wardrobe**. | You could win a complete **new wardrobe**!*

clothing *n* the things that people wear

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + clothing

warm clothing *The flood victims need shelter and warm clothing.*

light clothing (=made from thin material) *You'll only need light clothing during the day.*

waterproof clothing *Always take a map and waterproof clothing when walking on the hills.*

protective clothing *Laboratory technicians have to wear special protective clothing.*

loose clothing (=that does not fit tightly) *Wear loose comfortable clothing when travelling.*

tight clothing *Tight clothing may show your underwear.*

outdoor clothing *The shop sells ski-wear and other outdoor clothing.*

outer clothing (=that you wear over other clothes) *They were getting hot, so they stopped to remove their outer clothing.*

designer clothing (=made by a well-known designer) *She had been to all the designer clothing stores in London.*

sports clothing *The shop has a range of sports equipment and sports clothing.*

winter/summer clothing *It was cold, and they had not brought any winter clothing.*

clothing + NOUNS

the clothing industry *There are plenty of job opportunities in the clothing industry.*

a clothing manufacturer/company *He works for a large clothing manufacturer.*

a clothing store *She stopped to look in the window of a clothing store.*

a clothing factory *She worked in a clothing factory.*

Clothing or clothes?

Clothing sounds more formal. It is often used when talking about the business of making and selling clothes. For example, you usually say *a **clothing** manufacturer* or *the **clothing** industry*. (It is much less common to use **clothes** with these words.)

Clothes is the usual word to use in everyday conversation. For example, when talking about your feelings about someone's clothes, you say *I like your **clothes***. and *She always wears really nice **clothes***. (not 'clothing').

When talking about clothes in general, you can say either *warm/dry/clean **clothes*** or *warm/dry/clean **clothing***. **Clothing** sounds a little more formal and less personal than **clothes**.

PHRASES

a piece of clothing *There were pieces of clothing scattered around the room.*

an item/article of clothing *formal* (=a piece of clothing) *All items of clothing should be clearly labelled.*

THESAURUS: clothing

clothing, garment, dress, wear, gear, wardrobe
→ **clothes**

cloud *n*

1 a white or grey mass in the sky formed from very small drops of water

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cloud

a dark/grey/black cloud *Dark clouds usually mean rain.*

a white cloud *There was a bright blue sky with a few white clouds.*

heavy/thick cloud *By midday, heavy cloud had spread across the sky.*

low/high cloud *Low cloud spoiled our view from the top of the hills.*

storm/rain clouds *Dark storm clouds were moving in from the Atlantic.*

VERBS

clouds gather/form *The sky had darkened and clouds had gathered.*

clouds cover/hide sth (*also* **clouds obscure sth** *formal*): *The moon was now hidden by clouds and the sky was dark.*

clouds clear/lift (=disappear) *At last the rain had stopped and the clouds had cleared.*

clouds drift/float (=move slowly) *A few clouds drifted across the top of the mountains.*

clouds race/scud (=move quickly) *A strong wind was blowing and the clouds were scudding across the sky.*

clouds hang above/over a place *Heavy grey clouds hung over the town.*

PHRASES

a bank/mass of cloud (=a large amount of cloud) *A heavy bank of cloud was creeping across the sky.*

a blanket/veil of cloud (=a layer of cloud which stops you being able to see something) *In the morning, a blanket of cloud still covered the hills.*

a break/gap in the cloud(s) *The moon was visible through breaks in the cloud.*

the sun breaks through the clouds (=it starts to be seen) *The late morning sun was beginning to break through the clouds.*

2 a mass of dust, smoke etc in the air

PHRASES

a cloud of dust/ash (*also* **a dust/ash cloud**) *The car disappeared down the road in a cloud of white dust.*

a cloud of smoke/steam/gas *The fire sent up a huge cloud of smoke.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cloud

a great/big/huge/vast cloud of sth *Where the bomb had landed, there was a great cloud of dust.*

a thick/dense cloud of sth *These volcanic eruptions throw up dense clouds of ash.*

a swirling cloud (=moving around and around) *A swirling cloud of smoke hid everything.*

VERBS

a cloud rises *When I turned over, a big cloud of dust rose from the mattress.*

cloudless *adj* THESAURUS sunny

PHRASES

a stretch of coast (=a long area of coast) *The 13th-century chapel lies on a spectacular stretch of coast.*

(from) coast to coast (=across a country, or all over a country) *He has been giving talks from coast to coast.*

coat *n*

a piece of clothing with buttons and long sleeves that is worn over your other clothes

ADJECTIVES

a warm coat *You'd better bring a warm coat.*

a heavy/thick coat *She was wearing a heavy coat and a thick scarf.*

a light coat (=a thin coat) *I took a light coat in case the weather got cooler in the evening.*

a long coat *He was wearing a long black coat.*

a leather/fur etc coat *She was wearing a fake fur coat.*

a white coat (=worn by medical or laboratory staff to protect their clothes) *The hospital doctors all wore white coats.*

NOUNS + coat

a winter coat *You need a good winter coat in Canada.*

Raincoat, **overcoat** (=a long warm coat worn in cold weather), and **greatcoat** (=a big thick coat worn by soldiers) are written as one word.

VERBS

wear a coat *The men wore long coats.*

put on your coat (*also* **pull on your coat** *written*): *Mark stood up and put on his coat.*

take off your coat (*also* **remove your coat** *formal*): *She took off her coat and went into the kitchen.*

button (up)/do up your coat *She shivered as she buttoned up her coat.*

unbutton/undo your coat *He was hot, so he undid his coat.*

hang up your coat *We hung up our coats and went through to the lounge.*

coat + NOUNS

sb's coat pocket *I thought my wallet was in my coat pocket.*

sb's coat sleeve/collar *The little boy was pulling at his mother's coat sleeve.*

code *n*

1 a set of rules, laws, or principles for behaviour

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + code

a moral/ethical code *Children learn their parents' moral code.*

a strict code *Companies have to follow a strict code on the treatment of workers.*

a voluntary code (=one that people are not legally obliged to follow) *The newspaper industry is governed only by a voluntary code.*

a dress code (=rules about what you must wear) *Some of the more expensive clubs have a dress code.*

the penal/criminal code (=laws relating to the punishment of criminals) *At that time the penal code allowed the death penalty.*

VERBS

have a code *Most professional organizations have a code of ethics.*

draw up/lay down a code *TV companies have drawn up their own code relating to advertising.*

adopt/introduce/establish a code *The company has introduced a dress code for employees.*

follow a code (*also* **comply with a code** *formal*): *When using dangerous chemicals, it's important to follow a basic safety code.*

break a code (*also* **breach/violate/contravene a code** *formal*): *Travel agents can be fined if they break the code.*

enforce a code (=make sure that people follow it) *A code of practice is useless if it isn't enforced.*

PHRASES

a code of practice/conduct/ethics (=rules for people in a particular profession) *There is a strict code of conduct for doctors.*

a code of behaviour *BrE*, **a code of behavior** *AmE*: *Each society follows its own code of behaviour.*

a code of honour *BrE*, **a code of honor** *AmE* (=a moral code about the best way to behave) *The soldiers' strict code of honour means that they all support each other.*

2 a system of signs or symbols for sending secret messages

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + code

a secret code *We can't understand the message – it must be some sort of secret code.*

a security code *Only senior employees know the security code for the gate.*

Morse code (=a system of short and long sounds, or flashes of light) *Soldiers used radios to communicate in Morse code.*

VERBS

break/crack a code (*also* **decipher a code** *formal*) (=discover how to understand it) *My job in the army was deciphering the codes used by the enemy.*

code + NOUNS

a code word (=a secret word that you must say in order to get information or enter a place) *He gave me the code word so I showed him the map.*

a code name (=a secret name used for referring to something or someone) *The attack was always referred to by the code name 'Operation Overlord'.*

PREPOSITIONS

in code *Secret agents sent messages to each other in code.*

code for sth *'We're Oscar Mike' is code for 'we're on the move'.*

coffee *n*

a hot dark brown drink with a slightly bitter taste

ADJECTIVES

strong coffee *I need some strong coffee to wake me up.*

fresh coffee *The room was filled with the delicious smell of fresh coffee.*

black coffee (=without milk) *I've ordered two black coffees.*

white coffee (=with milk) *I'd like a tea and a white coffee, please.*

decaffeinated coffee (*also* **decaf coffee** *informal*) (=without any caffeine in it) *The restaurant didn't serve decaf coffee so I had tea instead.*

VERBS

have (a) coffee *She always has coffee with her breakfast.*

go for (a) coffee (=go out to drink coffee) *Let's go for a coffee and discuss your idea.*

make coffee *I'll make some coffee.*

drink coffee *I don't drink coffee in the evening because it keeps me awake.*

pour the coffee *He poured the coffee into mugs.*

sip coffee (=drink it slowly) *Dad sat in his chair, peacefully sipping his coffee.*

coffee + NOUNS

a coffee break (=a break from work to have some coffee) *Shall we stop for a coffee break?*

a coffee cup/mug (=a cup or mug for drinking coffee) *The café has run out of coffee cups.*

a coffee pot (=a pot for making coffee in) *She lifted the coffee pot and poured herself some coffee.*

a coffee machine (=that makes coffee) *Instead of working, he stands at the coffee machine talking to friends.*

a coffee shop/bar (=a café) *There's a coffee shop inside the hospital.*

PHRASES

take/like your coffee black/white/with sugar etc (=prefer to drink it with or without milk and sugar) *I take my coffee black. | How do you like your coffee?*

a cup/mug of coffee (=a cup or mug containing coffee) *He usually has a cup of coffee after lunch.*

coffee with/without milk (=used instead of saying white or black coffee) *Can I have two coffees with milk?*

coin *n*

a flat round piece of metal, used as money

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + coin

a gold/silver etc coin *In his hand there was a silver coin.*

a pound/dollar etc coin *The machine will only accept pound coins.*

a Roman/Greek/Egyptian etc coin *Roman coins showed the head of the emperor.*

VERBS

toss a coin *BrE*, **flip a coin** *AmE* (=throw it up in the air to decide something) *The referee tossed a coin at the beginning of the match.*

put a coin in the slot (=put it into a thin hole in a machine, so that you can pay for something) *She put a coin in the slot of the vending machine and selected a chocolate bar.*

coincidence *n*

a situation in which two things happen together in a surprising or unusual way because of chance

ADJECTIVES

pure/sheer/mere coincidence (=just coincidence and nothing else) *It was pure coincidence that we both arrived on the same plane.*

a happy/lucky/fortunate coincidence *By a happy coincidence I met an old friend at the conference.*

an unfortunate coincidence *By a very unfortunate coincidence, she didn't get either of his emails.*

a strange/curious/odd coincidence *What a strange coincidence that they were born on the same day!*

a remarkable/amazing/extraordinary coincidence *It was an extraordinary coincidence seeing him there.*

a complete coincidence (=used when emphasizing that something was a coincidence) *It was a complete coincidence – I wasn't planning to see her again.*

PREPOSITIONS

by a ... coincidence (*also* **by coincidence**) *By a remarkable coincidence, his new boss has the same name as him.*

PHRASES

What a coincidence! *It's your birthday today too! What a coincidence!*

it is a coincidence that *It was a remarkable coincidence that two people with the same name were staying at the hotel.*

it is no coincidence that (=it is deliberate) *It's no coincidence that the government made the announcement today.*

be more than (a) coincidence *When I saw him a third time, I realized it was more than just coincidence.*

a string/series of coincidences *The accident happened because of a string of unfortunate coincidences.*

C

start a collection *I decided to start a coin collection.*

build up/assemble a collection *He gradually built up a collection of plants from all over the world.*

hold/house a collection *formal* (=contain a collection) *The museum holds a remarkable collection of 19th-century photographs.*

boast a collection *formal* (=have a very impressive one) *The park boasts a fine collection of trees.*

add sth to your collection *She bought him another hat to add to his collection.*

a collection consists of sth *The collection consists of over 500 pictures.*

a collection contains/includes sth *Her collection includes both oil and watercolour paintings.*

collector *n*

1 someone who collects things that are interesting or attractive

ADJECTIVES

a keen/enthusiastic/avid collector *She's an avid collector of vintage movie posters.*

a great collector (=someone who collects a lot of things) *He was a great collector of Chinese ceramics.*

a serious collector *If you are a serious collector, the money is not important.*

a private collector *The painting was bought by a private collector for £1.5 million.*

a wealthy collector *Wealthy collectors will pay up to $10 million for one of his pictures.*

NOUNS + collector

an art collector *My uncle is an art collector and he has dozens of paintings in his house.*

a stamp/book/record etc collector *Record collectors will pay hundreds of dollars for one of his early records.*

PHRASES

a collector's item (=an object that people want to have because it is interesting or rare) *Tiffany lamps are now a real collector's item.*

2 someone whose job is to collect things

NOUNS + collector

a tax/debt/rent collector *He worked as a tax collector for the government.*

a ticket collector *The ticket collector asked for my ticket.*

a refuse/rubbish collector *BrE*, **a garbage collector** *AmE*: *The rubbish collectors have to pick up all the litter.*

college *n*

a place where people can study after they leave school

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + college

art/music/drama etc college *David loves painting and he hopes to go to art college after he finishes school.*

an agricultural/secretarial/technical etc college *I wanted a job in farm management so I went to agricultural college.*

a Further Education/FE college *BrE* (=where adults can go to study, especially part-time) *She studied business studies at an FE college.*

a teacher training college (=where you learn to be a teacher) *At teacher training college we studied a lot about child psychology.*

a military college (=where you learn to be an officer in the army) *He left military college and joined the army as a junior officer.*

a sixth form college *BrE* (=a college for students between the ages of 16 and 18 in the British school system) *She is studying for her A-levels at sixth form college.*

VERBS

go to (a) college (*also* **attend college** *formal*): *After university I went to teacher training college for a year.*

start college (*also* **enter college** *formal*): *My daughter will start college next fall.*

leave/finish college *What are you going to do when you leave college?*

graduate from college (=leave with a degree) *Her son had just graduated from college.*

drop out of college (=leave before getting a qualification) *She dropped out of college after the first year.*

college + NOUNS

a college student *Many college students are unprepared for the world of work.*

a college graduate *College graduates earn more than people who have not been to college.*

a college education *My father didn't have a college education.*

PREPOSITIONS

at college (*also* **in college** *especially AmE*): *I met him when I was at college.*

College or university?

When British speakers use **college**, they usually mean a place where people study after secondary school, which is not a university and does not give degrees.

American speakers usually use **college** to mean a university.

collision *n*

an accident in which two or more people or vehicles hit each other while moving in different directions

ADJECTIVES

a head-on collision (=between vehicles moving towards each other) *Three people died in a head-on collision between a car and a minibus.*

a high-speed collision *Both drivers escaped unhurt from a high-speed collision in the final race of the season.*

a fatal collision (=in which someone is killed) *The number of fatal collisions has gone down since the new speed limits were introduced.*

a mid-air collision *The aircraft was involved in a mid-air collision with a military jet.*

VERBS

be involved in a collision *The badly damaged car had clearly been involved in a collision.*

avoid/prevent a collision *The bus driver swerved to avoid a collision.*

a collision takes place (*also* **a collision occurs** *formal*): *More collisions occur at night when drivers are tired.*

PREPOSITIONS

a collision with sth *The truck was involved in a collision with a bus.*

a collision between sth and sth *There was a collision between a train and a car stuck on the crossing.*

THESAURUS: collision

crash, collision, disaster, wreck, pile-up → **accident**

colossal *adj* THESAURUS **huge**

colour *BrE*, **color** *AmE n* red, blue, yellow etc

ADJECTIVES

a bright/strong colour *The house is painted in bright colours.*

a dark colour *People tend to wear dark colours at work.*

a light/pale colour (=not dark or strong) *Light colours make a room look larger.*

a rich colour (=strong and beautiful or expensive-looking) *I love the rich colours in oriental rugs.*

a deep colour (=dark and attractive) *Her eyes were a deep brown colour.*

a bold/vivid/vibrant colour (=bright in a way that is exciting) *His paintings are known for their use of bold colours.*

a loud colour (=very bright in a way that looks unpleasant or funny) *He liked to wear ties in loud colours.*

a primary colour (=red, yellow, or blue) *Children's clothes are often in primary colours.*

a gaudy/garish colour (=very bright and usually showing bad taste) *The owners of the restaurant had painted it in gaudy colours – the walls were bright orange.*

a neutral colour (=white or cream and other colours that match other colours easily) *People usually use neutral colours in offices.*

a pastel colour (=pale blue, pink, yellow, or green) *The bedroom was painted in pastel colours.*

contrasting colours (=ones that are different from each other in a way that looks attractive) *You need to have one or two contrasting colours in the room.*

complementary colours (=ones that look nice together) *Garden designers like to use plants which have complementary colours.*

a matching colour (=one that is the same as something else) *I bought some gloves and a scarf in a matching colour.*

a red/green/blue etc colour *Our door was painted a bright green colour.*

a reddish/greenish/bluish etc colour (=slightly red, green, blue etc) *The glass used for bottles is often a greenish colour.*

VERBS

a colour fades (=becomes less bright) *The colour of the curtains had faded in the sun.*

a colour matches sth (=it is the same colour) *The colour in this tin of paint doesn't match the walls.*

a colour clashes (with sth) (=it looks very unattractive when next to another colour) *Do you think the colour of this tie clashes with my shirt?*

colour + NOUNS

a colour scheme (=the colours used in a room, painting etc) *Have you decided on a colour scheme for your new house?*

a colour combination/combination of colours *We looked at various colour combinations and in the end we decided to have a cream carpet and pale blue walls.*

PHRASES

a range of colours (=a number of colours that you can choose from) *There's a wide range of colours to choose from.*

column *n*

a regular article by a particular writer in a newspaper or magazine

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + column

a newspaper column *His newspaper column is read by thousands of people.*

a weekly/daily/monthly column *She writes a weekly column on gardening for a national newspaper.*

a regular column *His views on religion are well known from his regular column in the magazine.*

a gossip column (=about the private lives of famous people) *There were stories about their affair in all the gossip columns.*

a financial/sports/gardening etc column (=about a particular subject) *My father is interested in business and he usually reads the financial column first.*

an obituary column (=about people who have

just died) *I spotted an old friend's name in the obituary column.*

the agony column *BrE* (=one that gives advice to readers about personal problems) *I always read the agony column first.*

a lonely hearts column *BrE* (=with advertisements from people looking for a new lover or friend) *She met him after placing an advertisement in a lonely hearts column.*

VERBS

write a column *He writes a column on food for the 'Daily News'.*

have a column (=write one) *My wife had a weekly column in a Sydney newspaper.*

publish/run a column (=include it in a newspaper or magazine) *Several of the papers run her cookery column.*

combat[1] *n*

fighting, especially during a war

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + combat

hand-to-hand combat/close combat (=in which the opponents are very close) *He was killed in hand-to-hand combat.*

unarmed combat (=without weapons) *The soldiers are trained in the techniques of unarmed combat.*

ground combat (=on land) *This is the biggest ground combat operation in NATO's history.*

mortal combat *literary* (=until one opponent is killed) *The two men found themselves locked in mortal combat.*

VERBS

be locked in combat (=be fighting hard with someone) *Their troops were locked in combat.*

be engaged in combat *formal* (=be fighting an enemy) *Our troops are engaged in combat in the south of the country.*

send sb into combat *The president's most difficult task is sending soldiers into combat.*

see combat (=have the experience of fighting as a soldier) *She was in the army for three years but never saw combat.*

combat + NOUNS

combat operations/missions *He flew 280 combat missions in two wars.*

combat troops/soldiers/forces/units *US combat troops are being sent to the region.*

a combat zone (=an area where there is fighting) *A group of reporters flew over the combat zone.*

combat planes/aircraft/vehicles *Very few combat aircraft have been destroyed.*

combat readiness (=the state of being ready to fight) *Their army has thousands of troops in combat readiness.*

PREPOSITIONS

in combat *They risk being injured or killed in combat.*

combat against sb *France sent more troops into combat against the rebels.*

combat[2] *v* THESAURUS fight[1] (4)

combination *n*

two or more different things that exist together or are used together

ADJECTIVES

a good combination *The computer offers a good combination of price and performance.*

the perfect/ideal combination *The town has the perfect combination of beautiful beaches and a lively nightlife.*

the right/best combination *You need to find the right combination of colours for you.*

a unique/rare/unusual combination *She uses a unique combination of flavours.*

a particular combination *The crisis was caused by a particular combination of events.*

a powerful/potent combination *Music and drama can be a powerful combination.*

a winning/unbeatable/irresistible combination *He spent hours testing out various recipes before discovering the winning combination.*

a bad combination *Pilots know that low and slow is a bad combination.*

a lethal/deadly combination (=one that can kill you or that is very effective) *Mixing alcohol and drugs can be a lethal combination.*

VERBS

make a good/excellent combination *I think that Steve and Anna make a good combination.*

involve a combination *Accidents usually involve a combination of driver error and dangerous driving conditions.*

NOUNS + combination

colour combination *Do you think that purple and green is a good colour combination?*

PREPOSITIONS

a combination of sth *Before the race she felt a combination of fear and excitement.*

in combination (with sth) *The drugs are normally used in combination with each other.*

PHRASES

a combination of factors/things *The team's success is due to a combination of factors.*

a combination of circumstances *The fire appears to have resulted from an unfortunate combination of circumstances.*

come *v* THESAURUS arrive

comeback *n*

a time when someone is successful or popular again

ADJECTIVES

a remarkable/amazing comeback *When her career seemed finished, she staged a remarkable comeback to win another Olympic gold medal.*

a dramatic/spectacular comeback *A spectacular comeback in the last ten minutes of the game earned the team a victory.*

a big/great comeback *This tour might be the singer's chance for a big comeback.*

a political comeback *When opinions changed after the war, the party made a remarkable political comeback.*

VERBS

make/stage a comeback *The band are making a comeback after an absence of two years.*

comeback + NOUNS

a comeback tour *The singer is on the first night of a comeback tour of the US.*

comedy *n*

1 entertainment that is intended to make people laugh

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + comedy

stand-up comedy (=one person telling jokes on stage) *He's developing a new stand-up comedy act.*

slapstick comedy (=in which the performers do silly things like falling over) *The tradition of slapstick comedy goes back to the early days of cinema.*

black/dark comedy (=about subjects that are usually sad or serious, especially death) *The film contains many moments of black comedy.*

comedy + NOUNS

a comedy series *He appeared in the popular comedy series 'Friends'.*

a comedy show *She has her own comedy show on TV.*

a comedy film *Chaplin made some of the most successful comedy films of all time.*

a comedy star/actor/actress *The main role in the film is played by comedy star Whoopi Goldberg.*

a comedy sketch (=a short funny performance that is part of a longer show) *There is a famous comedy sketch by Monty Python about a man buying a dead parrot.*

2 a funny film, television programme, or play

ADJECTIVES

a TV comedy *The actor became famous for his part in the TV comedy 'Frasier'.*

a romantic comedy *The American actor is best known for his roles in romantic comedies.*

a musical comedy (=with music and singing) *She has produced a string of successful musical comedies on Broadway.*

a sentimental comedy (=about emotions such as love and sadness) *The film is one of those tearful sentimental comedies.*

a situation comedy (=a regular comedy TV programme about the same characters) *She stars in a situation comedy about a family with teenage kids.*

a black comedy (=about serious subjects, especially death) *There are several murders in this black comedy set in Florida.*

comfort *n*

1 a feeling of being physically relaxed and without any pain or unpleasant sensations

ADJECTIVES

great comfort *After weeks of travelling, he was enjoying the great comfort of his own bed.*

maximum comfort *You can adjust the heating for maximum comfort.*

PREPOSITIONS

in comfort *The car can seat five people in comfort.*

PHRASES

be built/made/designed for comfort *The tennis shoe is designed for comfort and performance.*

in the comfort of your own home (=without having to leave your home) *The internet lets you do your grocery shopping in the comfort of your own home.*

2 a feeling of being less worried or unhappy, or something that creates this feeling

ADJECTIVES

great comfort *Her letters were a great comfort.*

little/small/cold comfort (=not much comfort) *The tax cuts will be cold comfort for people without jobs.*

VERBS

be a comfort to sb (=be someone or something that brings comfort) *His daughter was always a comfort to him.*

take comfort from sth *The family has taken comfort from the support of friends.*

draw/derive comfort from sth *formal* (=take comfort from something) *The government will draw comfort from the latest economic figures.*

find/take comfort in sth *She finds comfort in the fact that others have suffered similar problems.*

offer (sb) comfort *Volunteers are available to offer comfort to victims of crime.*

give (sb) comfort *She was so upset that it was impossible to give her any comfort.*

bring/provide comfort *Religious faith can bring comfort during difficult times.*

comfort + NOUNS

comfort food (=food that you eat to make you feel relaxed and happy) *To cheer me up, my mother would make me chicken soup or some other comfort food.*

C

PHRASES

a source of comfort *His happy memories were a source of comfort in difficult times.*

a word of comfort *He tried to find some words of comfort that would help her.*

comfortable *adj*

making you feel physically relaxed, without any pain or without being too hot, cold etc

NOUNS

a comfortable chair/sofa/bed *This chair is nice and comfortable.*

a comfortable room/bedroom/lounge *The rooms are very comfortable and have their own shower and bathroom.*

a comfortable house/hotel/apartment *We stayed in a comfortable hotel not far from the city centre.*

comfortable clothes/clothing/shoes *These shoes aren't very comfortable – they're too tight.*

a comfortable position *Make sure that you are sitting in a comfortable position.*

comfortable surroundings *You can relax in the comfortable surroundings of the hotel.*

VERBS

feel comfortable *Does the jacket feel comfortable?*

look comfortable *The bed looks very comfortable.*

make sb/sth comfortable *Sit down and make yourself comfortable.*

PHRASES

comfortable to wear/use/ride *My bike isn't very comfortable to ride.*

warm and comfortable *The house is warm and comfortable, even in winter.*

nice and comfortable *It's nice and comfortable in here.*

You also use **comfortable** when saying that someone has a nice easy life and plenty of money to live: *She left her **comfortable** life in New Jersey in order to become a songwriter.* | *Richard had a **comfortable** job and a good salary.*

THESAURUS: comfortable

comfy *informal*
shoes | **slippers** | **chair** | **armchair** | **sofa**
comfortable – used about chairs, clothes and people:
*These shoes are **nice and comfy**.* | *You look very comfy in that chair.*

cosy *BrE*, **cozy** *AmE*
room | **lounge** | **bedroom** | **bed** | **fire** | **house** | **apartment** | **home** | **cabin** | **restaurant** | **bar** | **suburb** | **atmosphere**
used about places that are comfortable and warm or friendly, which are often small. **Cosy** is more informal than **comfortable**:
There's a cosy lounge with a real fire. | *They live in a **cozy little** house in the country.* | *Marion loved her home and its cosy atmosphere.*

snug
warm and comfortable, especially in a way that makes you feel protected. Small places can be **snug**, or people can feel **snug**:
*It was very cold outside, but our tents were **snug and warm**.* | *I'm **snug as a rug** in here!* (=very snug – used in informal British English)

smooth
flight | **crossing** | **ride** | **journey**
comfortable because your car or plane does not shake, the sea is not rough, or there are no other problems:
The flight was very smooth. | *The car is designed to give a smooth ride.* | *I hope you have a smooth journey.*

comic *adj* THESAURUS funny (1)

comical *adj* THESAURUS funny (1)

command *n*

1 an order that should be obeyed

VERBS

give a command (*also* **issue a command** *formal*): *Which officer gave the command to advance?*

obey a command (=used about people or animals) *Your dog will soon learn to obey your commands.*

carry out a command (=obey it – only used about people) *The men carried out the command immediately.*

ignore/disobey a command *I ignored his command and ran after him.*

PREPOSITIONS

at sb's command (=when someone gives an order) *At his command, the men lowered their weapons.*

2 the control of a group of people or a situation

ADJECTIVES

complete/full command *The authorities say that they now have full command of the situation.*

military command *A large area was already under US military command.*

sole command (=not shared with anyone) *He was in sole command of a small military unit.*

VERBS

have command *US planes now had command of the skies.*

take command (=begin controlling a group or situation) *Captain Kent took command of the Emergency Control Centre.*

lose command *The enemy was losing command of the situation.*

assume command *formal* (=start to be in

charge of a group of people) *He assumed command of all the troops in the Washington area.*

be given command *He was given command of another ship.*

put/place sb in command *A third goal put Brazil in command of the game.*

PREPOSITIONS

in command (of sb/sth) (=controlling people or things) *Admiral Sir James Somerville was in command of the operation.*

under sb's command (=being controlled by someone) *Massive forces were assembled in the south of England under the command of General Eisenhower.*

at sb's command (=available to be given orders) *He had thousands of troops at his command.*

PHRASES

the chain of command (=a system in which decisions are passed from people at the top to the bottom) *The order came from someone high up in the chain of command.*

commemorate *v*

to show in a public way that you remember and respect a person or an event

commemorate + NOUNS

commemorate a victory *This grand monument was built to commemorate a famous military victory.*

commemorate an event *Public celebrations are held every year to commemorate the event.*

commemorate the 25th/100th etc anniversary of sth *To commemorate their 100th anniversary, the organisation has opened a new office in Glasgow.*

commemorate sb's life/death *The ceremony commemorates the deaths of soldiers in all recent wars.*

commemorate the victims of sth *Candles were lit across the country to commemorate the victims of the disaster.*

NOUNS + commemorate

a statue commemorates sth *A statue was built to commemorate those who died in the war.*

a plaque commemorates sth (=a piece of stone or metal with writing on it) *A plaque was unveiled to commemorate the princess's visit.*

commence *v* THESAURUS start[1] (1), (2)

commencement *n* THESAURUS

beginning (1)

comment Ac *n*

something you say or write that expresses your opinion

ADJECTIVES

a brief/quick comment *I just want to make a very brief comment.*

an interesting comment *The students made some interesting comments on the poem.*

a positive/favourable/appreciative comment (=that shows you like something) *There were some very positive comments in the report.*

a negative/critical comment (=that shows you don't like it) *The school has received critical comments from inspectors.*

helpful/useful comments *Let us know if you have any helpful comments or suggestions.*

a constructive comment (=one that is intended to help someone do something better) *I always try to give constructive comments to students.*

a rude comment *He is always making rude comments about me.*

a sarcastic comment (=in which you say the opposite of what you mean, as an unkind joke) *I tried to stay calm, despite his sarcastic comments.*

a snide comment (=unkind but indirect) *I ignored his snide comments about my cooking.*

fair comment (=criticism that seems reasonable) *What he says is fair comment – he's right.*

a casual comment (=not very serious or important) *I only made a casual comment about finding the work a bit boring.*

a passing comment (=a quick comment made without thinking about it very carefully) *She got upset about a passing comment I made about her clothes.*

VERBS

make a comment *The teacher made some very positive comments about his work.*

post a comment (=put it on the internet) *I posted a comment on the newspaper's website.*

have a comment (=want to make a comment) *Do you have any comments on that, David?*

pass comment *BrE* (=give an opinion) *He looked at my photos but he didn't pass comment.*

invite comment(s) (=ask people to give an opinion) *The website invites comments from people who visit it.*

welcome comments (=be glad to hear people's opinions) *We would welcome your comments and suggestions.*

receive comments *It is very helpful to receive comments from the public.*

PREPOSITIONS

a comment on/about sth *I listened to their comments on the plan.*

commentary Ac *n*

a spoken description of an event, given while the event is happening, especially on the television or radio

C

passionately/fiercely committed (=with very strong feelings) *We are all passionately committed to our work in Africa.*

politically/ideologically committed *They were ideologically committed to democratic principles.*

irrevocably committed *formal* (=in a way that cannot be changed) *By now the US was irrevocably committed to the war.*

NOUNS

a committed supporter *He remains a committed supporter of the present government.*

a committed member of sth *She is a committed member of the Scottish Socialist Party.*

a committed Christian/Muslim/pacifist/feminist etc *They consider themselves to be committed Christians.*

VERBS

remain committed to sth *The government remained committed to the treaty.*

PREPOSITIONS

committed to (doing) sth *We are committed to building a better society.*

committee *n*

a group of people chosen to do a particular job, make decisions etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + committee

a government committee *A government committee is looking into drug laws.*

a special committee *A special committee of scientists was set up to study the disease.*

the finance/education etc committee *He served on the finance committee.*

an executive/management committee (=that manages an organization and makes decisions for it) *He sat on the firm's Executive Committee.*

an advisory committee *The government is following the advice of the Food Advisory Committee.*

a joint committee (=involving two or more groups) *The two schools have set up a joint committee to look into the proposal.*

a select committee (=of politicians and advisers who examine a particular subject, especially in the UK) *The government appointed a select committee to look into the issue of press freedom.*

VERBS + committee

set up/form/appoint a committee *The council appointed a special committee to study the issue.*

appoint/elect sb to a committee *Mr D Pugh was elected to the committee, replacing Mr A J Taylor.*

serve/sit on a committee (=be a member of an important committee) *Our organization is always in need of volunteers to serve on the committee.*

chair/head a committee (=be in charge of a committee) *Professor Peacock was appointed to chair the committee.*

committee + VERBS

a committee meets *The committee meets once a month.*

a committee approves/rejects sth *The committee has approved the idea.*

committee + NOUNS

a committee meeting *There's a committee meeting once a month.*

a committee member (*also* **a member of a committee**) *Four committee members did not attend the meeting.*

a committee chairman (*also* **a chairman of a committee**) *There will be a new committee chairman next year.*

PREPOSITIONS

a committee on sth *She was a member of the Senate committee on welfare reform.*

be on a committee (=be a member of a committee) *I was on the parents' committee at my kids' school.*

commodity *n*

something that is bought and sold, especially a substance

ADJECTIVES

an important commodity *Crude oil is the world's most important commodity.*

an expensive commodity *Consumers began to find that they could afford more expensive commodities.*

a valuable/precious commodity *Land is an extremely valuable commodity.*

a rare/scarce commodity *Soap was a scarce commodity during the war.*

agricultural commodities *The falling prices of agricultural commodities such as coffee have severely affected the economy.*

industrial commodities *Sales of the old industrial commodities of iron and coal are still important.*

commodity + NOUNS

commodity prices *Commodity prices are very high in the UK.*

a commodity market *The price of coffee on the commodity market had risen.*

THESAURUS: commodity

goods, commodity, merchandise, wares, export, import → **product**

common *adj*

1 happening often and to many people or in many places, or existing in many places

NOUNS

a common cause/reason *Heart disease is one of the most common causes of death.*

a common type/form of sth *Many common forms of cancer can be treated if detected early.*

a common name *Jones is a very common name in the UK.*

a common flower/plant/bird/animal *Daisies are very common flowers.*

a common problem *Lack of sleep is a common problem among older people.*

a common illness/disease *The drug is used to treat a range of common illnesses.*

a common belief/view *There is a common belief that unemployment causes crime.*

common practice *It was common practice for girls to be married as soon as possible.*

a common mistake/error *Confusing 'it's' and 'its' is a common error among students.*

a common feature *Windmills used to be a common feature of the landscape.*

a common sight (=something you often see) *Street dentists are a common sight in Pakistan.*

a common occurrence (=something that often happens) *Flooding is a common occurrence in the area.*

ADVERBS

increasingly common *Living together before marriage has become increasingly common.*

particularly common *The disease is particularly common among young children.*

extremely common *Skiing injuries are extremely common.*

relatively common (=quite common) *This situation is relatively common with small businesses.*

VERBS

become common *It's becoming more and more common for women to keep their family name when they get married.*

remain common *The problem remains common in some areas.*

PREPOSITIONS

sth is common among sb/sth *Bad dreams are fairly common among children.*

it is common for sb to do sth *It is common for people to be afraid of the dark.*

THESAURUS: common

widespread
support | agreement | belief | concern | criticism | condemnation | use | practice | corruption | dissatisfaction | discontent | acceptance
used when a lot of people think or say the same thing, or something happens in a lot of places:
There is widespread agreement on the need for prison reform. | The widespread use of chemicals in agriculture is causing permanent damage to the soil. | Corruption in government was widespread.

commonplace
if something is commonplace, it happens a lot somewhere – used especially about things that are shocking or surprising, or things that have changed because of new technology:
Violence was commonplace. | It is ***becoming increasingly commonplace*** *to see young people sleeping on the streets of London. | Electric cars are likely to* ***become*** *more* ***commonplace*** *over the next few years.*

Commonplace is less commonly used before a noun.

rife
if an illness or problem is rife, it is very common:
AIDS is ***rife in*** *some parts of the world. | He claimed that racism was* ***rife among*** *police officers. | The city's streets are still* ***rife with*** *violent crime.*

Rife is not used before a noun.

prevalent *formal*
used when saying that many people have an idea or belief, or an illness or problem is common:
This belief is more ***prevalent among*** *men than women. | Suicide is less* ***prevalent in*** *rural societies.*

Prevalent is less common before a noun.

ubiquitous *formal*
very common and seen in many different places – often used humorously in written descriptions:
These cameras are ubiquitous in our cities.

You often say **the ubiquitous...**: *She was wearing* ***the ubiquitous*** *little black dress. | The film features* ***the ubiquitous*** *Scarlett Johansson.*

ANTONYMS common → rare

2 shared by two or more people, countries, or groups

NOUNS

a common aim/goal/purpose *We're all working together towards a common goal.*

a common interest *Dating agencies try to match people with common interests.*

a common language *English is their common language.*

common ground (=things that people agree about) *I'm hoping that we might be able to find some common ground.*

a common enemy *They were fighting against a common enemy.*

work every day) *House prices in the commuter belt are much higher than those outside it.*

compact *adj* THESAURUS small (1)

companion *n*

someone you spend a lot of time with, especially a friend

ADJECTIVES

a close companion *At school, we were close companions.*

a loyal/faithful companion *His dog had been a loyal companion for years.*

a female/male companion *He arrived with a female companion.*

a constant/inseparable companion (=who you spend most or all of your time with) *The two boys became constant companions.*

a lifelong companion (= throughout your life) *Lucinda was her best friend and lifelong companion.*

a good/wonderful companion *For older people, a pet cat can be a very good companion.*

ideal/perfect companion *Who would be your ideal dinner companion?*

a travelling/dining/drinking companion *I knew that Dave would be a good travelling companion.*

PREPOSITIONS

a companion to sb *She became an inseparable companion to my uncle.*

a companion for sb *We bought the dog as a companion for my mother.*

company *n*

1 a business organization

ADJECTIVES

a big/large company *She has a senior position in a large manufacturing company.*

a small company *His father is the director of a small company.*

a medium-sized company *The firm is a medium-sized company, employing just over 300 workers.*

a leading/major company *Apple is one of the world's leading computer companies.*

a reputable company (=with a good reputation) *Choose a reputable company to do the building work.*

a profitable/successful company *How can we make this company more profitable?*

a foreign company *There are many opportunities for foreign companies here.*

an international/multinational company (=with offices in different countries) *She works for a major international company.*

a local company *The new development will bring more business to local companies.*

a private company *It is private companies that create wealth in a society.*

a public/listed company (=one that offers its shares for sale on the stock market) *They are on the index of the top 100 listed companies.*

a limited company (=one whose owners only have to pay a limited amount if it gets into debt) *We decided it would be safer to change our business into a limited company.*

a state-owned/publicly owned company (=owned by the government) *The state-owned company was very inefficient.*

NOUNS + company

an internet company *He started his own internet company when he was only 15.*

an oil/drug/insurance/phone etc company *The oil company is paying for the clean-up operation.*

a manufacturing/publishing/shipping etc company *She works for a publishing company editing textbooks.*

a utility company (=a company that provides water, gas, or electricity to homes) *The utility companies have made huge profits.*

a water/electricity/gas company *The water company says it is not responsible for the burst pipe.*

a subsidiary company (=one that is owned or controlled by a larger company) *It is a large organization with several subsidiary companies.*

a parent company (=one that owns or controls a smaller one) *The firm's parent company is in the US.*

a sister company (=one that belongs to the same organization as another company) *Many of the flights will be operated by our sister company.*

a blue-chip company (=a very important and successful one) *He only invests in blue-chip companies.*

VERBS + company

work for a company *She works for a publishing company.*

run/manage a company *Nick runs an internet company.*

join/leave a company *Sara joined the company in 2008 as a software developer.*

resign from a company *I resigned from the company when they refused to promote me.*

set up/start/form/found/establish a company *The company was set up just after the war.*

own a company *The company is owned by an Indian businessman.*

buy/sell a company *They sold the company for a million dollars.*

take over a company (=buy it and run it) *The company was taken over by an Indian construction firm.*

company + VERBS

a company makes/manufactures/produces sth *The company manufactures parts for car engines.*

a company sells sth *What does your company sell?*

a company specializes in sth (=it mainly makes or sells a particular product) *We are a small company specializing in organic cotton clothing.*

a company grows/expands *The company has expanded since last year.*

a company goes bankrupt/fails (=stops doing business after losing too much money) *He lost everything when his company went bankrupt.*

a company merges with another company (=they join together to become one company) *What happened when the oil companies merged?*

company + NOUNS

a company director/executive *The company directors have awarded themselves a massive pay increase.*

a company spokesman/representative *A company spokesman denied that there had been a secret deal.*

company policy *It is not company policy to give that information.*

PHRASES

a company goes bust/goes under/goes to the wall *informal* (=it becomes bankrupt) *They were worried that the company was about to go bust.*

a company goes into liquidation (=it is closed and sold in order to pay its debts) *The company was forced to go into liquidation.*

2 the fact that you are with another person

ADJECTIVES

sb is good/pleasant company (=it is enjoyable being with them) *I always liked seeing Rob – he was such good company.*

sb is poor company (=it is not enjoyable being with them) *She apologized for being poor company on the journey.*

mixed company (=when men and women are together) *Most of us are happy in mixed company.*

the assembled company *formal* (=the people who are together in a place) *He gazed at the assembled company.*

VERBS

enjoy sb's company *Steve was fun and she clearly enjoyed his company.*

keep sb company (=be with someone so that they do not feel lonely) *Mum was out so I stayed at home to keep my younger sister company.*

have company (=have a person or people with you) *I'm sorry, I didn't realize you had company.*

need/want company *Children need the company of other kids their age.*

be expecting company (=be waiting for a visitor or visitors to arrive) *You look very nice – are you expecting company?*

PREPOSITIONS

for company *She only had her cat for company.*

in the company of sb (=when you are with someone) *I felt nervous in the company of such an important man.*

in company (=when with other people) *He finds it hard to speak to people and is awkward in company.*

PHRASES

like/prefer your own company (=prefer to be alone) *She's not unfriendly – she just prefers her own company.*

seek (out) the company of sb *formal*: *He has never sought the company of women.*

have the pleasure of sb's company *formal* (=used especially to say or ask whether someone will be attending something) *Will we have the pleasure of your company this evening?*

the company sb keeps (=the people someone spends time with) *You can tell a lot about someone by the company they keep.*

get into bad company (=start spending time with bad people)

you're in good company (=used to tell someone that other people also do, think, or experience something)

comparison *n*

a statement or examination of how similar or different two people or things are

VERBS

make/do a comparison (*also* **perform a comparison** *formal*): *Using the internet is an easy way to make comparisons between prices.* | *They did comparisons of three different types of camera.*

draw a comparison (=say in what way people or things are similar) *The writer draws a comparison between the 1950s and the present day.*

a comparison shows/reveals sth *Further comparison revealed that the pictures were by the same artist.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + comparison

a direct comparison *You can't really make a direct comparison between the two schools.*

an interesting comparison *The exhibition provides an interesting comparison of the artists' works.*

a valid/useful/meaningful comparison (=a reasonable one, based on sensible information) *There is not enough data for a valid comparison to be made.*

a fair/unfair comparison *A fair comparison between the two firms is extremely difficult.*

beat off/fight off competition (=be more successful than others) *She beat off competition from dozens of other candidates to get the job.*

go into competition with sb (*also* **enter into competition with sb**) (=start competing with them) *He never forgave his business partner for breaking away and going into competition with him.*

create competition *The proposals were intended to create more competition.*

encourage/stimulate competition *They want to encourage greater competition in the banking sector.*

increase/reduce competition *We need to increase choice and competition.*

competition increases/grows/intensifies *It is likely that competition will grow in the next few months.*

PREPOSITIONS

competition for sth *Competition for the job was intense.*

competition between sb (and sb) *Sometimes there's a lot of competition between brothers and sisters.*

competition among people/organizations *This price reduction is due to competition among suppliers.*

competition from sb *We face strong competition from foreign firms.*

be in competition with sb *Government departments are in direct competition with each other for limited resources.*

PHRASES

in the face of competition (=in a situation where you are competing to be successful) *They won the contract in the face of tough competition.*

competitive *adj* THESAURUS cheap

competitor *n*

a person, team, company etc that is competing with another

ADJECTIVES

sb's main/chief/biggest competitor *They sold many more phones than their main competitor.*

a major competitor *Japan soon became a major competitor in the electronics industry.*

a strong/serious competitor (=one that you have to compete hard with) *The company has become a strong competitor in the market.*

a top competitor (=one of the best, especially in a sport) *The race attracted top competitors from all over the world.*

sb's closest competitor (*also* **sb's nearest competitor** *BrE*) (=the one most likely to beat you) *He had five times as many votes as his nearest competitor.*

a direct competitor (=someone competing in exactly the same activity as you) *He knew she was a successful businesswoman and a direct competitor.*

a potential competitor (=a person, company etc that might compete with you) *He sees me as a potential competitor for the job.*

foreign/international/overseas competitors *Foreign competitors can make the same goods at lower prices.*

VERBS

beat a competitor *To stay in business you have to beat your competitors.*

outperform a competitor (=do better than them) *The company has consistently outperformed its competitors.*

switch to a competitor (=start doing business with a competitor) *If we do not provide good service, customers will switch to a competitor.*

complain *v*

to say that you are annoyed or not satisfied with something

ADVERBS

sb is always complaining *English people are always complaining about the weather – it's always too cold or too hot.*

complain bitterly (=in a very angry way) *My grandfather's always complaining bitterly about how expensive things are.*

complain loudly *The kids were complaining loudly about the heat.*

constantly complain *She is constantly complaining about her job.*

formally/officially complain *The club has officially complained about the referee's decision.*

complain publicly *People were unhappy with the government, but did not dare to complain publicly.*

PREPOSITIONS

complain about sth *There's no point complaining about the weather.*

complain to sb *She complained to her boss about the behaviour of a colleague.*

complain of sth (=say that something is annoying or hurting you) *She went to bed early, complaining of a headache.*

PHRASES

I can't complain *spoken* (=used to say that you are reasonably happy with something) *My job is pretty easy, so I can't complain.*

be the first to complain (=be quick to complain) *He's the first to complain if he thinks something is unfair.*

have (good) reason to complain *We felt we had good reason to complain about the food at the hotel.*

complaint *n*

a statement in which someone complains about something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + complaint

a formal/official complaint *The man has made a formal complaint against the police.*

a common/widespread/frequent complaint *A common complaint of children is that parents do not listen to them.*

a legitimate complaint (=reasonable) *In my view, it is a legitimate complaint.*

a customer/consumer complaint *As a result of the improvements, customer complaints went down by 70%.*

VERBS

make a complaint (to sb) (=complain formally to someone) *The manager of the team made a complaint about the referee.*

file/lodge/register a complaint (with sb) *formal* (=make a complaint) *She filed a complaint with her boss against several of her colleagues.*

bring a complaint against sb *formal* (=complain in a formal, legal way) *Higgins brought a complaint against his former manager.*

have a complaint (=want to complain about something) *Please let us know if you have any complaints about our service.*

get/receive a complaint *Our department has received a number of complaints from the public.*

deal with/handle a complaint *Police officers came to the house to deal with a complaint about noise.*

investigate a complaint *The dog was rescued after officials investigated a complaint of neglect.*

resolve a complaint (=deal with it in a satisfactory way) *The branch manager should be able to investigate and resolve your complaint.*

uphold a complaint (=say it is reasonable) *The complaint was upheld and the advertisement was withdrawn.*

PREPOSITIONS

a complaint about sth/sb *His manager had received a complaint about his behaviour.*

a complaint against sb (=about someone) *Complaints against doctors continue to rise.*

a complaint from/by sb *They were getting complaints from their customers.*

a complaint to sb *The matter was investigated following a complaint to the police.*

PHRASES

cause/grounds for complaint (=a good reason to complain) *I do not think that he has any cause for complaint.*

a letter of complaint *I wrote a letter of complaint to the hospital manager.*

a complaints procedure (=a system for dealing with complaints) *There is no formal complaints procedure for patients.*

complete *v* THESAURUS **finish**[1] **(1)**

complex[1] Ac *adj*

consisting of many different parts and often difficult to understand

ADVERBS

highly/extremely complex *Dreaming is a highly complex brain activity.*

increasingly complex *Modern weapons are becoming increasingly complex and difficult to handle.*

overly/unnecessarily complex (=more complex than it needs to be) *The payment system is unnecessarily complex.*

NOUNS

a complex system *A complex system of pipes is used to carry water to the building.*

a complex process *This guide takes you through the complex process of buying a home.*

a complex problem/issue *International trade is a highly complex issue.*

a complex subject *This is a very brief description of a complex subject.*

a complex situation *It is a complex situation with no easy answer.*

a complex relationship *The book explores the complex relationship between science and religion.*

a complex pattern/structure *The tropical rainforest has a complex structure, with many levels.*

a complex series of events *The French Revolution was a complex series of events.*

the complex nature of sth *This view does not take into account the complex nature of the human mind.*

THESAURUS: complex

complex, elaborate, intricate, involved, convoluted, tortuous → **complicated**

complex[2] Ac *n*

1 a large building or group of buildings used for a particular purpose

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + complex

a large/vast complex *The company headquarters are situated in a vast complex of buildings.*

a leisure/entertainment complex *The new leisure complex includes a cinema and a bowling alley.*

a sports complex *Their local sports complex has good tennis facilities.*

an office complex *They rent some spaces in an office complex in Los Angeles.*

a shopping complex *A huge shopping complex was built on the old football ground.*

a housing complex (*also* **a residential complex** *formal*) *AmE: We lived in a rented unit in a single-story housing complex near the center of Phoenix.*

the highest/the ultimate compliment (=the best thing you can say or do) *The highest compliment you can pay an actor is to say they don't look as if they are acting.*

a backhanded compliment *BrE*, **a left-handed compliment** *AmE* (=something that someone says which is nice and not nice at the same time) *The reviewer said it was better than his last two films, which was rather a backhanded compliment.*

VERBS

pay/give sb a compliment *He was always paying her compliments.*

get/receive a compliment *The exhibition has received a lot of compliments from the public.*

accept a compliment (=show that you are pleased to have been given a compliment) *She accepted his compliment graciously.*

mean sth as a compliment *When I said she'd lost weight, I meant it as a compliment.*

take sth as a compliment (=be pleased about it, even though it may not have been meant as a compliment) *She said he was aggressive, and he took it as a compliment.*

fish for compliments (=try to make someone say something nice about you) *When she asked if I liked her dress, she was obviously fishing for compliments.*

PREPOSITIONS

a compliment on sth *I have had a lot of compliments on my cooking.*

component Ac *n*

one of several parts that together make up a whole machine or system etc

ADJECTIVES

an important/key component *Tourism is becoming an important component of the economy.*

the main/principal component *The course has four main components.*

an essential/vital/necessary component *The drug remains an essential component in many forms of cancer treatment.*

a basic/fundamental component *The first chapter of the book describes the basic components of the system.*

an electronic component *The factory produces electronic components for car engines.*

VERBS

assemble components *The components are made abroad and assembled in this country.*

comprehensive Ac *adj*

including all the necessary details or items

comprehensive + NOUNS

a comprehensive list *We publish a comprehensive list of the good hotels in the area.*

a comprehensive guide *The university's booklet is a comprehensive guide to the courses they offer.*

a comprehensive study/survey/review *She planned to publish a comprehensive survey of English literature.*

a comprehensive account/report *He's written a comprehensive account of animal life on the islands.*

a comprehensive assessment/analysis *We begin with a comprehensive assessment of the client's needs.*

a comprehensive range/set *The college has a comprehensive range of sports facilities.*

a comprehensive picture (=an understanding or explanation of all aspects) *The police still do not have a comprehensive picture of what happened.*

comprehensive information *The information we have is fairly comprehensive.*

ADVERBS

fully comprehensive *The report does not claim to be fully comprehensive.*

extremely/remarkably comprehensive *The instruction manual is extremely comprehensive.*

fairly/reasonably comprehensive *They supplied a reasonably comprehensive description of the job.*

compromise[1] *n*

an agreement in which all people accept less than they really want in order to end a dispute

ADJECTIVES

a good compromise *Eventually we came up with a good compromise.*

an acceptable/reasonable/satisfactory compromise *An acceptable compromise has been reached and the dispute has ended.*

a sensible compromise *Starting half an hour later would be a sensible compromise.*

an uneasy compromise (=one that people are not very happy with) *The deal represented an uneasy compromise.*

VERBS

reach a compromise *After a bitter political fight, a compromise was finally reached.*

come to a compromise (*also* **arrive at a compromise**) (=reach a compromise) *I'm sure we can come to some sort of compromise.*

make a compromise *Marriage involves being patient and making compromises.*

work out/find a compromise *Workers and management eventually worked out a compromise.*

accept a compromise (*also* **agree on a compromise**) *If you would accept a compromise, we could end this disagreement now.*

look for a compromise (*also* **seek a compromise** *formal*): *It's easier to seek a compromise than a perfect solution.*

negotiate/broker a compromise *Advisers have failed to negotiate a compromise, so the strike continues.*

lead to a compromise *Discussions between the residents and the council led to a compromise.*

compromise + NOUNS

a compromise solution *The prime minister may soon reach a compromise solution with his political opponents.*

a compromise deal/agreement *There is hope that a compromise deal can be reached to end the war.*

a compromise position *We need to find a compromise position.*

PREPOSITIONS

a compromise with sb *I made a compromise with my wife that we would each go out on alternate Fridays.*

a compromise between sb/sth (and sb/sth) *The agreement is a compromise between the president and the Senate.*

a compromise on/over sth *There is unlikely to be a compromise on the issue of pay.*

compromise[2] *v*

1 to reach an agreement by accepting less than you really want

PHRASES

be prepared/willing/ready to compromise *I'm willing to compromise if you think it costs too much.*

be unprepared/unwilling to compromise *He criticized the government for being unwilling to compromise.*

refuse to compromise *I offered to come home earlier, but Dad refused to compromise.*

PREPOSITIONS

compromise on sth *Are you prepared to compromise on the issue of pay?*

compromise with sb *You have to be able to compromise with your co-workers.*

2 if you compromise your principles or your beliefs, you do something that is against them

compromise + NOUNS

compromise your principles *The government says the plans will not compromise its environmental principles.*

compromise your integrity *The journalist would not compromise his integrity by revealing the source of the information.*

compromise your beliefs/convictions/ideals *Protesters were put in prison for refusing to compromise their beliefs.*

compromise your standards *Universities should not have to compromise their academic standards.*

PHRASES

compromise on safety/security *The company had compromised on safety in order to save money.*

compromise on quality *We're trying to reduce the prices of our goods without compromising on quality.*

compulsory *adj*

if something is compulsory, you must do it, because of a law or rule, or because someone in authority orders you to do it

VERBS

make sth compulsory *The government is planning to make the test compulsory.*

NOUNS

compulsory attendance *Attendance is compulsory for all students.*

compulsory education *Compulsory education was first introduced in England in 1870.*

compulsory retirement *She works for an organisation that has a compulsory retirement age of 65.*

compulsory military service *All men are obliged to do two years' compulsory military service.*

compulsory testing *Experts argue that compulsory testing of all cattle for the disease is unnecessary.*

PHRASES

it is compulsory for sb to do sth *Since 1983 it has been compulsory for car drivers to wear seat belts.*

THESAURUS: compulsory

obligatory
if something is obligatory, you must do it because of a rule or law. **Obligatory** is more formal than **compulsory**:

It is obligatory for *all drivers to have car insurance.* | ***It is obligatory to*** *pay tax on imported goods.* | *The new regulations* ***made it obligatory for*** *students to do physical exercises before classes.* | *Shaving was obligatory.*

Obligatory is not usually used before a noun.

mandatory
sentence | **penalty** | **limit** | **ban** | **requirement** | **retirement age** | **testing**
if something is mandatory, you must do it because it is the law. **Mandatory** is more formal than **compulsory** or **obligatory** and sounds stronger:

There is a mandatory sentence of life in prison for murder (=a punishment in which someone must stay in prison for a period of time). | *There will be mandatory limits on carbon emissions.* | *Companies have a mandatory requirement to provide a safe working environment.* | *Helmets are* ***mandatory for*** *cyclists in some countries.*

computer Ac *n*

an electronic machine that stores and handles information

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + computer

a powerful/fast computer *He decided he needed a more powerful computer.*

a home/personal computer *Most of the children have a home computer.*

a computer is down (=is not working) *I can't give you that information because the computer is down.*

a computer is slow *Why is the computer so slow today?*

VERBS + computer

switch on/off a computer (*also* **turn on/off a computer**) *Always switch off your computer at the end of the day.*

log onto a computer (=start using it by typing a password) *Next time you log onto your computer, you will have to use a new password.*

start up/boot up a computer (=make it start working) *He sat down at his desk and booted up his computer.*

shut down a computer (=close the programs and make it stop working until you need to use it again) *I saved the file and shut down the computer.*

program a computer (=give it instructions so that it will do a particular job) *You can program a computer to pay your monthly bills.*

download sth onto a computer (=move it from the internet onto your computer) *I downloaded the video onto my computer.*

hold/store sth on a computer *This data is all held on a central computer.*

computer + VERBS

a computer crashes/goes down (=suddenly stops working) *My computer crashed and I lost all the work I'd done.*

computer + NOUNS

a computer screen/monitor *Make sure your computer screen is at the right height.*

a computer game *Kids love playing computer games.*

a computer system/network *Our office is installing a new computer system.*

a computer program *At school, we're learning how to write simple computer programs.*

computer software (=computer programs)

computer technology *Advances in computer technology have changed the way people work.*

a computer programmer (=someone who writes the instructions a computer uses to do a particular job) *He is looking for work as a computer programmer.*

a computer language (=a system of instructions used to program a computer) *You need to be able to use computer languages such as Java.*

a computer error *The mistake was caused by a computer error.*

PREPOSITIONS

on (a) computer *We have all that information on computer now.*

> Instead of saying that you 'work on a computer', you often say that you **work on screen**.

concentrate Ac *v*

1 to think very carefully about something that you are doing

ADVERBS

concentrate hard/intensely *I concentrated hard on what he was telling me.*

concentrate fully/totally *He closed his eyes so he could concentrate fully.*

concentrate only on sth *Try to concentrate only on the music, and not on the words.*

PREPOSITIONS

concentrate on sth *It's difficult to concentrate on one thing for longer than an hour.*

VERBS

try to concentrate *Please can you be quiet – I'm trying to concentrate.*

PHRASES

find it difficult to concentrate *I find it difficult to concentrate if I sit by the window.*

find it impossible to concentrate *She finds it impossible to concentrate when people are talking.*

be unable to concentrate *If the radio is on, I'm completely unable to concentrate.*

2 to give most of your attention or effort to one thing

NOUNS

concentrate your efforts *Tackle one problem at a time, so you can concentrate your efforts.*

concentrate your attention *I tried to concentrate my attention on what the teacher was saying.*

concentrate your energy *She decided to continue to concentrate her energies on what she knew best.*

concentrate resources *We identify the areas of greatest need so we know where to concentrate resources.*

concentrate your mind *It took a lot of effort to concentrate his mind that morning.*

ADVERBS

concentrate solely/exclusively on sth (=only on it) *In future the company will concentrate exclusively on the luxury market.*

concentrate mainly/primarily on sth *To begin with, we concentrated mainly on short-term objectives.*

PREPOSITIONS

concentrate your efforts/attention/energies etc on sth *It would be better to concentrate your thoughts on your immediate problems.*

concentration Ac *n*

the ability to think about something carefully or for a long time

ADJECTIVES

deep/intense concentration *The work of a surgeon demands intense concentration.*

total/absolute/utter concentration *There was a look of total concentration on her face.*

poor concentration *The girl behaved badly in class and suffered from poor concentration.*

VERBS

sth takes/demands/requires concentration (=needs concentration) *Playing a musical instrument takes a lot of concentration.*

lose (your) concentration *Halfway through the game, he seemed to lose concentration.*

break/disturb/affect sb's concentration (=stop someone concentrating) *The telephone rang and broke my concentration.*

increase/improve sb's concentration *Getting enough sleep will improve your concentration.*

concentration + NOUNS

concentration span (=the length of time that you are able to concentrate) *Young children have a short concentration span.*

PHRASES

powers of concentration (=the ability to concentrate) *The best athletes have great powers of concentration.*

a lapse in/of concentration (=a short time when you do not concentrate) *Their brief lapse of concentration allowed the other team to score.*

concept Ac *n*

an idea of what something is, or how something should be done

ADJECTIVES

a basic/fundamental concept *The children learn the basic concepts of mathematics.*

a key/central/important concept *The title tells you something about the central concept of the poem.*

a difficult concept *Difficult concepts can sometimes be explained with diagrams or graphs.*

a simple concept *Cause and effect is a fairly simple concept.*

an abstract concept *He finds it hard to grasp abstract concepts.*

a legal/mathematical/political etc concept *The right to remain silent is a very important legal concept.*

a general/broad concept *The book begins with some general historical concepts.*

a theoretical concept *The theoretical concepts of psychology are also useful in the study of literature.*

a vague/ambiguous concept (=one that is not clear or is hard to define) *Trust is rather a vague concept.*

a clear concept *When I paint, I have a very clear concept of what I am trying to communicate.*

VERBS

understand/grasp a concept *The class will help you grasp the basic concepts of physics.*

have no concept of sth *Young children have no concept of the value of money.*

define a concept *First, we need to define the concept of reasonable force.*

examine/explore a concept *In his book, Sartre explores the concept of individual freedom.*

explain a concept *Please can you explain the concept of 'a just war'?*

develop a concept *The Greeks developed the concept of democracy.*

PREPOSITIONS

the concept of sth *They do not understand the concept of social class.*

concern *n*

1 a feeling of worry about something, or something that makes you worried

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable concern *The spread of the disease is an issue of considerable concern.*

deep/serious/grave concern *There is deep concern about the proposals among local people.*

widespread concern (=among many people) *There is widespread concern about the state of our hospitals.*

public concern *The government is ignoring public concern about the safety of nuclear energy.*

real/genuine concern *His teachers expressed real concern about his behaviour.*

sb's main/major/biggest concern *The aid workers' main concern is the lack of clean drinking water.*

growing/increasing/mounting concern *Growing concern has been expressed over pollution in the North Sea.*

a legitimate concern (=a reasonable thing to be worried about) *Voters have legitimate concerns about the level of taxes.*

VERBS

cause/raise concern *The announcement will cause concern in the Arab World. | The incident has raised concern over safety at the power station.*

feel concern/have concerns about sth *He had some concerns about his health.*

share sb's concern *We share your concern about the lack of training.*

express/voice concern (=say that you are

worried) *He expressed concern that the incident would harm the UK's image abroad.*

raise your concerns (=mention something that is worrying you) *He intends to raise his concerns at the next staff meeting.*

allay sb's concern(s) *formal* (=make someone feel less worried) *The head teacher attempted to allay parents' concerns.*

NOUNS + concern

security/safety/health concerns *The airport was closed because of safety concerns.*

PREPOSITIONS

concern about/over sth (*also* **concern regarding sth**) *The president expressed concern over the situation.*

concern for/to sb *The high cost of living is a concern for many people.*

PHRASES

a cause for concern *Rising global temperatures are a cause for serious concern.*

a matter/issue/area of concern *The long hours worked by hospital doctors have been a matter of concern for many years.*

2 something that is important to you or that involves you

PHRASES

sth is not sb's concern (*also* **sth is none of sb's concern**) *His personal life is not my concern.*

be of concern to sb (=to interest or involve someone) *Politicians should focus on issues that are of concern to the public.*

ADJECTIVES

sb's main/biggest concern *Their main concern is to make money.*

sb's primary/chief/principal concern (=main concern – more formal) *The president said his primary concern was the welfare of the American people.*

sb's only/sole concern *Rick's only concern was having a good time at the weekend.*

sb's present/immediate concern *Her two immediate concerns were to find a home and a job.*

sb's overriding concern (=much more important than anything else) *As an artist, his overriding concern is to communicate.*

3 a feeling of wanting someone to be happy and healthy

ADJECTIVES

genuine concern *He showed a genuine concern for the welfare of his crew.*

tender/loving concern *I want to thank my parents for their loving concern.*

VERBS

show/demonstrate concern *He had not shown the slightest concern for her.*

PREPOSITIONS

concern for sb/sth *She had great concern for the poor.*

out of concern for sb/sth *He had sent his children abroad out of concern for their safety.*

PHRASES

concern for sb's health/welfare/safety *My employers had no concern for my safety.*

concerned *adj*

1 worried about something

ADVERBS

very/deeply/extremely concerned *She is deeply concerned about her son's behaviour.*

increasingly concerned *The girl has been missing for five days, and her family are becoming increasingly concerned.*

particularly concerned *Hotel owners are particularly concerned about the impact on tourism.*

naturally/understandably concerned (=used when you can understand the reasons why someone is concerned) *Local people are naturally concerned about pollution from the factory.*

PREPOSITIONS

concerned about sb/sth *She's concerned about her father.* | *We are very concerned about the current situation.*

concerned at/by sth *The authorities are deeply concerned by the increase in violence.*

concerned for sb/sb's safety *His family are all very concerned for him.*

2 caring about something and thinking that it is important

ADVERBS

mainly/primarily concerned *The organization is mainly concerned with protecting the rights of its members.*

solely/exclusively concerned (=only concerned) *We are solely concerned with finding out the truth.*

genuinely concerned *He seems genuinely concerned about our problems.*

PREPOSITIONS

concerned with/about sth *She is too concerned with her appearance.*

concert *n*

a performance given by musicians or singers

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + concert

a pop/rock/jazz/classical concert *There were 150,000 people at the rock concert in Frankfurt.*

an orchestral concert/a symphony concert (=one in which an orchestra plays) *Tickets for orchestral concerts range from $15 to $35.*

a live concert (=that people are there to watch

and listen to) *Attending a live concert is more exciting than listening to a CD.*

an open-air/outdoor concert *He is playing a big outdoor concert in Hyde Park next week.*

VERBS

go to a concert (*also* **attend a concert** *formal*): *I love music and often go to concerts.*

give/do a concert *The group gave concerts for charity throughout Europe.*

play/perform a concert *The band still plays 100 concerts a year.*

put on a concert (*also* **stage a concert** *formal*) (=arrange one) *The music club puts on regular concerts throughout the year.*

concert + NOUNS

a concert performance *She gave a number of concert performances in Berlin.*

a concert hall *On the last night, the concert hall was packed.*

concession *n*

something that you agree to in order to end a disagreement

ADJECTIVES

a major/important concession *We made some major concessions in order to reach an agreement.*

a further concession *Britain agreed to further concessions.*

a minor/small concession *Washington made a few minor concessions in the climate talks.*

a significant/substantial concession *This offer was viewed as a significant concession.*

a political concession *The mayor was forced to make some political concessions.*

VERBS

make a concession *The government made some concessions in order to get the law passed.*

offer a concession *The king was prepared to offer some concessions to France.*

win/obtain/gain a concession *In the end, the strikers returned to work having won few concessions.*

extract a concession from sb (*also* **wring a concession from sb**) (=make someone give you one) *They failed to extract significant concessions from the government.*

PREPOSITIONS

a concession on sth *The company made some concessions on pay.*

a concession to sb *This reversal of policy represented a significant concession to the opposition.*

a concession by/from sb *We cannot reach a solution without concessions from all sides.*

concise *adj* THESAURUS **short (3)**

conclude *v* THESAURUS **finish[1] (1)**

concluding *determiner* THESAURUS **last[1] (1)**

conclusion Ac *n*

something you decide after considering all the information you have

ADJECTIVES

the same/a similar conclusion *The two teams of scientists reached the same conclusion.*

a different/the opposite conclusion *A lot of scientific evidence supports the opposite conclusion.*

the right/correct conclusion *I am sure that you came to the right conclusion.*

the wrong/an incorrect conclusion *Reporters saw the couple together and leapt to the wrong conclusion.*

an obvious conclusion *The conclusion was obvious: he had stolen the money.*

the inescapable/inevitable conclusion (=one that is very obvious, although you may not like it) *The inescapable conclusion was that the country needed a change of leadership.*

the logical conclusion *The logical conclusion is that short commercials are just as effective as longer ones.*

a firm/definite conclusion *We still haven't reached a firm conclusion about what to do.*

a hasty conclusion (=one that you reach too quickly) *We must not leap to hasty conclusions on the basis of one study.*

a surprising/startling conclusion *After years of research, he reached the startling conclusion that Einstein's theory was wrong.*

VERBS

come to/arrive at/reach a conclusion *I came to the conclusion that I would never be a writer.*

draw a conclusion (=decide something from what you learn or see) *We tried not to draw any conclusions too early in the investigation.*

jump to/leap to a conclusion (=decide without knowing all the facts) *Everyone jumped to the conclusion that we would get married.*

base a conclusion on sth *Your conclusion is based on a rather small sample.*

lead to/point to a conclusion (=make you decide that something is true) *All the facts point to only one conclusion.*

support/reinforce a conclusion *This evidence supports the conclusion that his death was an accident.*

condemn *v*

to say publicly and very strongly that you do not approve of something

ADVERBS

strongly/roundly condemn sth *The president strongly condemned the attack.*

be widely condemned (=by many people or groups) *The laws have been widely condemned by human rights groups.*

vehemently/vigorously/fiercely condemn sth (=in a very strong or angry way) *Teachers have*

vehemently condemned the changes to the education system.

utterly/totally/unequivocally condemn sth (=very definitely and with no doubts) *We utterly condemn any acts of terrorism.*

publicly/openly condemn sth *Army officers openly condemned the war.*

unanimously condemn sth (=all members of a group condemn something) *The committee unanimously condemned his remarks.*

be rightly condemned by sb *The attack has been rightly condemned by world leaders.*

PREPOSITIONS

condemn sth as sth *The move was condemned as a waste of time.*

condemn sb for (doing) sth *Farmers have condemned the government for doing too little too late.*

condition *n*

1 the state that something is in

PHRASES

in bad/poor/terrible condition *Some of these old buildings are in terrible condition.*

in good/excellent condition *She keeps her hair in good condition.*

in reasonable condition (=quite good) *The car is in reasonable condition, considering its age.*

in perfect condition *The goods were in perfect condition when they left the factory.*

in mint/pristine/immaculate condition (=as good as when it was new) *A copy of this book in mint condition is very valuable.*

2 the state that someone is in

ADJECTIVES

sb's physical/mental condition *I am very concerned about his mental condition.*

a serious/critical condition *Doctors described the injured man's condition as serious.*

a satisfactory/comfortable condition *His life was in danger at one point, although his condition is now satisfactory.*

a stable condition (=not getting worse) *He is in a serious but stable condition.*

VERBS

sb's condition improves *Her condition is improving, but she remains seriously ill.*

sb's condition deteriorates/worsens *His condition deteriorated, and he died yesterday.*

sb's condition stabilizes (=stops getting worse) *After his condition stabilized, he was transferred to St Andrew's Hospital.*

3 the situation somewhere, especially when someone is doing something

> **Grammar**
> Always plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

good conditions/the right conditions *In the right conditions, cooking can be very enjoyable.*

ideal/perfect conditions *Conditions were ideal for diving.*

bad/poor conditions *The game was stopped because of the poor conditions.*

difficult conditions *She played well in spite of the difficult conditions.*

appalling/dreadful conditions (=very bad) *The prisoners were being kept in appalling conditions.*

normal conditions *Under normal conditions, there shouldn't be a problem.*

cold/wet/windy etc conditions *It's not easy playing golf in windy conditions.*

overcrowded/crowded conditions *The families are living in dirty overcrowded conditions.*

NOUNS + condition

weather conditions *The rescue was delayed because of the extreme weather conditions.*

working conditions *A factory must provide safe working conditions.*

living/housing conditions *Living conditions in the camp were appalling.*

driving/road conditions *Drivers should take care because road conditions are very bad, with ice and fog.*

VERBS

conditions improve *Economic conditions are improving.*

conditions get worse (*also* **conditions deteriorate** *formal*): *The weather conditions deteriorated until the rescue workers were forced to stop.*

PREPOSITIONS

in ... conditions *They live in very cold conditions.*

under ... conditions *The doctors are having to work under terrible conditions.*

PHRASES

in/under laboratory conditions *The test was carried out under laboratory conditions.*

in/under controlled conditions *All this work must be done under carefully controlled conditions.*

4 something that you must agree to in order for something to happen

ADJECTIVES

a strict condition *The US agreed to give financial aid, with a number of strict conditions.*

VERBS

lay down/set/impose conditions (=say that something must happen before you agree to do something) *They laid down certain conditions before agreeing to the ceasefire.*

agree to/accept conditions *He refused to accept the conditions set by union leaders.*

meet/satisfy/fulfil a condition (=be or do what has been agreed) *In order to get a state pension, you must satisfy certain conditions.*

comply with/observe a condition (=act according to a condition) *You must agree to comply with the bank's conditions before you can get a loan.*

PHRASES

the terms and conditions (=what a contract says must be done) *Before you buy online, make sure you read the terms and conditions.*

on condition that *formal: The police released him on condition that he return the following week.*

on one condition *You can go, but only on one condition – you must be back by eleven.*

on certain conditions *He said we could rent the house from him on certain conditions.*

5 a health problem that someone has for a long time

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + condition

a medical condition *She has an unusual medical condition.*

a heart/lung/skin etc condition *I'm taking some medicine for a heart condition.*

a common condition *Depression is a very common condition.*

a rare condition *He had a rare condition which made all his hair fall out.*

an incurable condition *I'm afraid the condition is incurable.*

a genetic/hereditary condition (=that is passed from parent to child) *The disease is a genetic condition that eventually causes blindness.*

a life-threatening condition (=that may cause death) *The surgery repaired a potentially life-threatening heart condition.*

a chronic condition (=that continues for a long time and cannot be cured) *People with chronic medical conditions need long-term care.*

VERBS

have a condition *The baby has a rare skin condition.*

suffer from a condition *He has suffered from this condition for many years.*

conduct[1] Ac *v formal* to do something

NOUNS

conduct research *He's conducting educational research at the University of Washington.*

conduct a test/experiment *Investigators will be conducting tests to determine how the man died.*

conduct a study/review *Scientists conducted a study of the area affected by the disaster.*

conduct a survey/poll *She is conducting a survey to see what shops people want in the area.*

conduct an investigation/inquiry *Experts conducted an investigation into the causes of the crash.*

conduct a search *The authorities conducted a nationwide search for the girl.*

conduct an interview *Here are a few guidelines on how to conduct an interview.*

conduct a campaign *The party was criticized for the way it had conducted its election campaign.*

conduct your affairs (=organize your activities) *We have no right to tell them how to conduct their affairs.*

conduct business *The company had been conducting a lot of business in Latin America.*

PHRASES

conduct sth in accordance with sth *He said the elections had been conducted in accordance with the rules.*

Conduct is a formal word. In everyday English, people usually say **do** or **carry out**: *I've **done** a lot of research into this. | We need to **carry out** some more tests.*

THESAURUS: conduct

make, give, take, commit, carry out, conduct, perform, undertake, implement → **do**

conduct Ac *n formal*

the way someone behaves, especially in public or in their job

ADJECTIVES

good conduct *One boy was given a book as a reward for good conduct.*

bad/disgraceful conduct *I thought the other team's conduct was disgraceful.*

improper/inappropriate conduct (=not acceptable) *There was no evidence of improper conduct on the part of the police.*

unprofessional conduct (=not acceptable for someone in a particular job) *Members of the Institute can be suspended or expelled for unprofessional conduct.*

moral conduct *Children should be taught about the basic rules of moral conduct.*

ethical conduct (=concerning the way people should be treated) *Standards of ethical conduct have got worse.*

professional conduct (=by someone when they are doing their job) *There are strict rules that regulate lawyers' professional conduct.*

disorderly conduct (=behaving in a noisy or violent way in public) *Her husband was arrested for drunkenness and disorderly conduct.*

PHRASES

a code of conduct (=a set of rules stating how you must behave) *All professions have a code of conduct.*

rules/standards of conduct *In war, there are established rules of conduct.*

confer *v* THESAURUS give (1)

conference Ac *n*

a large formal meeting where a lot of people discuss an important subject

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + conference

a world/international conference *She spoke at an international conference on human rights.*

a national/regional conference *The teachers' national conference will start next week.*

an annual conference *It is the biggest annual conference for people who work in the advertising industry.*

a peace conference *The two sides agreed to hold a peace conference.*

a sales conference *He was looking forward to the company's annual sales conference.*

a party conference (=for a political party) *The prime minister will give a speech at the party conference.*

a summit conference (=for the leaders of governments) *The heads of the Arab states met in Amman for a summit conference.*

VERBS

go to a conference (*also* **attend a conference** *formal*): *Over 500 scientists attended the conference.*

hold a conference *The dentists' annual conference was held in Chicago.*

host a conference (=have it in your country, city, university etc) *In June, Japan hosted a peace conference.*

organize a conference *The administration organized a conference on Africa.*

chair a conference (=be the person who is in charge and introduces the speakers) *The conference was chaired by Professor James Murray.*

address a conference (=give a speech at a conference) *He received a warm welcome when he addressed the conference.*

conference + NOUNS

a conference centre *BrE*, **a conference center** *AmE*: *The conference centre is about a mile from the station.*

a conference hall *Thousands of people demonstrated outside the conference hall.*

a conference delegate *Most of the conference delegates were staying at the same hotel.*

PREPOSITIONS

a conference on sth *She is attending a conference on linguistics.*

at a conference *There were over 10,000 people at the conference.*

confession *n*

a statement in which you admit that you have done something wrong, illegal, or embarrassing

ADJECTIVES

a full confession *The killer had made a full confession to the authorities.*

a written confession *His written confession was produced as evidence.*

a false confession *She made a false confession to protect her son.*

VERBS

make a confession *He made a confession after he was arrested.*

sign a confession *He had signed a confession in front of witnesses.*

retract a confession (=say that a confession you made was not true) *Though he had confessed to the police, Gerrards later retracted his confession.*

get/obtain a confession *Threats must not be used in order to obtain confessions.*

extract a confession (=get one with difficulty, or by using force) *Confessions extracted under torture are unreliable.*

PHRASES

have a confession (to make) (=used humorously when you want to admit to doing something) *I have a confession to make – I've eaten all the chocolates.*

a confession of guilt *If I say I was there when the robbery happened, it could be seen as a confession of guilt.*

a confession of weakness/ignorance *I was touched by his confession of weakness.*

confidence *n*

1 belief in your own ability to do things well

VERBS + confidence

have confidence *As a teenager, she didn't have a lot of confidence.*

give sb confidence *I had really good teachers who gave me confidence in myself.*

boost/increase sb's confidence (=make someone feel more confident) *One of my stories was published, which really boosted my confidence.*

lose (your) confidence *He started to lose his confidence in his abilities as a singer.*

lack confidence (*also* **be lacking in confidence**) *Beth lacked the confidence to talk to people she didn't know.*

gain confidence (*also* **grow/gain in confidence**) (=become more confident) *He's gaining in confidence now that he's enjoying some success.*

exude/radiate confidence *formal* (=show it in a very noticeable way) *As the leader, you have to exude confidence and authority.*

be brimming with confidence (=have a lot of confidence) *His opponent was brimming with confidence.*

destroy/shatter sb's confidence *When she failed her degree, it shattered her confidence.*

build up sb's confidence (=gradually increase it) *When you've had an accident, it takes a while to build up your confidence again.*

undermine/shake/dent sb's confidence (=make it less strong) *A bad experience like that can undermine your confidence.*

ADJECTIVES

quiet/cool/calm confidence (=confidence that is strong but not shown in an obvious way) *She has a quiet confidence that other players admire.*

unshakeable/unwavering confidence *formal* (=so strong that nothing can reduce it) *We were impressed by his unshakeable confidence.*

confidence + VERBS

sb's confidence grows/increases *Since she started her new school, her confidence has grown a lot.*

sb's confidence goes (=they stop being confident) *She made a series of mistakes and her confidence went.*

confidence + NOUNS

a confidence boost/booster *They offered me the job immediately, which was a real confidence boost.*

confidence building (=making it develop) *Training for a big match is all about confidence building.*

PREPOSITIONS

with confidence *She speaks with great confidence and audiences like her.*

PHRASES

be full of confidence (=have a lot of confidence) *The team are full of confidence after winning their last three games.*

a lack of confidence *She suffers from a lack of confidence and she hates giving talks.*

a loss of confidence *The team were suffering from a loss of confidence.*

2 the feeling that you can trust someone or something to do something well

ADJECTIVES

great confidence *She has great confidence in her doctors.*

little/no confidence *He had little confidence in the government.*

public confidence *The changes should improve public confidence in the system.*

NOUNS + confidence

business confidence (=the feeling in business that the economic situation is good) *The region has gained 46,000 jobs and business confidence is high.*

investor/market confidence (=the feeling of investors that the economic situation is good) *A fall in the value of shares damages investor confidence.*

consumer confidence (=the feeling among ordinary people that the economic situation is good) *Consumer confidence has fallen to its lowest for two years.*

customer confidence (=people's feeling that they can trust a company or a type of goods or service) *It is hoped that the new regulations will increase customer confidence in internet shopping.*

VERBS + confidence

have confidence *I had no confidence at all that they would do anything about my problem.*

lose confidence *Employees are losing confidence in the company.*

gain/win sb's confidence *As team captain, he soon won the confidence of the players.*

inspire/breed confidence (=make people have confidence) *We need an education system that inspires public confidence.*

restore/rebuild confidence (=make people have confidence again) *A few victories would restore the fans' confidence.*

boost confidence (=make people have more confidence) *The government's decision was intended to boost consumer confidence.*

shake/undermine sb's confidence (=make them have less confidence) *The low value of the stock market has shaken the confidence of investors.*

destroy/shatter confidence in sb/sth *The scandal destroyed public confidence in the bank.*

express confidence in sb/sth (=say or show that you have confidence) *The teacher expressed confidence in her ability to pass the exam.*

confidence + VERBS

confidence falls (*also* **confidence wanes/declines** *formal*) (=people become less confident) *Since the election, confidence in the party has waned.*

confidence increases/rises (*also* **confidence soars** *formal*): *A positive financial report made confidence in the company soar.*

PREPOSITIONS

confidence in sb/sth *Public confidence in politicians has never been lower.*

confidence among people *These results reveal a lack of confidence among voters.*

confidence about sth *They are full of confidence about the future.*

say/predict/state etc with confidence *We can now say with confidence that this is going to be the company's best ever year.*

PHRASES

have every/complete/absolute confidence (=be very confident) *The head teacher has complete confidence in his staff.*

a lack of confidence *Among the team, there is clearly a lack of confidence in the manager.*

a crisis of confidence (=a situation in which people no longer have confidence) *We are seeing a crisis of confidence over food safety.*

a vote of confidence (=a sign that people are confident) *The decision to build the factory in Britain is a vote of confidence for the UK economy.*

C

confident *adj*

1 sure that you have the ability to do things well or deal with situations successfully

ADVERBS

extremely/supremely confident *When she climbed up on to the stage, she looked supremely confident.*

VERBS

look confident *It is important to try to look confident at a job interview.*

feel confident *I've always been shy, and I wish I felt more confident.*

NOUNS

a confident smile *She gave Jack a confident smile.*

a confident voice *He read his speech in a strong confident voice.*

PHRASES

confident in your ability *He was very confident in his own abilities.*

confident in yourself *They try to make young people feel more confident in themselves.*

2 sure that something will happen in the way that you want or expect

VERBS

feel confident *We feel confident that the project will be a success.*

remain confident *He remains confident about the company's long-term future.*

sound/seem confident *His agent sounded confident that a deal would be worked out.*

NOUNS

a confident mood *The team are in a very confident mood after their win last night.*

a confident prediction *It is hard to make a confident prediction about the economy.*

ADVERBS

reasonably/fairly/pretty confident *I'm fairly confident that they'll get married eventually.*

completely confident *Police were completely confident that they had found the right man.*

quietly confident (=sure in your mind that you can succeed, even though you do not tell everyone about it) *They were quietly confident of winning the game.*

PREPOSITIONS

confident of (doing) sth *The president was confident of winning the election.*

confident about sth *I feel quite confident about the future.*

PHRASES

confident in the knowledge that *You can buy this car, confident in the knowledge that it has everything you will need.*

confidential *adj* THESAURUS secret[1]

conflict Ac *n* arguments or fights

VERBS

cause/create/provoke/lead to conflict *Worries about their child caused conflict within their marriage.*

resolve/end/settle a conflict *Legal advice may be needed to resolve a conflict between neighbours.*

avoid/avert/prevent a conflict *The prime minister wants to avoid a conflict over the issue.*

a conflict begins (*also* **a conflict arises/erupts** *formal*): *When conflict arises, try to remain calm.*

a conflict escalates/intensifies *formal* (=gets worse) *If the conflict intensifies, war could break out.*

ADJECTIVES

bloody/violent conflict (=involving violence) *The attack was followed by a bloody conflict that lasted for months.*

bitter conflict (=very angry) *The new tax provoked bitter conflict.*

political/social conflict *Widespread unemployment often leads to social conflict.*

armed/military conflict *We are concerned about the use of children in armed conflicts.*

conflict + NOUNS

conflict resolution (=finding a way to end a conflict) *It's important to teach children methods of conflict resolution.*

PREPOSITIONS

conflict with sb *They were engaged in a conflict with a neighbouring region.*

conflict between people *There was angry conflict between members of the party.*

conflict over/about sth *A conflict over pay is likely.*

PHRASES

come into conflict with sb *Local people have come into conflict with planning officials over plans for a new road.*

bring sb into conflict with sb *Her aggressive manner has brought her into conflict with managers.*

a source of conflict *Lack of money is often a source of conflict between husband and wife.*

an area of conflict (=a subject that causes conflict) *One potential area of conflict is where exactly to build the new store.*

confrontation *n*

an angry argument or a fight

ADJECTIVES

direct/open confrontation (=very angry disagreements) *The decision to strike brought workers into open confrontation with management.*

major confrontation *Political differences are a source of major confrontation.*

a violent/physical confrontation *Several people died in violent confrontations between rival gangs.*

armed/military confrontation *Politicians are working hard to avoid military confrontation in the region.*

VERBS

avoid (a) confrontation *I knew she was upset, and I wanted to avoid confrontation with her if at all possible.*

lead to (a) confrontation (*also* **provoke a confrontation** *more formal*): *His unpleasant behaviour seemed deliberately intended to provoke a confrontation.*

get into a confrontation *He didn't want to get into a confrontation with the soldiers.*

bring/lead sb into confrontation *His strong opinions on religion would often lead him into confrontation.*

PREPOSITIONS

confrontation with sb *The event brought protesters into direct confrontation with police.*

confrontation between sb and sb *There was an armed confrontation between the rebels and government forces.*

confrontation about/over sth *There were sometimes confrontations about money.*

confused *adj*

unable to understand or think clearly about what someone is saying or what is happening

VERBS

get/become confused *Because she is old, she gets confused from time to time.*

feel confused *When he read the instructions again, he felt more confused than ever.*

look/seem/appear confused *The waitress spoke to him in Italian, and he replied in English. She looked completely confused.*

remain confused *Many voters remain confused about the party's policies.*

leave sb confused *The book contains so much information that it can leave you feeling rather confused.*

ADVERBS

totally/completely/utterly confused *Polly stared at him, totally confused.*

hopelessly confused (=used when emphasizing that someone is completely confused and does not know what to do) *Now he was hopelessly confused and lost.*

somewhat confused/a little confused *I was somewhat confused by this statement.*

NOUNS

a confused state *Dirk was wandering around in a confused state.*

a confused expression/look *"What do I do now?" she asked with a confused expression.*

confused thoughts *His mind was full of confused thoughts.*

PREPOSITIONS

confused about sth *Customers are often confused about which product to choose.*

confused by sth *I was rather confused by his question.*

PHRASES

dazed and confused (=confused and unable to think clearly, especially because you have just had a big shock) *She got out of the car looking dazed and confused.*

confusing *adj*

unclear and difficult to understand

VERBS

find sth confusing *Many people find the new tax forms confusing.*

make sth confusing *To make matters more confusing, the two girls both have the same name.*

sth gets/becomes confusing *The film gets confusing towards the end.*

NOUNS

a confusing situation *The change in rules has created a very confusing situation.*

confusing messages/signals *We get confusing messages about what kinds of foods are healthy or unhealthy.*

a confusing mixture *She had a confusing mixture of feelings.*

a confusing mess/jumble *The website was a confusing mess.*

a confusing array of sth (=a confusing range of different things) *There is a confusing array of products to choose from.*

ADVERBS

extremely/highly confusing *The way the report is written is highly confusing.*

rather/somewhat/slightly confusing *The layout of the store is rather confusing if you've never been there before.*

PREPOSITIONS

confusing to/for sb *Product labels are often confusing for shoppers.*

THESAURUS: confusing

puzzling (*also* **perplexing** *formal*)
if something is puzzling, it seems confusing or difficult to understand, especially because it is different from what you expect:
*I **found** the ending of the book rather **puzzling**. | The results of these experiments were, to say the least, **puzzling to** the researchers. | Gandhi presented a **deeply perplexing problem** to the British authorities in India.*

baffling
case | mystery
extremely difficult to understand, even though you try for a long time:

C

ADVERBS

acutely/deeply conscious of sth *formal* (=very conscious) *She was acutely conscious of the dangers of working with wild animals.*

fully conscious of sth *He did not seem to be fully conscious of the consequences of his decision.*

painfully conscious of sth (=very conscious of something unpleasant) *I was painfully conscious of the fact that I had failed.*

barely/hardly conscious of sth *She felt so ill that she was barely conscious of where she was.*

socially/politically/environmentally etc conscious *Environmentally conscious companies are reducing the amount of energy they use.*

NOUNS + conscious

health conscious *People who are health conscious are careful about what they eat.*

fashion conscious *Like many young girls, she is very fashion conscious.*

security/safety conscious *After the attacks, most airports became extremely security conscious.*

consciousness *n*

the normal condition of being awake and aware of things that are happening

VERBS

lose consciousness (=stop being awake and aware) *She hit her head and lost consciousness for several minutes.*

regain/recover consciousness (=start to be awake and aware again) *I wanted to stay by his bedside until he regained consciousness.*

bring sb back to consciousness *The doctors have been unable to bring her back to consciousness.*

PHRASES

drift in and out of consciousness (=change between being and not being awake and aware) *He had a high temperature and was drifting in and out of consciousness.*

consensus Ac *n*

an opinion that everyone in a group agrees with or accepts

ADJECTIVES

general/broad consensus *There was a general consensus that he should be replaced.*

clear consensus (=that everyone agrees on) *There was no clear consensus about the future direction of the company.*

growing/emerging consensus (=that more people are agreeing on) *The growing consensus is that the UK economy is getting stronger.*

strong consensus *There is a strong consensus that the party needs a new leader.*

political/scientific etc consensus *The scientific consensus is that global warming is already occurring.*

national/international consensus *There was no international consensus on how to deal with the situation.*

VERBS + consensus

there is a consensus *There is a consensus among scientists that something needs to be done.*

reach/achieve a consensus (*also* **arrive at a consensus**) *The committee found that it was unable to reach a consensus.*

build/forge/develop a consensus (=gradually achieve one) *Leaders are trying to build a consensus among governments in the region.*

consensus + VERBS

a consensus exists *A clear consensus exists that women should have equal opportunities at work.*

a consensus emerges (=it is reached after people talk about something) *No consensus emerged from these discussions.*

a consensus breaks down (=people stop agreeing) *One angry comment could cause the consensus to break down.*

PREPOSITIONS

consensus on/about sth *There is little consensus on the best method of teaching languages.*

consensus among/between people *There is general consensus among drivers that petrol is too expensive.*

PHRASES

a consensus of opinion *After days of talks, no consensus of opinion has been reached.*

a lack of consensus *Nothing was decided because of a lack of consensus among scientists.*

a degree of consensus (=some consensus) *There is now a degree of consensus about this issue.*

consent Ac *n* permission to do something

VERBS

give your consent *The child's parents have to give their consent for the operation.*

have sb's consent *You need to have the consent of the car's owner before you carry out the repair.*

get/obtain sb's consent *Police officers got her consent to search her house.*

sth requires sb's consent *The lawyer requires your consent to make any changes to your will.*

grant consent *formal* (=give it formally) *The local council has granted consent to the project.*

refuse (your) consent (*also* **withhold (your) consent** *formal*): *A patient can refuse consent for treatment if they don't want it.*

ADJECTIVES

written consent *If you are under 18, you need your parents' written consent to get married.*

sb's prior consent (=consent before you do something) *Do not photograph people without their prior consent.*

parental consent (=from someone's parents) *Students may not be absent from school without parental consent.*

informed consent (=based on full information about what will happen) *We took part in this study after giving our informed consent.*

PREPOSITIONS

consent to/for sth *I did not give my consent for the work to be done.*

consent to sb *The patient gave his consent to the doctors for the operation to be carried out.*

PHRASES

by mutual consent (=because both people agree) *He and his wife have separated by mutual consent.*

by common/general consent (=because everyone agrees) *By common consent, the committee decided to meet only once a month.*

the age of consent (=the age at which someone can legally marry or have sex) *She was under the age of consent when she became pregnant.*

consequence Ac *n*

something that happens as a result of something else

Grammar
Usually plural

ADJECTIVES

serious consequences *A nuclear accident would have serious consequences for the environment.*

important/major consequences *Their decision had some important consequences.*

disastrous/dire consequences *Rising temperatures could have disastrous consequences for agriculture.*

a negative/adverse consequence *formal* (=a bad effect on something) *Heavy drinking has negative consequences for people's health.*

unintended consequences *Changing the voting system has had unintended consequences.*

the possible/likely consequences *We need to think about the possible consequences of such an approach.*

an inevitable consequence (=that you cannot avoid) *Ill health is not an inevitable consequence of old age.*

a direct consequence of sth *The accident was a direct consequence of his actions.*

long-term consequences (=that last a long time, or appear after a long time) *If you smoke, it may have long-term consequences for your health.*

far-reaching consequences (=important and affecting many things) *New laws on tax will have far-reaching consequences.*

social/political/economic consequences *A rise in food prices has political consequences.*

a natural/logical consequence *Disappointment is a natural consequence of defeat.*

VERBS

have consequences (=cause problems) *Taking financial risks can have serious consequences.*

face/suffer the consequences (=experience something bad as a result of what you have done) *If you break the law, you have to face the consequences.*

accept/take the consequences *I'm prepared to accept the consequences of my decision.*

think about/consider the consequences *She jumped into the river without considering the consequences.*

escape the consequences (=avoid them) *I knew I'd made a mistake and that I couldn't escape the consequences.*

consequences follow/arise (=happen as a result of something) *If we fail to tackle the problem, serious consequences will arise.*

PREPOSITIONS

a consequence of sth *You need to think about the consequences of your actions.*

a consequence for sth *There could be serious consequences for his future career.*

PHRASES

as a consequence (=used for saying what happens as a result of something) *He ate nothing on the journey and, as a consequence, was starving when he arrived.*

conservation *n*

the protection of countryside, wild animals, and other natural things

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + conservation

nature conservation *She is a government adviser on nature conservation.*

wildlife conservation *Woodland is important for wildlife conservation.*

environmental conservation *Schools are educating children in environmental conservation and awareness.*

marine conservation (=relating to the sea and to plants and animals in it) *She works as a diver in the area of marine conservation.*

conservation + NOUNS

a conservation area (=an area where animals and plants are protected) *The mountains are a wildlife conservation area.*

conservation measures/policies/efforts/work *We welcome the government's new conservation policies.*

a conservation programme/project *Our conservation programme has already protected dozens of beaches.*

PREPOSITIONS

the conservation of sth *The conservation of these wetland areas is our main aim.*

C

consider *v*

to think about something carefully, especially before making a choice or decision

ADVERBS

consider sth carefully *You should carefully consider the impact on your family before taking the job.*

consider sth fully/in detail *After fully considering all the options, we have reached a decision.*

consider sth separately/individually *The results should be considered separately because they are based on different types of data.*

seriously consider doing sth (=think about it as a very strong possibility) *At one point, she seriously considered emigrating to Australia.*

briefly consider doing sth (=think about doing it for a short time, then decide not to) *I briefly considered phoning Matty, but it was very late.*

PREPOSITIONS

consider sb for a job *You need to be fluent in Spanish to be considered for the job.*

PHRASES

be worth considering (=used to say that something might be the right choice or decision) *If your children have left home, renting out one of your rooms is worth considering.*

considerable *adj* THESAURUS big (3)

considerate *adj* THESAURUS kind²

consist of Ac *v*

if something consists of people or things, it has them in it

ADVERBS

consist mainly/mostly of sb/sth *Their diet consists mainly of fish.*

consist largely/predominantly/chiefly/principally/primarily of sb/sth (=mainly – more formal) *The audience consisted largely of women.*

consist entirely/wholly of sb/sth *These organizations usually consist entirely of older people.*

consist only/solely/exclusively of sb/sth *Your password should not consist solely of letters.*

usually/typically consist of sb/sth *A brigade typically consists of 3,000 to 5,000 soldiers.*

conspiracy *n*

a secret plan made with other people to do something harmful or illegal

ADJECTIVES

a political conspiracy *Were the killings part of a political conspiracy?*

a criminal conspiracy *There was no evidence of a criminal conspiracy between them.*

an international/worldwide/global conspiracy *Some people believe there is a worldwide conspiracy to keep fuel prices high.*

an alleged conspiracy *The police want to speak to him about an alleged conspiracy to commit fraud.*

VERBS

be part of a conspiracy (*also* **be involved in a conspiracy**) *The minister was part of a conspiracy to cover up the truth.*

be charged with conspiracy *The women were charged with conspiracy to supply drugs.*

be convicted of conspiracy *He was convicted of conspiracy to carry out terrorist attacks.*

uncover/discover/expose a conspiracy (=find out about it) *Journalists realized that they had uncovered a conspiracy and published their story.*

conspiracy + NOUNS

a conspiracy charge (*also* **a charge of conspiracy**) *Three men have been convicted on fraud and conspiracy charges.*

a conspiracy theory *President Kennedy's assassination inspired a lot of conspiracy theories.*

PREPOSITIONS

a conspiracy against sb *He believed his opponents were involved in a conspiracy against him.*

a conspiracy between people/groups *She alleged that there was a conspiracy between the police and the politicians.*

constant *adj* THESAURUS continuous

constitution Ac *n*

a set of laws and principles governing a country or organization

VERBS + constitution

draw up/draft a constitution (=write one) *The American constitution was drafted in 1787.*

amend/change the constitution *Congress amended the constitution more than 300 times during 1992.*

adopt/approve a constitution (*also* **ratify a constitution** *formal*) (=agree one and start to use it) *In 1994, the South African government adopted a new constitution.*

violate the constitution *formal* (=do something that is against it) *Such unfair treatment of workers violates the constitution.*

be enshrined in a constitution *formal* (=used about rights and principles protected by a constitution) *The right to practise your religion is enshrined in the country's constitution.*

constitution + VERBS

a constitution says/states sth *Peru's constitution says that only a Peruvian can hold the highest elected office.*

a constitution guarantees sth (=says that it must happen or exist) *The country's constitution guarantees freedom of speech.*

ADJECTIVES

the US/Russian etc constitution *The US constitution states that all men are created equal.*

a written constitution *The UK has no written constitution.*

a democratic constitution *After the king died, the people voted for a new democratic constitution.*

a draft constitution (=not yet in its final form) *The new committee has produced a draft constitution to be considered by members.*

PREPOSITIONS

under/according to the constitution *Under our constitution, the president has the power to get rid of any officer.*

PHRASES

an amendment to the constitution (=a change) *Any amendment to the constitution must be agreed by at least 70% of the members.*

a clause in the constitution (=a rule or section in it) *There was a clause in the constitution that prevented women from joining the armed forces.*

constraint Ac *n*

something that limits what you are able to do

Grammar
Usually plural.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + constraint

a major/important constraint *Shortage of water is a major constraint on farming here.*

a serious/severe constraint *Lack of land puts a serious constraint on development.*

tight constraints *There are tight financial constraints on what we are able to do.*

financial/economic constraints *Financial constraints prevented us from carrying out some of our plans.*

political constraints *The government faces certain political constraints when making decisions.*

legal constraints *There are many legal constraints on trade union activities.*

time constraints *Exams are always done under time constraints.*

VERBS

impose/place/put constraints on sb/sth *Lack of funding is putting severe constraints on research.*

free sb/sth from constraints *The summer holidays free children from the constraints of the school timetable.*

overcome constraints (=achieve something in spite of constraints) *We overcame many constraints to complete the work on time.*

relax/remove constraints (=get rid of them) *The government is relaxing constraints on international trade.*

PREPOSITIONS

constraints on sth/sb *He is very busy and there are severe constraints on the amount of time he has available.*

within constraints *Alcohol advertising operates within tight legal constraints.*

PHRASES

be subject to constraints (=be limited by them) *Teachers are subject to the constraints of the examination system.*

be free from constraints *No government is free from the constraints of its budget.*

given the constraints on sth (=because there are particular constraints on something) *Given the constraints on space in the city, most people live in tiny apartments.*

construct *v* THESAURUS build[1]

construction Ac *n*

the process of building things such as houses and roads

VERBS

begin/start construction *They will soon begin construction on a major new housing development.*

finish/complete construction *We expect to complete construction of the shopping mall in May.*

construction + NOUNS

the construction industry/sector *The construction industry always suffers during difficult economic times.*

a construction project/programme *The new hotel is one of the biggest construction projects in the city.*

a construction company/firm *He runs a large construction company in Mexico.*

a construction worker *Thousands of construction workers are out of work.*

construction work *Construction work on the new road is expected to take two years.*

a construction site (=an area where something is being built) *Safety is very important on construction sites.*

construction materials *Steel and concrete are expensive construction materials.*

PREPOSITIONS

the construction of sth *The government is funding the construction of a new national sports stadium.*

sth is under construction (=it is being built) *A new road is currently under construction.*

consultant Ac *n*

someone whose job is to give advice

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + consultant

a business consultant *She's worked for several top London companies as a business consultant.*

day-to-day/daily contact *I like my job because it involves day-to-day contact with clients.*

contact + NOUNS

sb's contact details (=an address, telephone number etc on which someone can contact you) *Please leave your contact details and we will write to you.*

PREPOSITIONS

contact between sb and sb *There is very little contact between the two tribes.*

contact with sb *Many of us have no direct contact with elderly people.*

in contact (with sb) *We stay in contact by email.*

2 the fact that people or things touch one other

PHRASES

be in contact (with sth) (=be touching) *For a second, our hands were in contact with each other.*

VERBS

make contact (=touch something at a particular moment) *He reached out and his fingers made contact with a wall.*

come into contact (=touch, especially when this produces a particular result) *When water comes into contact with air, carbon dioxide is released.*

keep contact (*also* **maintain contact** *formal*): *Make sure you keep eye contact all the time.*

avoid contact *It is sensible to avoid contact with other people's blood.*

prevent contact *How can we prevent contact with harmful germs?*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + contact

direct contact *Some skin diseases are spread by direct contact.*

prolonged contact (=for a long time) *Prolonged contact with a wet nappy makes a baby's bottom sore.*

eye contact (=looking directly at someone who is looking at you) *He was shy and always avoided eye contact with people.*

physical contact *Children need physical contact with a caring adult.*

contact + NOUNS

contact sports (=sports in which players have physical contact) *Rugby and American football are contact sports.*

PREPOSITIONS

contact with sth *You can catch the disease through contact with contaminated material.*

on contact (=when something touches something) *The chemical explodes on contact with water.*

container *n*

something such as a box or bowl that you use to keep things in

ADJECTIVES

a plastic/glass/metal etc container *A lot of food is sold in plastic containers.*

a large/small container *He brought out a large container of ice.*

a shallow container (=not deep) *Fill a shallow container with soil.*

an empty/full container *I need an empty container to put blackberries in.*

an airtight/watertight/sealed container (=not allowing air or water in) *Seeds are best stored in airtight containers.*

a childproof container (=that children cannot open) *Always store medicines in a childproof container.*

VERBS

keep/store sth in a container *Carrots from the garden were stored in containers of sand.*

put sth in a container *The food is then put in special containers.*

fill a container *First, fill a container with water.*

seal a container (=close it so that no air or water can get in) *Seal the container by closing the lid firmly.*

a container holds/contains sth *How much liquid will this container hold? | Each container contains 100 ml of paint.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a container *I keep my keys in a container on the top shelf.*

contaminated *adj* THESAURUS dirty

contemporary Ac *adj*

belonging to the present time

contemporary + NOUNS

contemporary society *What is the role of religion in contemporary society?*

contemporary life/culture *Technology is a vital part of contemporary culture.*

the contemporary world *The environment is a major issue in the contemporary world.*

contemporary Britain/America etc *The book moves from the late 19th century to contemporary America.*

contemporary issues (=subjects or problems that a lot of people are talking about) *Some film-makers tackle contemporary issues such as terrorism and climate change.*

contemporary debate (=discussion about things people are interested in now) *The electoral system is a subject of contemporary debate.*

contemporary art *He collects contemporary art.*

contemporary writing/literature/poetry *Students study contemporary writing as well as pre-20th-century literature.*

contemporary music/dance *There is a contemporary music festival in town every spring.*

a contemporary artist/writer/composer *Paintings by contemporary artists covered the walls.*

THESAURUS: contemporary

contemporary, modern-day → **modern (1)**

contempt *n*

a feeling that someone or something is not important and deserves no respect

ADJECTIVES

utter/total/complete contempt *Sally looked at him with utter contempt.*

great/deep contempt (*also* **profound contempt** *formal*): *He seemed to have a deep contempt for women.*

the utmost contempt (=great contempt) *Many people regarded the government with the utmost contempt.*

open/undisguised contempt (=that you do not try to hide) *Her expression was one of open contempt.*

barely/thinly disguised contempt (=obvious because someone is not hiding it very well) *He corrected my mistake with barely disguised contempt.*

cold/icy contempt (=that shows in a very unfriendly way) *I noticed the icy contempt in his voice.*

VERBS

treat sth with contempt *The opinions of the public should not be ignored or treated with contempt.*

have/feel contempt for sth *He had a deep contempt for authority.*

view/regard sb with contempt (=feel contempt for them) *Anyone who did not have a job was regarded with contempt.*

hold sb in contempt (=feel contempt for them) *He holds us in contempt because we do not agree with him.*

show contempt for sb *Throwing litter on the floor shows total contempt for other people.*

express contempt for sth *In public he expressed great contempt for the government.*

PREPOSITIONS

contempt for sb/sth *He could not hide his contempt for his boss.*

with contempt *She looked at me with contempt.*

beneath contempt (=very bad and not deserving any respect at all) *That sort of behaviour is simply beneath contempt.*

PHRASES

a look of contempt *He gave her a look of contempt.*

have/feel nothing but contempt for sb *I have nothing but contempt for people who treat animals badly.*

treat sth with the contempt it deserves *She treated these accusations with the contempt they deserved.*

familiarity breeds contempt (=if you know someone very well, you may respect them less)

Contempt (of court)
This phrase is used about the crime of not doing what a court of law has ordered you to do: *He was fined for* ***contempt of court****, after he failed to attend the trial.*

content *n*

the things that something contains

PHRASES

the contents of a bag/suitcase/desk/room etc *He tipped the contents of her bag all over the floor.*

the content of a course/film/programme *The website provides details about the content of each course.*

the contents of a letter/book/article *He read the contents of the letter out loud to her.*

NOUNS + content

salt/sugar/alcohol content *Fast food such as burgers and sausages generally have a high salt content.*

fat/protein/vitamin content *If you boil vegetables, they may lose some of their vitamin content.*

moisture/water content *The maximum moisture content in air varies with temperature.*

VERBS

examine the contents *She opened the suitcase and carefully examined its contents.*

empty the contents *She emptied the contents of her handbag onto the table.*

pour the contents *He poured the contents of the bottle into his glass.*

reveal/disclose the contents (=tell people about them) *The report is confidential, and we cannot disclose its contents.*

The list of the chapters or sections that a book contains is called **the contents, the contents page**, or in more formal English **the table of contents**.

contented *adj* THESAURUS → happy

contentious *adj* THESAURUS → controversial

contentment *n* THESAURUS → satisfaction

contest *n*

a competition or a situation in which two or more people are competing with each other

ADJECTIVES

a close/tight contest (=one which someone wins by a very small amount) *The race was a close contest between two very good teams.*

continuous use *The battery allows 2.5 hours of continuous use.*

continuous employment/service *She has been in continuous employment since she left school.*

continuous assessment *Teachers carry out continuous assessment of students' work.*

ADVERBS

almost/virtually continuous *We had a week of almost continuous sunshine.*

PHRASES

the longest/oldest continuous *This summer was the longest continuous period of hot weather since records began.*

THESAURUS: continuous

continual
process | improvement | use | state | reminder | threat | fear | struggle | conflict | problem
continuing for a long time without stopping:
There has been a continual improvement in standards. | The country lives with the continual threat of terrorism. | There were continual problems with mud and rain.

Continuous or continual?
In many situations, you can use either **continuous** or **continual** with the same meaning: *There has been a **continual/continuous** improvement in standards.*
Continual is used more often when something keeps happening in a way that is annoying or causes problems: *There were **continual problems** with leaking windows. | He lived in **continual fear** of being attacked.*

constant
pressure | attention | worry | fear | threat | reminder | source | struggle | battle | speed | temperature | rate | flow | stream
continuing for a long time without stopping – used especially about things that are worrying, or when something continues to be at the same temperature, speed, rate etc:
I'm under constant pressure from my family to get married. | Young children always want constant attention. | Her sister was a constant source of irritation. | His illness makes life a constant struggle for him and his parents. | The car was traveling at a constant speed of 80 kilometres an hour.

incessant *formal*
rain | noise | roar | traffic | questions | demands | chatter | whining
continuing for a long time without stopping – used about something that makes you feel annoyed:
I was tired of the incessant rain. | She was kept awake by the incessant roar of the ship's engines. | The incessant demands of a small child can test anyone's patience.

persistent
problem | reports | allegations | rumours | refusal | failure | doubt | cough | infection
continuing to exist for a long time and difficult to get rid of or ignore:
Violence in the city has been a persistent problem. | There were persistent rumours about the president's private life. | You should consult your doctor if you have a persistent cough.

unbroken
run | series | string | record | rule | sleep
continuing for a long time – used especially when someone keeps being successful:
The team's unbroken run of wins came to an end on Saturday. | Brazil maintained their unbroken record of success against Italy. | It was the first night of unbroken sleep he had had in months.

non-stop *informal*
flight | service | entertainment | fun | action | work | rain
continuing for a long time or a long way without stopping:
*The airline has launched a new non-stop service between London and Hong Kong. | The concert will be seven hours of non-stop entertainment. | We have had two days of non-stop rain. | They **worked non-stop**.*

contract Ac *n*

an official agreement between two or more people, stating what each will do

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + contract

a one-year/two-year etc contract *He signed a five-year contract worth $2 million.*

a short-term/long-term contract *A lot of the workers are on short-term contracts.*

a written contract *All employees should have a written contract.*

a binding contract (=one that must be obeyed) *Our lawyer believes it is a binding contract.*

a recording/building etc contract *The band was soon offered a recording contract with Columbia Records.*

VERBS

sign a contract *He signed a contract to become vice-president of the football club.*

make a contract (*also* **enter into a contract** *formal*): *Did he know this when he made the contract?*

negotiate a contract (=agree the conditions of a contract with someone) *Your lawyer will assist you in negotiating a contract.*

draw up a contract (=write one) *The two sides drew up a contract.*

have a contract *The company had a contract to build a new hotel there.*

break a contract (=do something that your contract does not allow) *She broke her contract and left the job after only six months.*

fulfil/honour a contract (=do what you have agreed to do) *If you have signed a contract, you have to fulfil it.*

win/get a contract *They won a contract to supply 37 passenger trains to Regional Railways.*

give/award sb a contract *He was given a new two-year contract in March.*

cancel/end/terminate a contract *The buyer has three days in which to cancel the contract.*

renew sb's contract (=give someone another contract when their old one ends) *I hope they will renew my contract at the end of the year.*

extend a contract *His original two-year contract was extended.*

a contract expires (=ends at an agreed time) *Her five-year contract expires at the end of June.*

PREPOSITIONS

a contract with sb *He is expected to sign a contract with a new club soon.*

a contract between sb and sb *There is a contract between buyer and seller.*

PHRASES

a contract of employment (*also* **an employment contract**) *Make sure you fully understand your contract of employment.*

the terms of a contract (=the conditions that are part of the contract) *He explained the terms of the contract.*

breach of contract *formal* (=an action that your contract does not allow) *They are suing the building company for breach of contract.*

contradict Ac *v*

to show that the opposite is true, or say the opposite of what someone says

NOUNS

contradict yourself/each other *She contradicted herself several times when she was interviewed by the police.*

contradict a view/idea/notion *Some scientists say that the Earth's temperature is not changing, but recent research contradicts this view.*

contradict a claim *The new evidence contradicts his claim that he did not know about the plan.*

contradict a statement/assertion *A spokesman for the company was quick to contradict this statement.*

contradict reports *His latest remarks contradict reports that he was planning to resign.*

contradict a theory *The research appears to contradict previous theories about the origins of the universe.*

ADVERBS

completely contradict *His evidence completely contradicts what the other witness was saying.*

directly contradict *A report into the incident directly contradicted the government's account of it.*

flatly contradict sb (=completely – used for emphasis) *This study flatly contradicts the old idea that thin people live longer.*

VERBS

seem/appear to contradict sth *The survey appears to contradict claims that speed is the most important thing when you are choosing a car.*

contradiction Ac *n*

a very great difference between two statements, ideas, facts etc, so it seems they cannot both be true or possible

ADJECTIVES

a major contradiction *If we look more closely, we can see major contradictions in the evidence from the two witnesses.*

a basic/fundamental contradiction *There is a fundamental contradiction between the official figures and the experiences of people looking for work.*

an obvious contradiction *I noticed some obvious contradictions in his story.*

an apparent contradiction (=one that seems likely) *There's an apparent contradiction between wanting to help people and wanting to make a profit.*

a curious/strange contradiction *One of the curious contradictions about him was that he loved the countryside but he chose to live in the city.*

an inherent contradiction *formal* (=one that forms an important part of something) *There is an inherent contradiction between a one-party state and mass democracy.*

VERBS

there is a contradiction *There is an obvious contradiction in his argument.*

seem/sound (like) a contradiction *This may seem like a contradiction, but sometimes the easy questions are the hardest ones to answer.*

contain a contradiction *The present law contains many contradictions.*

see/notice/observe a contradiction *They do not see a contradiction between individual freedom and the freedom of the other members of a society.*

highlight a contradiction (=make it very noticeable) *The case has highlighted some contradictions in the present system.*

resolve a contradiction (=stop it being a problem) *I can't see any way of resolving this contradiction.*

PREPOSITIONS

a contradiction between sth (and sth) *Do you think there is a contradiction between these two statements?*

contradictions in/within sth *There are some strange contradictions in the law.*

PHRASES

be full of contradictions *Some people are full of contradictions.*

contraption *n* THESAURUS machine

contrast Ac *n*

a difference between people or things that are being compared

ADJECTIVES

a complete/total contrast *The modern buildings are a complete contrast to those in the old town.*

a sharp/stark/strong contrast (=very big) *There is a sharp contrast between the typical readers of these newspapers.*

a great contrast *There is a great contrast between the countryside here and in other parts of England.*

a dramatic/startling contrast (=big and surprising) *Alaska is a land of dramatic contrasts.*

an obvious/clear/marked/striking contrast (=very noticeable) *I noticed a marked contrast in his behaviour after his parents' divorce.*

a direct contrast *She's warm and amusing – in direct contrast to James.*

VERBS

make a contrast *The fruit and the meat make a delicious contrast of flavours.*

draw a contrast (=say there is a contrast) *It is tempting to draw contrasts between religion and science.*

provide/offer contrast (=be different in a way that is interesting) *The plant is very attractive, and provides excellent contrast to other plants.*

highlight a contrast (=make it very obvious) *The research will highlight the contrasts between different approaches to taxation.*

PREPOSITIONS

in contrast to/with sth (=unlike something) *In contrast to his father, Joe was a very sociable person.*

a contrast between sth and sth *She describes the contrast between the two women's lifestyles.*

a contrast with sth *The smooth marble makes a strong contrast with the rough stone around it.*

by/in contrast (=used when giving a different situation) *The birth rate for older women has fallen, but, by contrast, births to teenage mothers have increased.*

contravene *v* THESAURUS disobey

contribute *v* THESAURUS give (1)

contribution Ac *n*

something that you give or do in order to help something be successful

ADJECTIVES

a major/great/huge contribution *Tourism makes a major contribution to the island's economy.*

a significant/important contribution *All of you can make a significant contribution to the company.*

a useful/valuable contribution *The book is a valuable contribution to the study of modern American history.*

a vital/invaluable contribution (=very important) *Foreign workers make a vital contribution to the economy.*

an outstanding contribution (=very good) *He won an award for his outstanding contribution to cinema over many years.*

a positive contribution *We want kids to grow up to make a positive contribution to society.*

a small contribution (*also* **a modest contribution** *formal*): *It made only a small contribution to the company's profits.*

a financial contribution *Some parents cannot afford to make a financial contribution when their kids go to college.*

VERBS

make a contribution *I'd like everyone to make a contribution towards the discussion.*

acknowledge/recognize sb's contribution (=say that you are grateful for what someone has done) *He acknowledged the contribution of many individuals in writing the report.*

value sb's contribution (=think someone's contribution is important) *My co-workers didn't seem to value my contribution.*

pay a contribution (=pay part of the money for something) *Parents are being asked to pay a small contribution towards the trip.*

PREPOSITIONS

a contribution to/towards sth *He was awarded a prize for his contribution to sport.*

a contribution from sb *The journal has contributions from well-known writers.*

control[1] *v*

1 to have the power to make the decisions about how a country, place, company etc is organized or what it does

NOUNS

control a city/country/area *The area is now controlled by rebels.*

control a company/business *His family has controlled the company for 150 years.*

control a party/union/organization *The party was controlled by a small group of extremists.*

control an industry *The oil industry was controlled by five multinational companies.*

control the media (=newspapers, television, radio etc) *The government should not attempt to control the media.*

control the budget/finances *Often, it is the woman who controls the household budget.*

ADVERBS

directly control sth *The bank is no longer directly controlled by the government.*

effectively control sth (=be really in control, when this is not what is intended or believed) *His son effectively controls the company.*

be centrally controlled *The Chinese economy is centrally controlled.*

THESAURUS: control

be in charge
to have the authority to control what happens, and tell other people what to do:
*She **is in charge of** training new employees. | I left him **in charge of** the children while I was out. | He asked to speak to the person who **was in charge**.*

be in power
to be the leader or government of a country:
The former prime minister resigned after less than a year in power. | It was the first time a democratically elected government had been in power.

run
company | organization | school | hospital | hotel | country | economy | industry | world
to make the important everyday decisions concerning a company, organization, country etc, so that it can continue to operate:
It was unusual for a woman to run a company in those days. | The parents want to run the school themselves. | The military ran the country until 1974. | The book is about a world run by robots.

manage
company | business | firm | store | hotel | team
to organize and control the work of a company or organization:
*Her father used to manage the company. | The business had been **poorly managed**, and owed a large amount of money* (=badly managed). *| Sir Alex Ferguson managed the team for a long time.*

rule
country | world
to control a country or place and make all the important political decisions:
The president ruled the country for almost 30 years. | In those days, Britain ruled the world. | Japan was ruled by the same party for a long time.

supervise
work | activities | operation | project | team | students | employees
to be in charge of a group of workers, students etc, and make sure that they do their work properly, or behave properly:
I'm supervising the building work myself. | The Policing Board supervises the activities of the police. | There aren't enough teachers to supervise the students.

2 to limit the amount or growth of something

ADVERBS

carefully control sth *Costs need to be carefully controlled.*

strictly/tightly/rigidly control sth *The sale of handguns is very strictly controlled.*

adequately/effectively control sth *It is important to control inflation effectively.*

NOUNS

control costs/prices/wages *All businesses have to control their costs.*

control spending (*also* **control expenditure** *formal*): *If you want to save money, you have to control your spending.*

control inflation *They may have to increase interest rates in order to control inflation.*

control pollution/crime/disease *The state has strict laws to control pollution.*

control immigration *He argued for the need to control immigration more strictly.*

control the growth/spread of sth *Education is the best way of controlling the spread of AIDS.*

control pain *There are many ways to help control pain in childbirth.*

control the bleeding *To control the bleeding, press a clean bandage firmly against the wound.*

control your weight *She exercises to control her weight.*

3 to make something operate in a particular way

ADVERBS

automatically control sth *Your body automatically controls its own temperature.*

electronically control sth *The car's locking system is electronically controlled.*

manually control sth *The machine can be controlled manually or automatically.*

control sth remotely (=from a distant place) *The heating in some bank branches is controlled remotely.*

be easily controlled *Fuel flow is easily controlled using this switch.*

PHRASES

remote-controlled (*also* **remote-control**) (=controlled from a distant place using an electronic device) *They use remote-controlled robots to clean radioactive surfaces.*

radio-controlled (=controlled from a distant place using radio signals) *He was given a radio-controlled toy car for his birthday.*

C

control[2] *n*

1 the ability or power to make someone or something do what you want or make something happen in the way you want

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + control

complete/total control *The editor has complete control over everything that is published.*

full/absolute control (=complete) *We are never in full control of our own lives.*

effective control (=used for saying who is really in control, when this may not be what is intended or believed) *The rebels are now in effective control of the city.*

overall control *Managers make many decisions, but the chairman has overall control.*

direct control *The country was now under the direct control of the army.*

financial/political/social control *The new CEO was given complete financial control.*

central control (=in which one main part of an organization or system controls the rest of it) *Local governments increasingly came under central control.*

government/state control *I am against government control of the media.*

military control (=by the armed forces) *The town is under military control.*

self-control (=the ability to control your emotions and behaviour) *Small children do not have the same self-control as adults.*

VERBS

take control (*also* **assume/assert control** *formal*): *Students are encouraged to take control of their own learning.*

seize control (=take control quickly or violently) *About 400 prisoners had seized control and were smashing up the jail.*

get/gain control *He felt himself wanting to laugh and struggled to gain control.*

have control *She's a good teacher who always has control of her class.*

keep control (*also* **maintain/retain control** *formal*): *Some people don't know how to keep control of their dogs.*

lose control *It is important to stay calm and not lose control of the situation.*

regain control *How can the government regain control of the economy?*

give sb control *His parents gave him control of his own finances.*

exercise control *formal* (=have control, or use the control that you have) *Her parents no longer exercise any control over her life.*

give up control (*also* **relinquish control** *formal*): *She relinquished control of the company to her three sons.*

control + NOUNS

a control freak *informal* (=someone who wants to control every situation they are in) *She's a complete control freak and she won't let anyone help her do anything.*

PREPOSITIONS

control of/over sth *Schools were given control over their own budgets.*

be in control *He always drives because he says he likes to be in control.*

under sb's control *He has a large organization under his control.*

be outside/beyond sb's control (=be impossible for someone to control) *Flight delays do occur, for reasons that are outside our control.*

be out of control *The fire was getting out of control.*

be under control *The flu outbreak is now under control.*

PHRASES

keep sth under control *Dogs are allowed on the trails if they are kept under control.*

fight/battle/struggle for control *The rebels battled for control of the city.*

2 a way of limiting something, often using an official rule or law

ADJECTIVES

strict/tight controls *There are strict controls on the kind of goods you can bring into the country.*

lax controls (=not strict enough) *The banks admitted that controls on lending had been lax.*

NOUNS + control

import/export controls *Import controls were introduced on farm products.*

arms control (=limits on the weapons countries can have) *The two countries signed an arms control agreement.*

wage/price/rent controls *Rent controls were introduced to stop landlords from making huge profits.*

gun control (=limits on who can buy and own guns) *Many people in the US are against gun control.*

VERBS

introduce controls *The government introduced strict controls on imported goods.*

strengthen/tighten controls (=make them stricter) *Some people say we need to tighten controls on the internet.*

relax controls (=make them less strict) *Wage controls have been relaxed.*

remove/lift controls *They have removed price controls on a number of basic goods.*

enforce controls (=make people obey them) *The department is responsible for enforcing controls on the sale of protected animals.*

PREPOSITIONS

a control on sth *There are tight controls on the number of foreign workers.*

controversial Ac *adj*

causing a lot of disagreement and argument

NOUNS

a controversial issue/topic/subject *Gay marriage remains a controversial issue.*

a controversial figure (=a person who many do not agree with) *He is a controversial figure because of his extreme views.*

a controversial decision *The judge's decision to release the prisoners was highly controversial.*

a controversial plan/proposal/policy *There is a controversial plan to build a new airport.*

a controversial measure (=an official action that is controversial) *Charging people to drive into the city was a controversial measure.*

a controversial book/film/play *The film was extremely controversial and some people wanted it to be banned.*

controversial remarks/comments *His talk contained some controversial remarks about religion.*

ADVERBS

highly/deeply/extremely controversial *This policy proved highly controversial.*

politically controversial *The area of workers' rights remains politically controversial.*

potentially controversial *The issue was a potentially controversial one for the government.*

VERBS

remain controversial *The treatment remains controversial because it is expensive and not always effective.*

prove controversial (=be controversial) *The plans have proved controversial with local people.*

THESAURUS: controversial

contentious *formal*
issue | **subject** | **topic** | **area** | **question** | **proposal** | **debate** | **claim**
Contentious means the same as **controversial**, but is more formal:
Water has been a contentious issue between the country and its neighbours for years. | *This is a contentious area of the law.* | *His comments sparked a contentious debate over nationalism.* | *These claims are* ***highly contentious****.*

controversy Ac *n*

a serious argument about something that involves many people and continues for a long time

ADJECTIVES

great/much/considerable controversy *The article has caused considerable controversy.*

fierce/intense/bitter controversy (=very great) *Her remarks have been at the centre of a fierce controversy.*

a major controversy *That decision was the second major controversy of the prime minister's career.*

public controversy *His book sparked public controversy about the issue.*

the latest controversy *The scandal is the latest controversy to hit the government.*

growing/increasing controversy *There is growing controversy over the decision.*

political/religious/financial controversy *The agreement attracted a lot of political controversy.*

international controversy (=in many countries) *The politician's remarks aroused international controversy.*

VERBS + controversy

cause/create controversy *His speech caused a lot of controversy.*

arouse/provoke/spark controversy (=cause it) *The judges' decision provoked controversy.*

run into controversy *BrE* (=cause it without intending to) *The band ran into controversy over the video for their single.*

fuel controversy (=add to it) *England's manager fuelled controversy with his criticism of the referee.*

controversy + VERBS

controversy arises *formal* (=it starts to happen because of something) *Some controversy arose over the safety of the vaccination.*

controversy exists *Controversy exists over the use of the drug.*

controversy surrounds sth *Much controversy surrounds the issue of genetically modified crops.*

controversy rages (=there is a lot of controversy) *Controversy was raging about smoking in public places.*

PREPOSITIONS

controversy about/over sth *There has been a lot of controversy over the decision.*

controversy among/between sb *He has provoked controversy among party members.*

PHRASES

a storm of controversy (=a lot of controversy) *Since its release, the film has met a storm of controversy.*

be the centre of a controversy *The book became the centre of a bitter controversy.*

a matter/subject of controversy *The right age to have children is a matter of controversy.*

convention Ac *n*

1 a large formal meeting for people who belong to the same profession or organization or who have the same interests

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + convention

an annual convention *The church has an annual convention each July.*

a national/international/European convention *Leaders attended an international convention on climate change.*

a political convention *The hall is used for political conventions.*

a party convention (=of a political party) *He was elected leader at the party convention.*

VERBS

hold/have a convention *The party will hold its annual convention next week.*

arrange/organize a convention *She is busy organizing the company's sales convention.*

go to a convention (*also* **attend a convention** *formal*): *Teachers from all over the country went to the convention.*

speak at a convention (=make a speech there) *Thank you for the invitation to speak at your convention.*

address a convention (=make a speech to the people at a convention) *He addressed the national convention in 2008.*

a convention takes place *Our 20th annual convention takes place in March.*

convention + NOUNS

a convention centre *BrE*, **a convention center** *AmE* (=a building where conventions are held) *The party conference will take place at the International Convention Centre in Birmingham.*

a convention organizer *Convention organizers are expecting around 2,000 people.*

a convention delegate (=someone who goes to a convention) *Convention delegates must register on arrival.*

PREPOSITIONS

at a convention *He gave an excellent speech at the convention.*

a convention on sth *She will speak at a convention on higher education next week.*

2 a formal agreement, especially between countries, about particular rules or behaviour

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + convention

an international convention *There is an international convention banning land mines.*

a European convention *The dumping of waste at sea was banned under a European convention.*

VERBS + convention

sign a convention *Twenty-five countries have signed the convention.*

ratify a convention (=make it official by signing it) *He called on all states to ratify the convention.*

adopt a convention (=start using it) *They adopted a convention banning the import of nuclear waste.*

breach/violate a convention (=not do what it says you must do) *The proposals would violate the European Convention on Human Rights.*

adhere to/comply with a convention (=do what it says you must do) *The court heard that members of the assembly had not complied with the convention.*

be bound by a convention (=have to do what it says) *Countries are not bound by the convention unless they have signed it.*

convention + VERBS

a convention bans sth *The convention bans the production of chemical weapons.*

a convention governs sth *The convention governs the treatment of political prisoners.*

PREPOSITIONS

a convention on sth *They signed a convention on the rights of the child.*

a convention between countries *A convention between Italy and Turkey was signed in 1932.*

under a convention *Torture is not allowed under the convention.*

PHRASES

a signatory of/to a convention (=a country that has signed it) *The UK and the US were signatories to the convention.*

the terms of a convention (=things a convention states must happen) *The terms of the convention still apply.*

article/paragraph ... of a convention *Article 3 of the convention states the following.*

be in breach of a convention (=have done something that is not allowed by it) *His treatment was in breach of the Convention on Human Rights.*

3 the way something is usually done, or people's attitudes about what is the most normal and correct way to do something

> **Grammar**
> This meaning of **convention** can be countable or uncountable.

ADJECTIVES

the normal/usual convention *The normal convention is to reply to an invitation.*

an established convention (=one that has been used for a long time) *There are established conventions for how you should end a letter.*

an accepted convention *This way of referring to an unknown person as 's/he' is a widely accepted convention.*

a social/cultural convention *Each society has its own cultural conventions.*

VERBS

follow convention (=do what is accepted and normal) *If everyone followed convention, life would be very dull.*

break (with) convention (=not do what is accepted or normal) *She broke with convention and chose a pink wedding dress.*

use/adopt/follow a convention *We will use the usual convention of representing an unknown number as x.*

defy/flout convention (=deliberately not do what is accepted or normal) *He loved to flout convention by his eccentric behaviour.*

be bound by convention (=have to do something in a particular way because of convention) *You do not need to be bound by convention and wear black to a funeral.*

convention demands/dictates sth (=says that something should happen in a particular way) *Convention dictates that children take their father's family name.*

PREPOSITIONS

according to convention *Society expects us to act according to convention.*

by convention (=according to convention) *By convention, the bride's father gives her away at her wedding.*

PHRASES

sth is a matter of convention *It is a matter of convention for business people to wear suits.*

a set of conventions *In a different culture, you will have to learn a different set of conventions.*

rules and conventions *Women were expected to behave according to certain rules and conventions.*

a break with convention *In a break with convention, women were allowed into the club.*

conversation *n*

an informal talk in which people exchange news, feelings, and thoughts

ADJECTIVES

a short/brief/quick conversation *We only had time for a brief conversation.*

a long conversation *Joe had several long conversations with Maureen and she told him about her feelings.*

a serious/intelligent/meaningful conversation *He's always making jokes, and it's difficult to have a serious conversation with him.*

an informal/casual conversation *I heard someone say something about it in an informal conversation.*

a private conversation *Is there somewhere near here where we can have private conversation?*

an animated/lively conversation (=in which people get excited) *They seemed to be having an animated conversation about who was responsible for the accident.*

an after-dinner conversation *The scandal was the subject of many after-dinner conversations.*

a face-to-face conversation *I don't like sending emails. I much prefer to have a face-to-face conversation.*

NOUNS + conversation

a phone/telephone conversation *The president had a phone conversation with the German chancellor.*

VERBS + conversation

have a conversation with sb *She was having a conversation with one of her friends on her phone.*

hold/conduct/carry on a conversation (=have a conversation – more formal) *The noise of the traffic made it difficult to hold a conversation.*

get into/enter into a conversation (=become involved in a conversation with someone) *I was at my daughter's school and I got into a conversation with her teacher.*

join in/take part in a conversation *I didn't know anything about baseball, so it was hard for me to join in their conversation.*

strike up a conversation with sb (=start talking to someone) *She struck up a conversation with one of the other passengers.*

engage sb in conversation/initiate a conversation with sb *formal* (=make someone have a conversation with you) *He is very shy and it can be difficult to engage him in conversation.*

make (polite) conversation (=talk to someone about unimportant things so that you can have a conversation) *"Nice weather, isn't it?" he said, trying to make conversation.*

overhear a conversation (=hear someone else's conversation) *I overheard the conversation in the dressing room next to me.*

interrupt sb's conversation *Sorry – I hope I'm not interrupting your conversation.*

conversation + VERBS

a conversation takes place *The conversation took place in the early hours of the morning.*

the conversation turns to sth (=people start talking about something) *The conversation turned to politics.*

PREPOSITIONS

a conversation about sth *We had a conversation about the best way to cook rice.*

a conversation with sb *He paused then continued his conversation with her.*

a conversation between sb (and sb) *There was a telephone conversation between the two leaders.*

PHRASES

be deep in conversation (=be having a serious conversation, so that you do not notice what is happening around you) *The two men appeared to be deep in conversation about something.*

a topic/subject of conversation *The only topic of conversation was food.*

convey *v*

to communicate or express something, with or without using words

NOUNS

convey a message *The poem conveys a message about war.*

convey information/facts *All this information can be conveyed in a simple diagram.*

convey meaning *Children sometimes find it easier to use pictures to convey meaning.*

convey a sense/an impression of sth *The music conveys a sense of sadness and despair.*

convey an idea *In her portrait, I was trying to convey the idea of dignity.*

convey an image *Make sure your clothes convey the right image for a job interview.*

convey a feeling/an emotion *How could he convey his feelings for her?*

ADVERBS

clearly convey sth *His tone of voice clearly conveyed his disgust.*

adequately convey sth *Words cannot adequately convey how relieved I am.*

effectively/successfully convey sth *The novel effectively conveys some of the country's problems.*

powerfully/vividly convey sth (=in a way that affects you or makes you take notice) *The sense of desperation is powerfully conveyed in the music.*

PREPOSITIONS

convey sth to sb *We use words to convey our thoughts to other people.*

convincing Ac *adj*

making you believe that something is true, real, or right

NOUNS

convincing evidence/proof *There is now convincing evidence that the Earth's climate is changing.*

a convincing argument/case *One of the most convincing arguments against the death penalty is that an innocent person could be killed.*

a convincing explanation *I can't think of a more convincing explanation.*

a convincing reason *There are no convincing reasons to believe this story.*

ADVERBS

totally/completely/entirely/utterly convincing *His portrayal of the ageing boxer is entirely convincing.*

far from convincing/not remotely convincing (=not at all convincing) *Their explanation was far from convincing.*

VERBS

seem/sound/look convincing *This idea sounds convincing at first.*

find sth convincing *Many people found his arguments convincing.*

convoluted *adj* THESAURUS complicated

convoy *n*

a group of vehicles or ships travelling together, sometimes in order to protect one another

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + convoy

an aid/relief/humanitarian convoy (=taking food, clothes, medicine etc to people in disaster areas) *A relief convoy was turned back at the border.*

a food convoy *Troops guard the food convoys.*

a military/army convoy *The military convoy moved towards Budapest.*

a naval convoy *The ship is part of a US naval convoy.*

a troop convoy *Twenty-eight soldiers were killed in an attack on a troop convoy.*

a police convoy (=of police vehicles) *He was driven off at speed in a police convoy.*

an armed convoy *The president travelled to the meeting in an armed convoy.*

a refugee convoy (=of people trying to escape from a war, disaster etc) *The refugee convoy consisted of several hundred buses and 3,000 people.*

VERBS

join a convoy *Three more cars joined the convoy.*

lead a convoy *Alan led the convoy in his blue sports car.*

escort a convoy (=go with a convoy) *Troops will escort convoys of emergency food through the war zone.*

ambush a convoy (=hide and then attack as it passes) *Gunmen ambushed a convoy of trucks heading north.*

a convoy carries/transports sth *The military convoy was carrying supplies to a NATO base.*

a convoy arrives/leaves *The convoy arrived carrying 450 tonnes of food.*

a convoy reaches sth *When is the convoy expected to reach its destination?*

PREPOSITIONS

a convoy of sb/sth *A convoy of military vehicles rumbled past.*

be in a convoy *There were seven cars in the convoy.*

in convoy (=travelling together, in separate vehicles) *We all drove to the beach in convoy.*

cook[1] *v*

to prepare food for eating using heat

NOUNS

cook rice/vegetables/meat etc *Cook the onion until it is soft.*

cook food *She tends to cook very spicy food.*

cook a meal *David cooks all his own meals.*

cook (sb) breakfast/lunch/dinner *He offered to cook me dinner one evening.*

VERBS

learn to cook *She learned to cook from her mother.*

like/love to cook *My dad loves to cook.*

ADVERBS

cook sth slowly *The pumpkin has to be cooked slowly.*

cook sth gently (=on a low heat) *Cook the sauce gently for about 5 minutes.*

cook sth thoroughly *Cook food thoroughly to destroy bacteria.*

be well cooked (=cooked for a long enough time, or cooked skilfully) *Always make sure your food is well cooked.*

be perfectly/beautifully cooked *The fish was perfectly cooked.*

PREPOSITIONS

cook sth in the oven/in a pan *Mushrooms can be fried, grilled, or cooked in the oven.*

cook for sb *I've offered to cook for some friends.*

PHRASES

be cooked to perfection (=cooked perfectly) *All the dishes were cooked to perfection by the French chef.*

THESAURUS: cook

make a meal

make
breakfast | **lunch** | **dinner** | **supper** | **meal** | **salad** | **sandwich** | **pasta** | **pizza** | **curry**
to cook a meal or a kind of food, or get all the parts of it ready:
It's your turn to make breakfast. | I made some supper for the children. | He made us a fantastic meal. | I think I'll make a salad for lunch. | She makes her own pasta.

Make or cook?
When talking about meals such as breakfast, lunch or dinner, you usually use **make**.
When you use **cook**, the focus is on heating food, usually in a pan, so that it is ready to eat.
You can use **make** about foods that do not need heat, such as salads or sandwiches.

prepare
meal | **food** | **dish** | **vegetables** | **sauce**
to get a meal or a kind of food ready to eat. **Prepare** is more formal than **make**:
She had prepared a delicious meal for them. | The dish takes a long time to prepare.

fix *AmE informal*
meal | **something to eat** | **breakfast** | **lunch** | **dinner** | **supper** | **sandwich**
to make a meal quickly:
I'll fix us something to eat. | Mom fixed me a sandwich.

rustle up *informal*
meal | **breakfast** | **supper**
to cook a meal or dish quickly using whatever is available:
The book tells you how to rustle up an inexpensive meal in a few minutes. | If friends arrived unexpectedly, could you rustle up some supper? | I'm not sure what we have in the fridge, but I'm sure I can rustle something up.

different ways of cooking something

bake
bread | **cake** | **pie** | **potato** | **fish** | **apple**
to cook food in an oven:
She bakes her own bread. | I ordered baked potato topped with cheese.

roast
turkey | **chicken** | **beef** | **pork** | **meat** | **potato**
to cook meat in an oven, usually in its own juice. You can also roast potatoes in an oven, often using the juices from the meat:
Roast the meat for 20 minutes. | Roast the potatoes in a hot oven.

Don't say 'roasted potatoes/beef/chicken'. Say **roast potatoes/beef/chicken.**

fry
vegetables | **onion** | **mushroom** | **egg** | **bacon** | **chicken** | **rice**
to cook food in hot oil or fat in a pan:
First of all, fry an onion in some olive oil. | I ordered fried eggs.

sauté
vegetables | **potato** | **onion** | **mushroom** | **chicken** | **beef**
to fry vegetables or meat for a short time in a small amount of butter or oil:
Sauté the mushrooms for two minutes. | I had sautéed chicken and rice.

stir-fry
vegetables | **beef** | **chicken** | **prawns** | **noodles**
to fry small pieces of food while moving them around continuously:
The prawns were served with stir-fried vegetables and noodles.

deep fry
vegetables | **fish** | **prawns**
to cook food under the surface of hot oil or fat:
The vegetables are dipped in batter and then deep fried.

grill
cheese | **chicken** | **meat** | **steak** | **fish** | **vegetables** | **onion** | **tomato**
to cook food over or under strong heat:
I'll have a grilled cheese sandwich. | Grill the tomatoes until they turn brown.

broil *AmE*
chicken | **fish** | **beef** | **steak**
to cook food under heat, especially fish or chicken:
They have the best broiled chicken in town.

boil
egg | **potato** | **rice**
to cook food in very hot water:
He doesn't even know how to boil an egg. | The dish was served with boiled potatoes.

a back-up copy (=made in case the original is lost) *Be sure you regularly make back-up copies of your data.*

a draft copy (=a version of a document that is not the final version) *He showed me a draft copy of the contract.*

an electronic copy (=on computer) *We keep electronic copies of all the documents.*

a paper/printed copy *I need a paper copy of the email.*

VERBS

make/create a copy of sth *Make a copy of the letter before you send it.*

take a copy (=make a copy of a document) *He asked his secretary to take a copy of the letter.*

keep/save a copy of sth *Did you keep a copy of the email?*

send/email (sb) a copy of sth *Could you send me a copy of the agreement?*

attach a copy of sth (=put it with an email) *I'm attaching a copy of the schedule.*

enclose a copy (=put it in a letter) *I enclose a copy of my resume.*

download a copy of sth *You can download a copy of the contract from our website.*

print a copy (*also* **run off a copy** *informal*): *She printed a copy of the email and put it in a file.*

PREPOSITIONS

a copy of sth *The rug is a copy of a fine Chinese carpet.*

2 one of many books, magazines, DVDs etc that are all exactly the same

VERBS

sth sells hundreds/thousands etc of copies *The book has sold millions of copies.*

print/produce copies of sth *The publishers printed 30,000 copies of the magazine.*

distribute/circulate copies of sth (=give them to a group of people) *Someone has been circulating copies of the leaflet among students.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + copy

a free copy (*also* **a complimentary copy** *formal*): *He was handing out free copies of his latest book.*

a spare copy *Do you have a spare copy of the disk?*

your own/personal copy *Each student has their own copy of the book.*

a hardback/paperback copy (=a book with a hard cover or a paper cover) *Paperback copies are available from bookshops.*

a signed copy (=signed by the author) *She sent me a signed copy of her autobiography.*

an advance copy (=given to someone before it is available to the public) *The publishers sent me an advance copy of the book.*

copy² *v*

1 to deliberately make or produce something that is exactly like another thing

NOUNS

copy a file/CD/DVD *Press control and 'C' on your keyboard to copy a file.*

copy a letter/document/photograph *Please could you copy this letter for me?*

copy a painting/sculpture *I tried to copy his paintings to learn how to paint.*

ADVERBS

copy sth illegally *The films they were selling had been copied illegally.*

be widely copied (=by many people) *Michelangelo's statues were widely copied.*

PREPOSITIONS

copy sth onto sth *Copy the file onto your hard disk.*

copy sth from sth *DNA is copied from one cell to another.*

THESAURUS: copy

photocopy
to copy a document, picture, article etc onto a piece of paper, using a special machine:
I'll photocopy the article for you.

You can also say **make/take a photocopy (of sth)**: *The customs officer* ***made a photocopy*** *of my passport.*

reproduce
to print a copy of a picture or document, especially in a book or newspaper:
The image was reproduced in magazines and newspapers around the world. | *The paintings are* ***reproduced by kind permission of*** *the Tate Gallery* (=used when saying that someone has allowed you to print a copy of something).

forge
signature | **note** | **bill**
to illegally copy something written or printed:
He forged my signature in order to get money out of my account (=he copied the way I sign my name). | *Police found thousands of pounds of forged £10 notes.*

2 to use someone else's words, answers, or ideas instead of your own

NOUNS

copy sb's idea *Be creative – don't just copy other people's ideas.*

copy sb's work *If the teacher sees you copying anyone else's work, you will be in trouble.*

copy sb's style *Many young photographers have copied his style.*

ADVERBS

blatantly copy sth (=in an obvious way, without trying to hide it) *The idea was blatantly copied from the company's competitors.*

blindly/slavishly copy sth (=exactly, without thinking for yourself) *His designs have been slavishly copied by other fashion designers.*

VERBS

accuse sb of copying sb *They have been accused of copying other bands.*

catch sb copying sb (=notice someone looking at someone else's work and copying it) *Any student caught copying will fail the test.*

PREPOSITIONS

copy from sb (=cheat by copying someone else's work) *David had copied from the girl next to him.*

THESAURUS: copy

plagiarize (*also* **plagiarise** *BrE*)
work | book | essay | speech
to copy things that other people have written and pretend that they are your own work:
*He denied that he had plagiarized the work of other scientists. | The book was **plagiarized from** another book by Sir Everard Digby.*

The activity of copying other people's work is called **plagiarism**: *There have been accusations of **plagiarism**.*

steal
idea | design
to take someone else's ideas and use them without permission, in order to make money from them. You use **steal** especially when this seems shocking:
He was worried that someone else would steal his idea. | The inventor claims that the company stole his design for a vacuum cleaner.

3 to write down words or numbers exactly as you read or hear them

NOUNS

copy an address/phone number *I copied the address in my notebook.*

copy information/details *She copied all the relevant information from the website.*

ADVERBS

copy sth carefully *He copied her name carefully into his address book.*

copy sth laboriously/meticulously (=very carefully) *He had meticulously copied hundreds of names.*

copy sth faithfully (=so it is exactly like the original) *I have faithfully copied his words.*

copy sth accurately *It is important to copy the place names accurately.*

copy sth word for word/verbatim (=using someone's exact words) *Students need to learn to write using their own words, rather than just copying verbatim from books.*

PREPOSITIONS

copy (sth) from sth *Copy the vocabulary list from the whiteboard.*

copy sth into a book/notebook *He copied the number into his notebook.*

cordial *adj* THESAURUS friendly

core *adj* THESAURUS basic (1), main

corner *n*

1 a point or place where two lines, edges, walls etc meet

ADJECTIVES

the top/bottom corner *The ball flew straight into the top corner of the net.*

the far/opposite corner (=furthest from where you are) *Something was moving in the far corner of the garden.*

the right-hand/left-hand corner *We followed the path to the left-hand corner of the field.*

a quiet/dark corner (=in a room, garden etc) *He sat on his own in a quiet corner of the library.*

a shady corner (=protected from the sun in a garden) *Plant the herbs in a shady corner of the garden.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a/the corner *They had a red flag with a golden star in the corner.*

on the corner *She sat on the corner of her bed.*

2 the point where two roads meet

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + corner

a street corner *She waited for her friend on the street corner.*

a tight/sharp corner (=very curved and difficult to drive around) *Go slowly because there's a sharp corner up ahead.*

a blind corner (=one that you cannot see around) *The car had come around a blind corner much too fast.*

VERBS

turn the corner (=go around a corner) *I walked on and turned the corner into Church Road.*

come/go around a corner *At that moment, a police car came around the corner.*

approach a corner *Reduce your speed as you approach the corner.*

PREPOSITIONS

on a corner *They stood on the corner chatting.*

at the corner *We met in the café at the corner of the street.*

around the corner (=very near here) *There's a postbox just around the corner.*

C

corporate Ac *adj*
belonging to or relating to a corporation

NOUNS

corporate headquarters (=a big company's main offices) *The company is moving its corporate headquarters from New York to Houston.*

corporate profits *US corporate profits were higher than expected.*

the corporate sector (=the area of business involving big companies) *The UK corporate sector is very competitive.*

the corporate world *After 15 years, I really wanted to escape the corporate world.*

corporate culture (=the way the people in a big company think and behave) *We need to change the corporate culture to accept family-friendly policies.*

the corporate ladder (=the levels in a big company, that you move up in your career) *He climbed up the corporate ladder until he became vice-president.*

corporate identity/image (=the way a company presents itself to the public) *Companies are always anxious to protect their corporate image.*

corporate hospitality (=entertainment provided by companies for their customers) *The castle can be hired for corporate hospitality.*

correct *adj* having no mistakes

ADVERBS

absolutely/perfectly/entirely correct (=correct in every way) *What he said was perfectly correct.*

broadly/essentially/basically correct (=in most ways) *The results of his research are essentially correct.*

grammatically correct (=written or spoken with correct grammar) *The sentence is grammatically correct, but doesn't sound natural.*

factually correct (=having all the correct facts) *Newspaper articles are not always factually correct.*

technically correct (=according to the exact details of a rule or law) *The referee was technically correct in not allowing the goal.*

not strictly correct (=not completely) *It's not strictly correct to say he lied.*

partially/partly correct *Her answer was only partially correct.*

politically correct (=used to describe language and behaviour that are carefully chosen so they do not offend anyone) *It's not politically correct to describe people as 'disabled'.*

NOUNS

the correct answer *Score one point for each correct answer.*

correct information *I'm not sure that I've been given the correct information.*

the correct address/phone number *Make sure you have the correct address before you set off.*

the correct size/temperature/position *He cut the wood to the correct size.*

the correct order *Put these numbers in the correct order.*

a correct entry (=answer in a competition) *The first five correct entries will win a prize.*

correct spelling/grammar/pronunciation *I'm never sure of the correct spelling of words like 'accommodation'.*

the correct term (=the correct word) *What is the correct term for someone who is from the Netherlands?*

the correct way of doing sth *She asked me about the correct way of replying to a wedding invitation.*

VERBS

prove correct (=be shown to be true) *Fortunately, my memory proved correct.*

correlation *n*
a connection between two ideas, facts etc, especially when one may be the cause of the other

ADJECTIVES

a significant correlation *There is no significant correlation between age and work performance.*

a strong/high/close correlation (=things are closely related) *They found a high correlation between drinking alcohol and violence.*

a poor/weak correlation (=things are not closely related) *The graph shows whether there is a strong or weak correlation between two values.*

a general/broad correlation (=in most situations, but not all) *There is a general correlation between body size and the size of our brains.*

a direct correlation *Research showed a direct correlation between TV viewing and poor academic work.*

a clear/obvious correlation *There is a clear correlation between carbon dioxide emissions and global warming.*

a positive correlation (=if one thing increases, the other also increases) *They found a positive correlation between income and health.*

a negative/inverse correlation (=if one thing increases, the other decreases) *Is there an inverse correlation between a person's weight and the distance they walk on an average day?*

VERBS

show a correlation (*also* **demonstrate a correlation** *formal*): *Studies have shown a correlation between crime and poverty.*

find a correlation (*also* **identify/establish a correlation** *formal*): *Researchers failed to find any correlation between the two.*

observe a correlation *A correlation has been observed between untidiness and creativity.*

a correlation exists/there is a correlation *A strong correlation exists between social class and exam success.*

PREPOSITIONS

a correlation between sth and sth *Is there a correlation between health and happiness?*

a correlation with sth *He noticed a correlation with the time of year.*

correspondent *n*

a journalist reporting news from a particular area or on a particular subject

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + correspondent

a foreign correspondent (=reporting on other countries) *She works as a foreign correspondent for the 'New York Times'.*

a political correspondent *The report was from their political correspondent in Washington.*

a newspaper/television/radio correspondent *The president told newspaper correspondents about his plans last night.*

a sports/education/health/science etc correspondent *Here is our sports correspondent with all the details of yesterday's game.*

a war correspondent *A war correspondent from 'The Sunday Times' was killed by rebel soldiers.*

a diplomatic correspondent (=who reports about relations between countries) *The BBC's diplomatic correspondent is in Beijing to cover the story.*

a special correspondent (=one with a special area of responsibility) *She is the paper's special correspondent for the environment.*

the Beijing/Cairo/Washington etc correspondent (=sending reports from a particular place) *This report comes direct from our Tel Aviv correspondent.*

PREPOSITIONS

a correspondent for/with sth *She is a political correspondent with 'The Washington Post'.*

corrupt *adj*

dishonest and immoral, because people use power to get advantages for themselves

NOUNS

a corrupt official/politician/police officer etc *Corrupt judges have taken millions of dollars in bribes.*

a corrupt government/regime *The government is completely corrupt and it is impossible to get anything done without paying bribes.*

corrupt practices *The police were found to be guilty of bribery and other corrupt practices.*

ADVERBS

deeply corrupt (=very corrupt) *The book examines the deeply corrupt relationship between corporations and the government.*

totally/completely/utterly corrupt *The elections will not be fair, because the government is totally corrupt.*

politically corrupt *The country has a reputation for being politically corrupt.*

morally corrupt *The mine owners were wicked and morally corrupt.*

inherently corrupt (=corrupt because of the way it is organized) *The present system of giving honours is inherently corrupt.*

THESAURUS: corrupt

corrupt, devious, sneaky, sly, underhand, unscrupulous, fraudulent, deceitful → **dishonest**

corruption *n*

dishonest or immoral behaviour by people with power

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + corruption

political/financial corruption *The country has a long history of political corruption.*

government/police corruption *There will be an inquiry into police corruption.*

widespread corruption (=in many areas) *There is widespread corruption in government.*

corruption is rife (=it is very common) *Corruption is rife among government officials.*

rampant corruption (=it is common, especially in a way that seems shocking) *The country faced major problems, including rampant corruption.*

high-level corruption (=among senior officials) *The new minister has promised to end high-level corruption.*

VERBS

fight/tackle corruption (=try to stop it) *He criticized the minister for failing to fight corruption within government.*

root out/weed out corruption (=find and stop it) *The president is launching a new campaign to root out corruption.*

stamp out/eradicate corruption (=stop it completely) *The party's chairman called for action to stamp out corruption.*

expose/uncover corruption (=show that it exists) *He wrote a newspaper article exposing corruption in government.*

corruption + NOUNS

a corruption scandal *All the newspapers are reporting the latest government corruption scandal.*

a corruption investigation/probe *She is the officer in charge of the corruption investigation.*

PHRASES

allegations/charges of corruption *The club's chairman has strongly denied allegations of corruption.*

bribery and corruption *It seems that bribery and corruption were widespread in the council.*

cost[1] *n*

1 the amount of money that you have to pay in order to buy, do, or produce something

ADJECTIVES

high/low cost *Drivers are angry about the high cost of fuel.*

the average cost of sth *The average cost of a wedding is around $25,000.*

the total/full cost *The total cost of the project was over $30 million.*

the annual/monthly cost *The annual cost of membership has increased.*

the estimated cost *The estimated cost of the repairs was £3,000.*

exorbitant/extortionate cost (=much too high) *The cost of court cases is exorbitant.*

prohibitive cost (=so high that people cannot afford to buy or do something) *People in poor countries are dying because of the prohibitive cost of drugs.*

the rising cost of sth *Older people are worried about the rising cost of electricity.*

the final cost *No one knows what the final cost will be.*

VERBS + cost

pay/cover the cost (*also* **meet/bear the cost** *formal*): *His parents have offered to meet the cost of his college fees.*

afford the cost *Many people cannot afford the cost of the treatment.*

cut/reduce/lower/bring down the cost *If you go later in the year, it will bring down the cost of your holiday.*

keep the cost down (=make the cost as low as possible) *Companies are using fewer workers in order to keep their employment costs down.*

increase/push up the cost *The new tax will increase the cost of owning a car.*

cost + VERBS

the cost rises/goes up *The cost of electricity has risen again.*

the cost falls/goes down *The average cost of a flight has fallen considerably.*

NOUNS + cost

labour/production/transport etc costs *The company employs hundreds of workers, so labour costs are very high.*

running/operating costs (=the amount it costs to run a machine, system, or business) *The new technology is cheaper and the running costs are lower.*

administrative costs (=the cost of running an organization or for paying for things to be done as part of an official system) *There have been complaints about poor customer service and high administrative costs.*

PHRASES

the cost of living (=the amount you need to pay for food, clothes etc) *People are complaining about the rising cost of living.*

at a cost of (=used for saying what the cost of something is) *They've built a new factory, at a cost of £10 million.*

at no extra cost (=without having to pay more money) *Many of these services are available to guests at no extra cost.*

Cost or price?

You use **price** when talking about the exact money that you have to pay when you buy something in a shop, or pay to use something: *The **price** is on the back cover of the book. | The **price** includes breakfast.*

You often use **cost** when talking in a general way about whether something is expensive or cheap, rather than the exact price: *The **cost** of living in Sweden is very high. | The **cost** of insurance keeps going up.*

Costs is also used about the total amount of money that a company or organization spends: *Companies are always trying to find ways of cutting **costs**.*

THESAURUS: cost

price
the amount of money you must pay for something that is for sale:
*Prices were **lower** in those days. | Stores are charging **higher prices** for electronic goods. | They sell good-quality clothes at **reasonable prices**. | How much is the **price of** a plane ticket to New York?*

value
the amount of money that something is worth:
*A new kitchen can **increase** the **value** of your home. | The **value** of your investment can **go down** as well as up.*

charge
the amount that you have to pay for a service or to use something:
*Bank charges have increased. | There is a small **delivery charge**. | Hotel guests may use the gym **for a small charge**.*

fee
the amount you have to pay to enter a place or join a group, or for the services of a professional person such as a lawyer or a doctor:
*There is no **entrance fee** to get into the museum. | The **membership fee** is £125 a year. | We had to pay a lot of money in **legal fees**.*

fare
the amount you have to pay to travel somewhere by bus, plane, train etc:
I didn't even have enough money for my ***bus fare****. | The train company has announced big* ***fare increases****. | The* ***air fare*** *to London is just under $500.*

rent
the amount you have to pay to live in or use a place that you do not own:
The ***rent on*** *his apartment is $800 a month. |* ***Rents*** *are* ***high*** *in this area. | People are attracted by the* ***low rents****.*

rate
a charge that is set according to a standard scale:
Most TV stations offer ***special rates*** *to local advertisers. | Banks are able to charge* ***high rates*** *of interest.*

toll
the amount you have to pay to travel on some roads or bridges:
You have to pay ***tolls on*** *many French motorways. | The government is planning to introduce* ***road tolls*** *to reduce traffic congestion.*

2 the damage, losses, or other bad effects that are caused by something

ADJECTIVES

great/huge/enormous/heavy/terrible cost *They succeeded in capturing the city at great cost in terms of human life.*

personal cost *He was determined to continue with his work, regardless of the personal cost.*

the social cost *The social cost of their policies was enormous and many people lost their jobs.*

the human cost *His photographs show the human cost of war.*

the environmental cost *In spite of the benefits they bring, cars carry a massive environmental cost.*

the full cost *The full cost of the disaster may never be known.*

VERBS

pay the cost *Future generations will have to pay the cost of our failure to protect the environment.*

sth comes at a cost/carries a cost *Her success as a singer came at a huge cost to her personal life.*

PREPOSITIONS

the cost to sb/sth *The cost to local wildlife was enormous.*

at a cost *The Russians defeated the invasion at the cost of millions of lives.*

PHRASES

at any cost/at all costs (=even though it may cause a lot of problems) *He wanted to win, at any cost.*

find/learn/discover sth to your cost (=to realise something because of a bad experience) *Superior strength does not necessarily mean victory, as the US learned to its cost in Vietnam.*

cost[2] *v* to have a particular price

PHRASES

cost a lot *The course is good but it costs a lot.*

cost a fortune/cost the earth *informal* (=have a very high price) *The ring must have cost a fortune.*

not cost (very) much *The drug does not cost very much.*

cost sth per minute/hour/year etc *Calls cost only 2p per minute.*

not cost (sb) a penny (=cost nothing) *Using the internet, you can make phone calls that don't cost a penny.*

cost sth per person (*also* **cost sth per head** *formal*): *A meal costs £80 per person.*

costly *adj* THESAURUS **expensive**

costs *n* THESAURUS **spending**

costume *n*
a set of special clothes – used especially about clothes worn by actors, traditional clothes worn by people who live in a place, or clothes worn by people who lived at a time in the past

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + costume

the traditional costume *The local women were dressed in their traditional costumes.*

the national costume (=the clothes that are traditionally worn in a country) *The men were wearing the Japanese national costume.*

period costume/historical costume (=clothes like those worn at a particular time) *The play is set in the 1700s, and the actors wear period costumes.*

a clown/fairy/rabbit etc costume *He wore a red-striped clown costume and big shoes.*

a fancy-dress costume *BrE: The shop hires out fancy-dress costumes for parties.*

a colourful costume *BrE*, **a colorful costume** *AmE: The actors wore colourful costumes.*

an elaborate/lavish costume (=expensive and detailed) *The film features lavish costumes and spectacular sets.*

an outlandish costume (=very strange) *He used to play guitar and wear outlandish costumes in a punk band.*

VERBS

wear a costume/be dressed in a costume *The children wore witch costumes for Halloween.*

PHRASES

in full costume *The rehearsal will be in full costume.*

cosy *adj* THESAURUS **comfortable**

cottage *n* a small house in the country

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cottage

a little/small/tiny cottage *He lived all his life in a small cottage by the river.*

a country cottage (=in the countryside) *We dreamed of leaving the city and buying a country cottage.*

a thatched cottage (=with a roof made from dry straw) *The village is full of traditional thatched cottages.*

a holiday cottage *BrE* (=that people use or rent for holidays) *We rented a holiday cottage in Wales.*

a weekend/summer cottage (=that the owners go to at weekends or in the summer) *They live in London but they also have a weekend cottage by the sea.*

VERBS

live in a cottage *She lives in a pretty little cottage in the country.*

rent/hire a cottage (*also* **take a cottage** *formal*): *We've rented a cottage in the Highlands for New Year.*

have/own a cottage *It would be nice to have a weekend cottage.*

cough[1] *n*

1 a medical condition that makes you cough a lot

VERBS

have (got) a cough *I've had a cough for weeks now.*

get/develop a cough *A lot of people get coughs at this time of year.*

relieve/soothe/treat a cough (=make it less severe) *This medicine will help to relieve your cough.*

ADJECTIVES

a bad/nasty/terrible cough *She had a bad cough and a sore throat.*

a slight cough (=one that is not very serious) *He has a slight cough but I don't think he's really ill.*

a smoker's cough (=one caused by smoking) *He's a heavy smoker and has the typical smoker's cough.*

a tickly cough (=one that keeps irritating your throat) *I had a tickly cough, a runny nose and a high temperature.*

a violent cough (=one in which someone coughs very loudly) *The symptoms include a violent cough.*

cough + NOUNS

cough medicine/syrup/mixture *You should take some cough medicine.*

a cough drop (*also* **a cough sweet** *BrE*) (=a sweet you suck to make a cough less severe) *He was sucking on a cough sweet.*

2 the action of coughing

ADJECTIVES

a loud cough *There was a loud cough from someone in the audience.*

a quiet/little cough *His friend gave a little cough, to attract his attention.*

VERBS

give a cough *Stuart gave an embarrassed cough.*

cough[2] *v*

to suddenly push air out of your throat with a short sound, often repeatedly

ADVERBS

cough politely/discreetly *She coughed politely to get their attention.*

cough nervously *He coughed nervously and changed the subject.*

cough loudly *He walked into the doctor's room, coughing loudly.*

VERBS

make sb cough *The dust in the air made him cough.*

PHRASES

be coughing and sneezing *I think I'm getting a cold – I've been coughing and sneezing all day.*

be coughing and spluttering *BrE* (=coughing a lot) *She woke up coughing and spluttering.*

a coughing fit (=a long period of continued coughing) *He had a terrible coughing fit.*

council *n*

1 a group of people chosen to make rules or decisions

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + council

the executive/ruling/governing council (=the most important council) *He is a member of the union's national executive council.*

the school/student council *Members of the student council had discussions with the principal of the university.*

an advisory council (=which gives advice) *The report was issued by the Advisory Council on Science and Technology.*

council + NOUNS

a council member *School council members are elected by their fellow students.*

2 an organization providing services in a local area

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + council

the city/county/district council *The city council is responsible for making sure that the roads are in good condition.*

the local council *Schools are managed by the local council.*

council + NOUNS

a council house *BrE* (=owned by a council and rented to people) *She's lived in a council house all her life.*

a council estate *BrE* (=an area of houses owned by a council and rented to people) *The road runs through the middle of a large council estate.*

a council meeting *Council meetings are open to the public.*

PREPOSITIONS

on the council *The Conservatives are the largest group on the council.*

count *n*

the process of counting, or the total number counted

VERBS

do/make a count *She did a count to make sure that there were enough chairs.*

keep (a) count (=keep checking so that you know how many people or things there are) *He kept a count of the number of correct answers.*

lose count (=forget how many, especially because there are a lot) *I've lost count of the number of times I've seen this film.*

ADJECTIVES

a quick count *He did a quick count of the number of people in the room.*

a rough count (=not exact) *I made a rough count of the houses in the street.*

a word/page count (=of the number of words or pages) *Your computer can do an automatic word count.*

a head count (=of the number of people who are there) *Make sure you do a head count before the children get back on the bus.*

counterfeit *adj* THESAURUS false

country *n*

1 an area of land that has its own government, president, king etc

ADJECTIVES

an independent country *Malaysia has been an independent country since 1963.*

sb's home/native country *After five years in the US, she returned to her home country, Japan.*

a foreign country *How many foreign countries have you visited?*

a rich/wealthy/prosperous country *Germany is one of the richest countries in the world.*

a poor/developing country *Many developing countries rely on foreign aid.*

a developed/industrialized/advanced country (=rich, with a lot of industry and trade) *Developed countries are responsible for most of the world's pollution.*

a democratic country *In a democratic country, everyone has the right of free speech.*

a neighbouring country *BrE*, **a neighboring country** *AmE* (=next to another country) *People are worried that the fighting could spread to neighbouring countries.*

a Western/European/African/Asian etc country *The president will be visiting four European countries.*

sb's adopted country (=that they have chosen to live in permanently) *She loved France, her adopted country.*

NOUNS + country

a member country *There were talks between the member countries of the European Union.*

the host country (=where an event is held) *They will meet to decide which will be the host country for the next World Cup.*

VERBS

rule/run/govern a country *The country has been ruled by the same party for over 20 years.*

lead the country *She became the first woman to lead the country.*

leave the country *Foreign journalists were given 24 hours to leave the country.*

flee the country (=leave it quickly to avoid trouble) *At the outbreak of the war, many people fled the country.*

serve your country *These soldiers have served their country bravely.*

represent your country *It is a great honour to represent your country in a sport.*

PREPOSITIONS

in/into a country *They are one of the top companies in the country.*

across/through a country (=from one side to the other) *It took us three days to drive across the country.*

throughout/across/around a country (=in many places in a country) *The new bank has opened branches all across the country.*

PHRASES

the country of origin *The fruit must be labelled with its country of origin.*

THESAURUS: country

nation
a country, considered especially in relation to its people, or its political and economic structure:
The events shocked ***the whole nation****. | The US is the most* ***powerful nation*** *in the world. |* ***Developing nations*** *receive huge amounts of aid from Western countries. | Leaders of the world's major* ***industrialized nations*** *attended the meeting.*

state
a country considered as a political organization with its own government:
They believe that Scotland should be an ***independent*** *sovereign* ***state****. | In a* ***democratic state****, people are free to criticize the government. | Most European states joined the Council of Europe.*

C

power
a country that is very strong and important: *China is now a major **world power**. | There was a meeting of the **great powers**, including Russia, the United States, Britain, and France.*

superpower
one of the most powerful countries in the world:
*During the Cuban Missile Crisis there was a real danger of conflict between the two **world superpowers**.*

land
a country or region – used especially in stories:
*He told them about his journeys to **foreign lands**. | I met a traveller from a **far-off land**. | She hopes one day to return to her **native land** (=the place where she was born).*

2 a type of area

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + country

farming/walking country *This is farming country and all you see is mile after mile of agricultural land.*

open country (=with few buildings, walls, trees etc) *We left the city and headed towards the open country in the north.*

wild country (=not used or farmed by people) *I love the wild country of the Scottish Highlands.*

rough country (=difficult to travel over) *Here, you need a vehicle specially designed for rough country.*

mountain/mountainous country *The town is on the edge of a vast stretch of mountain country.*

PHRASES

a stretch/piece of country *The new road will go right through this beautiful stretch of country.*

countryside *n*

land that is outside cities and towns

ADJECTIVES

beautiful/lovely/stunning countryside *The countryside between the mountain villages is stunning.*

open countryside (=with few buildings, walls, trees etc) *The farmhouse has views over open countryside.*

the surrounding countryside *Both the town and the surrounding countryside are worth exploring.*

rolling countryside (=with hills) *They live in a valley surrounded by rolling countryside.*

unspoilt countryside (=with natural beauty not spoiled by buildings) *We walked through miles of unspoilt countryside.*

VERBS

protect/conserve the countryside (=stop people building on it or spoiling its beauty) *How can we protect the countryside for future generations?*

spoil/ruin the countryside *Too many tourists can spoil the countryside.*

PREPOSITIONS

the countryside around/near a place *The countryside around London is surprisingly pretty.*

coup *n*

a sudden and sometimes violent attempt to take control of the government

ADJECTIVES

a military/army coup *The general seized power in a military coup.*

an attempted coup *There was an attempted coup against the country's military dictator.*

a failed/unsuccessful coup (*also* **an abortive coup** *formal*): *The men were jailed for taking part in a failed coup.*

a successful coup *The armed forces are too weak to mount a successful coup.*

a bloodless coup (=without killing or violence) *The regime was overthrown in a bloodless coup.*

a presidential coup (=in which power is taken from a president)

VERBS

plan/plot a coup *They were accused of plotting a coup against the leader.*

stage/mount/launch a coup *formal* (=attempt one) *Later that year, the rebels staged an unsuccessful coup.*

foil/crush a coup *formal* (=stop it from succeeding) *The government foiled an armed coup by rebel soldiers.*

be overthrown in a coup (*also* **be deposed in a coup** *formal*): *The prime minister was deposed in a coup by the armed forces.*

PREPOSITIONS

a coup against sb *She was accused of plotting a coup against the government.*

coup + NOUNS

a coup attempt *There have been repeated coup attempts against the government.*

the coup leader *Most of the rebels were arrested but the coup leader escaped.*

couple Ac *n*

two people who are married or having a sexual or romantic relationship

ADJECTIVES

a young couple *A young couple with a baby moved into the house next door.*

a middle-aged couple/an elderly couple *The only other people in the train carriage were an elderly couple.*

a married couple *The tax laws are different for married couples.*

an unmarried couple *It is common nowadays for unmarried couples to live together.*

a childless couple (=without children)

Childless couples tend to have plenty of money to spend.

a retired couple *These small houses are suitable for retired couples.*

a perfect couple (=a couple that seem very suited to each other) *I'm surprised they split up – they seemed like the perfect couple.*

the happy couple (=a bride and bridegroom at their wedding) *Guests congratulated the happy couple.*

PHRASES

make a lovely couple (=be suited to each other as romantic partners) *Everyone who knows them thinks that they would make a lovely couple.*

courage *n*

brave behaviour in a difficult situation

ADJECTIVES

great/remarkable/extraordinary courage *The soldiers fought with great courage.*

enough/sufficient courage *Not many politicians have enough courage to vote against their own party.*

personal courage (=the courage of one particular person) *She showed enormous personal courage during her illness.*

VERBS

have the courage to do sth *He didn't have the courage to say what he really thought.*

sth takes courage (=it needs courage) *It takes courage to disagree with your friends.*

show courage (*also* **demonstrate courage** *formal*): *The pilot showed enormous skill and courage.*

find/pluck up/summon up the courage to do sth (=get enough courage to do something that you do not want to do) *He was trying to pluck up the courage to end their relationship.*

lack the courage to do sth *I lacked the courage to tell her the truth.*

give sb the courage to do sth *My friends and family gave me the courage to carry on with my work.*

PHRASES

have the courage of your convictions (=be brave enough to do what you have decided or think is right) *We want a government that has the courage of its convictions.*

courageous *adj* THESAURUS brave

course *n* a series of lessons

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + course

a language/art/business etc course *The school runs language courses in the summer.*

a full-time/part-time course *We also offer part-time courses for mature students.*

a short course *I did a short course on website design.*

a one-year/two-year etc course *She did a one-year teacher training course.*

a college/university course *Students who fail their college courses still have to pay the fee.*

a degree course *BrE* (*also* **an undergraduate course**) (=a first course at a university, which usually lasts three years) *The college offers degree courses in nursing.*

a postgraduate course *BrE* (=one you do after your first degree course) *After graduating, she did a two-year postgraduate course.*

a beginner's/intermediate/advanced course *She is taking an advanced course in art and design.*

an introductory course *She decided to do an introductory computing course.*

an intensive course (*also* **a crash course** *informal*) (=in which you learn a lot in a short time) *Workers who are moving to the Moscow office are sent on an intensive Russian course.*

a training course *Before you start the job, you will attend a two-week training course.*

a vocational course (=that trains you to do a particular job) *The local college offers a number of vocational courses.*

VERBS + course

do/take a course *I decided to do a Spanish course.*

go on a course *My company wanted me to go on a course in time management.*

enrol on a course (*also* **sign up for a course** *informal*) (=officially put your name on the list of students for the course) *He enrolled on a cookery course.*

apply for/to do a course (=ask to join a course) *She applied for a nursing course.*

pass a course (=complete it successfully) *If you pass the course, you get a diploma.*

fail a course *If she fails the course, she may lose her job.*

finish/complete a course *I went back to university to finish my degree course.*

run a course (=organize a course) *The course is run by the British Council.*

teach a course *He is teaching an introductory course in Russian.*

drop out of a course (=leave without finishing it) *She dropped out of the course after a few weeks.*

course + VERBS

a course covers/includes sth *The course covers all aspects of wine-making.*

a course focuses/concentrates on sth *The course focuses on European history.*

course + NOUNS

a course tutor *BrE: I discussed the essay with my course tutor.*

the course syllabus (=the plan of what is taught on a course) *The history department has recently introduced a new course syllabus.*

C

craft *n*

an activity in which you make something skilfully with your hands. Objects made in this way are called **crafts**

ADJECTIVES

a traditional/ancient craft *You can learn traditional crafts such as weaving and pottery.*

a local craft *The village shop sells local crafts as well as food.*

a rural/country craft *The museum contains exhibits of old rural crafts.*

a skilled craft *Building stone walls is a highly skilled craft.*

VERBS

learn a craft *As a girl, she had to learn the craft of hand sewing.*

practise a craft *BrE*, **practice a craft** *AmE* (=make something skilfully with your hands) *They use traditional tools to practise their ancient crafts.*

craft + NOUNS

craft work (=things made by hand) *Craft work, such as hand-knitted items or decorated cakes, often sells well.*

a craft fair (=an event where people buy and sell crafts)

a craft shop (=that sells things made by hand)

PHRASES

arts and crafts (=art and beautiful things produced by hand) *We went to an exhibition of Indian arts and crafts.*

craftsmanship *n*

skill at making something in a beautiful or detailed way

ADVERBS

fine/good craftsmanship *The chair is truly an example of the finest craftsmanship.*

superb/exquisite/superior craftsmanship *The watch is well-made and the craftsmanship is superb.*

skilled/expert craftsmanship *The local people have a reputation for skilled craftsmanship.*

traditional craftsmanship *We use traditional craftsmanship, and every puppet is carved by hand.*

PHRASES

the quality of the craftsmanship *The quality of the craftsmanship is very impressive.*

the standard of craftsmanship *In Japan, the standard of craftsmanship is very high.*

a fine/superb etc piece of craftsmanship *The carving is a superb piece of craftsmanship.*

cramped *adj* THESAURUS small (1)

crash *n*

an accident in which a vehicle violently hits something else

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + crash

a car/train/plane crash *He was badly hurt in a car crash.*

an air/rail/road crash *There will be an investigation into the cause of the air crash.*

a fatal crash *There have been several fatal crashes on this road.*

a horrific/terrible/appalling crash *She was left paralysed after a horrific crash.*

a head-on crash (=in which the front parts of two vehicles hit each other) *He died in a head-on crash with a lorry.*

a high-speed crash *In a high-speed crash, this kind of seat belt is not adequate.*

VERBS

have a crash (*also* **be involved in a crash**) (=in a car) *I've been nervous about driving since I had a crash last year.*

survive a crash *The pilot and one passenger survived the crash.*

cause a crash *So far, there are no clues as to what caused the crash.*

a crash happens/occurs *The crash happened on the corner of Ongar Road.*

a crash involves sth *Two women were taken to hospital after a crash involving a bus and a car.*

a crash kills sb *The crash killed the two crew members and three people on the ground.*

crash + NOUNS

a crash victim *Families of the crash victims want to know what happened.*

the crash site/scene *The authorities closed off a five-mile area around the crash site.*

a crash investigator *Crash investigators spent several days examining the scene.*

PREPOSITIONS

a crash with sth *A motorcyclist has been killed in a crash with a stolen car.*

a crash between sth and sth *Fifty people were taken to hospital after a crash between a coach and a lorry.*

THESAURUS: crash

crash, collision, disaster, wreck, pile-up → **accident**

crater *n*

a round hole in the ground made by something that has fallen on it or by an explosion

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + crater

a deep crater *The explosion left a deep crater.*

a large/huge/massive crater *The large craters were formed by volcanic activity.*

a bomb crater *The road was dotted with bomb craters.*

a volcanic crater *There are more than 400 volcanic craters in the region.*

a lunar crater (=on the moon) *You can look at lunar craters through a telescope.*

VERBS

leave a crater *The blast left a 10-foot crater in the car park.*

PHRASES

the rim of a crater (=the edge of a crater) *You can walk around the rim of the crater.*

crazy *adj informal*

very strange or not at all sensible

NOUNS

a crazy person/man/woman *There are some crazy people out there.*

a crazy idea/thought/suggestion *It sounds like a crazy idea to me.*

a crazy plan/scheme *Her father had lots of crazy schemes for making money.*

a crazy world *We're living in a crazy world.*

a crazy thing *When you're young, you do all kinds of crazy things.*

ADVERBS

absolutely/totally/completely crazy *You're absolutely crazy to trust someone like him.*

VERBS

sound/seem crazy *It seems crazy to spend all that money on one meal.*

think sb is crazy *My parents think I'm crazy to leave my job.*

THESAURUS: crazy

mad *BrE informal*
idea | scheme | suggestion | world
crazy:
*Whose mad idea was that? | Sometimes I think we are living in a mad world. | **You must be mad** to go out in weather like this. | At first, everyone thought he was **completely mad**.*

insane *informal*
look | grin | desire
completely crazy:
*The man had an insane grin on his face. | Steiner had an insane desire to laugh. | I know it **sounds insane**, but it's true. | My friends all **think** I'm **insane**.*

eccentric
person | character | millionaire | family | behaviour | habits
behaving in a way that seems a little strange or unusual to other people:
The professor was a rather eccentric person who never wore matching socks. | Hughes was an eccentric millionaire who designed his own plane. | Her friends became worried about her increasingly eccentric behaviour.

create *v* THESAURUS invent, make (1)

creative *adj*

involving the use of imagination to produce new ideas or things

ADVERBS

highly/extremely creative *They came up with some highly creative solutions.*

NOUNS

the creative process *He talks about the creative process of writing a poem.*

a creative genius *Picasso was a creative genius.*

a creative idea/solution *We need some good creative ideas.*

creative thinking *I wanted to be alone so that I could do some creative thinking.*

creative writing *I teach creative writing at Trinity College.*

creature *n*

anything that is living and is not a plant

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + creature

a living creature *He was always careful not to hurt any living creature.*

a wild creature *Damage to the environment affects all wild creatures.*

a sea/marine creature *They catch fish and other sea creatures in their nets.*

a woodland creature *Rabbits, foxes, and other woodland creatures regularly came into the garden.*

a little/small/tiny creature *Not all small creatures are pests.*

a furry creature *My cats kill birds and small furry creatures.*

a strange creature *A lot of strange creatures live in the depths of the sea.*

a beautiful/magnificent creature *The buffalo is a magnificent creature.*

a shy creature *These shy creatures are rarely seen.*

a mythical creature (=of a type that exists only in stories) *The unicorn is a mythical creature that looks like a horse with a single horn.*

credible *adj*

deserving or able to be believed or trusted

ADJECTIVES

highly credible (=very credible) *His story is highly credible.*

scarcely/barely credible *Her excuse was barely credible.*

wholly credible (=completely credible) *I find his version of what happened to be wholly credible.*

NOUNS

a credible witness *The judge refused to accept her as a credible witness.*

credible evidence/information *There is no credible evidence that ghosts exist.*

C

criminal negligence (=not taking enough care to protect people you are responsible for) *Charges of criminal negligence were brought against senior staff.*

2 relating to actions of lawyers or the police that are concerned with crime

NOUNS

a criminal charge *He faces criminal charges under the Official Secrets Act.*

a criminal conviction (=an official decision that someone is guilty of a crime) *He had a criminal conviction for fraud.*

a criminal investigation *The FBI is conducting a criminal investigation into the bombing.*

a criminal record (=the fact that someone has committed crimes in the past, which the police have a record of) *It can be difficult for someone with a criminal record to find work.*

the criminal justice system *How effective is our criminal justice system?*

a criminal case *These courts deal with the overwhelming majority of criminal cases.*

a criminal trial *His year-long criminal trial ended in October.*

a criminal court (=that deals with crimes) *The trial will take place in an international criminal court.*

criminal law *The basic principle of English criminal law is that a person is presumed innocent until they have been shown to be guilty of an offence.*

Criminal or civil?

You use **criminal** when talking about crimes, for example robbery or crimes of violence. You use **civil** about cases involving legal disagreements about property, business etc, rather than crimes: *The case will be heard in a **civil court**. | The magistrate deals with **civil** cases.*

crisis *n*

a very bad situation, especially one that must be dealt with quickly

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + crisis

a major/serious/deep/severe crisis *The company is in the middle of a major financial crisis.*

the worst/biggest crisis *This is the worst crisis the industry has ever faced.*

an economic/political/financial etc crisis *Europe was hit by an economic crisis.*

an energy/fuel/debt etc crisis *The rising cost of oil could create another energy crisis.*

a worsening/deepening crisis *The strikes came during a worsening economic crisis.*

a personal/family crisis *She had to take time off work because of a family crisis.*

a constitutional crisis (=relating to the way a country is governed) *President Nixon's involvement in the Watergate Affair led to a constitutional crisis.*

a midlife crisis (=when someone is in their 40s or 50s and realises they are no longer young) *Some men have a midlife crisis and start dating women half their age.*

VERBS

create/cause a crisis *The people fled the country, creating a huge refugee crisis.*

face a crisis *Many families are facing a debt crisis.*

go through/experience a crisis *The company is going through a serious financial crisis.*

deal with/handle a crisis *Many voters thought the president handled the crisis badly.*

tackle/resolve a crisis (=deal with it successfully) *We still hope that the hostage crisis can be resolved by negotiation.*

avert a crisis *formal* (=stop it happening) *More talks were proposed in an attempt to avert a crisis.*

a crisis is looming (=seems likely to happen soon) *There is a crisis looming for the European Union.*

crisis + NOUNS

a crisis situation *We could end up in a crisis situation.*

(a) crisis point (=the point at which a problem becomes a crisis) *Events were now reaching crisis point.*

crisis management *Most of my job consists of crisis management.*

crisis talks (=discussions about a crisis) *The prime minister went back to London for crisis talks.*

PREPOSITIONS

in crisis *The country is in crisis.*

during a crisis *During the oil crisis, American companies began producing smaller cars.*

in a crisis *We want a leader who can keep calm in a crisis.*

PHRASES

a time of crisis *The countries provide support for each other in times of crisis.*

a way out of a crisis *There appears to be no way out of the current financial crisis.*

crispy *adj* THESAURUS hard (1)

criterion Ac *n*

a standard that you use to judge something or make a decision about something

This word is usually used in the plural, which is **criteria**. The singular word **criterion** sounds very formal.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + criterion

the main/key criteria *What are your main*

criteria when you are choosing someone for the job?

the sole criterion (=the only one) *Examination results are still seen as the sole criterion for success in education.*

objective criteria (=based on fact and not opinion) *Are there objective criteria for deciding whether a work of art is good or bad?*

strict criteria *All the cars are tested to make sure they meet strict criteria.*

basic/essential criteria *The form sets out the basic criteria for applying for a loan.*

selection criteria (=for choosing someone or something) *Our two main selection criteria were the skill of the artists, and their ability to teach.*

VERBS

meet/satisfy/fulfil the criteria *I hope my experience meets the criteria for the job.*

use/apply criteria *What criteria do we use to decide whether one book is better than another?*

be based on criteria *The judge's decisions are based on clear criteria.*

establish/set out/lay down criteria *The criteria are laid down in the official guidelines.*

PREPOSITIONS

criteria for (doing) sth *The document gives the criteria for assessing students' work.*

PHRASES

a set/list of criteria *There is a list of criteria that you must meet in order to pass your driving test.*

critic *n*

1 someone whose job is to write or broadcast giving their opinion of new plays, films, exhibitions etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + critic

a film/art/music etc critic *Film critics say that it is his best film for a long time.*

a literary critic *Literary critics were shocked by the novel when it first appeared.*

a theatre/restaurant/food critic *One restaurant critic said that the food was overpriced.*

a distinguished critic (=well known and very respected) *She is one of the country's most distinguished art critics.*

VERBS

a critic reviews sth (=writes or says what they think of it) *The critics who reviewed the play said that it wasn't very good.*

a critic praises sth *The play was highly praised by critics.*

a critic pans sth *informal* (*also* **a critic slates sth** *BrE informal*) (=criticizes something strongly) *The film was panned by critics but was a commercial success.*

a critic hails sth as sth (=describes something as very good) *Critics hailed the film as a triumph.*

2 someone who criticizes a person, organization, idea etc

ADJECTIVES

a fierce/harsh/sharp/strong critic *He is one of the president's fiercest critics.*

a leading/prominent critic (=one who is well known for criticizing someone or something) *She has been among the leading critics of the theory.*

an outspoken/vocal critic (=one who often criticizes very openly and directly) *Her father, an outspoken critic of the regime, was killed by police.*

a frequent critic *He has been a frequent critic of the government.*

a longtime critic (=one who has been criticizing someone or something for a long time) *The senator is a longtime critic of the war.*

VERBS

answer your critics *How would you answer your critics?*

silence your critics (=make them stop criticizing you) *The regime tried to silence its critics.*

confound your critics (=do well after being criticized) *She confounded her critics and the show was a great success.*

PREPOSITIONS

a critic of sth *The senator is well-known as a critic of the president's economic policies.*

PHRASES

prove your critics wrong *She was desperate to prove her critics wrong.*

sth has its critics (*also* **sth is not without its critics**) (=it is criticized by some people) *This policy was not without its critics within the party.*

critical *adj*

1 if you are critical, you criticize someone or something

ADJECTIVES

highly critical *He made some highly critical remarks.*

strongly critical *Many parents are strongly critical of the school.*

openly critical *She was openly critical of the government's decision.*

PREPOSITIONS

critical of sth/sb *The teacher was rather critical of my essay.*

NOUNS

a critical comment/remark *He made some very critical comments about the prime minister.*

a critical report *She wrote a highly critical report about the country's prison system.*

a critical assessment *The book provides a critical assessment of the poet's major works.*

C

2 extremely important

ADJECTIVES

absolutely critical *It's absolutely critical that we find out the truth.*

NOUNS

a critical factor *Temperature is the most critical factor in food storage.*

a critical issue *We need an immediate decision on this critical issue.*

a critical moment/time *Right now he faces the most critical time in his career.*

a critical period/stage in sth *The negotiations have reached a critical stage.*

a critical need for sth *There is a critical need for food and clean water in the disaster area.*

PHRASES

of critical importance *Foreign trade is of critical importance to the country.*

criticism *n*

remarks that say what you think is bad about someone or something

ADJECTIVES

strong/severe/heavy criticism *The decision to build the road received strong criticism from environmental groups.*

fierce/harsh/sharp/bitter criticism (=involving angry feelings) *The prison system has been the object of fierce criticism.*

main criticism *My main criticism is that the film is too long.*

a major criticism *One major criticism is that the system is very complicated.*

a minor criticism *A minor criticism of the book is that the sections are not numbered.*

a valid criticism *In his article, he made a number of valid criticisms.*

unfair criticism *I feel young people come in for a lot of unfair criticism.*

constructive criticism (=that will help you improve something) *I welcome constructive criticism of my work.*

public criticism (=in public) *As a politician, you have to get used to public criticism.*

widespread criticism (=from many different people) *There was widespread criticism of his speech.*

growing/mounting criticism *The government last night faced mounting criticism over its plans to introduce a new higher rate of tax.*

outspoken criticism (=said very openly and directly) *I was surprised by his outspoken criticism of the system.*

scathing criticism (=attacking someone or something very strongly) *The minister came in for scathing criticism from the press.*

VERBS

make a criticism *The only criticism I would make is that the film was a little too long.*

express/voice a criticism *The report expressed criticism of the way the police handled the situation.*

face criticism *The United States faces international criticism because of its refusal to take part in the talks.*

come under criticism/come in for criticism (*also* **be subjected to criticism** *formal*) (=be criticized) *The new law came under fierce criticism.*

receive/meet with criticism (=be criticized) *His theory met with harsh criticism from colleagues.*

draw/attract/provoke criticism (=be criticized) *The plan has drawn criticism from environmental groups.*

accept/take criticism (=listen to it and learn from it) *I am not very good at taking criticism.*

level/direct criticism at sb/sth (=criticize someone or something) *A great deal of criticism was levelled at the manager.*

single sb out for criticism (=criticize one person in particular) *The goalkeeper was singled out for criticism.*

answer/address a criticism *How would you answer their criticisms?*

PREPOSITIONS

criticism of sb/sth *There has been much criticism of the government's housing policy.*

PHRASES

be the subject/object of criticism (=be criticized by people) *The club has been the subject of criticism since last October.*

be open to criticism (=be able to be criticized) *The magazine is open to criticism for printing the article.*

be sensitive to criticism (=care about or be upset by criticism) *He was highly sensitive to criticism in the press.*

a storm/barrage of criticism (=a lot of criticism) *His comments provoked a barrage of criticism.*

criticize (*also* criticise *BrE*) *v*

to say that you think someone has done something badly, or that something has been badly done

ADVERBS

strongly/severely/heavily criticize sb/sth *The president was strongly criticized for the way in which he handled the crisis.*

sharply/harshly criticize sb/sth (=in an angry way) *The report sharply criticized the behaviour of some banks.*

criticize sb unfairly *He feels that he has been criticized unfairly.*

be widely criticized (=by many people) *The research has been widely criticized, because of the methods that were used.*

publicly criticize sb/sth *The coach publicly criticized the referee's decision.*

openly criticize sb/sth (=in a public and direct way) *People who openly criticize the government are likely to end up in prison.*

PREPOSITIONS

criticize sb/sth for (doing) sth *He criticized the president for failing to send aid.*

be criticized as sth *The system has been criticized as undemocratic.*

PHRASES

be quick to criticize sb/sth *Their opponents were quick to criticize the plan.*

criticize sb/sth on the grounds that (=for the reason that) *The survey was criticized on the grounds that the sample was too small.*

crop *n*

1 a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + crop

the wheat/cereal/rice etc crop *In January, farmers prepare the ground for the potato crop.*

a food crop *The land is unfit for food crops.*

a staple crop (=an important one that forms a big part of people's diet) *In Japan, rice has been the staple crop for centuries.*

a cash crop (=grown to be sold rather than used) *Cotton is grown here as a cash crop.*

an export crop (=grown to be exported) *Cocoa is the country's main export crop.*

genetically modified crops (*also* **GM crops**) (=ones that have had their genetic structure changed) *GM crops could cause huge problems for the environment.*

VERBS + crop

grow a crop (*also* **cultivate a crop** *formal*): *They grow crops such as beans and maize.*

plant/sow a crop *They cleared the ground and planted crops.*

spray crops *Crops are sprayed with chemicals to protect against insects and disease.*

irrigate crops (=water them) *Water from the river was used to irrigate crops.*

rotate crops (=regularly change the crops grown on a piece of land) *Crops are sometimes rotated with grass.*

sth destroys/damages a crop *The crops were destroyed by insects.*

crop + VERBS

a crop grows *They prayed for rain that would help the crops grow.*

a crop fails (=does not grow or produce food properly) *The drought meant the crops failed and food was scarce.*

crop + NOUNS

crop production *The area is mostly unsuitable for crop production.*

crop failure (=failure to grow or produce food) *Ethiopia's 1989 crop failure was disastrous.*

crop damage *The storms caused crop damage across the country.*

crop rotation (=the practice of not growing the same crops in the same place each year) *Crop rotation helps build up soil fertility.*

2 the amount of wheat, rice, fruit etc that is produced in a season

ADJECTIVES

a good/heavy/big crop *We had a good crop this year.*

a bumper crop (=a very large amount) *They will have to find somewhere to store their bumper crop.*

a record crop (=the largest amount ever) *They had a record crop of grapes last year.*

a poor crop *Food prices rose last spring as a result of poor crops.*

VERBS

produce/yield a crop *Olive trees usually produce a big crop every two years.*

harvest/bring in/gather a crop *Brazil's coffee crop begins to be harvested in May.*

PREPOSITIONS

a crop of sth *If you follow these instructions, you should get a good crop of apples next year.*

cross[1] *v*

to go from one side of something to the other

NOUNS

cross a road/street *Always look carefully when you are crossing the street.*

cross a river *We decided to cross the river lower down.*

cross the ocean/sea *They crossed the Atlantic Ocean in a small sailing ship.*

cross a border *The men had crossed the border illegally.*

cross a bridge *After crossing the bridge, follow the path on your right.*

cross a line *He crossed the finish line in under 10 seconds.*

cross[2] *adj* THESAURUS angry

crowd *n*

a large group of people who have gathered together to do or watch something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + crowd

a big/large/huge crowd *A big crowd gathered outside the parliament building.*

a good crowd (=a big one at an event) *There was a good crowd on the first night of the show.*

a 5,000-strong/15,000-strong etc crowd *The match took place in front of a 30,000-strong crowd.*

a record crowd (=the biggest one there has

ever been) *They were playing before a record crowd of 50,000.*

a capacity crowd (=the largest number that a place can hold) *The band performed brilliantly to a capacity crowd.*

a sellout crowd (=one at an event where every ticket has been sold) *The team won in front of a sellout crowd of 17,765.*

an angry/hostile crowd *The president's car was attacked by an angry crowd.*

an excited/enthusiastic/appreciative/adoring crowd *Clinton was greeted by an enthusiastic crowd.*

the home crowd (=the supporters of the team who are playing in their own town or country) *There was a roar from the home crowd as he scored.*

crowd + VERBS

a crowd gathers *A large crowd had gathered to watch the procession.*

a crowd cheers *The crowd cheered as the team came onto the pitch.*

a crowd roars (=shouts loudly in a very excited way) *As the band appeared, the crowd roared in approval.*

a crowd disperses/breaks up (=goes away in different directions) *The speech finished and the crowd began to disperse.*

crowds line the street/route etc *Huge crowds lined the streets on the day of the royal wedding.*

VERBS + crowd

attract/draw a crowd *The ceremony is expected to draw a crowd of more than 1,000.*

pull in a crowd (=attract a lot of people) *Low prices always pull in the crowds.*

disperse/break up a crowd (=make a crowd go away in different directions) *Troops fired warning shots in an attempt to disperse the crowd.*

address a crowd (=speak to them) *He went up onto the platform and addressed the crowd.*

mingle/mix with the crowd (=join a crowd to be friendly or in order not to be noticed) *Police officers in plain clothes were sent to mingle with the crowd.*

PHRASES

a crowd of people/supporters/demonstrators *I pushed my way through the crowd of people.*

a crowd of onlookers (=people who stop to watch something that is happening) *A crowd of onlookers had gathered to see what the argument was about.*

crowded *adj*

if a place is crowded, there are a lot of people and it is difficult to move around

NOUNS

a crowded train/bus *The train was very crowded, and we had to stand.*

a crowded restaurant/bar/room etc *We were in a crowded bar, full of English soccer fans.*

a crowded street *She pushed her way through the narrow crowded streets.*

a crowded station/airport *The stations are always crowded during the rush hour.*

PREPOSITIONS

crowded with people/traffic/shoppers *The narrow streets were crowded with holiday traffic.*

ADVERBS

densely crowded *The people live in densely crowded conditions.*

increasingly crowded *The roads are becoming increasingly crowded and we all need to use our cars less.*

THESAURUS: crowded

packed
train | house | hall | courtroom
you use **packed** about trains, theatres, and other public places that are very crowded:
The trains are always packed at this time of day. | On the first night of the play, the house was packed (=the theatre was completely full). *| He spoke to a packed lecture hall. | There was silence in the packed courtroom. | The bus was* ***packed with*** *people returning from their holidays.*

busy
road | street | intersection | town | station | airport | shopping centre
a busy road, town etc is full of people or vehicles:
He was crossing a busy street and got hit by a car. | Skipton is a busy market town. | The group exploded a bomb outside a busy railway station. | At this time of day, the city centre is ***busy with*** *shoppers.*

overcrowded
cities | prison | train | conditions
if a place is overcrowded, there are too many people in it and it feels uncomfortable:
More and more people are choosing to leave Japan's overcrowded cities. | The country's prisons are terribly overcrowded. | Perry was fed up with travelling on overcrowded trains to a boring bank job. | The workers live in overcrowded conditions.

teeming
streets | cities
full of people who are all moving around – used to describe a place where there is a lot of activity:
He got lost in the teeming streets of Cairo. | In the teeming cities of Asia, car pollution is becoming more and more of a problem. | The border area is ***teeming with*** *soldiers.*

THESAURUS: crowded

crowded, congested → **busy (2)**

crucial Ac *adj*

extremely important, especially because other things depend on it

NOUNS

a crucial factor/part/element *Timing was a crucial factor in the company's success.*

a crucial point *They forget to mention one crucial point – how are we going to pay back the money?*

the crucial thing *The crucial thing is not to start until you are completely ready.*

a crucial issue/question *They will be focusing on the crucial issue of the economy.*

a crucial moment/time/point/stage *He withdrew his support at a crucial moment.*

a crucial difference *There is a crucial difference between British and American attitudes.*

a crucial step *The talks are a crucial step towards peace.*

crucial information/evidence *The government did not share this crucial information.*

a crucial decision *This is a crucial decision which needs a lot of careful thought.*

ADVERBS

absolutely crucial *Technology has an absolutely crucial role in modern medicine.*

VERBS

prove crucial (=be crucial) *His appointment was to prove crucial to the organization's success.*

remain crucial *Oil remains crucial to the country's economy.*

regard/consider sth as crucial *The city was regarded as crucial to the area's defence.*

PREPOSITIONS

crucial to/for (doing) sth *In some countries, money is crucial to success in politics.*

crucial in doing sth *Ted's mother was crucial in forming his outlook on life.*

PHRASES

play a crucial role/part in sth *Parents play a crucial role in preparing their children for adult life.*

be of crucial importance *Good leadership is of crucial importance in motivating staff.*

THESAURUS: crucial

big, significant, major, notable, key, essential, vital, crucial/critical, paramount, historic, landmark, momentous → **important (1)**

crude *adj* THESAURUS simple

cruel *adj*

1 very unkind – used when someone deliberately causes suffering to a person or an animal

NOUNS

a cruel man/woman/person *The king was a cruel man and everyone hated him.*

a cruel joke/trick *Simon made cruel jokes about her appearance.*

cruel treatment *There are laws against the cruel treatment of prisoners.*

a cruel punishment *The death penalty is an unnecessarily cruel punishment.*

a cruel sport *Many people think hunting is a cruel sport.*

a cruel act *He deserves to be punished for this cruel act.*

a cruel streak (=a cruel part of your character) *My boss had a cruel streak and she loved to humiliate people.*

ADVERBS

unnecessarily cruel *His reaction seemed unnecessarily cruel.*

unspeakably/hideously cruel (=in an extreme and shocking way) *The press were unspeakably cruel about her.*

PREPOSITIONS

cruel to sb *Children can be very cruel to each other sometimes.*

THESAURUS: cruel

heartless
not feeling any pity and not caring about other people or their problems:
*He was **cold and heartless** and had no concern for the welfare of his employees. | How could you be so heartless? | Heartless thieves stole all the old lady's money.*

sadistic
pleasure | treatment | violence | killer | crime | streak
getting pleasure from making other people suffer:
The guards took sadistic pleasure in abusing prisoners. | The judge described him as a sadistic killer who showed no mercy to his victims. | He had a sadistic streak in him which frightened her.

barbaric
act | practice | murder | crime | sport | punishment
extremely cruel, in a way that shocks people:
The bombing was a barbaric act. | Keeping chickens in tiny cages is a barbaric practice. | We have all been profoundly shocked by this barbaric crime.

vicious
attack | assault | war | fight | dog | killer
very violent and cruel, especially by suddenly

attacking someone and causing injury to them:
It was a vicious attack on an innocent man. | *A vicious war broke out between terrorist groups.* | *Some dogs can be vicious.*

Vicious is also used when someone says or writes cruel things: *The newspaper launched a **vicious attack** on him.* | *I don't know who was responsible for these **vicious rumours**.*

brutal
assault | **attack** | **murder** | **killing** | **violence** | **treatment** | **dictator** | **regime** | **honesty** | **criticism**
very cruel and violent, in a way that shows no human feelings:
He was the victim of a brutal assault. | *Many people died under his brutal regime* (=political system). | *One of the judges is known for his brutal honesty* (=honesty that might upset people).

inhumane
treatment | **act** | **conditions**
inhumane conditions, treatment etc cause too much suffering and should not be allowed:
The prisoners were subjected to inhumane treatment. | *The animals had been kept in inhumane conditions.* | *The punishments were inhumane and degrading* (=showing no respect).

cold-blooded
murder | **killing** | **massacre** | **killer** | **murderer** | **psychopath**
extremely cruel and showing no pity or emotion when killing or attacking someone:
Bates was charged with the cold-blooded murder of his girlfriend. | *Prosecutors say the brothers are cold-blooded killers.*

2 used when something happens that makes someone suffer or feel very unhappy

NOUNS

a cruel blow *His death was a cruel blow.*
a cruel irony (=situation that is cruel and unusual or the opposite of what you expect) *It's a cruel irony that a woman who has helped so many cancer sufferers should die from cancer herself.*
a cruel twist (of fate) (=a cruel situation that you were not expecting) *He considered his illness to be a cruel twist of fate.*
a cruel world *It's a cruel world out there.*
a cruel death *His cruel death from a brain tumour at the age of 35 devastated his parents.*

cruelty *n*
behaviour or actions that deliberately cause pain to people or animals

ADJECTIVES

deliberate cruelty *This was an act of deliberate cruelty which deserves the most severe punishment allowed.*
terrible/unimaginable cruelty *The prisoners were treated with unimaginable cruelty.*
extreme cruelty *The film contains scenes of extreme cruelty.*
mental cruelty (=involving the mind rather than the body) *The most common reason women give for leaving their husbands is mental cruelty.*

VERBS

inflict cruelty on sb (=do something cruel to someone) *The court found him guilty of inflicting cruelty on a child.*
suffer cruelty *Animals should not be allowed to suffer cruelty.*

NOUNS + cruelty

animal/child cruelty *Her ex-partner was convicted of child cruelty.*

PREPOSITIONS

cruelty to/towards sb *Cruelty towards slaves was common.*

PHRASES

an act of cruelty *formal*: *He was charged with committing an act of cruelty.*

cruise *n*
a holiday on a boat, or a journey by boat for pleasure

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cruise

a luxury cruise *He went on a luxury cruise to Alaska.*
a Mediterranean/Caribbean/Nile etc cruise *On our Mediterranean cruise, we visited Italy, Greece, and Turkey.*
a world cruise (=around the world) *How much would a world cruise cost?*
a river cruise *We all enjoyed the river cruise on the Rhine.*
a pleasure cruise *I wanted to take a pleasure cruise on the lake.*

VERBS

go on a cruise *What about going on a cruise down the Nile?*
take a cruise *We thought about taking a ten-day cruise in the Caribbean.*

cruise + NOUNS

a cruise ship/liner *It is the largest cruise ship ever built.*
a cruise line/operator (=a company that provides cruises) *Many cruise lines offer short cruises out of Florida.*

crumb *n* THESAURUS piece

crumble *v* THESAURUS break[1] (1)

crunchy *adj* THESAURUS hard (1)

cry[1] *v*

1 to produce tears, usually because you are unhappy or hurt

ADVERBS

cry quietly/softly/silently *The woman was crying softly to herself in a corner of the room.*

cry loudly *The little boy cried loudly and refused to go up to his room.*

cry uncontrollably *When she saw him, she started to cry uncontrollably.*

cry hysterically (=very loudly and uncontrollably) *The girl cried hysterically and her friends tried to calm her.*

VERBS

make sb cry *The end of the book was so sad that it made me cry.*

PREPOSITIONS

cry about/over sth *I didn't know what he was crying about.*

cry for sb (=because you feel sorry for them, or want them) *She cried for herself and for all those who had suffered like her.*

cry with rage/pain/relief etc *I was almost crying with rage.*

PHRASES

can't stop crying *She was so unhappy, she couldn't stop crying.*

feel like crying (=used when something makes you feel very upset) *Today's been a really bad day. I just felt like crying.*

cry your eyes out/cry your heart out (=cry a lot) *Lucy read the letter and cried her eyes out.*

cry all the time *When my girlfriend left me, I cried all the time.*

cry like a baby (=cry a lot and without control) *I cried like a baby when I heard the news.*

cry yourself to sleep (=cry until you fall asleep) *That night, in his lonely room, he cried himself to sleep.*

2 to shout or say something loudly: *"Someone please help us!" he cried. | I heard someone cry my name.*

cry[2] *n*

a shout or a loud sound expressing pain, fear, pleasure etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cry

a loud cry *There were loud cries of protest when he said this.*

a great cry (=a loud cry by a lot of people) *With a great cry, they charged into battle.*

a small/little cry *She gave a small cry and ran towards me.*

a low cry (=not loud or high) *I heard a long low cry of despair.*

a sharp cry (=loud, short, and sudden) *He gave a sharp cry of pain.*

a muffled/faint cry (=that cannot be heard clearly) *I thought I heard a muffled cry from the next room.*

a plaintive cry (=a high sad cry) *They could hear the plaintive cries of the wounded.*

a battle/war cry (=used in a battle to show courage and frighten the enemy) *They charged forward, shouting their battle cry.*

VERBS

give/let out/utter a cry *The woman looked up and gave a cry of fear.*

PREPOSITIONS

a cry of pain/despair/delight etc *He fell with a sharp cry of surprise.*

a cry for help/mercy etc *Two walkers heard his cries for help.*

a cry of "No"/"Stop" etc *There were cries of "No!" from the crowd.*

cube *n* THESAURUS piece

cult[1] *adj*

popular and fashionable, often among a small group of people

cult + NOUNS

a cult film/book/show/TV programme *'Easy Rider' became a cult film in the late 1960s.*

a cult object *The Mini is a classic car, cult object, and lifestyle symbol.*

a cult hero *The actor James Dean acquired the status of a cult hero.*

a cult figure *His sense of humor and fondness for simple rock and roll helped make him a cult figure.*

a cult following (=small group of people who admire someone or something) *The band soon acquired a cult following.*

cult status *The actress gained cult status for her role in the 1965 Russ Meyer movie 'Faster, Pussycat! Kill!'*

cult[2] *n*

a small religious group with extreme beliefs

VERBS

join a cult *He joined a strange religious cult.*

belong to a cult *She belongs to a cult, having abandoned her family many years ago.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cult

a religious cult *It is surprisingly easy for people to become involved in religious cults.*

cult + NOUNS

a cult leader *The cult leader ordered his followers to commit suicide.*

a cult member (*also* **a member of a cult**) *Cult members are not allowed to read or watch anything not produced by the cult itself.*

C

cultural Ac *adj*

relating to a particular society and its way of life

NOUNS

cultural heritage (=ideas, customs etc that have existed for a long time) *Greeks are proud of their cultural heritage.*

cultural life *The festival is a major event in British cultural life.*

cultural values (=ideas of what is right and wrong in a culture) *It is important to be aware of local cultural values.*

cultural identity (=a feeling of belonging to a group and sharing its values) *Children develop a sense of their cultural identity at a young age.*

cultural differences *People should be tolerant of cultural differences.*

cultural diversity (=including people from many different cultures) *We all benefit from the cultural diversity of British society.*

cultural background *People from different cultural backgrounds had the chance to exchange ideas.*

cultural tradition *The city has a proud cultural tradition and there are lots of theatres, concert halls, and museums.*

cultural factors/influences *Cultural factors are important in a child's ability to learn foreign languages.*

cultural context (=the culture at a particular place or time) *This chapter looks at the cultural context in which the French Revolution took place.*

culture Ac *n*

1 the ideas, beliefs, and ways of behaving of people in a particular society or organization

ADJECTIVES

national culture *Sport is part of our national culture.*

local culture *The local culture of the island has much to interest visitors.*

traditional/ancient culture *They have a traditional culture which has hardly changed in 500 years.*

Western/American/Japanese etc culture *Modern Korean society is heavily influenced by American culture.*

youth culture (=of young people) *Music and clothes are very important in youth culture.*

modern culture *Technology is a vital part of modern culture.*

human culture *Stories about how the earth was created are found in every human culture.*

a common culture (=one that different societies or people share) *Many European countries share a common culture.*

the dominant culture (=the one that has the most influence) *Youth culture is the dominant culture in Western society.*

culture + NOUNS

culture shock (=confusion or shock that you may feel in a very different place) *During my first weeks in Britain, I experienced huge culture shock.*

culture clash (=problems between people or groups because of different cultures) *There was a culture clash when the companies merged.*

VERBS

create/build a culture *The head teacher wants to create a culture of honesty and openness among staff.*

PHRASES

be part of sb's culture *The car is so much part of American culture.*

a culture of fear/blame/secrecy etc *It is clear that a culture of secrecy existed within the company.*

2 art, music, and similar activities

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + culture

popular culture (*also* **pop culture** *informal*) (=enjoyed by a lot of ordinary people) *She writes about movies, pop music, and other aspects of popular culture.*

high culture (=enjoyed by highly educated people) *The government still gives money to support ballet, opera, and other high culture activities.*

folk culture (=traditional among a group or in a region) *Nursery rhymes and children's songs are part of folk culture.*

PHRASES

a man/woman/person of culture (=one who likes and understands art, music etc) *She is a woman of great culture and refinement.*

cunning *adj*

1 a cunning plan is clever and often involves tricking other people in order to get what you want

cunning + NOUNS

a cunning plan/plot *They used a cunning plan to get him out of prison.*

a cunning trick/ploy/ruse (=a clever trick or plan) *My uncle thought it was a cunning ploy intended to get money from him.*

a cunning strategy *The king won the battle by means of a cunning strategy, in which his men pretended they were about to surrender.*

THESAURUS: cunning

ingenious, brilliant, cunning → **clever (2)**

2 a cunning person is good at tricking people in a clever way in order to get what he or she wants

ADVERBS

very/extremely cunning *These people are very cunning and they will do everything they can to protect those closest to them.*

PHRASES

a cunning old devil *What is he doing now, the cunning old devil?*

as cunning as a fox *The old man was as cunning as a fox and it would be difficult to catch him.*

THESAURUS: cunning

clever, smart, bright, brilliant, gifted, wise, cunning, brainy → **intelligent**

cup *n*

a small round container for drinking coffee, tea, and similar drinks, or the amount of coffee, tea etc a cup contains

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cup

a full cup *The cup was full of hot tea.*

an empty cup *A girl was clearing away the empty cups.*

a whole cup *I spilled the whole cup on my skirt.*

a paper/plastic/china cup *The tea was served in plastic cups.*

a coffee cup *He picked up the coffee cups and took them into the kitchen.*

Teacup is usually spelled as one word.

VERBS

fill a cup *She filled the cup and handed it to him.*

drink/have a cup (of sth) *I drink two or three cups of coffee a day.*

drain/empty a cup (=drink all the coffee, tea etc in it) *He lifted his cup of coffee and drained it.*

drink out of/from a cup *He drinks from a cup placed next to his bed.*

make (sb) a cup of sth *I'll make you a cup of tea.*

pick up a cup (*also* **lift a cup**) *The woman lifted the cup and took a sip.*

put down a cup (*also* **set/lay down a cup** *formal*): *There was a mark on the table where someone had put a hot cup down on it.*

pour (sb) a cup *Pour yourself a cup from the teapot.*

order a cup of sth *She ordered a cup of coffee.*

PREPOSITIONS

a cup of sth *Two cups of tea, please.*

PHRASES

a cup and saucer *Do you prefer a mug or a cup and saucer?*

a set of cups *They bought a set of beautiful blue coffee cups.*

cupboard *n*

a piece of furniture for storing things, with doors and usually shelves

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cupboard

the kitchen/bathroom/bedroom etc cupboard *The kitchen cupboards were empty.*

the food/clothes/medicine etc cupboard *BrE*: *The medicine cupboard is in the bathroom.*

a built-in/fitted cupboard *BrE* (=that is there permanently and cannot be moved) *The kitchen has built-in cupboards.*

a storage cupboard *BrE* (=for storing things) *There was a storage cupboard under the stairs.*

the airing cupboard *BrE* (=a warm cupboard for sheets and towels) *She looked in the airing cupboard for a fresh towel.*

VERBS

keep sth in a cupboard *They keep coats in a cupboard in the hall.*

put sth in a cupboard *Please put your toys back in the cupboard.*

look in a cupboard *They looked in all the cupboards but could not find the camera.*

take sth out of a cupboard *We took all the dishes out of the cupboard so we could clean it.*

cupboard + NOUNS

a cupboard door *She pulled open the cupboard door.*

cupboard space (=space that cupboards provide for storing things) *It was a lovely big house with plenty of cupboard space.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a cupboard *Is there any flour in the cupboard?*

Cupboard is used especially in British English.

curb *v* THESAURUS stop[1] (3)

cure[1] *v*

to make an illness or medical condition go away

ADVERBS

be completely/fully cured *Her illness is now fully cured.*

be partially cured *His condition was only partially cured.*

be miraculously cured (=be cured in a very unexpected way, or be cured by an act of God) *The people who drank the water claimed that they had been miraculously cured.*

sth can easily be cured *The disease can easily be cured, providing you have access to modern medical treatment.*

sth can now be cured *Many types of cancer can now be cured.*

VERBS + cure

can cure sb/sth *The old man claims he can cure illness without using medicine.*

PREPOSITIONS

cure sb of sth *She was treated and cured of cancer by a team of German doctors.*

You can also use **cure** about dealing successfully with problems: *Installing new software could help to* **cure** *the* **problem**.

VERBS

a current flows *Sea currents flow at up to 12 miles per hour around parts of the coast.*

a current carries sb/sth *Their boat was moving fast, carried by the current.*

a current sweeps sb/sth away (=carries them away very powerfully) *The treacherous currents have swept away many swimmers.*

PREPOSITIONS

against the current (=in the opposite direction) *These fish swim upstream, against the current, to lay their eggs.*

with the current (=in the same direction) *We stopped rowing and allowed the boat to drift with the current.*

curriculum *n*

subjects that are taught, or things that are studied in a particular subject

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + curriculum

the school curriculum *Helping with community projects is part of the new school curriculum.*

the science/maths/English etc curriculum *The English curriculum is divided into Language and Literature.*

the National Curriculum (=the curriculum set by the government for schools in England and Wales) *Most independent schools also follow the National Curriculum.*

the academic curriculum *Some schools are moving away from teaching the traditional academic curriculum.*

a broad/broad-based/wide curriculum (=involving a wide range of different types of subjects) *The school offers a broad curriculum with a rich choice of learning opportunities.*

the core/common curriculum (=subjects that everyone must study because they are considered important) *English, Maths, and Science are the main elements of the core curriculum.*

VERBS

develop/design/plan a curriculum *The government has spent five years developing the new school curriculum.*

follow a curriculum *Five-year-olds now follow the National Curriculum.*

change/revise the curriculum *The education minister wants to revise the curriculum to include more practical subjects.*

introduce sth into a curriculum (=start to teach it as part of the curriculum) *Some parents objected when sex education was introduced into the curriculum.*

PREPOSITIONS

on the curriculum *Is the study of other religions on the curriculum?*

across the curriculum (=in all or many subjects) *Our exam results this year improved across the whole curriculum.*

PHRASES

be part of the curriculum *Moral education should be an important part of the school curriculum.*

curtain *n*

a piece of hanging cloth that covers a window, divides a room etc

VERBS

draw/close/shut the curtains (=move them to cover a window) *The room was dark because the curtains were drawn.*

open/draw (back)/pull back the curtains (=move them so that they do not cover a window) *He opened the curtains to let the sunlight in.*

put up/hang curtains (=fix new curtains) *She was standing on a ladder hanging some new curtains.*

curtains hang *Bright red curtains hung at all the windows.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + curtain

heavy/thick curtains *Heavy curtains help to keep the house warm.*

curtain + NOUNS

curtain fabric/material *During the war, women made dresses out of old curtain material.*

curve *n*

a line that gradually bends like part of a circle

ADJECTIVES

a gentle curve (=one that turns gradually) *From the hilltop, we could see the river's gentle curves.*

a sharp/tight curve (=one that turns suddenly) *There's a tight curve in the road up ahead.*

an upward/downward curve *Her eyes followed the upward curve of the bird's flight.*

a graceful curve *Her arm arched over her head in a graceful curve.*

a sweeping curve (=wide and gentle) *The road follows the sweeping curve of the bay.*

a smooth curve *We admired the smooth curves of the aircraft's design.*

curved *adj* THESAURUS round[1]

cushy *adj* THESAURUS easy

custom *n*

something that is traditionally done by people in a particular society

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + custom

a local custom *We were unfamiliar with the local customs.*

an old custom *We still follow the old custom of hiding a coin in the Christmas pudding.*

a traditional custom *The children learn about traditional customs, crafts, music, and dance.*

an ancient/age-old custom *The coming of spring is celebrated with many ancient customs.*

a French/Greek/Spanish etc custom *The Japanese custom is to take off your shoes when you enter someone's house.*

an established custom *This behaviour has become the established custom.*

a social custom *The length of people's hair varies according to social custom.*

a tribal custom (=of a tribe) *He knows a lot about African tribal customs.*

a quaint custom (=amusing and rather old-fashioned) *My father observed the quaint custom of standing up whenever a woman came into the room.*

VERBS

follow/observe a custom *He follows the Chinese custom of writing his family name first.*

respect a custom *Strangers should respect the customs of the country they are in.*

a custom survives *These old customs still survive in some rural areas.*

a custom dies out/disappears *Many of the region's ancient customs have died out.*

PREPOSITIONS

the custom of doing sth *Where did the custom of eating cheese with apple pie come from?*

according to custom (*also* **in accordance with custom**) (=because it is a custom) *According to Norwegian custom, the couple shared a bed the night before their wedding.*

PHRASES

it is the custom to do sth *In Korea, it is the custom to bow your head slightly when saying 'hello'.*

as is the custom (=because it is a custom) *We covered our heads with scarves before entering the church, as was the custom.*

customer *n*

someone who buys goods or services

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + customer

a regular customer *Our regular customers are particularly important to us.*

a major/big/large customer *The bank is one of our biggest customers.*

a good customer (=one who buys a lot of goods or services from a company) *He was a very good customer for local restaurants.*

a loyal customer *Some of our loyal customers have been coming here since the store opened.*

a potential/prospective customer (=who might become a customer in the future) *It is important for any company to make contact with potential customers.*

existing/current customers *We want to improve our service for both new and existing customers.*

a satisfied/happy customer *Satisfied customers will return again and again.*

a dissatisfied/unhappy customer *They received hundreds of calls from dissatisfied customers.*

a business/corporate customer *The bank has a separate department for dealing with business customers.*

VERBS

deal with a customer *He has a lot of experience in dealing with customers.*

serve a customer *Every day the shop serves around 800 customers.*

attract customers (*also* **bring in customers**) *The internet is a great way to attract new customers.*

keep/retain customers *Keeping prices low helps to retain customers.*

lose a customer *If we do not resolve this problem, we could lose customers.*

customer + NOUNS

customer service/care *Our aim is always to raise the level of customer service.*

customer relations *Staff are given training in customer relations.*

customer complaints *My job is to handle customer complaints and enquiries.*

customer base (=a company's group of customers) *The company aims to increase its customer base.*

cut[1] *v*

1 to use a knife, scissors, or another sharp tool to divide or remove something, make something look neat etc

NOUNS

cut (sb) a piece/slice of sth *Can I cut you another slice of pizza?*

cut food/bread/cake etc *The picture shows her cutting their wedding cake.*

cut wood/metal etc *The blade needs to be strong to cut metal.*

cut a hole in sth *They had to cut a hole in the kitchen wall for the water pipe.*

cut sb's nails *Her nails were cut very short.*

cut the grass/lawn/hedge *The grass needs cutting – it's getting very long.*

cut sb's hair *"Who cuts your hair? It looks really nice."*

PHRASES

cut sth in half *Cut the melon in half and remove the seeds.*

cut sth into pieces/slices/quarters *She cut the bread into thin slices.*

cut sth to size/length (=so that it is the size or length you need) *The shop will cut the wood to size for you.*

⚠ Don't say 'I cut my hair.' Say **I have my hair cut**: *She usually has her hair cut once every six weeks.*

a superficial cut (=not deep) *I'm fine – just a few superficial cuts.*

a bad/nasty cut (=wide or deep and bleeding a lot) *How did you get that nasty cut?*

a deep cut *She fell and got a deep cut on her leg.*

PREPOSITIONS

a cut on sth (*also* **a cut to sth** *formal*): *He was treated in hospital for cuts to his head.*

PHRASES

cuts and bruises (=cuts and dark marks on the skin) *He escaped the crash with just a few cuts and bruises.*

C

cute *adj* THESAURUS **beautiful**

CV *n BrE*

a document giving details of your qualifications and work experience, which you send to companies when applying for a job

ADJECTIVES

an impressive CV *His CV looks very impressive and he has a lot of experience.*

a full CV *They asked me to send a full CV with my application form.*

an up-to-date CV/a CV is up to date (=including all the latest information) *Always make sure that your CV is up to date.*

VERBS

send a CV *Please send your CV to the following address.*

enclose a CV (=include it with your letter) *I am interested in applying for the post of sales manager and I enclose my CV.*

write a CV *When you write your CV, you list your academic qualifications and the companies you have worked for.*

update a CV (=change it to include the latest information) *The last time I applied for a job was three years ago and my CV needs updating.*

CV is short for **curriculum vitae**.
British people say **CV**. American people say **resume**.

cycle Ac *n*

1 a set of related events that are repeated

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + cycle

the natural cycle *All creatures go through the natural cycle of birth and death.*

the complete/whole/full cycle *This is the complete cycle of operations that make the engine work.*

the yearly/monthly/weekly etc cycle *People lived according to the yearly cycle of planting and harvesting crops.*

the economic/business cycle *Every country's economy goes through periods of growth and decline – it's all part of the economic cycle.*

sth's life cycle (=the stages of life that happen in order) *The insects develop wings in the last stage of their life cycle.*

VERBS + cycle

follow a cycle *Human sleep patterns follow a natural cycle.*

go/pass through a cycle (=follow a cycle) *Economies seem to go through a regular cycle.*

break a cycle (=stop a bad cycle happening) *If people can get jobs, they can break the cycle of poverty and debt.*

reverse a cycle (=stop a bad cycle and make good things happen) *Exercise can actually reverse the cycle of poor sleeping and tiredness.*

complete a cycle *We protect the birds to allow them to complete their breeding cycle.*

cycle + VERBS

a cycle begins/ends *Winter snow disappears, plants grow, and the cycle of nature begins again.*

a cycle repeats itself *She wakes in the night, then falls asleep during the day, and this cycle repeats itself.*

PHRASES

the cycle of life (*also* **the cycle of birth and death**) *Getting old is all part of the cycle of life.*

the cycle of the seasons *Agricultural societies are very dependent on the cycle of the seasons.*

a cycle of poverty/violence/addiction *We want to help these people out of their cycle of addiction.*

be trapped in a cycle *The country is trapped in a cycle of poverty and underdevelopment.*

a stage/phase of a cycle *We are now in the recovery phase of the economic cycle.*

2 a bicycle or motorcycle

cycle + NOUNS

a cycle lane (=a part of a road that only bicycles can use) *Cars are not allowed in the cycle lanes.*

a cycle path/track (=a path for bicycles in a park, wood etc, or beside a road) *The forest is full of beautiful cycle paths.*

a cycle route (=a way of getting somewhere on a bicycle) *I bought a map of all the cycle routes in the area.*

a cycle ride (=a trip on a bicycle for pleasure) *We went for a 20 km cycle ride.*

a cycle race *The Tour de France is the annual cycle race around France.*

a cycle helmet (=a hat to protect your head) *You should always wear a cycle helmet.*

cycle hire *BrE: Cycle hire is available in the town centre.*

Grammar
Cycle is used mainly in compounds such as **cycle lane** or **cycle path**. In other situations, you normally use **bicycle** or **bike**.

cyclone *n* THESAURUS **wind**

cynicism *n*

an unwillingness to believe that people have good or sincere reasons for doing something

ADJECTIVES

bitter cynicism *The writer is known for his bitter cynicism.*

deep cynicism (*also* **profound cynicism** *formal*): *The actions of the government met with deep cynicism across the community.*

general/widespread cynicism *There is widespread cynicism regarding the behaviour of professional sportsmen.*

growing/increasing cynicism *Research indicates a growing cynicism among the public about how they are governed.*

public cynicism *Are the media responsible for public cynicism about Congress?*

healthy cynicism (=natural, normal, and sensible cynicism) *He still has a healthy cynicism about big business.*

VERBS

breed cynicism (=cause it) *Old age very often breeds cynicism – most of us have heard it all before.*

PREPOSITIONS

cynicism about sth *There is a lot of cynicism about politics these days.*

PHRASES

a hint/touch/trace of cynicism (=a little cynicism) *I detected a hint of cynicism in his reply.*

dance *n*

1 movements performed to music, for pleasure or as a form of entertainment

ADJECTIVES

a traditional dance *The drum is often used to accompany traditional dances.*

a folk dance (=typical of the ordinary people who live somewhere) *This is one of the oldest folk dances in Greece.*

a national dance *The tango is Argentina's national dance.*

modern/contemporary dance *She teaches contemporary dance at a local college.*

classical dance *Do you know anything about Indian classical dance?*

VERBS

do a dance *I couldn't do any of the dances they taught us.*

perform a dance *We watched the group perform some traditional Spanish dances.*

dance + NOUNS

dance music *There was a band at the party playing dance music.*

a dance step (=a movement in a dance) *Lou taught me a few dance steps.*

a dance routine/sequence (=a set of movements that are part of a dance) *She was practising a complicated dance routine.*

the dance floor (=a special floor for people to dance on) *When we heard the song starting we rushed onto the dance floor.*

a dance class *We took dance classes for a few months before the wedding.*

a dance teacher/instructor *His dance teacher gave him some stretching exercises to do.*

a dance company *He worked as a choreographer with a top Paris dance company.*

2 a social event where people dance

VERBS

go to a dance *We're going to a dance at the Park Hotel.*

have/hold a dance *They're having the dance in the church hall.*

PREPOSITIONS

at a dance *We met at a dance when we were both 17.*

danger *n*

a situation in which something bad may happen or someone or something may be harmed, destroyed, or killed

PHRASES

be in danger *The public was not in danger at any time.*

be in danger of doing sth *It was clear that the ship was in grave danger of sinking.*

put sb/sb's life in danger *Firemen put their own lives in danger as part of their job.*

be fraught with danger (=involve a lot of danger) *Their journey was long and fraught with danger.*

be out of danger (=no longer be in danger) *John is still in hospital but he is out of danger.*

ADJECTIVES

great danger *Soldiers in the area are in great danger.*

grave/serious danger (=very great) *People are putting themselves in grave danger by taking illegal drugs.*

real danger *There is a real danger that the disease will spread.*

mortal danger *literary* (=danger of death) *The plane's crew were now in mortal danger.*

immediate/imminent danger (=likely to happen very soon) *The passengers on the boat were not in immediate danger.*

potential danger (=possible but not definite) *Gloves should be worn because of the potential danger of infection.*

constant danger (=continuing all the time) *They are in constant danger of attack.*

physical danger (=danger to your body) *Many sports involve some physical danger.*

an obvious danger *Some sports have obvious dangers.*

a hidden danger (=one that is not easy to notice) *Many parents of young children don't recognize the hidden dangers in their own homes.*

VERBS

face danger *Today's police officers face danger every day.*

avoid danger *To avoid danger of torn muscles, you must warm up properly before exercising.*

sense danger (=feel that there is danger) *The animal lifted its head, sensing danger.*

pose a danger (=be something that can harm someone or something) *The chemical poses a danger to human health.*

highlight the dangers (=emphasize that something can harm someone or something) *The report highlights the dangers of alcohol.*

danger threatens (=seems likely) *Most birds will warn other birds when danger threatens.*

danger lurks (=it exists but you may not see it or know about it) *My mother was very anxious, and danger lurked everywhere for her.*

danger lies in sth (=it exists) *The river's danger lies in its depth and strong undercurrents.*

danger passes (=there is no longer any danger) *At last the sound of bombing had stopped and the danger had passed.*

danger + NOUNS

a danger area/zone (=an area that could be dangerous) *People living in the danger area have been told to leave.*

PREPOSITIONS

the danger of sth *The danger of a fire in the home increases during the holidays.*

danger from sth *The public was not aware of the danger from nuclear tests in Nevada.*

a danger to sb/sth *Smoking is a danger to health.*

dangerous *adj*

likely to harm or kill someone, or cause very serious problems

NOUNS

a dangerous situation/position *The situation was extremely dangerous and someone could have been killed.*

a dangerous place/road/area *The mountains are a dangerous place for walkers because the weather changes quickly.*

dangerous job/work *Police work can be dangerous.*

a dangerous sport/activity *Parachute diving is an extremely dangerous sport.*

a dangerous chemical/substance/drug *US troops were exposed to nerve gas and other dangerous chemicals.*

a dangerous weapon *Police have the power to stop and search people for dangerous weapons such as knives.*

a dangerous level of sth *They found dangerous levels of pollution in the city air.*

a dangerous man/criminal/offender *He is one of the most dangerous criminals in the country.*

a dangerous animal/dog *There have been several cases of dangerous dogs attacking young children.*

dangerous driving *He was charged with causing death by dangerous driving.*

ADVERBS

extremely/highly dangerous *The drug is highly dangerous if misused.*

increasingly dangerous *The political situation has made her work increasingly dangerous.*

potentially dangerous *High blood pressure is potentially dangerous as it can lead to a heart attack.*

downright/positively dangerous (=used to emphasize that something is dangerous) *Driving without lights is downright dangerous.*

inherently dangerous (=in a way that is a natural part of something) *Firefighting is an inherently dangerous job.*

VERBS

make sth dangerous *Snow and ice are making driving conditions very dangerous.*

PREPOSITIONS

dangerous for sb/sth *Plastic bags can be dangerous for very young children.*

dangerous to sb/sth *Smoking is dangerous to health.*

PHRASES

sth is a dangerous business (=a job or activity is dangerous) *Politics is a dangerous business in some countries.*

THESAURUS: dangerous

risky
business | situation | strategy | proposition | move | venture | activity | operation | investment
if something is risky, something bad could easily happen or you could easily make a mistake:
Buying a second-hand car can be a risky business. | It's a risky strategy trying to blame the previous government. | Doctors said it was ***too risky*** *to operate.*

high-risk
strategy | approach | business | venture | enterprise | behaviour | sport | activity
a high-risk activity, plan etc is one in which something bad could very easily happen:
Borrowing so much money to buy the club was a high-risk strategy. | High-risk sports are excluded from many insurance policies.

High-risk is usually used before a noun.

hazardous
waste | chemical | substance | material | journey | job | occupation | business | conditions
dangerous, especially to someone's health or safety:
Governments need to decide how to deal with hazardous waste. | The journey through the desert was extremely hazardous. | Take care when driving in hazardous conditions.

unsafe
building | road | water | conditions | level | mine
a place that is unsafe is dangerous because someone is likely to be hurt there. Water that is unsafe is likely to make someone ill:
The building was unsafe because it had been damaged by the earthquake. | The road is unsafe for children. | Millions of people die from diseases caused by unsafe drinking water. | The roof was ***declared unsafe****.*

treacherous *literary*
conditions | road | surface | terrain | waters | sea | currents | journey
treacherous places or conditions are very dangerous for anyone who is walking, driving, climbing etc in them:
The snow turned to ice, making conditions treacherous for walkers. | Ahead are 1,700 miles of treacherous mountain roads. | The boat sank in the treacherous waters of the North Atlantic Ocean.

perilous *literary*
journey | crossing | trip | position | situation | state
a perilous journey or situation is very dangerous:

D

an online database *This website provides an online database of jobs in the computer industry.*

a big/huge database *The company have a big database which has the details of all their products.*

a national database *The ID cards will contain data which will be stored on a national database.*

a central database *The police have a central database of criminal fingerprints.*

a customer database *Your customer database can be used as a mailing list of clients.*

VERBS

have/keep a database *The library has a database of over 21 million book titles.*

build/create a database *After you've created a database, simply enter or import your information into the fields.*

put sth in/into a database *You want to be able to retrieve every single piece of data you put into a database.*

hold/keep sth on a database *Some argue that everyone's DNA should be kept on a database to help fight crime, do you agree?*

update a database *The database will be updated to a new version.*

search a database *You can search the database online.*

access/use a database *The library database can be accessed by all students registered at the college.*

a database contains sth *The database contains over 100,000 names.*

database + NOUNS

database management *The IT manager is responsible for database management.*

a database system *The company is planning to update its database system.*

PREPOSITIONS

be on a database *Customer details are held on a database.*

a database of sb/sth *The National Insurance Crime Bureau has access to a database of vehicles which have been reported as stolen.*

date *n*

1 a particular day of the month or year, especially shown by a number

ADJECTIVES

the exact/precise date *I can't remember the exact date we moved into this house.*

the due date (=the date by which something is due to happen) *Payment must be made by the due date.*

the closing date (=the last day you can officially do something) *The closing date for applications is April 30th.*

a provisional date (=one that may change later) *The provisional date for the meeting is August 24th.*

a start date *Setting a start date for the negotiations has been difficult.*

the sell-by date *BrE* (=a date on a food product after which it should not be sold) *Those yoghurts are a week past their sell-by date.*

the agreed date *BrE*, **the agreed upon date** *AmE* (=one that people have agreed on) *The work was not finished by the agreed date.*

NOUNS + date

a start date *Setting a start date for the negotiations has been difficult.*

the completion date (=a date when work will be finished) *The completion date for the work is early October.*

the delivery date (=a date on which goods will be delivered) *The delivery date should be around 23 August.*

the expiry date *BrE*, **expiration date** *AmE* (=a date on a product after which it cannot be used) *Check the expiry date on your credit card.*

the departure date (=the date when someone leaves) *My departure date was only a few days away.*

the launch date (=the date when a new product or system is available) *The proposed launch date for the software is next December.*

a wedding date *The couple are engaged but have not yet set a wedding date.*

the publication date (=the date when something is published) *We are aiming at a publication date of mid-November.*

VERBS

set/decide on/fix a date (=decide the date when something will happen) *Have you set a date for the wedding yet?*

change a date *They've changed the date of the show from March 6th to March 9th.*

confirm a date (=say that something will definitely happen on a particular day) *The company called to confirm the delivery date for our sofa.*

announce a date (=tell people when something will happen) *The band has announced the dates of their European tour.*

PREPOSITIONS

a date for sth *A date for the trial will be set later this year.*

the date of sth *What's the date of the next meeting?*

on a date *The ship sank on this date in 1912.*

before/after a date *You should apply at least 8 weeks before your date of departure.*

PHRASES

today's date *Don't forget to put today's date at the top of the letter.*

sb's date of birth (*also* **sb's birth date**) (=the day and year when someone was born) *What's your date of birth?*

the date of publication/issue/departure etc *formal: The insurance will only cover costs incurred on or after the date of departure.*

at a future/later date (=at some time in the future) *We planned to extend the house at a later date.*

2 an arrangement to meet someone, especially someone you have a romantic relationship with

VERBS

have a date *Ben had a date with a woman from work.*

go on a date *She agreed to go on a date with him.*

ADJECTIVES

a first date *He had kissed her on their first date.*

a blind date (=an arranged meeting for two people who have not met each other before) *I've only been on a blind date once.*

a hot date *informal* (=a meeting with someone who you are very sexually attracted to) *He had a hot date with the woman of his dreams.*

PREPOSITIONS

a date with sb *She has a date with John tonight.*

on a date *I always feel nervous on a first date.*

dated *adj* THESAURUS **old-fashioned**

daunting *adj* THESAURUS **difficult**

dawn *n*

the beginning of the day when it starts to get light

VERBS

dawn breaks *As soon as dawn broke, they set off on their journey.*

dawn comes (up) *Unfortunately as the dawn came up, so did the clouds.*

ADJECTIVES

the grey dawn *He woke early to a grey dawn.*

the early dawn *By early dawn they had reached the coast.*

NOUNS + dawn

the dawn chorus (=sound of many birds singing at dawn) *He was woken up by the dawn chorus.*

a dawn raid (=an attack at dawn) *The police carried out a dawn raid on the house of a suspected drug dealer.*

PREPOSITIONS

at dawn *She would be up at dawn and away before he woke.*

PHRASES

at the crack of dawn (=very early in the morning) *I had to get up at the crack of dawn to catch a plane.*

from dawn till dusk *She used to work in the fields from dawn till dusk.*

the light of dawn *The light of dawn was beginning to brighten the sky.*

THESAURUS: dawn

start, commencement, origin, the onset of sth, dawn, birth → **beginning (1)**

day *n*

1 a period of 24 hours

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + day

every/each day *The museum is open to visitors every day.*

the same day *Similar protests took place on the same day in other towns.*

the next/following day (=the day after something happened in the past) *The story was in the newspaper the following day.*

the previous day (=the day before something happened in the past) *I had been to the doctor the previous day.*

a big day (=a day when something important is planned) *The team was training hard to prepare for the big day.*

a historic day (=when a historically important event happens) *The moon landing was a historic day.*

a school/working/trading etc day (=a day when children go to school, people go to work etc) *She has to get up at 7 a.m. on school days.*

election/market etc day *Election day is on May 2nd.*

a holy day *Friday is the Muslim holy day.*

Christmas/Easter/Independence etc Day *What day of the week is Christmas Day this year?*

sb's wedding day (=the day when someone gets married) *She wanted everything to be perfect for her wedding day.*

VERBS

a day comes (=it happens) *The war will end and, when that day comes, everyone will be happy.*

a day passes/goes by *The day passed uneventfully.*

PREPOSITIONS

on a day *On days when I have to work, I leave the house at 8 a.m.*

the day of sth (=the day when a particular thing happens) *They all looked forward to the day of the wedding.*

for ... days (=used for saying how many days something lasts) *It rained heavily for three days.*

in ... days (*also* **in ... days' time**) (=used for counting a number of days into the future) *In six days' time they will be in San Francisco.*

PHRASES

the day before yesterday *We arrived in France the day before yesterday.*

VERBS

go deaf (=become deaf) *By the time he was 50 he had begun to go deaf.*

be born deaf *If the mother gets the disease, her baby may be born deaf.*

leave sb deaf (=cause someone to become deaf) *A blow on the head left him permanently deaf.*

THESAURUS: deaf

be hard of hearing
to have difficulty hearing things, for example because you are old:
*You'll have to speak up – she's **a little hard of hearing**. | The programme has subtitles for **the hard of hearing**.*

hearing-impaired *formal*
having a permanent physical condition which makes it difficult for you to hear things. **Hearing-impaired** is used especially in official contexts, and is the politically correct use:
*Not all **hearing-impaired people** are completely deaf.*

D

deafening *adj* THESAURUS loud

deal *n*

an agreement or arrangement, especially in business or politics, that helps both sides involved

NOUNS + deal

a business deal *Branson and Wilson discussed a possible business deal together.*

a trade deal *The two countries are hoping to negotiate a trade deal.*

a pay deal (=one that involves an agreement about how much people will be paid) *They are currently negotiating a new pay deal.*

a record deal (=one between a singer or band and a recording company) *It's hard for a band to get a record deal.*

a sponsorship deal (=when a company gives money to an event or organization as a form of advertising) *His football club has just signed a sponsorship deal with a soft drinks company.*

an arms/weapons deal (=one which involves selling weapons) *A number of recent arms deals have embarrassed the government.*

a peace deal (=an agreement to end fighting between countries) *Hopes of a peace deal are fading.*

ADJECTIVES

a financial/political etc deal *After weeks of negotiation, the chances of a political deal seemed increasingly unlikely.*

a good deal (=a good price, offer, or arrangement) *You can buy two for £10, which sounds like a good deal.*

a shady deal (=dishonest or illegal) *Some senior members of the party were involved in shady deals and bribery.*

a secret deal *A secret deal was struck with the US to release the prisoners.*

a lucrative deal (=one that will give you a lot of money) *She's just signed a lucrative deal to host the show.*

a one-year/two-year etc deal (=one that will be fixed for one year, two years etc) *The five-year deal is estimated to be worth $17.2 million.*

VERBS + deal

make/do a deal *They made a deal to sell the land to a property developer.*

reach/strike a deal (=agree a deal after a lot of discussions) *The two countries reached a deal to reduce the number of nuclear weapons.*

clinch/secure a deal (=finally agree on a deal, especially one that is good for you) *The salesman was eager to clinch the deal.*

cut a deal *informal* (=agree a deal, especially when it is difficult or you have to accept some things you would rather not accept) *His lawyer thinks they can cut a deal, so that he only has to go to prison for a couple of years.*

sign a deal *The singer has signed a $20 million deal with an American TV network.*

negotiate a deal (=agree a deal by discussing over a long period) *We have negotiated a special deal with one of the world's leading car hire companies.*

close/conclude a deal *formal* (=agree a deal formally) *A deal between the two parties has now been concluded.*

offer (sb) a deal *Stores are offering good deals to attract customers.*

have a deal (=have made or agreed on a deal) *Do we have a deal?*

back out of/pull out of a deal (=decide not to make a deal after discussing one) *Twenty-five jobs were lost after their partner pulled out of the deal.*

get a good deal (=buy something at a good price) *He thought he had got a good deal.*

deal + VERBS

a deal goes through/ahead (=it happens as arranged) *It's 99% certain that the deal will go through.*

a deal falls through (=does not happen as arranged) *The cost was simply too high, so the deal fell through.*

PREPOSITIONS

a deal with sb *They signed a deal with a multinational company.*

a deal between sb and sb *Twelve US soldiers were released after a deal between the army and the guerrillas.*

a deal on sth *The company offered a better deal on pay and working hours.*

under a deal *Under the deal, the production of the engines will be moved to China.*

PHRASES

part of the deal *I got free accommodation as part of the deal.*

the terms of a deal (=the details or conditions in it) *The hotel group refused to release the financial terms of the deal.*

a done deal *informal* (=something that has been completely agreed) *The takeover has been described as a done deal.*

a deal worth sth (=used for saying how much money someone will get from a deal) *He has just signed a deal worth £2 million.*

deal with *v*

1 to take action to solve or get rid of a problem

NOUNS

deal with a problem/issue/matter *We are currently looking at ways of dealing with the problem.*

deal with a situation *At first I had no idea how to deal with the situation.*

deal with a crisis *The president has flown home to deal with the crisis.*

deal with an emergency *All our ambulance drivers are trained to deal with emergencies.*

deal with a complaint *Working in the Customer Service Department, you become an expert in dealing with complaints.*

deal with a question/enquiry *Our staff will be happy to deal with any enquiries.*

ADVERBS

deal with sth effectively *The company did not deal with the problem of bullying very effectively.*

deal with sth successfully *Most of these issues have now been successfully dealt with.*

deal with sth adequately/satisfactorily *Do you think our Health Service deals adequately with the needs of older people?*

deal with sth speedily/promptly (=quickly) *The organization deals with complaints very promptly.*

deal with sth properly/appropriately *If the police had dealt with the case properly, we would not be in this situation.*

deal with sth fairly *We felt that the court had not dealt with our case fairly.*

2 to be about a subject

NOUNS + deal with

a book/article/report/essay etc deals with sth *She has written several books dealing with the history of medicine.*

a chapter/section etc deals with sth *The first chapter deals with his early work.*

ADVERBS

deal with sth fully/comprehensively *It is the first book to deal comprehensively with this topic.*

deal with sth separately *My essay will deal with these three questions separately.*

deal with sth at length (=writing or speaking about it a lot, giving a lot of detail) *The article deals at length with the question of guilt.*

3 to successfully control your feelings about an emotional problem

NOUNS

deal with stress *Different people have different ways of dealing with stress.*

ADVERBS

deal with sth well *The family has dealt with this tragedy remarkably well.*

deal with sth bravely *People admired the way she dealt with the illness so bravely.*

death *n* the end of someone's life

ADJECTIVES

sudden death *Monroe's sudden death shocked the world.*

tragic death *The newspapers carried the story of the tragic death of a child.*

violent death *There is a high rate of violent death in the city.*

early death (=at a young age) *His first marriage ended with the early death of his wife.*

untimely death *formal* (=at a young age, when this seems very sad and unexpected) *He remained in charge of the company until his untimely death in 2004.*

premature death (=earlier than people usually die) *Smoking is a significant cause of premature death.*

accidental death *The court decided that it was an accidental death.*

a suspicious/mysterious death *The police are investigating a suspicious death in the village.*

a lingering death (=lasting a long time) *We do not want the animal to suffer a lingering death.*

certain death (=definitely going to happen) *Many of the prisoners faced certain death.*

VERBS

cause (sb's) death *Police still don't know what caused his death.*

lead to (sb's) death (*also* **result in (sb's) death**) *The delay in calling an ambulance may have resulted in her death.*

mourn sb's death (=feel very sad after someone has died) *The entertainment world was last night mourning the actor's death.*

meet your death *formal* (=die) *He met his death tragically while on holiday in Greece.*

risk death *She risked death to save the lives of others.*

escape death (=avoid being killed) *He narrowly escaped death when he fell from a cliff while climbing.*

death + NOUNS

the death toll (=the number of people who die

in an accident or disaster) *The death toll from the earthquake could be as high as 3,000.*

the death rate (=the number of people who die each year from something) *The death rate from heart attacks is about 50% higher for smokers.*

the death penalty (=the legal punishment of death) *In the West, most countries have abolished the death penalty.*

a death sentence (=the legal punishment of death) *Because of his young age, the judge decided not to impose a death sentence.*

a death threat (=a threat to kill someone deliberately) *The writer had received a number of death threats.*

a death wish (=a desire to die) *He drank more than two bottles of whisky a day, as if he had some kind of death wish.*

D

PREPOSITIONS

the death of sb *The death of the princess caused a huge display of public grief.*

death from sth *The number of deaths from cancer is falling steadily.*

PHRASES

bleed/freeze/burn/starve to death *Thousands of people are starving to death.*

stab/beat/kick sb to death *He was stabbed to death in an attack outside his home.*

be put to death (=be killed as a punishment) *The rebels were defeated and their leaders put to death.*

sentence/condemn sb to death (=decide someone must die as an official punishment) *Two men were sentenced to death for the killings.*

the cause of death (=used especially in legal or medical contexts) *The cause of death was gunshot wounds.*

a matter of life and/or death (=a very important matter) *The decision to go to war is literally a matter of life and death.*

be close to death (=almost dead) *She was close to death when the doctor arrived.*

debate Ac *n*

discussion of a particular subject in which people express different opinions

ADJECTIVES

a heated/fierce/impassioned debate (=in which people express strong opinions in an angry way) *There has been a fierce debate over the reasons for the war.*

lively debate (=interesting and involving a lot of different opinions) *The conference produced some lively debate.*

intense debate (=in which people put forward strong and different arguments) *Nuclear power has been the subject of intense debate.*

considerable/great debate *There has been considerable debate about the best way to pay for university education.*

a wider debate (=involving more people or a more general discussion) *The issue of an ageing population should be part of a wider debate about health care.*

a public debate *He called for a public debate on racism in society.*

a national debate *It is time to start a national debate on the future of education.*

political debate *There was much political debate on pensions reform.*

a long-running debate *His comments are part of a long-running debate about religious freedom.*

ongoing debate (=still continuing) *There is an ongoing debate about the benefits of nuclear power.*

endless debate (=continuing for so long that it becomes annoying) *The newspapers are continuing the endless debate over the future of the royal family.*

open/honest debate *What we need is an open debate on voting reform.*

VERBS + debate

have a debate *I think we should have a proper debate about population growth.*

get into a debate *I don't want to get into a debate about the details of the plan.*

be drawn/dragged into a debate *The president's wife refused to be drawn into the debate.*

provoke/spark/trigger debate (*also* **stimulate/fuel debate** *formal*) (=cause a debate to start) *The episode provoked fierce debate about freedom of speech.*

stifle debate (=prevent people from having a debate) *He was accused of trying to stifle debate about the war.*

debate + VERBS

a debate centres on sth *The debate centred on the question of whether he was responsible for his actions.*

a debate rages (=happens over a period of time and involves strong feelings) *A national debate is now raging over the level of youth crime.*

a debate continues *The debate continues over whether the government should send more troops to the region.*

PREPOSITIONS

debate on/about/over sth *There continues to be much debate about the safety of the nuclear industry.*

debate between people *There is likely to be fierce debate between the main parties on this issue.*

debate among people *The minister's comments are likely to fuel the debate among teachers.*

PHRASES

be the subject of debate/be a matter of debate *Teaching methods have long been the subject of debate.*

sth is a matter for debate (=it is something

that people should discuss) *The future of the police force is a matter for public debate.*

be open to debate (=be something that people can have very different opinions about) *The precise cause of the problem is open to debate.*

there is debate as to sth (=people are not sure about something) *There is some debate as to the exact number of people killed.*

debate surrounding/concerning sth *There is considerable debate surrounding the manager's decision to resign.*

debate *n*

1 an amount of money that a person or organization owes

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + debate

a big/large debate *The debates got bigger and bigger.*

huge/massive debates (=very big) *Young people often leave university with huge debts.*

heavy debts (=big debts) *The company wanted to reduce its heavy debts.*

a crippling debt (=big and causing a lot of problems) *Her husband left her with crippling debts.*

an unpaid/outstanding debt (=not yet paid) *The average outstanding debt on credit cards in the UK is now over £3,000.*

a bad debt (=one that is unlikely to be paid back) *Companies lose millions of pounds each year from having to write off bad debts.*

a credit card debt *I want to pay off my credit card debt.*

gambling debts *His gambling debts had become so large that he had to sell his home.*

the national debt (=the total amount that is owed by the government of a country) *Their national debt is the third largest in the world.*

VERBS

have debts *The company has debts of over $200 million.*

run up debts (*also* **amass/accumulate debts** *formal*) (=borrow more and more money) *At that time, he was drinking a lot and running up debts.*

pay off a debt (=pay the money back) *The first thing I'm going to do is pay off my debts.*

repay/settle a debt *formal* (=pay the money back) *He was hoping he would soon have enough money to settle his debts.*

clear your debts (=repay all of them) *It took her three years to clear her bank debts.*

service a debt (=pay the interest on a debt, but not pay it back) *By then, she was borrowing more money just to service her debts.*

write off/cancel a debt (=say officially that it does not have to be paid) *The bank finally agreed to write off the debt.*

be burdened with/saddled with debts (=have big debts) *Many poor countries are saddled with huge debts.*

reduce a debt *The programme aims to reduce the debt of the world's poorest countries.*

debt + NOUNS

debt relief/forgiveness (=when a country or bank says that money paid to a poor country does not need to be paid back) *We need a programme of debt relief for the world's poorest countries.*

debt reduction *The government has a target for debt reduction.*

a debt burden/load (=money that someone owes which must be paid back) *The country's debt burden became even heavier.*

a debt collector (=someone whose job is to get back money that people owe to a bank or company) *They were chased by debt collectors after failing to pay their household bills.*

PREPOSITIONS

a debt of £5,000/$700 etc *She had debts of over £100,000.*

2 a situation in which you owe money

VERBS

be in debt *He had lost his job and was already in debt.*

get/run/fall/go into debt *Eva got deeper into debt through gambling.*

get out of debt *Borrowing more money is not the way to get out of debt.*

PHRASES

be heavily/deeply in debt (=owe a lot of money) *The country remains heavily in debt.*

be £2,000/$50,000 etc in debt (=owe £2,000 etc) *By the time they leave university, many students are £30,000 in debt.*

3 a feeling of being grateful because someone has helped you or influenced you

ADJECTIVES

a huge/immense/great debt *Betty later acknowledged her huge debt to her mother.*

VERBS

owe a debt *I owe an immense debt to my parents.*

acknowledge a debt *He acknowledged a debt to previous researchers.*

repay a debt (=do something for someone who has helped you) *Paul had helped me immensely and it was now time to repay the debt.*

PREPOSITIONS

a debt to sb *The singer acknowledged her debt to Marilyn Monroe.*

PHRASES

be in sb's debt (=feel that someone has helped you and that you owe them something) *He saved my life and I'll be forever in his debt.*

D

a debt of gratitude/thanks *I owe a debt of gratitude to my old teacher who encouraged me to go to university.*

decade Ac *n* a period of ten years

ADJECTIVES

the last/past decade *The number of Americans with the disease has doubled in the last decade.*

the previous decade *Darwin had been working on his theory for much of the previous decade.*

preceding decades (=previous decades) *The economy grew much more quickly than in the preceding decades.*

the next/following decade *China will become even more powerful in the next decade.*

the present/current decade *By the beginning of the present decade, the city's population had increased to over six million.*

recent decades *Universities have changed a lot in recent decades.*

PREPOSITIONS

during/throughout a decade *During the next decade, the world's population will continue to grow.*

for decades *This problem has been going on for decades.*

in a decade *In a decade from now, scientists will have found a cure for the disease.*

PHRASES

the beginning/middle/end of the decade *The city's population will approach 12 million by the end of the decade.*

the first half/second half of the decade *The number of violent crimes had dropped steadily during the second half of the decade.*

decay *n*

changes that cause something to be slowly destroyed

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + decay

natural decay *The damage to the wood is caused by natural decay.*

slow/rapid decay *The houses were all neglected and in a state of slow decay.*

tooth decay *Eating too much sugar causes tooth decay.*

economic decay *Many parts of the country are now suffering the signs of economic decay.*

VERBS

cause decay *Bacteria in food will cause decay.*

prevent decay *Using a preservative on the wood prevents decay.*

allow sth to decay *Buildings are standing empty and being allowed to decay.*

PHRASES

in a state of decay *Most of the wooden floorboards were in an advanced state of decay.*

signs of decay *The house is old and showing signs of decay.*

a stage of decay *Apples lay on the ground in various stages of decay.*

the process of decay *Fungi play an important part in the natural process of decay.*

deceased *adj* THESAURUS dead[1]

deceitful *adj* THESAURUS dishonest

decent *adj* THESAURUS good (3)

decide *v*

to make a choice or judgment about something, especially after considering all the possibilities or arguments

ADVERBS

suddenly decide *Why did you suddenly decide to leave?*

wisely decide *He was tempted to argue, but wisely decided to say nothing.*

eventually decide *I thought long and hard, and eventually decided not to accept their offer.*

PREPOSITIONS

decide in favour of sb/sth (=choose a person, thing, action etc) *After long discussions, they decided in favour of doing nothing at all.*

decide between (=choose one of two or more people or things) *He was trying to decide between strawberry jam and honey.*

decide against sth (=choose not to do or have something) *I had planned to walk, but decided against it because it was raining.*

PHRASES

decide for yourself (=without being influenced or controlled by others) *I can't tell you which career to take – you must decide for yourself.*

decide among/amongst yourselves (=used when a group of people decide something together) *The team were left to decide among themselves who should take each role.*

decision *n*

a choice or judgment that you make after a period of discussion or thought

ADJECTIVES

an important/big/major decision *My father made all the important decisions.*

a difficult/hard/tough decision *In the end, I took the difficult decision to retire early.*

an easy decision *It was an easy decision to leave because I hated my job.*

a good/wise decision *It was a good decision to change the name of the product.*

a bad/poor decision *I think he made a bad decision.*

the right decision *She chose to study Engineering and it was definitely the right decision.*

the wrong decision *I thought she'd made the wrong decision marrying Jeff.*

a conscious/deliberate decision (=one that you have thought about clearly) *Belinda had made a conscious decision not to have children.*

a clear/firm decision (=a definite one) *It's now time to come to a clear decision on this.*

a final decision (=one that will not be changed) *The council will make a final decision in four months.*

an informed decision (=one based on knowledge and correct information) *The information in this leaflet is intended to help you make an informed decision about which treatment to choose.*

a snap decision (=one that you make extremely quickly) *Police officers often have to make snap decisions on how to act.*

a hasty decision (=one that you make without enough thought) *Don't let yourself be forced into making hasty decisions.*

a controversial decision (=that people disagree about) *A controversial decision was taken to close the school.*

a joint decision (=one that two people make together) *Jo and I made a joint decision that we should separate.*

a collective decision (=one that a group of people make together) *Society should take collective decisions about individual rights and responsibilities.*

a unanimous decision (=one that everyone agrees about) *The unanimous decision to remove the ban was greeted with applause.*

VERBS

make a decision *I want to think about it a bit longer before I make a decision.*

take a decision *BrE* (=make an important or formal decision) *I fully accept the decision taken by the committee.*

reach/come to/arrive at a decision (=make a decision after a lot of thought) *We hope they will reach their decision as soon as possible.*

announce a decision *The minister announced his decision to resign.*

face a decision (=have to make one) *Tom is facing a difficult decision about whether to have the operation.*

regret a decision (=wish you had not made a particular decision) *I was already regretting my decision to go on holiday with him.*

reconsider a decision (=think about changing a decision you have made) *She said she wasn't prepared to reconsider her decision.*

reverse a decision (=change a decision) *They want him to reverse his decision to quit.*

overrule/overturn a decision (=officially change a decision made by another person or group) *A director of the company had overruled that decision.*

postpone/delay a decision (=not make a decision until later) *The government has postponed its decision about when to hold the election.*

welcome a decision (=be pleased about it) *Environmental campaigners welcomed the decision to cancel the road building project.*

defend a decision (=argue to try to show that a decision is right when people are criticizing it) *The airline defended its decision to charge passengers for carrying wheelchairs.*

PREPOSITIONS

a decision on/about/over sth *A decision on whether to accept the proposal will be made next week.*

a decision by sb *The decision by the committee to reject the application was welcomed.*

declaration *n*

an important or official statement about a plan, intention, or belief

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + declaration

a formal declaration *The king responded with a formal declaration of war.*

a joint declaration (=by two or more people, groups, countries etc) *The leaders of North and South Korea signed a joint declaration calling for a permanent peace deal.*

a unilateral declaration (=by one side only) *The country became an independent state by unilateral declaration in 1975.*

a final declaration *At the end of the meeting, the heads of government issued a final declaration.*

a ceasefire declaration (=an agreement to stop fighting) *A ceasefire declaration by the rebels was rejected by the government.*

VERBS

make a declaration *The president made a declaration to the nation.*

issue a declaration *Two hundred scientists issued a declaration urging politicians to agree on targets for dealing with climate change.*

sign a declaration *On December 10th, 1948, 48 countries signed the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.*

PHRASES

a declaration of independence *The United States Declaration of Independence was signed in 1776.*

a declaration of war *Britain issued a declaration of war against Germany.*

a declaration of intent (=which explains your plans) *The two countries signed a declaration of intent to increase trade with each other.*

decline Ac *n*

a decrease in the quality, quantity, or importance of something

ADJECTIVES

a rapid decline *We noticed a rapid decline in his energy level.*

secretly) *The management get him to do their dirty deeds, such as firing people.*

VERBS

do a deed *Some people choose to do a good deed because it makes them feel better.*

perform a deed *formal* (=do a deed) *The award is given to people who perform heroic deeds, such as saving someone's life.*

Deed is a rather old-fashioned sounding word, used especially about brave things that people did in the past. Nowadays it is mostly used in the phrase **your good deed for the day**, which is a rather humorous expression, used when someone has done something kind and helpful: *I've made the dinner and washed the dishes – I've done **my good deed for the day**.*

D

deep *adj*

1 measuring a long distance to the bottom

NOUNS

deep water *The submarine was found by scuba divers in deep waters off the coast of Australia.*

deep ocean/sea *These creatures live in deep oceans.*

a deep river/lake *For most of the year the river is deep, wide and impossible to cross.*

a deep valley/gorge/canyon *There are snow-capped mountains and deep valleys.*

a deep hole/cave/well/mine *The explosion blew a deep hole in the road.*

deep snow *The north of the country was covered with deep snow.*

a deep cut/gash *He had a deep cut in his arm.*

the deep end (=of a swimming pool) *She dived in at the deep end.*

ADVERBS

deep enough (*also* **sufficiently deep** *formal*): *The canal is not deep enough or wide enough for larger boats.*

PHRASES

waist-deep/knee-deep *The water was only waist-deep and I walked ashore.*

six inches/three metres etc deep *In places, the lake is more than twenty metres deep.*

ANTONYMS **deep → shallow**

2 used about strong feelings

NOUNS

a deep feeling/emotion *A deep feeling of sadness washed over her.*

a deep sense of sth *They felt a deep sense of shock when they heard the news.*

deep love/admiration *He has a deep love for classical music.*

deep desire/yearning *There was a deep desire for political change.*

deep concern/anxiety *They expressed deep concern about the economic situation.*

deep shock *Everyone is in deep shock and we can't believe such a thing could happen.*

deepest sympathy/apologies *You have my deepest sympathy.*

deep hatred/distrust *These young people have a deep distrust of the police.*

deep despair/frustration/disappointment *The failure to end the violence is causing deep frustration.*

deep gratitude *I want to express my deep gratitude for what you've done.*

PHRASES

run deep (=be felt very strongly) *When it comes to religion, feelings run deep in this area.*

THESAURUS: deep

profound
admiration | **respect** | **concern** | **shock** | **hatred** | **distrust** | **apologies** | **sympathy** | **disappointment** | **gratitude** | **belief** | **sense of sth**
profound means the same as **deep** but is more formal:
Atkinson expressed profound admiration for her work. | There is an atmosphere of profound distrust between the two countries. | There is a profound belief that gambling is wrong. | She felt a profound sense of shame.

3 thinking a lot about something or understanding it very well

NOUNS

deep thought/contemplation *Holmes looked at him in deep thought.*

deep understanding *You need to develop a deep understanding of local culture.*

deep interest *She had a deep interest in psychology.*

deep insight *His work provided some deep insights into the human mind.*

THESAURUS: deep

profound
understanding | **insight**
profound means the same as **deep** but is more formal:
Shakespeare's greatness lies in his profound understanding of the human heart. | He offers some profound insights into our current economic problems (=new and original ideas which help you understand something better).

4 used when a situation is very bad, or something has a very big effect

NOUNS

deep trouble *These animals are in deep trouble because of climate change.*

deep crisis *The farming industry is in deep crisis.*

deep recession (=when there is very little money in an economy) *The economy is in deep recession.*

a deep effect/impact/influence *His friend's death had a deep effect on him.*

ADVERBS

unusually deep *Experts are saying that the current economic crisis is unusually deep.*

THESAURUS: deep

profound
effect | impact | influence | consequences | implications
used when something has a very big effect. **Profound** is more formal than **deep**:
Parents have a profound effect on children's early development. | The war had a profound impact upon public opinion. | Japanese prints had a profound influence on Western art. | The change in the law could have profound consequences for business. | The case has profound implications for freedom of expression on the internet.

THESAURUS: deep

deep, powerful, intense → **strong (3)**

5 used about someone's voice

THESAURUS: deep

deep, husky, gravelly → **low (3)**

6 used about colours

THESAURUS: deep

deep, rich → **dark (2)**

defeat[1] *v*

to win a victory over someone in a war, competition, game, or election

NOUNS

defeat an enemy *The king was able to defeat his enemies.*

defeat an army *Napoleon's army was defeated at the battle of Waterloo.*

defeat an opponent/rival *Williams defeated her opponent easily.*

defeat a team *The team was defeated in the finals of the competition.*

defeat a government *The government could be defeated in tomorrow's election.*

defeat a party *The Socialists have defeated the ruling Nationalist Party.*

ADVERBS

narrowly defeat sb (=only just defeat someone) *Kennedy narrowly defeated Nixon for the presidency in 1960.*

easily defeat sb *The Yankees easily defeated the Boston Red Sox 12-3.*

decisively/comprehensively defeat sb (=in a clear and definite way that leaves no doubt) *The Arab armies decisively defeated the Persians in the battle.*

be soundly defeated (=in a clear and definite way that leaves no doubt) *The English army were soundly defeated by the Scots.*

be heavily defeated (=be defeated easily or by a large number of votes, points etc) *The party was heavily defeated in the election.*

be completely/totally defeated *Austria was totally defeated by Prussia at the battle of Sadowa.*

Defeat or beat?

Defeat is more formal and is the usual word to use in writing. **Beat** is more informal and is the usual word to use in everyday spoken English: *Manchester City **beat** Liverpool. | The Democrats **beat** the Republicans at the last election.*

When talking about wars and fighting, you usually use **defeat**: *The Greeks **defeated** the Persians in a famous battle.*

defeat[2] *n* a failure to win or succeed

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + defeat

a serious/heavy/bad/big defeat *This was a serious defeat for the government.*

a humiliating defeat (=very embarrassing) *They are still bitter about their humiliating defeat.*

a crushing/resounding defeat (=by a very large amount) *He quit as prime minister following a crushing defeat in regional elections.*

a disastrous defeat (=very big, and with a very bad result) *The party suffered a disastrous defeat in the 2006 election.*

a narrow defeat (=by a small amount) *Following their narrow 17-15 defeat by Wales last year, England are hoping to do better this time.*

an election/electoral defeat *It was their worst general election defeat since 1982.*

a military defeat *The president resigned following a series of military defeats.*

a shock defeat *BrE* (=very unexpected) *Arsenal are now out of the competition, following their shock defeat by Torquay Town.*

VERBS

suffer a defeat (=be defeated) *The party suffered a defeat in the state elections.*

inflict a defeat on sb (=defeat someone,

extend/broaden/widen a definition (=make it include more) *The new law broadened the definition of terrorism.*

PREPOSITIONS

a definition of sth *There are many definitions of 'risk'.*

the definition of sth as sth *Do you agree with his definition of leadership as 'the ability to influence others'?*

by/according to a definition *By this definition, the country is not a democracy.*

defy *v* THESAURUS disobey

D

degree *n*

1 a course of study at a university or college, or the qualification that you get

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + degree

a university/college degree *For many jobs you need to have a university degree.*

a science/history/law etc degree *I decided to do a maths degree.*

an arts degree (=in a subject that is not science) *What kind of jobs are open to people with arts degrees?*

an honours degree (=a British university degree that is above pass level) *The ideal candidate will have an honours degree.*

a bachelor's/undergraduate degree (=a first university degree, which usually takes three or four years study) *He has a bachelor's degree in French.*

a higher/postgraduate/graduate degree (=one that you take after a first degree)

a master's degree (=a higher degree for which you study for one or two years) *She decided to stay on and do a master's degree.*

a first-class/second-class/third-class degree *She was very bright and was expected to get a first-class degree.*

a joint degree *BrE* (=in which you study two subjects) *a joint degree in economics and politics*

an honorary degree (=given as an honour to an important person, not to a student) *Last year, the actress received an honorary degree from Queen's University.*

VERBS

have a degree (*also* **hold a degree** *formal*): *You will earn more if you have a college degree.*

do/take a degree *Not enough students are taking degrees in physics.*

study/work/read for a degree *He is studying for a degree in law.*

get/obtain a degree *She worked hard and got a good degree.*

be awarded/receive a degree *At the end of the three years, he was awarded a first-class honours degree.*

degree + NOUNS

a degree course *I didn't enjoy the first year of my degree course.*

degree level *Candidates should be educated to degree level.*

PREPOSITIONS

a degree in history/economics/chemistry etc *Applicants should have a degree in biochemistry.*

a degree from a university/college *He holds an engineering degree from the University of Nebraska.*

2 a level or amount of a quality

ADJECTIVES

a high/large/great degree *These investments involve a high degree of risk.*

a considerable/significant/substantial degree *The king depended to a considerable degree on his advisers.*

a remarkable/extraordinary degree *When we were children, we were allowed a remarkable degree of freedom.*

a fair/reasonable degree (=quite a lot) *We can predict the result of the election with a fair degree of confidence.*

a certain degree/some degree *There is a certain degree of truth in what he says.*

an unusual degree *He enjoyed an unusual degree of financial success for a painter.*

a marked degree (=a noticeable level or amount) *The dog showed a marked degree of aggression.*

a small/limited/low degree *You need only a limited degree of fitness to do this job.*

a sufficient degree *formal* (=enough) *Does the child have a sufficient degree of understanding to make that decision?*

a moderate degree *The curtains between the beds give patients a moderate degree of privacy.*

an unprecedented degree (=more than ever before) *With this new system we get an unprecedented degree of flexibility.*

PHRASES

to a degree/to a certain degree (=partly but not completely) *To a degree, he succeeded.*

to a lesser degree *His illness affected his wife badly, and, to a lesser degree, his children.*

to a greater degree *They were concerned to a greater degree about the effect on the business.*

to a greater or lesser degree (=sometimes more, sometimes less) *We all depend on other people to a greater or lesser degree.*

delay *n*

a situation in which something happens later than it could have or should have

ADJECTIVES

a long/lengthy delay *Patients often face long delays in getting the treatment they need.*

a considerable/serious delay (=very long) *After a considerable delay, the report was finally published.*

a slight/short delay *He rang the bell and there was only a short delay before a woman opened the door.*

a 20-minute/6-month etc delay *A train had broken down, causing a two-hour delay.*

an unavoidable delay *He announced that there would be a slight but unavoidable delay due to engine difficulties.*

unnecessary delays *They want to avoid unnecessary delays.*

NOUNS + delay

traffic delays *The roadworks are likely to cause serious traffic delays.*

flight delay(s) *Unfortunately, flight delays do sometimes occur.*

VERBS

cause/lead to/result in a delay *The bad weather caused a three-hour delay in sending out rescue helicopters.*

experience delays *People are experiencing considerable delays in receiving their mail.*

face delays (=be likely to experience them) *Commuters face long delays as a result of the rail strikes.*

reduce/minimize delays (=make them shorter and less frequent) *The new rules should reduce delays in bringing prisoners to trial.*

PREPOSITIONS

a delay in (doing) sth *I apologize for the delay in replying.*

a delay of 20 minutes/3 hours etc *After a delay of ten minutes, the game started again.*

without delay (=immediately) *Fill in the form and return it to us without delay.*

PHRASES

a series of delays *After a series of delays and setbacks, the project was finally approved.*

deliberate *adj* intended or planned

NOUNS

a deliberate attempt/effort *His comments had been a deliberate attempt to embarrass her.*

a deliberate act/action/move *It was a deliberate act of cruelty.*

a deliberate choice/decision *She made a deliberate choice to remain single.*

a deliberate intention *They have to show that there was a deliberate intention to mislead the public.*

a deliberate policy/strategy/campaign *Some companies have a deliberate policy of delaying payments for as long as possible.*

a deliberate ploy (=a clever but dishonest trick) *It was a deliberate ploy to make them think he didn't have any money.*

a deliberate attack *It was a deliberate attack on unarmed civilians.*

a deliberate lie *Would you ever tell a deliberate lie in order to get a job?*

a deliberate insult *They saw it as a deliberate insult to their religion.*

a deliberate provocation (=a deliberate attempt to make someone angry or upset) *The bombing was a deliberate provocation.*

the deliberate use of sth *The deliberate use of torture to obtain information is legal in some countries.*

ADVERBS

quite/completely deliberate *The use of the word 'unhelpful' in the report was quite deliberate.*

THESAURUS: deliberate

intentional
killing | act
deliberate. **Intentional** is more formal than **deliberate**:
We believe that the intentional killing of another person is wrong. | Lying is an intentional act. | Do you think it was intentional, or do think it was a mistake? | There are some funny moments in the movie, but you wonder how many of them were actually intentional.

calculated
attempt | plan | act | move | insult | murder | killing
planned in a careful and deliberate way, especially in order to hurt or cause problems for someone:
The speech had been a calculated attempt to discredit the president. | Every word he spoke was a calculated insult. | This was a cold calculated killing.

premeditated
murder | killing | attack | assault | act | crime
a premeditated crime or attack is deliberate and has been planned:
He was found guilty of premeditated murder. | Jones was the victim of a premeditated attack. | He admits killing her but denies that it was premeditated.

In everyday English you often say that someone did something **on purpose**: *I think she said it on purpose, in order to make me feel uncomfortable.* **On purpose** is less formal than **deliberate**.

ANTONYMS **deliberate → accidental**

delicate *adj*

1 attractive and graceful – used especially when something is not big or heavy, or is easily damaged

increased/increasing/growing demand *One of the problems is the growing demand for housing.*

falling demand (=decreasing) *The falling demand for coal has put many coal merchants out of business.*

global/international/world demand *There is a huge global demand for specialist skills.*

consumer/customer demand (=people's desire to buy goods) *Consumer demand for new technology is strong.*

VERBS

meet/satisfy demand (=supply as much as people need or want) *Companies must be able to satisfy demand.*

keep up with demand (*also* **keep pace with demand**) (=satisfy the demand) *Public funding for higher education has not kept up with demand.*

cope with demand (=satisfy demand) *The existing services were not capable of coping with the demand for advice.*

increase/boost demand *A very hard winter boosted the demand for natural gas.*

reduce demand *Higher prices could have the effect of reducing the demand for oil.*

demand rises/increases/grows *Demand for energy has continued to rise.*

demand falls (=becomes lower) *Demand for the products has fallen in the last six months.*

PREPOSITIONS

the demand for sth *The demand for new housing has risen.*

PHRASES

be in demand (=people want someone or something) *As a speaker he was always in demand.*

be much in demand (*also* **be in great demand**) (=be wanted by a lot of people) *Fuel-efficient cars are now much in demand.*

supply outstrips/exceeds demand (=more is available than people need or want) *In the 1980s, the supply of grain far exceeded the demand.*

a lack of demand *Many factories closed through lack of demand.*

a surge in demand (=a sudden increase) *There's often a surge in demand for the internet at the weekend.*

2 a firm request for something

VERBS

make a demand *The kidnappers made a demand for over $1 million.*

face a demand *The president is facing demands for him to resign.*

reject a demand *The government rejected demands for a general election.*

resist a demand *It can be difficult for parents to resist the demands of children for the latest toys.*

ignore a demand *He was arrested after ignoring police demands to stop.*

agree to a demand *Employers won't agree to demands for such big pay increases.*

accommodate/satisfy a demand *formal* (=do what someone asks) *This strategy will satisfy Iraqi demands for power.*

ADJECTIVES

an unreasonable demand *It is not an unreasonable demand to want a higher salary.*

an impossible demand *I'm afraid this is an impossible demand.*

PREPOSITIONS

a demand for sth *The government is facing demands for political change.*

3 a situation in which someone or something has to use a lot of effort or do a lot of work

Grammar
Usually plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

heavy/great demands *Being overweight makes heavy demands on your heart.*

growing/increasing demands *Increasing demands are being placed on police officers.*

excessive demands (=too many) *Teachers argue that the new exam system is placing excessive demands on students.*

conflicting/competing demands (=things which are very different and difficult to combine) *Working mothers face competing demands on their time.*

VERBS

place/put demands on sb/sth *The demands placed on athletes these days are incredibly tough.*

make demands on sb/sth *The new curriculum makes great demands on teachers.*

juggle/balance the demands of sth (=do two difficult things successfully) *It can be very difficult to juggle the demands of being a father and a successful politician.*

cope with/deal with the demands of sth *Being fit and healthy helps you to cope with the demands of life.*

PREPOSITIONS

the demands of sth *Mary was finding it difficult to cope with the demands of being a doctor.*

demands on sb *Demands on students are greater than ever.*

demanding *adj* THESAURUS difficult

demonstrate *v*

to show or prove something clearly

ADVERBS

demonstrate sth clearly *The study clearly demonstrates the connection between smoking and heart disease.*

amply demonstrate sth (=show something more than enough) *These figures amply demonstrate the financial problems which the company faces.*

demonstrate sth conclusively (=show that something is definitely true) *Research has conclusively demonstrated that the drug does not cause cancer.*

vividly/graphically demonstrate sth (=show something in a very clear way) *This selection of Hoffmann's finest short stories vividly demonstrates his intense imagination.*

demonstration Ac *n*

1 an event at which a large group of people meet to protest or to support something in public

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + demonstration

a big/large demonstration *Opponents of the new law are planning a big demonstration next week.*

a huge/massive demonstration (=very big) *Thousands of people took part in a series of massive demonstrations against the war.*

a mass demonstration (=involving a very large number of people) *There have been mass demonstrations in several American cities.*

a peaceful demonstration *Everyone has the right to take part in peaceful demonstrations.*

a violent demonstration *Nine people have been killed during violent demonstrations.*

a street demonstration (=in the streets of a city) *A street demonstration completely blocked the centre of the city.*

a student demonstration (=by students) *In France, student demonstrations were disrupting university teaching.*

a political demonstration (=to protest about the government or a political policy) *She was arrested twice for her part in political demonstrations.*

a public demonstration (=by members of the public) *A series of public demonstrations have been held in cities across the country.*

a protest demonstration (=in which people protest against something) *The price increases were met by a series of strikes and protest demonstrations.*

an anti-government/pro-democracy etc demonstration *There have been further violent anti-government demonstrations this week.*

VERBS

hold/stage a demonstration (=organize and take part in one) *Protesters staged angry demonstrations outside government buildings.*

organize a demonstration *A large demonstration was organized by the opposition.*

take part in a demonstration (*also* **participate in a demonstration** *formal*): *As many as 400,000 people took part in the demonstration.*

go on a demonstration *BrE* (=take part in a demonstration) *I've never been on a demonstration before.*

join a demonstration *They were prevented by police from joining the demonstration.*

break up a demonstration (=prevent it from continuing) *Police moved in to break up the demonstration.*

provoke/spark a demonstration (=cause it) *The incident sparked a demonstration of 2,000 people.*

a demonstration takes place *Violent street demonstrations took place in the capital.*

PREPOSITIONS

a demonstration against sth *Students took part in a demonstration against changes to university funding.*

PHRASES

a demonstration in support of sth/sb *Public demonstrations took place in support of the rebels.*

a demonstration in protest at sth *There were demonstrations in protest at the food shortages.*

2 something that shows that something is true

ADJECTIVES

a clear demonstration *This study provides the clearest demonstration yet that passive smoking can cause cancer.*

a vivid/graphic demonstration (=very clear and often unpleasant) *Her death was a graphic demonstration of the dangers facing journalists in the country.*

PREPOSITIONS

a demonstration of sth *The high number of calls received is a clear demonstration of the need for this service.*

denial Ac *n*

a statement saying that something is not true

VERBS

issue a denial (=deny something publicly or officially) *Immediately the government issued a denial of the rumours.*

make a denial *He made no public denial of the allegations against him.*

ADJECTIVES

a strong/firm denial *Her accusation against the company met with a strong denial.*

an angry denial *There were angry denials of corruption in the police force.*

an official/public denial *The Army has consistently issued official denials that they were involved.*

a categorical/flat denial (=saying very definitely that something is not true) *Her response to the allegation was a categorical denial.*

a vehement/vigorous denial (=very strong) *The report led to vehement denials from the minister.*

a depressing prospect (=something that seems likely to be depressing) *Working until I'm 70 is rather a depressing prospect.*

a depressing sight *The building was a depressing sight, with water leaking through the roof.*

a depressing picture (=a depressing idea of what something is like) *The latest report paints a depressing picture of Britain.*

depressing news *There was more depressing news about the economy.*

a depressing place *The walls were painted grey and it looked like a depressing place to live.*

a depressing story *He told me a depressing story about a man who died on the subway without anyone even noticing.*

VERBS

find sth depressing *He found the news very depressing.*

ADVERBS

very/really/deeply depressing *The article was deeply depressing.*

PHRASES

sth makes depressing reading (=it is bad and makes you feel depressed when you read it) *The crime statistics make depressing reading.*

THESAURUS: depressing

grim
reality | reminder | news | picture
depressing, especially because something unpleasant happens:
His films show the grim reality of war and its effect on people's lives. | The bombings are a grim reminder of the threat of terrorism (=something that makes you remember an unpleasant event or situation). | *A police officer told them the grim news about the accident.*

gloomy
news | picture | prediction | forecast | outlook | prospect | assessment
showing that things are not going well and not making you feel hopeful about the future:
The news about the economy is always gloomy. | In his book, he paints a gloomy picture of the future of our planet. | People are making gloomy predictions about the future of the company. | The coach gave a gloomy assessment of the team's chances.

bleak
picture | future | prospect | vision | outlook | day
if something seems bleak, there is nothing at all to make you feel happy or hopeful. **Bleak** sounds even more miserable than **gloomy**:
He gives a bleak picture of his lonely life. | The country faced a bleak economic future after the war. | Many people face the bleak prospect of losing their jobs. | It was another bleak day for English football fans.

drab
office | building | surroundings | existence
if something seems drab, there is nothing exciting or interesting about it – used especially about places:
I waited for hours in a drab government office. | The town is full of drab concrete factory buildings. | He was tired of his drab surroundings. | She wanted to escape from her drab existence and become an actress.

dreary
day | life | monotony | routine | tale | place
if something seems dreary, there is nothing exciting or interesting about it – used especially about situations that continue for a long time in a boring way:
I came home, after another dreary day at the office. | My own life seemed very dreary compared to theirs. | She hated the dreary monotony of her work. | Every day, he would tell me the same dreary tale. | The town is a dreary place in winter, when all the tourists have gone away.

disheartening
depressing and making you want to give up what you are doing:
It was disheartening for fans to see their team lose again. | I found the attitude of some students very disheartening – they didn't seem to care about their work.

THESAURUS: depressing

depressing, dismal, tragic, heartbreaking, pathetic → **sad (2)**

depression *n*

1 a medical condition that makes you very unhappy and anxious and often prevents you from living a normal life

ADJECTIVES

deep depression *She sank into a deep depression.*

severe depression *Severe depression requires medical treatment.*

mild depression *I have been suffering from mild depression for the last year.*

post-natal depression (=depression after giving birth) *Post-natal depression can affect women in different ways.*

clinical depression (=severe depression which requires medical help) *How do you tell the difference between clinical depression and normal sadness?*

manic depression (=a mental illness that causes someone to feel very strong emotions of happiness and sadness in a short period of

time) *Manic depression affects one in 200 people, both men and women alike.*

VERBS

suffer from/have depression *He's been suffering from depression since his wife died.*

treat depression *Some doctors think that exercise is useful in treating depression.*

diagnose depression (*also* **diagnose sb with depression**) (=find out that someone has depression) *Most people diagnosed with depression are successfully treated.*

PHRASES

symptoms of depression *Sleeplessness is one of the symptoms of depression.*

a bout of depression (=a period during which someone is depressed) *He suffered bouts of depression throughout his adult life.*

feelings of depression *A poor diet can result in tiredness and feelings of depression.*

2 a long period during which there is very little business activity and a lot of people do not have jobs

ADJECTIVES

the Great Depression *The Great Depression began in 1929 with the Stock Market crash.*

an economic depression *The economic depression is likely to worsen.*

a worldwide depression *The Great Depression of 1929 was a worldwide depression that lasted for ten years.*

a major/severe depression *The economy collapsed and the country entered a major depression.*

the worst depression *The United States is suffering the worst depression since the 1930s.*

VERBS

go into a depression *The economy went into a depression.*

come out of a depression *There are signs that the country is beginning to come out of the depression.*

a depression deepens/gets worse *The depression deepened and people felt increasingly desperate.*

PREPOSITIONS

during a depression *A lot of people were out of work during the depression.*

PHRASES

be in the middle/midst of a depression *The UK is in the middle of a depression with few signs of recovery.*

be in the grip of a depression (=be experiencing a depression) *The entire country is in the grip of a depression.*

deprived *adj* THESAURUS poor (1)

describe *v*

to say what someone or something is like by giving details about them

ADVERBS

describe sb/sth accurately *Which of the following words most accurately describes you?*

describe sb/sth perfectly *This passage perfectly describes the way you feel on a hot humid day.*

describe sb/sth vividly (=with a lot of details, so you can imagine them very clearly) *Victorian London is vividly described in the novels of Charles Dickens.*

describe sb/sth fully *Can you describe the man you saw more fully?*

describe sth briefly *The introduction briefly describes how and why the two men began their research.*

PREPOSITIONS

describe sb/sth to sb *When she described him to me, I immediately realized who she was talking about.*

describe sb/sth as sth *Colleagues describe her as 'dynamic' and 'highly focused'.*

PHRASES

be difficult/hard/not easy to describe *My feelings at the time are very difficult to describe.*

describe sth in great detail *The article describes in great detail how the device works.*

description *n*

a piece of writing or speech that gives details about what someone or something is like

ADJECTIVES

a good description *There is a good description of life in ancient Egypt.*

a clear description *She gave the police a clear description of the car.*

a detailed/full description *Please give a full description of your responsibilities in your present job.*

an accurate description *I don't think the hotel's description of its facilities was very accurate.*

a perfect description (=a very suitable description) *When they said it was like being in paradise, it was a perfect description of the place.*

a long/lengthy description *I didn't want to hear a lengthy description of their holiday.*

a brief/short description *There's only a brief description of the company on the internet.*

a general description (=not detailed) *He started by giving us a general description of the manufacturing process.*

a vivid description (=very clear and interesting) *The book contains some vivid descriptions of his childhood.*

a graphic description (=very clear and containing a lot of details, usually about something unpleasant) *The book has some graphic descriptions of life in the prison camp.*

D

desk *n*

a piece of furniture like a table that you sit at to write and work

VERBS

sit at a desk *I don't want a job in which I'm sitting at a desk all day.*

get up from your desk *He got up from his desk to welcome the visitors.*

tidy your desk *I need to tidy my desk.*

clear your desk (=remove all the papers etc from it) *He was told to clear his desk and leave the building.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + desk

a tidy desk *Try to keep your desk tidy.*

a cluttered desk (=covered with papers, books etc in an untidy way) *His desk is so cluttered he can't find anything.*

an empty desk (=that no one is using) *There are one or two empty desks in the office.*

an office desk *I got back from holiday to find piles of papers on my office desk.*

a school desk *The children are at their school desks by 8.30 in the morning.*

a writing desk (=that you use for writing letters etc) *Under the window was a small writing desk.*

desk + NOUNS

a desk job (=working mostly at a desk in an office) *He left his desk job to become a gardener.*

PREPOSITIONS

at your desk *He said he would be back at his desk at 3 o'clock.*

despair *n*

a very unhappy feeling, because you think there is no hope at all

ADJECTIVES

deep/great despair *Losing his job had left him in a state of deep despair.*

complete/total/utter despair *I was in complete despair and I didn't know what to do next.*

PREPOSITIONS

out of despair (=because of despair) *Out of despair he banged his fists against the wall.*

to sb's despair *To the despair of his parents, he refused to study for his exams.*

PHRASES

be in despair *I was in despair and I didn't know who I could ask for help.*

be filled with despair *Jane was filled with despair when her husband left her.*

be in the depths of despair *Her business was losing money and she was in the depths of despair.*

be close to despair *She was close to despair when she received the tax bill.*

drive sb to despair *Their son's behaviour drove them to despair.*

throw up your hands in despair *The England manager threw up his hands in despair.*

shake your head in despair *She stared at the broken vase, shaking her head in despair.*

cry in despair *She cried in despair when no one believed her story.*

fall into despair *formal* (=become very unhappy) *He fell into despair when his wife died.*

a feeling/mood/note of despair *A feeling of despair came over him when he realized that he had missed his flight.*

a cry of despair *She gave a cry of despair when she realised that there was nothing she could do.*

a sense/feeling of despair *He looked around the dark prison cell with a sense of despair.*

a moment/state of despair *He tore up the painting in a moment of despair.*

the edge/point/verge of despair *Noisy neighbours were driving her to the edge of despair.*

desperate *adj* THESAURUS bad (2)

destination *n*

the place that someone or something is going to

ADJECTIVES

sb's/sth's final destination (*also* **sb's/sth's ultimate destination** *formal*): *We should arrive at our final destination around 1 p.m.*

a popular/favourite destination *Switzerland is a popular destination for skiing.*

a top/major destination *This ancient city is a major tourist destination.*

an exotic/far-off destination (=a place that is far away and exciting) *The company arranges tours to exotic destinations such as Nepal.*

sb's/sth's intended destination *The parcel never reached its intended destination.*

NOUNS + destination

a tourist destination *Las Vegas is the country's top tourist destination.*

a holiday destination (*also* **a vacation destination** *AmE*): *If you like the sun, Egypt is the ideal holiday destination.*

VERBS

reach your destination/arrive at your destination/get to your destination *It had taken us six hours to reach our destination.*

⚠ Don't say' reach to your destination'.

destroy *v*

to damage something so badly that it no longer exists or cannot be used or repaired

ADVERBS

completely/totally/utterly destroy sth *The house was completely destroyed.*

partially destroy sth (=destroy part of something) *The fire partially destroyed the prison.*

almost/nearly/practically/virtually destroy sth *A 15-year civil war has virtually destroyed the country.*

effectively destroy sth (=used when saying that this was the real result of someone's actions) *He was the man who effectively destroyed the Italian Socialist party.*

NOUNS

destroy a building/house/city etc *The explosion destroyed the building.*

destroy the world/planet *No one wants another war, which might destroy the world.*

destroy the evidence (=deliberately destroy evidence of a crime) *They set light to the car to destroy the evidence.*

destroy sb's career/reputation *The scandal destroyed his political career.*

destroy sb's hopes/dreams *That defeat destroyed the team's hopes of reaching the semi-finals.*

destroy the myth (=show that something is completely untrue) *The Vietnam war destroyed the myth that the United States could not be defeated.*

VERBS + destroy

threaten to destroy sth (=used especially when saying something is likely to destroy something) *Our dependence on oil threatens to destroy our planet.*

set out to destroy sth (=deliberately try to destroy) *He set out to destroy his opponent's political reputation.*

destruction *n*

the act or process of destroying something or of being destroyed

ADJECTIVES

great/massive destruction *The bombing caused massive destruction.*

widespread destruction (=over a big area) *There was widespread destruction to crops as a result of the storms.*

total/complete destruction *The earthquake resulted in the total destruction of the town.*

the wholesale destruction of sth *formal* (=the destruction of every part of something – used especially when you strongly disapprove of what is being done) *These people are facing the wholesale destruction of their way of life.*

wanton destruction *formal* (=done in a very careless and stupid way, without any good reason) *People were shocked by the wanton destruction that occurred during the riots.*

partial destruction *He ordered the partial destruction of the castle.*

deliberate destruction *They were accused of the deliberate destruction of official company records.*

environmental destruction *The islands are threatened by environmental destruction.*

VERBS

cause/lead to/bring about destruction *The bomb was clearly intended to cause death and destruction.*

wreak destruction *formal* (=cause it) *The destruction wrought by the hurricane left thousands of people homeless.*

save sth from destruction *Protests alone will not save the rainforest from destruction.*

prevent/stop destruction *Action is needed to prevent widespread destruction of the animal's habitat.*

PREPOSITIONS

the destruction of sth *The government has done little to prevent the destruction of the rainforest.*

PHRASES

a trail/path of destruction (=a long series of things that have been destroyed) *The accident left a trail of destruction on the motorway.*

detail *n*

1 a piece of information

Grammar
Often plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

a small/minor/tiny detail *Don't waste time examining every minor detail.*

further/more details *Check our website for more details.*

full details *The police have not yet disclosed the full details of the case.*

precise/exact details *Precise details of what happened may never be known.*

every detail *He remembers every detail of the accident.*

sb's personal details (=your name, address, and other information about you) *Please make sure that all your personal details are correct.*

the gory details (=the full details about an unpleasant or interesting event – often used humorously) *She wanted to hear all the gory details about Tina's date with Nigel.*

VERBS

give details *She refused to give any details about what had happened.*

provide/supply details *He did not provide details of the government's plans.*

disclose/reveal/release details (=make secret information public) *The magazine revealed details of her relationship with the musician.*

ask for details *I went into the bank to ask for details about their savings accounts.*

send (off) for details (=write asking for information) *Why don't you send for details of the course?*

send your details (=send your name and

tenacious *formal*
efforts | hold | grip | belief
determined and refusing to give up:
Thanks to their tenacious efforts the building was saved from the fire. | The doctors were amazed at her tenacious hold on life. | He is ***tenacious in*** *fighting for the rights of his members.*

dogged
determination | persistence | refusal | resistance | insistence | pursuit
dogged behaviour shows that you are very determined and will not give up, over a long period of time:
I admired him for his dogged determination to learn the language. | With dogged persistence, she eventually gained access to the records.

persistent
efforts | attempts | offender | critic
someone who is persistent keeps trying to do something or keeps asking something:
The scheme was set up mainly because of Wilson's persistent efforts. | Persistent offenders will receive severe punishments (=people who keep committing crime). | *The journalist was very persistent and he refused to leave until he got an answer.*

ruthless
dictator | leader | determination | efficiency | ambition | streak
extremely determined to get what you want, and not caring if you harm other people:
Stalin was a ruthless dictator, responsible for the deaths of millions. | He carried out the task with ruthless efficiency. | She was driven by ruthless ambition to become the biggest star in the world. | She was completely ***ruthless in*** *her approach to management.*

feisty
woman | heroine | kid
determined and energetic, and not afraid to say what you think and argue with people:
The group is led by a feisty 65-year-old woman. | Fonda plays the feisty heroine of the film. | He is a feisty kid with a mind of his own.

strong-willed
always very determined to do what you want to do, even if other people think it is not a good idea to do it:
Young children are often very strong-willed and will make a fuss if they don't get what they want. | My grandmother was a strong-willed and ambitious woman.

headstrong
determined to do what you want, without listening to other people's advice or thinking about the results of your actions – used especially about young people:
He had many arguments with his headstrong young daughter about her behaviour. | Her brother was ***headstrong and impulsive****, and always went out whenever and wherever he liked.*

deterrent *n*
something that makes someone less likely to do something, by making them realize it will be difficult or have bad results

ADJECTIVES

a good/effective/powerful deterrent *Street cameras have been shown to be a powerful deterrent against crime.*

a real/significant deterrent *Burglar alarms are a real deterrent to thieves.*

a major/great deterrent *The high degree of risk is a major deterrent to investors.*

the ultimate deterrent *The death penalty is the ultimate deterrent.*

a sufficient deterrent (=enough of a deterrent) *Is the cost of cigarettes a sufficient deterrent to teenage smoking?*

a general deterrent *The threat of prison may act as a general deterrent.*

a nuclear deterrent (=nuclear weapons, which are kept in order to stop other countries attacking your country) *The prime minister has said that there will be no reduction in Britain's nuclear deterrent.*

VERBS

act as/be a deterrent (*also* **serve as a deterrent** *more formal*): *The small fines for this type of crime do not act as much of a deterrent.*

provide a deterrent *Experts do not agree about whether the death penalty provides a deterrent.*

be intended as a deterrent *Speed cameras are intended as a deterrent against speeding to improve road safety.*

deterrent + NOUNS

a deterrent effect *There is no hard evidence that proves the death penalty has a deterrent effect on criminal violence.*

the deterrent power/value of sth *World war may be prevented by the deterrent power of nuclear weapons.*

PREPOSITIONS

a deterrent against sth/sb *Window locks are a cheap and effective deterrent against thieves.*

a deterrent to sth/sb *Is capital punishment a deterrent to murder?*

a deterrent for sb *The study demonstrated that longer prison sentences can be a deterrent for some offenders.*

detrimental *adj* THESAURUS **bad (1)**

devastated *adj* THESAURUS **sad (1)**

develop *v*
to grow or change into something bigger, stronger, or more advanced, or to make someone or something do this

ADVERBS

develop rapidly/quickly *Vietnam's economy has been developing quite rapidly.*

develop sth further *If you want to develop your talents further, you should consider going to art college.*

fully developed *Once the product is fully developed, he hopes to find more investors.*

highly developed *Japan's electronics and automobile industries are highly developed.*

recently/newly developed *Tests on newly developed drugs can take several years.*

develop + NOUNS

develop a plan/strategy *We had to develop a strategy that could handle the rapidly changing situation.*

develop a system *Staff at the hospital developed a system for sharing information.*

develop a product *The company will have to develop new products to stay competitive.*

develop an idea *Watching the programme helped us to develop ideas for our own house.*

develop your skills *These lessons help young children develop their reading skills.*

NOUNS + develop

a friendship/relationship develops *Our relationship first began to develop when we were at college.*

technology develops *Some people believe that as technology develops, cars will become less damaging to the environment.*

PREPOSITIONS

develop into sth *Chicago developed into a big city in the late 1800s.*

develop from sth *Isn't it amazing that a tree develops from a small seed?*

THESAURUS: develop

create, do, produce, manufacture, mass-produce, develop, form, generate → **make (1)**

developing *adj* THESAURUS poor (1)

development *n*

1 the process of increasing business, trade, and industrial activity

ADJECTIVES

economic/industrial development *The US has been keen to encourage economic development in Egypt.*

business/trade development *The organization promotes trade development in Asia.*

regional development (=of particular regions of a country or area) *The area received European Union funding for regional development.*

sustainable development (=that is able to continue without damaging the environment) *There should be more emphasis on sustainable development.*

overseas development (=in other countries, especially poor ones) *The Overseas Development Minister announced a £7 million emergency aid programme for Somalia.*

VERBS

support/assist/further development *They want the Arts Council to support the development of the European film industry.*

encourage/promote development (=help it) *Projects which could have encouraged economic development have been abandoned.*

stimulate development (=actively help it grow) *We are looking at measures to stimulate economic development and create jobs.*

development + NOUNS

a development plan/project/programme *The region receives aid from the United Nations Development Programme.*

development work (=the work of helping development in poor areas) *The development work can only continue if we get more funds.*

a development grant (=money, usually from a government, to help development) *Blackpool Pleasure Beach received a large development grant from the English Tourist Board.*

development aid (=money given to help development in poor areas) *The region has received huge amounts of development aid from the European Union.*

2 the process of gradually improving or becoming more advanced

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + development

human development *Forming strong family bonds is vital for human development.*

child development (=from being a small baby to becoming a young adult) *We can observe stages of child development by simply watching children at play.*

language development *Language development is a gradual process that begins at birth.*

personal development (=in your personal life or in your job) *Activities such as music and sport are an important part of students' personal development.*

career development *Are there good opportunities for career development within your company?*

professional development (=in a professional job) *The school is committed to providing continuing professional development for all staff.*

skills development *These exercises are aimed at vocabulary expansion and skills development.*

VERBS

promote/encourage development (=help it) *The government is keen to promote the development of IT skills.*

D

hinder/impede/inhibit development (=make it difficult) *We want to remove the barriers that hinder language development.*

influence development (=affect its progress) *We studied the main factors influencing adolescent development.*

PREPOSITIONS

the development of sb/sth *The test allows us to check the development of each student's writing skills.*

device Ac *n*

a machine or tool that does a special job

ADJECTIVES

a simple device *He invented a simple device for chopping onions.*

a labour-saving device *BrE*, **a labor-saving device** *AmE* (=one that reduces the amount of work you have to do) *Most households have labour-saving devices like washing machines and vacuum cleaners these days.*

a clever/ingenious device *This clever little device rings to tell you where you left your keys.*

an electronic device (=something such as a computer) *The shops are always full of new electronic devices.*

a mechanical device (=a machine or piece of equipment that is powered by an engine or by electricity) *One day it may be possible to replace a human heart with a mechanical device.*

a handheld device (=a small electronic device that you hold in your hand) *This new handheld device for playing electronic games is very popular.*

a mobile device (=an electronic device that is small enough to carry around with you) *They make chips for personal computers, mobile devices and video game systems.*

NOUNS + device

a security device (=that protects against crime) *Modern cars have better security devices, making them much harder to steal.*

a safety device (=that keeps you safe) *The accident happened because a simple safety device wasn't properly fitted.*

VERBS

be fitted with a device *From 2010, all new cars had to be fitted with this safety device.*

PREPOSITIONS

a device for doing sth *The ships are fitted with a device for detecting submarines.*

THESAURUS: device

appliance, device, gadget, contraption → **machine**

devise *v*

to plan or invent a new way of doing something

NOUNS

devise a method/way *We have devised a way to improve quality and reduce costs.*

devise a means (=think of a way) *We need to devise a means of getting aid to the most remote villages.*

devise a system *How do you devise a system of testing students that is completely fair?*

devise a plan/scheme *Together they devised a plan to escape.*

devise a strategy (=plan a series of actions for achieving something) *The region is keen to devise a strategy to develop tourism.*

devise a solution *No one has yet devised a long-term solution to the problem.*

devise a programme *BrE*, **devise a program** *AmE*: *Your trainer will devise an exercise programme for you to follow.*

devise an experiment/test *He devised a series of experiments to test his theory.*

THESAURUS: devise

create, devise, come up with sth, make sth up, coin, fabricate, dream sth up → **invent**

devoted Ac *adj*

giving someone or something a lot of love and attention

ADVERBS

completely/utterly/absolutely devoted *The researchers are absolutely devoted to their work.*

passionately devoted *He loves soccer and is passionately devoted to the game.*

NOUNS

a devoted husband/wife *She was a devoted wife who had spent her lifetime taking care of her husband.*

a devoted father/mother *He was the devoted father of three young children.*

a devoted fan *Devoted fans of the singer regularly travel hundreds of miles to see her perform.*

a devoted following (=a loyal group of fans) *The band has gained a devoted following since the release of their first CD last year.*

a devoted follower *He became a devoted follower of Buddhism.*

PREPOSITIONS

devoted to sb *David is devoted to his wife and children.*

devotion Ac *n*

great love or loyalty, which shows that you care about someone or something a lot

devious *adj* THESAURUS dishonest

ADJECTIVES

great/deep devotion *Shah Jahan showed his great devotion to his wife by building a great palace in her honour.*

total/complete devotion *The monks lead a life of total devotion to God.*

lifelong devotion *She received an award for her lifelong devotion to her work.*

undying devotion (=someone never stops being devoted to someone or something) *I remember his undying devotion to his students.*

selfless devotion (=great devotion that shows you care about other people more than yourself) *Churchill was famous for his selfless devotion to his country.*

fanatical devotion (=very strong devotion, which makes you do crazy things) *The band inspire fanatical devotion amongst their followers.*

blind devotion *especially disapproving* (=devotion without thinking about whether this is the right thing to do) *The leader expected his followers to show blind devotion toward him.*

religious devotion *Praying is an act of religious devotion.*

VERBS

show your devotion *He shows his devotion to his religion by praying every day.*

inspire devotion (=make people feel devotion) *There are few leaders today who inspire as much devotion as Nelson Mandela.*

PREPOSITIONS

devotion to sb/sth *a mother's devotion to her children*

PHRASES

an act of devotion *Taking care of her husband was an act of devotion.*

an object of devotion *The cross is an object of devotion in the Christian religion.*

devotion to duty/your work/a cause *He was praised for his devotion to duty.*

devout *adj* THESAURUS religious (2)

diagnosis *n*

a statement saying what medical condition or disease someone has, or the process of discovering what is wrong with someone by examining them closely

ADJECTIVES

a correct/accurate diagnosis *It is impossible to make an accurate diagnosis without a thorough examination.*

an incorrect/wrong diagnosis *The doctors apparently made an incorrect diagnosis.*

an early diagnosis (=at an early stage of a disease) *Successful treatment is dependent on early diagnosis.*

a definite/firm diagnosis (=that doctors are sure is correct) *With this disease it can be very difficult to make a firm diagnosis.*

a medical/clinical diagnosis *Computer-based systems are being used in medical diagnosis.*

a final diagnosis (=after a series of examinations or tests) *It took several weeks of tests to arrive a final diagnosis of his condition.*

VERBS

make a diagnosis *The doctor examined him before making her diagnosis.*

arrive at/reach a diagnosis (=find out the reason why someone is ill) *It is important to arrive at a diagnosis and begin treatment as soon as possible.*

give (sb) a diagnosis *They will give me a diagnosis when they get the scan results.*

confirm a diagnosis (=show that it is definitely true) *The blood tests confirmed the diagnosis.*

diagram *n*

a simple drawing or plan that shows what something is like or how something works

ADJECTIVES

a simple diagram *The whole process can be summarized in a simple diagram.*

a rough diagram *The teacher drew a rough diagram of a molecule.*

a detailed diagram *On page 14 there is a detailed diagram of the human eye.*

VERBS

a diagram shows/illustrates/represents sth *This diagram shows how this process works.*

draw a diagram *He drew a quick diagram to explain how the parts of the system were connected with each other.*

see diagram *The plant uses sunlight to make energy (see diagram on page 268).*

ADVERBS

the diagram above/below *The diagram below illustrates the life cycle of a butterfly.*

dialogue (*also* dialog *AmE*) *n*

a discussion between two groups or countries

ADJECTIVES

political dialogue *Only political dialogue can bring an end to the crisis.*

peaceful dialogue *The Chinese president wants to settle the dispute through peaceful dialog.*

open dialogue (=a dialogue in which people are free to say what they want) *Staff meetings aim to encourage open dialogue and the sharing of ideas.*

constructive dialogue (=dialogue in which you are trying to reach an agreement about something, not just criticizing each other) *The government said that it was involved in a constructive dialog with the US.*

direct dialogue *Ministers refused to enter into direct dialogue with the terrorists.*

VERBS

have a dialogue *The leaders had a dialogue about relations between their countries.*

be engaged/involved in a dialogue *formal* (=be having a dialogue) *The parties are currently engaged in a political dialog.*

start/open a dialogue *The union says it wants to start a dialogue with the management.*

enter into/establish a dialogue *formal* (=start a dialogue) *The United States entered into a dialog with Russia about nuclear weapons.*

engage in a dialogue *formal* (=take part in a dialogue) *The artist was happy to engage in a dialogue about her work.*

maintain a dialogue *The two countries are keen to maintain a dialog with each other.*

encourage/promote dialogue *He hopes to encourage dialogue between parents and their children.*

PREPOSITIONS

a dialogue with sb *Pakistan has restarted a dialogue with China.*

a dialogue between sb *There is little prospect of dialogue between the government and the rebels.*

a dialogue about sth *The two countries were continuing a dialogue about trade.*

through dialogue (=by discussion) *The dispute should be settled through dialogue.*

diary *n*

a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day

VERBS

keep/write a diary (=write regularly in a diary) *While I was travelling, I kept a diary every day.*

write (sth) in your diary *He wrote in his diary that he was planning to visit her.*

record sth in your diary (*also* **note sth in your diary**) *James Alvin recorded the incident in his diary.*

read a diary *I wish my sister would let me read her diary.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + diary

sb's personal/private diary *She later agreed to the publication of parts of her personal diary.*

a detailed diary *For years she had kept a detailed diary.*

a daily/weekly diary *Clarke kept a daily diary of life in San Francisco.*

a travel diary *His travel diary makes fascinating reading.*

a secret diary *He found his girlfriend's secret diary.*

diary + NOUNS

a diary entry (=a piece of writing in a diary) *His last diary entry was on June 14th.*

a diary extract/excerpt (=a short part of a diary entry) *A newspaper printed diary extracts in which he called the president 'arrogant'.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a diary *He records in his diary his arrival in New York as a young man.*

die *v*

to stop living and become dead

ADVERBS

die suddenly *Jack died suddenly of a heart attack.*

die instantly (=as soon as an accident, injury etc happens) *He was shot in the head and died instantly.*

die peacefully (=calmly and without pain) *My grandmother died peacefully in her sleep.*

die tragically *His wife had died tragically in an accident.*

die young *They had seven children and three of them died young.*

die alone *It's very sad to think of someone dying alone in hospital.*

die penniless (=without any money) *Van Gogh died penniless, but his paintings were later worth millions.*

PREPOSITIONS

die of/from sth *His mother died of cancer.*

die in a fire/crash/fall etc *Her father died in a car crash when she was only ten.*

die for your country/beliefs/principles etc (=be killed while fighting to defend something) *Would you be willing to die for your beliefs?*

PHRASES

die aged 35/50 etc *Her father died aged 84.*

die in your sleep *We would all prefer to die peacefully in our sleep.*

die in suspicious/mysterious circumstances (=used to say that someone may have been killed) *He got involved with drugs and died in mysterious circumstances.*

die from natural causes (=not because of being killed by someone else) *The coroner concluded that Wilks had died from natural causes.*

die a sudden/violent/slow etc death *At the end of the play, the main character dies a violent death.*

die a hero/a rich man etc *He died a hero on the battlefield.*

die in childbirth (=giving birth to a baby) *In the 19th century, it was fairly common for women to die in childbirth.*

until/til the day I die (=for someone's whole life) *Their screams will haunt me until the day I die.*

sb's dying wish (=someone's last wish) *It was my father's dying wish to be buried with my mother.*

sb's dying breath (=someone's last breath,

before they die) *With her dying breath, she cursed the soldiers.*

diet *n*

1 a plan of eating only certain foods, in order to lose weight or improve your health

PHRASES

be on a diet (=be only eating certain foods, in order to lose weight) *She didn't have a dessert because she was on a diet.*

⚠ Don't say 'I'm doing a diet.' Say **I'm on a diet.**

go on a diet (=start eating less or only some types of food) *I really ought to go on a diet.*

stick to a diet (=continue to follow a diet) *Most people find it hard to stick to a diet.*

VERBS

follow a diet (=only eat certain types of food) *You will feel better if you follow a low-fat diet.*

ADJECTIVES

a strict diet (=in which you eat a very limited amount or range of food) *She followed a strict diet for several weeks.*

a crash diet (=a very sudden and strict attempt to lose weight) *It's better to lose weight gradually than to go on a crash diet.*

a low-calorie/low-fat etc diet *A low-calorie diet should solve your weight problem.*

a starvation diet (=in which you eat very little) *A starvation diet can have negative health effects.*

2 the kind of food that a person or animal eats each day

ADJECTIVES

a healthy/good diet *A healthy diet includes plenty of fresh fruit and vegetables.*

a poor/unhealthy diet *Diseases like this are caused by poor diet.*

a nutritious diet (=that provides you with the substances your body needs) *The mothers provide a nutritious diet for their children.*

a balanced diet (=including all the types of food that people need) *A balanced diet is important for a child's development.*

a varied diet (=including many different foods) *Provide your fish with a varied diet of worms, insects, and dried food.*

a sensible/proper diet *Students don't always eat a sensible diet.*

sb's staple diet (=the food that a group of people or type of animal normally eats) *For hundreds of years potatoes were their staple diet.*

a diet high/rich in sth (=which contains a lot of something) *In the West many people eat a diet high in fat and salt.*

a vegetarian diet *A vegetarian diet is good for protecting against cancer and heart disease.*

VERBS

eat/have a diet *People in Mediterranean areas generally have a very good diet.*

live/exist on a diet of sth *The people lived on a diet of fish and rice.*

feed sb (on) a diet of sth *Kids should not be fed a diet of hamburgers and sugary snacks.*

sb's diet consists of sth *Their diet consists mainly of wild fruit and shellfish.*

PREPOSITIONS

in sb's diet *You should include more vegetables in your diet.*

differ *v*

to be different from something in some way

ADVERBS

differ greatly/enormously/considerably *Modern teaching methods differ greatly from those fifty years ago.*

differ slightly/somewhat *Prices differ slightly from one shop to another.*

differ significantly/substantially *The second set of test results did not differ significantly from the first.*

differ widely (=used to say that there are many very different things) *Opinions differ widely on the best approach to the problem.*

differ sharply/noticeably/markedly/dramatically (=in a very noticeable way) *Opportunities for women differed markedly from those enjoyed by men.*

differ radically/fundamentally (=in a very basic and important way) *The new car differed radically from the earlier model.* | *These paintings differed fundamentally from his earlier work.*

differ little (=not much) *The system differs very little from state to state.*

PREPOSITIONS

differ from sb/sth *People differ from one another in their ability to handle stress.*

differ between places/people etc *Business practices differ between countries.*

differ in sth *They differ in their views on religion.*

PHRASES

opinions/views differ *Opinions differ greatly as to whether the government's strategy will work.*

difference *n*

a way in which two or more people or things are not like each other

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + difference

a big/great/huge/enormous etc difference *There is a big difference between a musical and a Shakespeare play.*

the main difference *The main difference between African and Asian elephants is the size of the ears.*

an important/key/significant/crucial difference *A study of the two groups of students showed a significant difference.*

a considerable/major/substantial difference *He points out two major differences.*

a slight/small/minor difference *There's only a slight difference between the male and the female bird.*

the only difference *The only difference is that this apartment has two bedrooms, not one.*

a real difference *Voters believe there is no real difference between the parties.*

an obvious/clear/noticeable difference *One obvious difference between these systems is their size.*

a marked/striking/dramatic difference (=very noticeable) *There was a marked difference between the two sets of results.*

a subtle difference (=not obvious) *There's a subtle difference in flavour between these coffees.*

an essential/fundamental/basic difference *The fundamental differences between the two sides slowly emerged.*

the age/price/temperature etc difference *Despite the big age difference, they fell in love.*

individual differences (=between one person and another) *We respect the children's individual differences.*

cultural/political differences *The book examines cultural differences between the East and the West.*

national/regional differences (=between different countries or areas) *It is vital for a businessman to have an understanding of national differences.*

VERBS

notice a difference *She has noticed a dramatic difference in her energy levels.*

spot the difference (=see the difference) *It's easy to spot the difference between real and imitation leather.*

can tell/see the difference (=can recognize how two things are different) *I can't really see the difference between these two colours.*

know the difference *If you don't know the difference between two words, your dictionary can help.*

show a difference *Our data showed considerable national differences.*

highlight/emphasize a difference (=make it noticeable or draw attention to it) *The report also highlighted the difference in attitudes between men and women.*

explain the difference (=help someone understand it, or be a reason for it) *Can you explain the difference between psychiatry and psychology?*

PREPOSITIONS

a difference between sth and sth *There are many differences between British English and American English.*

a difference in age/price/quality etc *There is little difference in price between these two cars.*

PHRASES

there is a world of difference (=there is a very big difference) *There's a world of difference between being alone and being lonely.*

different *adj*

not like something or someone else, or not like before

ADVERBS

completely/totally/entirely different *From now on, Tess's life was to be completely different.*

slightly different/a little different *They decided to use a slightly different approach.*

rather/somewhat different *In New Zealand for example, the situation is somewhat different.*

fundamentally/radically different (=extremely different in very basic ways) *Their world was radically different from ours.*

significantly different (=very different in an important and noticeable way) *The results from the two groups of patients were significantly different.*

refreshingly different *North Africa offers a fascinating and refreshingly different style of holiday.*

NOUNS

a different way/approach/method *Women are treated in a different way from men.*

a different kind/type/sort of sth *Obama promised that he would be a different kind of leader.*

a different view/perspective/outlook *Other scientists take a different view.*

a different world *My parents seemed to live in a different world.*

a different person *When she came back from college, she was a different person.*

a different direction/angle *He approaches the subject from a different angle.*

a different colour/taste/smell *Her left eye is a slightly different colour.*

PREPOSITIONS

different from sb/sth *Health care is different from producing cars or selling food.*

different than sb/sth *especially AmE: Boys are often different than girls.*

Grammar

In spoken British English, you will also sometimes hear people say **different to**. In written English it is better to use **different from** or **different than**.

PHRASES

be no different (=not different in any way) *He is no different than any other pop star.*

ANTONYMS **different → same**

difficult *adj*

hard to do, understand, or deal with

NOUNS

a difficult job/task *Peter had the difficult task of judging the competition.*

a difficult question *There were some difficult questions in the test.*

a difficult situation/position *The country is in a difficult economic situation.*

difficult circumstances/conditions *Staff are doing a good job in difficult circumstances.*

a difficult problem/issue *Anti-social behaviour is a difficult problem for the police to deal with.*

a difficult decision/choice *The government is facing some difficult decisions.*

a difficult time/period/day/year *Gina has had a difficult time recently – she has just lost her job.*

a difficult person/man/child etc *Joe was a very difficult man to live with.*

difficult words/language *Lawyers tend to use a lot of long and difficult words.*

ADVERBS

extremely/incredibly/extraordinarily difficult *The past week has been an incredibly difficult time.*

fiendishly difficult (=used to emphasize that something is difficult) *This piece of music is fiendishly difficult to play.*

increasingly difficult/more and more difficult *As the disease develops, walking becomes increasingly difficult.*

notoriously difficult (=in a way that many people know about) *Mountain weather is notoriously difficult to predict.*

doubly difficult (=much more difficult than usual) *If you have sensitive skin, finding suitable skin products can be doubly difficult.*

VERBS

make sth difficult *Shortages of food during the war made life very difficult.*

find sth difficult *He's finding it difficult to get a job.*

prove difficult (=be difficult) *The task was proving more difficult than she had imagined.*

become/get difficult *When things get difficult, I know I can always ask him for help.*

look difficult *The puzzle looks more difficult than it really is.*

PREPOSITIONS

difficult for sb *Talking about personal problems is very difficult for many people.*

PHRASES

it is difficult to understand/imagine *It's difficult to imagine what life was like in the 18th century.*

it is difficult to know/say/see *It's difficult to see how peace can be achieved in the region.*

THESAURUS: difficult

hard

job | work | time | day | decision | choice | question | test | problem | life | part

difficult:

*It's a hard job and some of the drivers work seven days a week. | I was having a hard time finding a place at university. | The test was really hard. | You can see from her face that she has had a hard life. | **It was hard to** forgive him after what he had done.*

Hard or difficult?

Hard is less formal than **difficult** and is very common in spoken English.

If something is tiring and you have to use a lot of effort, you usually use **hard** rather than **difficult**: *It was a **hard** race. | It was a long **hard** climb to the summit.*

You say **a difficult problem/issue** or **a difficult situation**, not a 'hard' one.

tough

time | decision | choice | question | game | challenge | competition | life

very difficult, because you have to use a lot of effort, or because it affects you emotionally:

James has had a tough time at home recently – his parents have just got divorced. | Doctors had to make tough decisions about who to treat first. | The team faces some tough competition. | Life is tough sometimes.

demanding

job | task | work | schedule | day

difficult and tiring, because it takes a lot of effort:

Being a nurse in a busy hospital is a demanding job. | He was exhausted after a busy and demanding day at work. | It can be very demanding bringing up young children.

challenging

task | work | job | role | position | situation

difficult in an interesting or enjoyable way:

*This was a challenging task even for an experienced manager. | I wanted a job that was more challenging. | The course is meant to be **intellectually challenging**.*

You sometimes use **challenging** when you want to politely avoid using the word **difficult**: *Some of the students can be rather **challenging** to teach.*

daunting

task | prospect | challenge | problem | experience

if something seems daunting, you think that it will be difficult and you do not feel confident about being able to do it:

We are faced with the daunting task of raising $5 million. | *Your first solo performance may seem a daunting prospect* (=an idea of something that will happen, which worries you). | *The aim is to make a visit to the hospital less daunting for children.*

awkward
question | **position** | **situation** | **problem** | **moment** | **silence**
rather difficult to deal with – used especially when something could be embarrassing:
They started asking awkward questions about where the money had gone. | *You've put me in a very awkward position.* | *There was an awkward moment during the meal when she asked him about his family.* | *It was getting dark and foggy, which made the rescue even more awkward.*

tricky
situation | **business** | **task** | **job** | **operation** | **question** | **subject** | **issue** | **problem**
difficult because it is complicated and full of problems. **Tricky** is more informal than **awkward** and is used especially in spoken English:
She had helped him out of a tricky situation. | *Fixing up a curtain rail can be a tricky business* (=a tricky job). | *It was a tricky operation to move the barrels.* | *Then there is the tricky issue of who is going to pay for the wedding.* | *Merging the two companies was bound to be tricky.*

delicate
balance | **matter** | **subject** | **issue** | **question** | **task** | **operation** | **process** | **situation** | **negotiations**
needing to be dealt with carefully or sensitively, especially in order to avoid offending people or causing problems:
There is a delicate balance between treating every student equally and rewarding those who do better. | *I need to speak to you about a rather delicate matter.* | *The country is beginning the delicate task of maintaining peace.*

If something is difficult and needs a lot of time and effort, you say that it is an **uphill battle/struggle/task**: *For a long time, it was an **uphill struggle** and we didn't think we would succeed.* If you are impressed that someone has done something very difficult, you say that it is **no mean feat**: *Sailing across the Atlantic Ocean is **no mean feat**.*
You can also use negative sentences, and say that something is **not easy**: *It's **not easy** bringing up three children on your own.*

ANTONYMS **difficult** → **easy**

difficulty *n*
a problem, or the situation of having a problem

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable/enormous difficulty *Many deaf children have great difficulty in learning to read.*
a major/serious/severe difficulty *Making sure the rules were obeyed remained a major difficulty.*
the main difficulty *The main difficulty was in finding the right actor to play the title role.*
a real difficulty *The real difficulty was finding suitably qualified staff.*
technical difficulties *The flight was delayed due to technical difficulties.*
financial/economic difficulties *The company is facing serious financial difficulties.*
practical difficulties *It's a great idea, but there will be a number of practical difficulties.*

VERBS + difficulty

have difficulties/difficulty *Robbie was having difficulty with reading.*
face difficulties *The hotel's owners were facing financial difficulties.*
experience/encounter difficulties *formal*: *Graduates often experience considerable difficulties in getting their first job.*
run into/get into difficulties (=find yourself in a difficult situation) *Three people were rescued from a boat that had got into difficulties.*
deal with/tackle a difficulty *What is the best way to deal with this difficulty?*
overcome/resolve difficulties (=deal with them successfully) *We are confident that we can overcome these difficulties.*
present/pose difficulties (=be something that is difficult to deal with) *English spelling may present some difficulties for learners.*
cause/lead to difficulties *Stress and worry both cause sleep difficulties.*

difficulty + VERBS

difficulties arise (=happen) *The student should feel able to discuss difficulties as they arise.*
difficulties face sb (=exist for someone) *He stressed the difficulties facing the government.*
the difficulty lies in sth (=used to say what the problem relates to) *The difficulty lies in heating the fuel to a high enough temperature.*

PREPOSITIONS

a difficulty with sth *There are a couple of difficulties with this argument.*
with difficulty *He heaved himself out of the chair with difficulty.*
without difficulty *She found the hotel without difficulty.*
be in difficulty *They help people who are in difficulty.*

PHRASES

a lot of/a great deal of difficulty *I had a great deal of difficulty in hearing what they were saying.*

be fraught with difficulties (=involve a lot of them) *The whole plan was fraught with difficulties.*

dig *v*

to move earth, snow etc, or to make a hole in the ground, using a spade or your hands

NOUNS

dig a hole *The turtles dig a small hole in the sand to bury their eggs.*

dig a tunnel/trench/ditch *A tunnel had to be dug through the hillside for the railway.*

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

dig for sth (=try to find it by digging) *The apes use sticks to dig for insects and roots.*

dig (sth) up (=remove it from earth etc by digging) *Someone had dug up all the flowers in the garden.*

dig down *Archaeologists dug down to uncover the original foundations of the temple.*

dig deep *If you dig deep enough into the snow, you will find plants living underneath.*

dignified *adj*

behaving in a calm and serious way, so that people respect you

VERBS

look/sound dignified *She looked very dignified in her uniform.*

remain dignified *Her father remained calm and dignified throughout the trial.*

NOUNS

a dignified man/woman/lady *His grandfather was a dignified man who always wore a suit.*

a dignified figure *She sat alone on the platform, a silent but dignified figure.*

a dignified manner/way *The minister answered their questions in a dignified manner.*

a dignified silence *The princess maintained a dignified silence and refused to speak to reporters.*

a dignified exit/departure (=leaving in a dignified way) *He tried to make a dignified exit, but he fell over a chair.*

PHRASES

quietly dignified *Colin Firth gives a quietly dignified performance.*

dignity *n*

1 calm behaviour, even in difficult situations, which makes people respect you

ADJECTIVES

great dignity *He acted with great dignity throughout the crisis.*

quiet dignity *Her quiet dignity impressed everyone.*

a certain dignity *The refugees have a certain dignity about them.*

VERBS

maintain/retain/keep your dignity *He managed to maintain his dignity, and refused to become angry or upset.*

show dignity *She has shown remarkable dignity throughout this awful time.*

PREPOSITIONS

with dignity *She faced her death with dignity.*

PHRASES

an air of dignity (=a calm appearance or way of behaving) *He always had an air of dignity.*

2 the feeling that you deserve respect from other people

ADJECTIVES

human dignity *Respect for human dignity is one of our basic principles.*

VERBS

treat sb with dignity *All the prisoners are treated with dignity.*

lose your dignity *Old people are often afraid of losing their dignity.*

respect sb's dignity *Every society should respect the dignity of the individual.*

die with dignity *Patients should be allowed to die with dignity.*

recover/regain your dignity (=get it back) *He got up off the floor and tried to recover his dignity.*

have your dignity *We still have our dignity and self-respect.*

give sb (a sense of) dignity *Having a job gives people a sense of dignity.*

lend dignity to sth *formal* (=make people respect this position or occasion) *They want someone who will lend dignity to the office of head of state.*

PHRASES

a sense of dignity *Being a grandmother gave her a sense of dignity.*

sth is beneath your dignity (=it is something that is for people who are less important than you) *They do jobs that the local people think are beneath their dignity.*

a loss of dignity *Patients fear the loss of dignity that may come with their illness.*

be an affront to sb's dignity *formal* (=be something that shows no respect for someone) *His unpleasant remark is an affront to the dignity of every woman in this town.*

with dignity and respect *All employees should be treated with dignity and respect.*

dilemma *n*

a situation in which it is very difficult to decide what to do, because all the choices seem equally good or equally bad

D

VERBS

face a dilemma (*also* **be faced with a dilemma**) *Many women are faced with the dilemma of choosing between work and family.*

be in a dilemma/have a dilemma *I'm in a dilemma about whether to accept their job offer.*

pose/create/present a dilemma (=exist and cause problems) *The economic situation poses a dilemma for investors.*

put sb/place sb in a dilemma *The disagreement between his advisers placed the president in a dilemma.*

resolve/solve a dilemma *People often need help resolving their dilemmas.*

explain your dilemma (=talk about it) *He explained his dilemma to me.*

ADJECTIVES

a difficult/serious dilemma *He was in a serious dilemma as he risked upsetting either his mother or his wife.*

a terrible dilemma *Knowing that her son had committed a crime put her in a terrible dilemma.*

a moral/ethical dilemma *Doctors face a moral dilemma over whether to prolong a suffering patient's life.*

a legal/political dilemma *My political dilemma was whether to support my party or stick to my principles.*

a personal dilemma *The men had a personal dilemma over whether to join the strike.*

a painful dilemma (=a very difficult one) *She had the painful dilemma of having to choose which friend to believe.*

a common/familiar dilemma (=one that a lot of people have) *Deciding whether to put an elderly relative in a nursing home is a common dilemma.*

the central dilemma (=the main one) *The country's central dilemma is how to increase its own security without seeming to threaten its neighbours.*

PREPOSITIONS

the dilemma of sth *The dilemma of having to choose was too much, so I bought them both.*

a dilemma over sth *Parents are in a dilemma over which school to choose for their children.*

a dilemma about sth *We face a dilemma about negotiating with terrorists in the interests of peace.*

a dilemma between sth and sth *He was faced with a dilemma between his religious beliefs and his professional duties.*

PHRASES

a way out of a dilemma (=a way to solve it) *There seemed to be no way out of the dilemma.*

a solution to a dilemma (=a way to solve it) *One possible solution to the dilemma is to divide the money equally between them.*

dim *adj*

not very bright, or difficult to see because there is not much light

NOUNS

a dim light *The dim light made it difficult to read.*

dim lighting *Dim lighting on stairs and in passageways can be dangerous.*

a dim glow *I watched her standing in the dim glow of a street lamp.*

a dim shape/outline *He could see a dim shape on the other side of the room.*

a dim figure *There was a dim figure standing next to his bed.*

PHRASES

the sky grew dim *especially literary* (=it became dark) *The evening sky grew dim and the people returned to their homes.*

THESAURUS: dim

faint
light | glow/glimmer | star
a faint light is not very bright, especially because it is a long distance away:
In the distance I could see a faint light. | There was a faint glimmer of light from her window. | Above them there was a faint star in the night sky.

weak
light
weak light is not strong enough for you to see clearly:
The frosted windows let in a weak light.

pale
light | moonlight | sunlight | glow
pale light is not bright and has very little colour:
The pale light of morning crept in through the window. | His white shirt gleamed in the pale moonlight. | The pale winter sunlight falls on stone farmhouses and walls.

poor/bad
light | lighting
poor or bad light is not at all bright, so that you cannot see well enough to do things:
The game was finally abandoned because of bad light. | Poor lighting makes the streets dangerous to cycle on at night.

soft
light | lighting | glow
soft light is pleasant and relaxing because it is not too bright:
The antique furniture glowed in the soft light. | Soft lighting is used to create a feeling of relaxation. | He switched on the bedside lamp and the room was filled with a soft glow.

low
light | lighting
low light is rather dark for seeing or photographing things. **Low lighting** is not

bright and gives a room a pleasant and relaxing feeling:
Owls' eyes are adapted for seeing in very low light. | Low lighting, lots of couches, and excellent music produce a great atmosphere.

ANTONYMS **dim → bright (1)**

dimension Ac *n*
a part of a situation or a quality involved in it

ADJECTIVES

a new/different dimension *Her experience will bring a new dimension to the team.*
an extra/added/additional dimension *Add an extra dimension to your holiday by hiring a car.*
a social/political/cultural/historical dimension *His writing has a strong political dimension.*
a moral/ethical dimension *The book discusses the ethical dimension of genetic engineering.*
a spiritual dimension *People need to have a spiritual dimension to their lives.*
a human dimension *Statistics alone cannot show us the human dimension of the disaster.*

VERBS

add/give/bring a ... dimension (to sth) *Digital cameras have added a new dimension to photography.*
have a ... dimension *Learning a language has an important cultural dimension.*
take on a ... dimension (=develop in a particular way) *Since I met her, my life has taken on a completely different dimension.*

PREPOSITIONS

a dimension to sth *His argument added a religious dimension to the debate.*

diminutive *adj* THESAURUS short (4)

dinner *n*
the main meal of the day, eaten in the middle of the day or the evening

VERBS

have/eat dinner *We had dinner at a nice local restaurant.*
have sth for dinner *I thought we might have pasta for dinner tonight.*
finish your dinner *She was so upset she couldn't finish her dinner.*
make/cook/prepare dinner *I offered to cook dinner.*
have sb for/to dinner *We're having a few friends round to dinner.*
ask/invite sb to dinner *Let's ask Kate and Mike to dinner.*
come for/to dinner *Mark is coming over for dinner.*
go out for/to dinner (=go and eat in a restaurant) *Would you like to go out for dinner on Saturday?*
serve dinner (=start giving people food) *Dinner is served between 7 and 11 p.m. in the hotel restaurant.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + dinner

a three-course/four-course etc dinner *The cost of the hotel includes a three-course dinner.*
Sunday/Christmas/Thanksgiving dinner (=a special meal eaten on Sunday etc) *We usually have a walk after Christmas dinner.*
a good/excellent dinner *They were relaxing after a good dinner.*
a quiet dinner *He was having a quiet dinner with a couple of friends.*
a romantic dinner (=for two people in a romantic relationship) *Clive and Denise were enjoying a romantic dinner for two in a quiet French restaurant.*
a leisurely dinner (=not hurried) *I enjoy having a leisurely dinner with some friends at the weekend.*
a formal/official dinner *A formal dinner was held to celebrate the 150th anniversary of the college.*
school dinners *BrE* (=meals provided at school in the middle of the day) *School dinners are served in the canteen.*

dinner + NOUNS

dinner time *He said he would be back by dinner time.*
a dinner party (=when someone's friends are invited for a special evening meal) *We are having a dinner party on Saturday.*
a dinner guest *The dinner guests began arriving at about seven o'clock.*

diploma *n*
a document showing that someone has successfully completed a course of study or passed an examination

In American English people usually use **diploma** when talking about a high school or college diploma.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + diploma

a teaching/engineering/banking etc diploma *BrE: Do you have a teaching diploma?*
a college/university diploma *Having a college diploma no longer guarantees you a job.*
a high school diploma *AmE: More women than men have a high school diploma.*
a professional diploma *BrE: If you want to be a chef, you need to have a professional diploma.*
an advanced/higher diploma *BrE: She is working for an advanced diploma in educational management.*
a one-year/two-year/three-year diploma *BrE: I am thinking of taking a two-year diploma in hairdressing.*

VERBS

have a diploma (*also* **hold a diploma** *formal*): *She has a diploma in fashion design.*

get/obtain/receive a diploma (*also* **gain/attain a diploma** *formal*): *He went back to college and got a diploma in business studies.*

take a diploma (*also* **do a diploma** *BrE*): *Two years ago he took a diploma in leisure management at Southampton University.*

study for a diploma *BrE*: *I am currently studying for a teaching diploma.*

receive a diploma (*also* **be awarded a diploma** *BrE*): *She received a diploma from the Institute of Management.*

a course leads to a diploma *BrE*: *Some courses lead to a diploma.*

diploma + NOUNS

a diploma course/programme *BrE*: *The diploma course lasts nine months.*

PREPOSITIONS

a diploma in sth *She is studying for a diploma in nursing.*

a diploma from a college/university etc *He has a diploma from the London College of Technology.*

diplomacy *n*

the activity of dealing with relationships between countries or groups of people

ADJECTIVES

international diplomacy *Before he became president, he had little experience of international diplomacy.*

secret diplomacy *There are rumours of secret diplomacy between the US and Iran.*

quiet diplomacy *A lot of quiet diplomacy has been going on behind the scenes.*

clever/skilful diplomacy *Through skilful diplomacy, they succeeded in reaching an agreement that was acceptable to both sides.*

careful diplomacy *This is a very sensitive situation that needs careful diplomacy.*

high-level diplomacy *The hostages were released as a result of high-level diplomacy in Washington.*

NOUNS + diplomacy

shuttle diplomacy (=diplomacy in which someone travels between countries and talks to leaders there) *The Japanese prime minister was leading a round of shuttle diplomacy, traveling first to China and then to South Korea.*

gunboat diplomacy *disapproving* (=the threat of force against another country) *The British used gunboat diplomacy to make the Chinese agree to their terms.*

telephone diplomacy *There was some intense telephone diplomacy between Moscow and Paris.*

VERBS

conduct diplomacy (=talk to other countries on behalf of a country) *Congress does not have the power to conduct diplomacy.*

use diplomacy *It is always better to use diplomacy rather than military force.*

PHRASES

a round of diplomacy (=one of several periods of diplomacy) *The two sides began a new round of diplomacy aimed at achieving a ceasefire.*

a flurry of diplomacy (=a situation in which there is suddenly a lot of diplomacy) *There was a flurry of diplomacy after two weeks of heavy fighting.*

diplomatic *adj*

relating to or involving the work of diplomats

NOUNS

diplomatic relations/ties (=between governments that have an embassy in each other's country) *We hope to restore diplomatic relations between our two countries.*

diplomatic activity *The attacks led to intensive international diplomatic activity.*

diplomatic efforts *Diplomatic efforts to end the fighting began on October 15th.*

diplomatic pressure *There was diplomatic pressure on the president to step down.*

a diplomatic initiative (=plan to achieve something) *Havana launched a diplomatic initiative to establish ties with Latin American governments.*

diplomatic channels (=diplomatic methods for achieving something) *The president said that he hoped the situation could be resolved through diplomatic channels.*

a diplomatic solution *UN delegates met to find a diplomatic solution to the crisis.*

a diplomatic row/incident (=disagreement) *The affair led to a diplomatic row between Russia and China.*

a diplomatic mission (=a group of diplomats sent somewhere) *He was sent to France three times on diplomatic missions.*

diplomatic immunity (=the right not to obey a country's laws, which foreign diplomats have) *The two men had diplomatic immunity and were released from police custody.*

dire *adj* THESAURUS terrible

direct *adj*

done without any other people, actions, or processes coming between

NOUNS

direct access *Very few people have direct access to the president.*

direct contact *The disease is only spread by direct contact between people.*

a direct link/connection *There is a direct link between poverty and ill-health.*

a direct relationship *Performing live helps build a direct relationship between a band and its fans.*

a direct effect/impact *These government spending cuts will have a direct impact on children's lives.*

a direct result/consequence *The decision to close the hospital is a direct result of government policy.*

a direct influence/bearing *The price of a barrel of oil has a direct bearing on the price drivers pay at the pumps.*

direct evidence *There is no direct evidence that the substance causes cancer.*

direct control *The Bank of England has direct control over interest rates.*

direct experience *He had no direct experience of managing a football club before he took over here.*

THESAURUS: direct

truthful, sincere, frank, straight, open, candid, direct, blunt, forthright, outspoken, upfront → **honest**

direction *n*

1 the way something or someone moves, faces, or is aimed

ADJECTIVES

the right/wrong direction *Are you sure this is the right direction for the airport?*

the opposite/other direction *The car crashed into a truck that was coming in the opposite direction.*

a different direction *They attacked us from different directions.*

the same direction *The sheep were all moving in the same direction.*

a southerly/westerly etc direction *A strong wind was blowing from an easterly direction.*

VERBS

go in a direction *Which direction did they go in?*

move/head/travel in a direction *The car was last seen heading in the direction of Miami.*

look/glance in a direction *She looked in the direction that Jeremy was pointing.*

face (in) a direction *He turned around until he was facing the opposite direction.*

turn in a direction *The men turned in the direction of Mecca and began praying.*

change direction (=start to go in a different direction) *Suddenly the flock of birds changed direction.*

PREPOSITIONS

from a ... direction *There was a loud scream from the direction of the children's pool.*

the direction of sth *It was hard work rowing against the direction of the river's current.*

PHRASES

in each/every direction (*also* **in all directions**) *From the top of the tower, there are splendid views in every direction.*

in both directions *The traffic in both directions was at a complete standstill.*

in different directions *They said goodbye and walked off in different directions.*

in the general direction of sth (=approximately where something is) *He pointed in the general direction of the village.*

in a clockwise/anticlockwise direction (=like or unlike the movement of the hands of a clock) *The cars go round the track in a clockwise direction.*

a sense of direction (=the ability to judge which way you should be going) *I have a terrible sense of direction so Mike usually drives.*

2 instructions about how to get from one place to another

Grammar
Always plural in this meaning.

VERBS

give sb directions *Luke gave me directions to his house.*

follow directions *You can't get lost if you follow my directions.*

ask (sb) for directions *Let's stop and ask someone for directions.*

get directions (=ask someone for directions) *I went into a petrol station to get directions.*

ADJECTIVES

clear/good directions *His directions were very clear and easy to follow.*

PREPOSITIONS

directions to sth *He gave me directions to his apartment on Boylston Street.*

3 instructions about how to do something

Grammar
Usually plural in this meaning.

VERBS

follow the directions *Always follow the manufacturer's directions when using this product.*

read the directions *I wish that I'd read the directions properly before starting!*

ADJECTIVES

clear directions *There are clear directions on their website telling you how to download the software.*

step-by-step directions *The software comes with step-by-step directions for installing it.*

director *n*

1 the person who gives instructions to the actors and other people working on a film or play

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + director

a film/movie director *The film director Stephen Spielberg is expected to win the award.*

a theatre director *BrE*, **a theater director** *AmE*: *Laura Thompson is a theatre director, currently rehearsing 'Romeo and Juliet'.*

an artistic director (=who controls which plays a theatre produces and how they are produced) *He returned to the theatre as artistic director in 2008.*

a musical director (=who controls which music is performed and how it is performed) *He later became musical director of the London Symphony Orchestra.*

a television/TV director *She worked as a television director for the BBC.*

a Hollywood director *Martin Scorsese is a famous Hollywood director.*

2 a person who controls and manages a company or a department of a company

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + director

a company director *Mr Eaton and the other company directors will be attending the meeting.*

a managing director *BrE* (=the person who is in charge of a large company) *The managing director may have to resign.*

the finance/marketing/sales etc director (=of a particular department) *The sales director explained the new marketing strategy.*

an executive director (=who is involved in the daily management of a company) *Bill was promoted to executive director.*

a non-executive director (=who gives advice but is not involved in the daily management of a company) *She is a non-executive director for several big companies.*

VERBS

appoint a director (=choose someone to become a director) *She was appointed a director of DBCM in June 2009.*

PREPOSITIONS

a director of sth *Her husband is a director of a small publishing company.*

PHRASES

the board of directors *His appointment to the board of directors was confirmed by the chairman.*

dirt *n*

1 any substance that makes things dirty, such as mud or dust

PHRASES

be covered with/in dirt *The kitchen floor was covered with dirt.*

be black with dirt (=be very dirty) *His hands were black with dirt after work.*

a speck of dirt (=a very small piece of dirt) *Their house was so clean – there wasn't a speck of dirt anywhere.*

VERBS

remove the dirt (from sth) *First, remove any dirt from the cut and then put a bandage on it.*

wash off/clean off/scrub off the dirt *I washed the dirt off my hands and sat down to eat.*

brush off/rub off the dirt *Brush the dirt off those boots before you come into the house.*

sth shows the dirt (=something looks dirty – used about colours) *These white jeans really show the dirt.*

2 *especially AmE* earth or soil

dirt + NOUNS

a dirt road *We drove down a dirt road until we came to the lake.*

a dirt track/path *There are several dirt tracks through this part of the forest.*

a dirt floor *They slept on mats on a dirt floor.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the dirt *The children had been playing in the dirt.*

PHRASES

a pile of dirt *There was a pile of dirt next to the hole.*

a handful of dirt *His sister threw a handful of dirt onto his coffin.*

dirty *adj* not clean

NOUNS

dirty clothes/socks/sheets etc *My son leaves his dirty clothes all over the bedroom floor.*

dirty laundry/washing *She put the dirty laundry in the washing machine.*

dirty dishes/plates *There was a stack of dirty dishes in the sink.*

dirty hands/fingernails *Don't eat food with dirty hands.*

a dirty city/street/room/place *They lived in a poor part of London, in a dirty street full of cheap bars.*

a dirty mark *The coal had left a dirty mark on her white shirt.*

a dirty nappy *BrE*, **a dirty diaper** *AmE*: *You should dispose of dirty nappies in a bin and not down the toilet.*

dirty water *Drains carry the dirty water underground to the sewer.*

dirty work/job (=which makes you dirty) *Working in the fields is hot dirty work.*

VERBS

get dirty *How did you get so dirty?*

get/make sth dirty *Don't walk in the mud – you'll get your shoes dirty.*

THESAURUS: dirty

filthy
clothes | streets | hands | room | window | water | river | conditions
very dirty:
His clothes were filthy, covered in dirt and blood. | The mayor plans to get citizens to clean

up the city's filthy streets. | She fell into the filthy water. | The animals were being kept in filthy conditions.

squalid *formal*
conditions | camp | housing | prison | room | mess | shanty town | slum | neighbourhood
extremely dirty and unpleasant. **Squalid** sounds very disapproving and is used about the place or conditions in which someone lives:
People are living in squalid conditions, with little water and no sanitation. | The refugees were forced to live in squalid camps.

polluted
air | water | river | lake | land | soil | city | area | environment
dirty and dangerous because of unwanted chemicals and gases from cars, factories etc:
*The air is **heavily polluted** because of all the fumes from the traffic. | The river is polluted and many fish have died. | Reducing car usage will help to clean up Britain's polluted cities.*

contaminated
land | soil | water | food | meat | milk | site | area | needle | blood
made dirty by a dangerous substance or bacteria:
Cleaning up contaminated land is very expensive. | Thousands of people die every year from drinking contaminated water. | He became infected with HIV after being given contaminated blood.

unhygienic *formal*
conditions | practice | method | premises
dirty in a way that is likely to cause diseases to spread:
The food was prepared under unhygienic conditions. | Officials have blamed the infections on unhygienic practices at the hospital. | Wiping tables with a dirty cloth is unhygienic.

unsanitary *formal* (*also* **insanitary** *BrE*)
conditions | housing
used about dirty conditions that are likely to cause diseases to spread, especially because there is not a good system for getting rid of waste:
They work for long hours in unsanitary conditions. | People's health is being threatened by overcrowded and insanitary housing.

muddy
boots | shoes | footprints | water | puddle | field | track | path | road
covered with mud:
She left her muddy boots by the door. | There were muddy footprints all over the white carpet. | It had been raining hard and the path was muddy.

grubby
hands | fingers | face | handkerchief | clothes | mark
fairly dirty and needing to be cleaned or washed:
The children put their grubby hands on the walls. | He pulled a grubby handkerchief out of his pocket.

grimy
window | glass | face | street | city
covered with thick dirt or dirt that has been there for a long time:
I couldn't see much out of the grimy windows of the train. | They spent the day walking round the cold grimy streets.

greasy
hair | skin | hands | fingers | overalls | mark
covered with oil or grease:
If your hair is greasy, you may need to wash it every day. | She wiped her greasy hands on the towel. | There was a greasy mark on his shirt.

dingy
room | office | hotel | basement | apartment | building
a dingy place looks dark, dirty, and unpleasant:
The room had a small window and was rather dingy. | We worked in a dingy little office behind the station.

dusty
road | street | track | town | room | book | shelf
covered with dust:
He cycled up the narrow dusty road. | The books were dusty and looked as though they hadn't been read for a long time.

soiled *formal*
nappy | diaper | clothes | sheets | bedding | linen | mattress | dressing
made dirty, especially by waste from your body:
Soiled nappies should be changed as quickly as possible. | The dressing was heavily soiled with blood.

ANTONYMS **dirty → clean[1] (1)**

disability *n*

a physical or mental condition that makes it difficult for someone to use a part of their body properly, or to learn normally

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + disability

a learning disability *He goes to a special school for people with learning disabilities.*

a physical disability *She manages to lead a normal life in spite of her physical disabilities.*

a mental disability *Someone may be born with a mental disability or may acquire it through brain damage.*

a language disability *Behaviour problems are common in children with speech and language disability.*

a permanent/long-term disability *He was in a car accident that left him with a permanent disability.*

a severe disability *She teaches children with severe learning disabilities.*

a mild disability *Colour blindness is usually classed as a mild disability.*

VERBS

have a disability *The university welcomes applications from students who have a disability.*

suffer from a disability *In Florida alone, there are more than half a million people who suffer from a disability.*

disability + NOUNS

disability benefits/payments *Seven percent of Britons of working age receive disability benefits.*

PREPOSITIONS

with a disability *Public places are becoming more accessible to people with disabilities.*

D

disabled *adj*

someone who is disabled cannot use a part of their body properly, or cannot learn easily

ADVERBS

severely disabled *Elaine is severely disabled and relies on 24-hour care.*

partially/temporarily disabled *He was partially disabled as a result of the accident.*

physically disabled *If you are physically disabled, you can get help with your living accommodation.*

NOUNS

a disabled person *Disabled people should have the same rights and choices as everyone else.*

a disabled adult/child *a support group for parents of disabled children*

a disabled toilet *The nearest disabled toilet is in the hall.*

VERBS

be born disabled *Her son was born disabled.*

leave sb disabled *The accident left him disabled and unable to use his legs.*

disadvantage *n*

something that causes problems, or that makes someone or something less likely to be successful or effective

ADJECTIVES

a big/great/major disadvantage *This method has one major disadvantage: its cost.*

the main disadvantage *The main disadvantage of iron as a material is its weight.*

a serious/severe disadvantage *Public transport is very bad here, which is a serious disadvantage.*

a significant disadvantage *This approach does have a number of significant disadvantages.*

a slight/minor disadvantage *Children who are young in their school year sometimes have a slight disadvantage.*

a further/additional/added disadvantage *It's a very small garden and it has the further disadvantage of facing north.*

an unfair disadvantage *This arrangement would put the UK citizen at an unfair disadvantage.*

social/economic/educational disadvantage *Unemployment often leads to social disadvantage.*

a competitive disadvantage (=one relating to a situation in which people or companies are competing) *Firms that are not part of the group would be at a competitive disadvantage.*

VERBS

have a disadvantage *Cars have many disadvantages and they cause a lot of pollution.*

suffer (from) a disadvantage *formal: Working-class boys suffer disadvantages in the educational system.*

overcome a disadvantage (=succeed in spite of a disadvantage) *She was able to overcome the disadvantages of poverty.*

PREPOSITIONS

the disadvantage of doing sth *This medicine has the disadvantage of working slowly.*

disadvantages to sth *There are some disadvantages to the plan.*

PHRASES

sb/sth is at a disadvantage (=they have a disadvantage compared to other people, companies etc) *The company was at a disadvantage compared with its competitors.*

put/place sb at a disadvantage (=make someone less likely to be successful than others) *Not speaking English might put you at a disadvantage.*

be/work to the disadvantage of sb (=make someone unlikely to be successful) *This system works to the disadvantage of women.*

advantages and disadvantages (=the good and bad features of something) *Both methods have their advantages and disadvantages.*

the advantages outweigh the disadvantages (=there are more advantages than disadvantages) *The advantages of building the new road would outweigh the disadvantages.*

THESAURUS: disadvantage

drawback
a bad feature that something has, especially when it has other features that seem good: *One of the **main drawbacks** is the price. | The **only drawback** that I can think of is that the house is next to a busy road. | The system has one **slight drawback** – it's rather complicated to use.*

the downside
the disadvantage of a situation that in most other ways seems good or enjoyable: *It's a great job. **The only downside is** that I don't get much free time. | **There is a downside to** all this success – you can't have any privacy. | Can you think of a **potential downside** (=something that might cause problems)?*

bad point *especially spoken*
a bad feature that something has:
*All of these designs have both their **good points and bad points**.*

disadvantaged *adj*
having social problems, such as a lack of money or education, which make it difficult for you to succeed

NOUNS

a disadvantaged group/community *The college has announced plans to increase the number of students from disadvantaged groups.*

a disadvantaged area/region *Fewer than one in five young people from the most disadvantaged areas enters higher education.*

a disadvantaged background *Despite coming from a disadvantaged background, he was a millionaire by the age of 30.*

disadvantaged people/students/children *Britain's education and welfare system is failing disadvantaged children.*

disadvantaged families *The charity raised £30,000 for disadvantaged families in Birmingham.*

ADVERBS

seriously/severely disadvantaged *Many of the girls are severely disadvantaged and their families do not have any money to pay for their education.*

economically/socially disadvantaged *The government provides training programs for economically disadvantaged young people.*

doubly/further disadvantaged *Children from poor families are further disadvantaged due to a lack of home internet access.*

THESAURUS: disadvantaged

developing, deprived, disadvantaged, needy, destitute, impoverished, poverty-stricken, penniless, broke/hard up → **poor (1)**

disagree *v*
to have or express a different opinion from someone else

ADVERBS

completely/totally/entirely disagree *Some people say that this is his best film. I completely disagree.*

strongly/profoundly disagree *Although we strongly disagree about politics, we are still friends.*

sharply disagree (=strongly, and in an important way) *The prime minister and foreign minister sharply disagreed on the best way to handle the crisis.*

fundamentally disagree (=disagree about the most basic aspects of something) *John and I fundamentally disagree about the role of women in society.*

violently disagree (=very strongly and angrily) *The brothers had violently disagreed over what should be done with their parents' estate.*

PREPOSITIONS

disagree with sb/sth *I totally disagree with the decision to close the hospital.*

disagree about/on/over sth *Experts disagree on how much the program will cost.*

ANTONYMS **disagree → agree**

disagreement *n*
a situation in which people have different opinions or argue about something

ADJECTIVES

considerable/substantial disagreement (=people have very different opinions) *There is considerable disagreement among teachers about the value of the tests.*

deep/profound disagreement (=people have extremely different opinions) *The issue has caused deep disagreement among local people.*

bitter/sharp disagreement (=people have very different opinions and argue a lot about something) *There was bitter disagreement between the EU and the US over farming subsidies.*

widespread disagreement (=among many people) *The judge's decision was a source of widespread disagreement.*

fundamental disagreement (=about the most basic parts of something) *There is fundamental disagreement about the nature of history.*

a serious/major disagreement (=a situation in which people argue about something because they strongly disagree) *If you have a serious disagreement at work, you should talk to your manager.*

a minor/slight disagreement (=about something that is not very important) *There was a slight disagreement about where we should eat.*

VERBS

cause disagreement *The decision has caused an enormous amount of disagreement.*

have a disagreement *We've had a few disagreements, but we're still good friends.*

resolve/settle a disagreement (=end it by finding a way in which you can agree) *Negotiations failed to resolve the disagreement.*

express/voice disagreement (=say that you disagree) *She wrote to the newspaper expressing her disagreement with the article.*

disagreements arise/occur *formal* (=they happen) *Disagreements often arise because of misunderstandings.*

D

disappointment at sth *The victim's family expressed anger and disappointment at the verdict of 'not guilty'.*

disappointment with sth/sb *He was painfully aware of his father's disappointment with him.*

disappointment over/about sth *There was a lot of disappointment over the cancellation of the project.*

PHRASES

a sense/feeling of disappointment *There is a sense of deep disappointment at the team's performance.*

a look of disappointment *She couldn't hide the look of disappointment on her face.*

a twinge of disappointment (=a small feeling of disappointment) *She felt a twinge of disappointment at not getting first prize.*

2 someone or something that is not as good as you hoped or expected

ADJECTIVES

a big disappointment *I was a big disappointment to my parents.*

a huge/great/massive disappointment *His latest film is a massive disappointment.*

a bitter disappointment *Not getting into university was a bitter disappointment to my brother.*

a terrible disappointment *It must be a terrible disappointment to lose a final.*

a severe/grave disappointment *The unemployment figures are a grave disappointment for the government.*

VERBS

come as a disappointment *If you are looking for quiet beaches, the island may come as a disappointment.*

prove/turn out to be a disappointment (=be shown to be a disappointment) *The job proved a disappointment and she left after only six months.*

PREPOSITIONS

a disappointment to/for sb *The cut in funding came as a huge disappointment to us.* | *The concert was a real disappointment for many fans.*

PHRASES

be something of a disappointment (=be rather disappointing) *After her brilliant last novel, this one was something of a disappointment.*

disapproval *n*

the feeling when you do not like or agree with someone or something

ADJECTIVES

strong/deep/intense disapproval *The president faces strong disapproval of his war strategy.*

widespread/general disapproval (=among many people) *There is widespread international disapproval of the way the country has treated its citizens.*

public disapproval *The company decided not to go ahead with the plan, because of public disapproval.*

official disapproval *His behaviour was the subject of official disapproval.*

universal disapproval (=by everyone) *There is almost universal disapproval for the scheme.*

VERBS

express/show/voice your disapproval *Britain and the United States expressed their disapproval by withdrawing their offer of substantial economic aid.*

look at sb/look upon sth with disapproval *Isaac looked at his son with disapproval.*

meet with disapproval/be greeted with disapproval (=people disapprove of something) *The decision met with widespread public disapproval.*

PHRASES

a chorus of disapproval (=a lot of people saying that they do not agree with something) *This suggestion was met by a chorus of disapproval from other party members.*

much to sb's disapproval (=used when saying that someone strongly disapproves of something) *She decided to study art, much to her parents' disapproval.*

disapprove *v*

to think that someone or something is bad or wrong

ADVERBS

strongly disapprove of sb/sth *Her parents strongly disapproved of the marriage.*

thoroughly disapprove of sb/sth (=completely) *I thoroughly disapprove of hunting in any form.*

ANTONYMS **disapprove → approve (1)**

disarmament *n*

when a country reduces the number of weapons it has, or the size of its army, navy etc

ADJECTIVES

nuclear disarmament *The campaign for nuclear disarmament began in the 1960s.*

multilateral disarmament (=involving several different countries) *Some form of multilateral disarmament would benefit everyone.*

unilateral disarmament (=involving only one country) *The British prime minister is not in favour of unilateral disarmament.*

disarmament + NOUNS

disarmament negotiations/talks *United Nations disarmament negotiations started today.*

a disarmament treaty/agreement *There will be talks on a new disarmament treaty.*

disaster *n*

1 a sudden event such as a flood, storm, or accident which causes great damage or suffering

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + disaster

a natural disaster (=one caused by nature, such as a storm or earthquake) *The island has been hit by storms and other natural disasters.*

a terrible disaster *The nation suffered a terrible disaster and thousands were killed.*

the worst disaster *The earthquake was the worst disaster in the country's history.*

a national disaster (=one affecting the whole of a country) *The president called the flooding a national disaster.*

an ecological/environmental disaster (=one causing great damage to nature) *This region is facing an ecological disaster as oil continues to wash up on our coastline.*

a humanitarian disaster (=in which a lot of people die) *The prime minister appealed for international aid to avert a humanitarian disaster.*

a nuclear disaster (=an accident involving nuclear power or weapons) *People are worried that there could be another nuclear disaster like the one in Fukushima.*

an air/rail disaster (=a bad air or rail accident) *The crash was the worst rail disaster in Pakistan's history.*

a ferry disaster *His parents were both drowned in a ferry disaster in the Greek islands.*

a mining disaster *83 coal miners have been killed in the country's worst ever mining disaster.*

VERBS

a disaster strikes (=happens suddenly) *No one knows where the next natural disaster will strike.*

a disaster happens/takes place *We moved out of New Orleans shortly after the disaster happened.*

prevent/avert a disaster *Luckily the pilot saw the other plane just in time, and a disaster was averted.*

spell disaster (=mean that a disaster will happen) *The drought could spell disaster for wildlife.*

disaster + NOUNS

a disaster area/zone (=area where a disaster has happened) *Military planes flew food supplies to the disaster area.*

a disaster victim (*also* **a victim of a disaster**) *Aid is being given to the disaster victims.*

PHRASES

the aftermath of a disaster (=the time after a disaster when people are still dealing with its effects) *In the aftermath of the disaster, disease and starvation killed many people.*

THESAURUS: disaster

crash, collision, disaster, wreck, pile-up → **accident**

2 something that is very bad or a failure, especially when this is very annoying or disappointing

ADJECTIVES

a complete/total disaster *It rained all day and the parade was a complete disaster.*

a financial/economic disaster *The project was a financial disaster.*

an unmitigated disaster (=a complete failure) *The movie was an unmitigated disaster, hated by critics and the public.*

a potential disaster (=one that could happen) *Always save a backup copy of your work to avoid potential disasters.*

impending disaster (=one that is going to happen soon) *She had a sense of impending disaster.*

a near disaster (=almost a complete failure) *The election proved to be a near disaster for Labour.*

VERBS

end in disaster *The scheme ended in disaster and they lost all their money.*

spell disaster (=cause something to end badly or fail) *Bad luck and the recession spelt disaster for her business.*

be courting disaster (=be behaving in a way that makes a bad thing more likely to happen) *By having an affair with his boss, he was courting disaster.*

become a disaster *The crisis was quickly becoming a political disaster.*

PREPOSITIONS

be a disaster for sb *This year has been a disaster for the team.*

PHRASES

be on the brink of disaster (=almost in a very bad situation) *Once again the peace process was on the brink of disaster.*

be a recipe for disaster (=very likely to end badly) *Getting married too young is a recipe for disaster.*

sth is a disaster waiting to happen (=used to say that something is bad and will fail) *The government's health service reforms are a disaster waiting to happen.*

disbelief *n*

the feeling when you cannot believe someone or something or are very surprised

ADJECTIVES

complete/total/utter/absolute disbelief *My mother looked at me in total disbelief.*

discussion *n*

an occasion when people discuss something, or the process of discussing something

ADJECTIVES

a long/lengthy discussion *After a long discussion, they decided that she should go back to work.*

a short/brief/quick discussion *The book starts with a brief discussion of how people might live without modern technology.*

much discussion *There has been much discussion recently of the role of religion in the modern world.*

a general discussion *There will be a general discussion about the situation in Afghanistan.*

an informal/private discussion *The two leaders had informal discussions over the phone.*

an interesting/fascinating/useful discussion *Thank you all very much – it has been a very interesting discussion.*

a serious/intense discussion *There needs to be a serious discussion about the future of our planet.*

a heated discussion (=one in which people have very strong feelings) *There were a number of heated discussions between the actor and the director of the film.*

a high-level discussion (=by people in very important positions) *There have been high-level discussions between the US and Russia.*

a detailed/in-depth/extensive discussion *For a more detailed discussion of this issue, see Chapter 12.*

a wide-ranging discussion (=about many things) *They had wide-ranging discussions covering political, financial, and strategic matters.*

an online discussion (=on the internet) *There will be an online discussion and everyone will get a chance to express their views.*

VERBS + discussion

have a discussion *They were having a discussion about the best place for the conference.*

hold a discussion *formal* (=people have a discussion) *Discussions were held in Geneva about a possible peace agreement.*

join in/take part in/participate in a discussion *He is an enthusiastic student who always joins in class discussions.*

start/open a discussion *The president will start discussions on Monday with political leaders to form a new government.*

enter into a discussion (=start a discussion in order to reach an agreement about something) *The two companies have agreed to enter into discussions aimed at resolving the issue.*

continue a discussion *I hope we can continue this discussion at a later date.*

lead a discussion (=be the main speaker in a discussion about something) *Timothy Garton Ash led a discussion about Britain's place in the world.*

encourage/promote/stimulate discussion *We hope the book will encourage discussion on the development of Asian cities.*

come up for discussion (=be something that people discuss) *The subject of who owns the islands is likely to come up for discussion.*

facilitate a discussion (=help people to have a successful discussion) *His role is to facilitate discussions between the two opposing groups.*

discussion + VERBS

a discussion takes place *Discussions took place about the types of restaurants and shops that would be most appropriate for the area.*

a discussion arises/ensues (=people start to discuss something) *Considerable discussion arose over the role played by the US in the war.*

a discussion centres on/focuses on sth *The discussion centred on the best way to use the money.*

NOUNS + discussion

a group discussion *Students are expected to take part in group discussions about a range of different topics.*

a class discussion *We had a class discussion about the death penalty.*

PREPOSITIONS

a discussion about/on sth *There has been a lot of discussion about racism in sport recently.*

a discussion with sb *He visited Paris for discussions with the French president.*

a discussion between sb *There have been discussions between the two companies about a possible merger.*

sth is under discussion (=people are discussing it) *The subject is still under discussion and no agreement has been reached.*

be in discussion with sb (=be discussing something with someone) *We are currently in discussion with his lawyer.*

PHRASES

a subject/topic for discussion (*also* **a subject/topic of discussion**) *The main topic for discussion in Britain is usually the weather.*

the outcome of a discussion (=what is decided as the result of a discussion) *The main outcome of the discussions was a trade agreement between the two countries.*

use sth as the basis for discussion *The teacher used the film as a basis for discussion about women's issues.*

throw the subject open for discussion (=allow people to discuss something and give their opinions about it) *The chairman threw the subject open for discussion and asked people for their comments.*

bring the discussion to an end/close (=end the discussion) *We're running out of time and I think we had better bring the discussion to a close.*

a discussion is going nowhere (=it is not achieving anything useful) *I don't see any point in continuing – this discussion is going nowhere.*

a full and frank discussion (=a discussion in which people say what they really think and often strongly disagree) *Let's just say we had a full and frank discussion about why we lost the game.*

disease *n*

an illness which affects a person, animal, or plant

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + disease

a common disease *Measles is a common disease among children.*

a rare disease *She suffers from a rare bone disease.*

a serious disease *He was worried that he might be suffering from a serious disease.*

a fatal/deadly disease (=that causes death) *If left untreated, the disease can be fatal.*

an incurable disease (=that cannot be cured) *Diseases that were once thought incurable can now be treated with antibiotics.*

an infectious/contagious disease (=that spreads quickly from one person to another) *The disease is highly contagious.*

heart/blood/skin etc disease *He is being treated for kidney disease.*

a hereditary/inherited/genetic disease (=that is passed from parent to child) *Should people with a serious hereditary disease have children?*

a tropical disease (=one that occurs in hot countries) *Malaria is the commonest of the tropical diseases.*

a degenerative disease *formal* (=one that gradually gets worse and makes your body weaker over a long time) *She was suffering from a degenerative disease that confined her to a wheelchair.*

VERBS

have a disease *How long have you had the disease?*

suffer from a disease *About three million people suffer from the disease.*

catch/get a disease (*also* **contract a disease** *formal*): *He caught the disease while travelling in Africa.*

die of/from (a) disease *Many of the prisoners died of disease.*

pass on a disease (*also* **transmit a disease** *formal*): *They may pass the disease on to their children.*

carry a disease (=have it and able to give it to people) *They tried to kill the insects that carried the disease.*

cause a disease *Smoking is probably the major factor causing heart disease.*

prevent a disease *It has been claimed that fibre in the diet could help prevent many serious diseases.*

treat a disease *The disease can be treated with antibiotics.*

cure a disease *The plant was believed to cure diseases in humans and cattle.*

fight/control a disease *Some bacteria help the human body fight disease.*

a disease spreads *The disease spread quickly throughout Europe.*

PREPOSITIONS

a disease of the lungs/liver/spine etc *He suffers from a disease of the liver.*

PHRASES

a cure for a disease *There is no known cure for this disease.*

the symptoms of a disease (=physical signs that someone has a disease) *To begin with, there are often no symptoms of the disease.*

an outbreak of a disease (=an occasion when a lot of people or animals get it) *There has been an outbreak of the disease in Wales.*

the spread of a disease *Knowing the facts about AIDS can prevent the spread of the disease.*

disgust *n*

a very strong feeling of dislike or disapproval

VERBS

look at sb/sth with disgust *She looked at him with disgust.*

feel disgust (*also* **experience disgust** *formal*): *He felt disgust at seeing his daughter's killer in court.*

show/express your disgust *The player showed his disgust by throwing his shirt to the ground as he left the pitch.*

hide your disgust *She made no effort to hide her disgust.*

ADJECTIVES

obvious disgust *She was staring at him with obvious disgust.*

utter disgust *He had a look of utter disgust on his face.*

PREPOSITIONS

in disgust *Sam threw his books down in disgust and stormed out of the room.*

with disgust *She shook her head with disgust.*

disgust at/with sb/sth *The fans didn't hide their disgust at the referee's decision.*

PHRASES

a look/expression of disgust *He reached into the bin with a look of disgust on his face.*

feelings of disgust *People who are extremely overweight often experience feelings of disgust about their own bodies.*

(much) to sb's disgust *Much to my disgust, I found that there were no toilets for the disabled.*

be full of disgust *His voice was full of disgust and anger.*

VERBS

have a dislike of/for sb/sth *I have a particular dislike of modern jazz.*

feel dislike of/for sb/sth *I don't feel any dislike for him – we're just very different.*

take a dislike to sb/sth (=start to dislike someone or something) *My sister took an instant dislike to him.*

show/express your dislike of/for sb/sth *Arthur tried hard not to show his dislike of the meal.*

hide/conceal your dislike of/for sb/sth *He didn't bother to hide his dislike for me.*

PREPOSITIONS

a dislike of sth/sb *Denise shared her mother's dislike of housework.*

a dislike for sb/sth *He always had a deep dislike for authority.*

dismal *adj* THESAURUS sad (2)

dismiss *v*

1 to refuse to consider someone's idea, opinion etc, because you think it is not serious, true, or important

NOUNS

dismiss an idea *Both actors dismissed any idea of a romantic relationship between them.*

dismiss a suggestion/proposal *He dismissed suggestions by his rival that he should resign.*

dismiss a possibility *The prime minister dismissed the possibility of an early election.*

dismiss a claim *An industrial tribunal dismissed his claim of unfair dismissal.*

dismiss an allegation/charge *She dismissed all the allegations against her, saying they were completely unfounded.*

dismiss a thought *I tried to dismiss the thought that he could be lying to me.*

dismiss fears *The Transport minister dismissed fears that the railway line would close.*

dismiss criticism *He dismissed criticism of the country's human rights record.*

ADVERBS

dismiss sth easily/lightly (=without much thought) *This is a question that cannot be dismissed lightly.*

quickly dismiss sth *He quickly dismissed the idea as unworkable.*

casually dismiss sth (=without thinking about it seriously enough) *You can't just casually dismiss her opinion like that.*

PHRASES

dismiss sth out of hand (=immediately, without thinking about it) *It's an interesting idea so don't dismiss it out of hand.*

dismiss sth as unrealistic/false/ridiculous etc *We dismissed his proposal as completely unworkable.*

dismiss sth as nonsense/a fake/a joke etc *She dismissed the comments as 'a joke'.*

2 to make someone leave their job, usually because they have done something wrong

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

dismiss sb from their job/post/position *He was dismissed from his post as chairman of the party.*

dismiss sb for sth/on the grounds of sth (=for a particular reason) *The senior nursing officer was dismissed for misconduct.*

be unfairly dismissed *The tribunal decided that she was unfairly dismissed from her job.*

disobedient *adj* THESAURUS naughty

disobey *v*

to refuse to do what someone with authority tells you to do, or refuse to obey a rule or law

NOUNS

disobey sb's orders/instructions *He had disobeyed the captain's orders.*

disobey the law/rules *If you disobey the rules, you can expect to be punished.*

disobey an officer *In the army, it is a crime to disobey a superior officer.*

disobey your father/mother/parents etc *You know what will happen, if you continue to disobey your father.*

ADVERBS

wilfully disobey (=deliberately disobey) *The charges against him include making false official statements and wilfully disobeying orders.*

THESAURUS: disobey

break
law | rule | regulations | guidelines | limit | agreement | promise
to not obey a law or rule, or not do what you have agreed or promised:
The government will deal harshly with anyone who breaks the law. | The minister was caught breaking the speed limit by the police. | Both sides accused each other of breaking their agreement. | She said she would come to the party and then she broke her promise.

defy
law | order | ban | father | parents
to deliberately refuse to do what someone in authority tells you to do, especially in a way that shows you do not agree with them and have no respect for them:
Supermarkets are defying the law by opening on national holidays. | The police arrested the youth for defying a court order. | Protesters defied the ban on demonstrations (=defied an order that forbids you from doing something). | *John had always argued with his father and defied him.*

flout
law | rules | regulations
to deliberately disobey a rule or law in a very public way, especially in a way that shows you do not care about it:
Some drivers regularly flout the law and drive at speeds of over 180 kilometres per hour. | We need tougher action against companies who flout the rules. | For too long, people have blatantly flouted building regulations (=in a very obvious way).

violate
law | rules | regulations | rights | agreement | treaty | terms | principle
to disobey a law, or do something that is against an agreement or principle:
Capone was arrested for violating US tax laws. | The government has violated the basic human rights of its citizens. | He denied that Britain had violated its agreement. | She violated the terms of her contract by working for another company. | Giving government money to a company violates the principle of free competition.

contravene *formal*
law | act | guidelines | rules | agreement | treaty | resolution | convention | section | article
to be against a law, rule, or agreement, or do something that is against a law, rule, or agreement:
Some people say that the US invasion contravened international law. | The deal did not contravene any existing trade agreements. | The British government may have contravened the European Convention on Human Rights.

ANTONYMS **disobey → obey**

disorder *n*
a mental or physical illness which prevents part of your body from working properly

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + disorder

a common/rare disorder *The doctor said that it was a very common skin disorder.*
a genetic disorder (=caused by a gene from your parents) *This genetic disorder speeds up the process of ageing.*
a mental/psychiatric/psychological disorder (=affecting the mind) *He was diagnosed with a severe psychiatric disorder.*
a blood/brain/heart/liver etc disorder *She suffers from a rare blood disorder.*
an eating disorder (=in which someone stops eating a normal amount of food) *Eating disorders can be very difficult to treat.*
a sleep/sleeping disorder *Sleep disorders such as insomnia affect huge numbers of people.*
a personality disorder (=that stops someone having normal relationships) *The study suggested that 84% of prisoners have some sort of personality disorder.*

VERBS

have a disorder *The singer admitted she had an eating disorder.*
suffer from a disorder *People who are suffering from psychological disorders often fail to get treatment.*
develop a disorder *Women are more likely to develop this disorder than men.*
treat a disorder *The drug is used to treat lung disorders.*
a disorder affects sb/sth *Many genetic disorders affect only girls or only boys.*

PREPOSITIONS

a disorder of sth *He suffers from a rare disorder of the liver.*

display Ac *n*
a show or an arrangement of things for people to look at or buy

ADJECTIVES

a fine/magnificent/superb display (=a very good one) *The museum has a magnificent display of medieval jewellery.*
a spectacular/dazzling/eye-catching display (=very impressive to look at) *The gymnastic team put on a dazzling display.*

VERBS

create a display *She created an award-winning display at the national garden show.*
have a display *The gallery has a superb display of modern art.*
go on/be on display *The vase will go on display to the public from today.*

PREPOSITIONS

a display of sth *I was amazed at the dazzling display of talent on show.*

disposal Ac *n*
the process of getting rid of something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + disposal

safe disposal *The US and Russia held talks on the safe disposal of nuclear weapons.*
illegal disposal *People were put at risk by the illegal disposal of clinical waste.*
waste disposal (=of unwanted materials or substances) *Most countries have improved their standards of waste disposal.*
refuse/rubbish/garbage disposal (=of things people throw out of houses, shops etc) *Refuse disposal is the responsibility of county councils.*
sewage disposal (=of waste water and waste products from toilets etc) *The city invested heavily in improved sewage disposal.*
bomb disposal (=of bombs before they explode) *The building was evacuated and a bomb disposal team moved in.*

PREPOSITIONS

the disposal of sth *There are strict rules governing the safe disposal of hazardous waste.*

D

dispute *n*

a serious argument or disagreement

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + dispute

a bitter/fierce/acrimonious dispute (=very angry) *It caused a bitter dispute between the neighbouring republics.*

a major/serious dispute *He had major disputes with several players.*

a minor dispute *A minor dispute about homework became a violent confrontation.*

a long-running/long dispute *They now have a chance to end this long-running dispute.*

an industrial dispute *BrE*, **a labor dispute** *AmE* (=between workers and employers) *A lot of working days are lost through industrial disputes.*

a pay dispute (=about how much money employees are paid) *The pay dispute involved 450 staff.*

a trade dispute *The countries were involved in a trade dispute over imports of bananas.*

a political/legal dispute *There was a long legal dispute between the two companies.*

a domestic dispute *formal* (=between people who live together) *The court heard that he had been stabbed during a domestic dispute.*

a border dispute (=about where the border between two countries is) *The border dispute between Argentina and Chile was resolved.*

a territorial dispute (=about which country land belongs to) *The war started as the result of a territorial dispute.*

VERBS

be involved in/have a dispute *The US government was involved in a dispute with China.*

be locked in a dispute (=be involved in one that is difficult to resolve) *Workers and management are locked in a bitter dispute.*

get into a dispute (=become involved) *We don't want to get into a dispute with them.*

be in dispute with sb *He was in dispute with the company about his contract.*

resolve/settle/end a dispute *It is hoped that the dispute can be resolved peacefully.*

deal with/handle a dispute *The court can deal with disputes between member states.*

sth leads to a dispute *Decisions about education can lead to disputes between parents.*

a dispute arises (=starts) *Sometimes a dispute arises between the seller and the buyer.*

PREPOSITIONS

a dispute over/about sth *There was a dispute over pay.*

a dispute between sb and sb *It is a typical dispute between two former business partners.*

a dispute with sb *He was involved in a dispute with his employer.*

dissertation *n*

a long piece of writing on a particular subject, especially one written for a university degree

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + dissertation

a 3,000-word/15,000-word etc dissertation *Courses are assessed by written examination and by a 15,000-word dissertation.*

a PhD/MA etc dissertation *I wrote my MA dissertation on Japanese phonetics.*

an undergraduate dissertation *BrE: More and more colleges are requiring undergraduate dissertations that demonstrate a student's abilities.*

a research dissertation *He is collecting data for his research dissertation.*

VERBS

write/do a dissertation *Students have to write a 10,000-word dissertation.*

hand in your dissertation (*also* **submit your dissertation** *formal*): *You must submit your dissertation by the deadline date.*

dissertation + NOUNS

a dissertation topic *You should select a dissertation topic that can be completed within a two-year time frame.*

PREPOSITIONS

a dissertation on sth *She wrote her dissertation on Charles Baudelaire, the French poet.*

distance *n*

the amount of space between two places or things

ADJECTIVES

a long/great/considerable distance *The sound of guns seemed a long distance away.*

vast distances (=very long distances) *The aircraft is able to carry huge loads over vast distances.*

a short distance *I quickly walked the short distance to the car.*

a good distance (=quite a long distance) *He was a good distance ahead of us.*

some distance (=quite a long distance) *He heard a scream some distance away.*

a safe distance (=enough space to be safe) *You should keep a safe distance from the car in front.*

the right/correct distance *Are you the right distance from your computer screen?*

VERBS

travel a great/long etc distance *In some countries children must travel great distances to school each day.*

cover a distance (=go a particular distance) *I don't know how he covered the distance so quickly.*

measure the distance between things *Now we are able to measure the distances between the planets.*

judge/estimate a distance *Animals that hunt can judge distances very well.*

PREPOSITIONS

the distance between sth and sth *He judged the distance between the boat and the river bank wrongly.*

the distance from sth to sth *The distance from London to Weymouth is 143 miles.*

at a distance of two feet/ten metres etc *I followed him at a distance of about ten yards.*

from a distance of two feet/ten metres etc *She could read the sign from a distance of 20 feet.*

over a long/short etc distance *We can now communicate easily over long distances.*

PHRASES

within (easy) walking distance (=near enough to walk to easily) *There are lots of restaurants within walking distance.*

within travelling/commuting/driving distance of sth (=near enough to make travel to or from a place possible) *The job was not within travelling distance of my home.*

within striking distance of sth (=not far from something, especially something you are going to attack) *Their troops had advanced to within striking distance of the town.*

distant *adj, adv* THESAURUS far

distinction Ac *n*

1 a clear difference or separation between two similar things

ADJECTIVES

a clear distinction *The legal system makes a clear distinction between adults and children.*

a fine/subtle distinction (=small) *Language enables us to make fine distinctions between similar ideas.*

a sharp distinction (=very clear) *The president drew a sharp distinction between his party and the Republican Party.*

an important/crucial distinction *There is an important distinction between these two types of cancer.*

a fundamental distinction (=a basic one) *There is a fundamental distinction between authors and readers.*

a useful distinction *He makes a useful distinction between the two theories.*

VERBS

make a distinction (*also* **draw a distinction** *formal*) (=say or show that one exists) *It isn't easy to make a distinction between these two words.*

see a distinction (=recognize that one exists) *He saw no distinction between religious beliefs and superstition.*

blur the distinction between sth and sth (=make it less clear) *The distinction between military and civilian targets has become blurred.*

PREPOSITIONS

a distinction between sth *There is often no clear distinction between an allergy and food intolerance.*

2 the quality of being special in some way

VERBS

have/enjoy the distinction of doing sth *Philadelphia has the distinction of being the largest city in Pennsylvania.*

achieve/earn the distinction of doing sth *He had achieved the rare distinction of being the only driver to win both races.*

ADJECTIVES

a rare distinction *Ahmed had achieved the rare distinction of qualifying for all four championships.*

a dubious distinction (=a special quality that is not good) *The country has the dubious distinction of having the highest proportion of its population in prison.*

distort *v* THESAURUS change[1] (2)

distress *n*

1 great unhappiness or suffering

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable/deep distress *This type of crime can cause great distress.*

acute/severe distress (=which you feel very strongly) *She was clearly suffering from acute distress after the death of her husband.*

emotional/mental/psychological distress *Some people eat too much as a way of dealing with emotional distress.*

financial/economic distress (=difficulties caused by money problems) *The charity helps families who are in financial distress.*

further distress *I was anxious to avoid causing them any further distress.*

VERBS

cause sb distress *I'm sorry if I caused you any distress.*

feel distress *I know that he feels great distress as a result of losing his job.*

suffer/experience distress *She claimed that she suffered emotional distress because of the company's actions.*

show signs of distress *Did your pet show any signs of distress when you moved home?*

add to sb's distress *I don't want to add to your distress by giving you more things to worry about.*

PREPOSITIONS

in distress *The girl was crying and clearly in distress.*

sb's distress at/over sth *We share their distress at what has happened.*

to sb's distress *To the distress of his parents, he showed no interest in getting a job.*

PHRASES

a state of distress *The women was in a state of distress.*

D

2 a situation when a ship or aircraft is in danger and needs help

distress + NOUNS

a distress call/signal *The ship sent out a distress signal because it was sinking.*

PREPOSITIONS

in distress *We stopped to help another boat in distress.*

distressed *adj* THESAURUS **sad (1)**

distribute *v* THESAURUS **give (1)**

district *n*

an area of a town or the countryside, especially one with particular features

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + district

an urban district (=in a town) *By 1911 over three-quarters of British people lived in urban districts.*

a rural district (=in the countryside) *There are few schools in the rural districts of Bangladesh.*

the surrounding districts (=in the area around or next to something) *The market attracts farmers from the surrounding districts.*

a financial/business/commercial district (=where there are a lot of banks and other businesses) *He works in San Francisco's financial district.*

a shopping district *The bomb exploded in a crowded shopping district.*

an entertainment district (=where there are a lot of bars, clubs etc) *The West End is London's entertainment district.*

a theatre district *BrE*, **a theater district** *AmE*: *The restaurant is located in the middle of New York's theater district.*

a residential district (=where people live rather than work) *The residential districts are much quieter than the city centre.*

a poor/wealthy district (=where a lot of people are poor or wealthy) *He lived in one of London's poorest districts.*

a fashionable district (=popular with rich or well-known people) *She lives in a fashionable district of the city.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a district *The apartment is in a wealthy district of Cairo.*

THESAURUS: district

region, zone, district, neighbourhood, suburb, quarter, slum, ghetto → **area (1)**

distrust *n*

a feeling that you cannot trust someone

ADJECTIVES

deep/profound distrust (=great distrust) *Dylan's deep distrust of journalists made him difficult to interview.*

mutual distrust (=both people, countries etc distrust each other) *The two countries are locked in a relationship of mutual distrust.*

popular/public distrust *A new study shows that public distrust of the media has increased.*

widespread/general distrust (=among many people) *The financial crisis has led to widespread distrust of the banking industry.*

growing distrust *The poll reveals a growing distrust of business among the public.*

healthy distrust (=distrust for good reasons) *He has always had a healthy distrust of authority.*

VERBS

feel distrust *Eighty percent of American citizens feel distrust of politicians.*

create distrust *Lies create distrust in a relationship between two people.*

PREPOSITIONS

distrust of sb/sth *Will the country ever overcome its distrust of foreigners?*

distrust between sb and sb *The book discusses the origins of the distrust between the Arab World and the West.*

distrust towards/toward sb/sth *There is growing distrust toward the government.*

with distrust *Local people regard the police with suspicion and distrust.*

PHRASES

a climate/atmosphere of distrust *There remains a climate of distrust between the management and the workers.*

feelings of distrust *She has had feelings of distrust for her husband ever since he admitted to having an affair.*

disturb *v*

to interrupt someone or interfere with something so that it cannot continue in the same way

NOUNS

disturb sb's concentration *I couldn't work with the kids disturbing my concentration.*

disturb sb's sleep *Local people said their sleep was being disturbed by noise from aircraft.*

disturb sb's thoughts *A gentle knock on the door disturbed his thoughts.*

disturb the balance (*also* **disturb the equilibrium** *formal*): *His arrival disturbed the delicate balance of their marriage.*

Disturb the peace is used in legal contexts, to refer to the crime of making a loud noise, fighting etc in a public place: *He was found guilty of* ***disturbing the peace****.*

PHRASES

sorry to disturb you *spoken*: *Sorry to disturb you, but could you sign this letter, please?*

disturbance *n*

a situation in which people behave violently in public

ADJECTIVES

a violent disturbance *Over a hundred people were injured during violent disturbances in the capital.*

a serious disturbance *There were serious disturbances in a number of British cities.*

a public disturbance *Many people were unhappy with the government's plans but there were no reports of public disturbances.*

civil disturbances (=fighting between different groups of people in a country) *Two men had already been killed in civil disturbances.*

political disturbances *There were political disturbances following the announcement.*

VERBS

cause/create a disturbance *Several people were arrested for creating a disturbance outside the embassy.*

quell a disturbance *formal* (=stop one) *Extra police were called to quell the disturbances.*

be involved in a disturbance *He was involved in a disturbance with journalists waiting outside his house.*

a disturbance breaks out (=starts) *A disturbance broke out between local youths and a group of soldiers.*

dive *n*

when something moves down through the air or water

ADJECTIVES

a steep dive (=going down suddenly) *The fighter plane went into a steep dive.*

a vertical dive (=going straight down) *His actions sent the plane into a near vertical dive.*

a shallow dive (=going down slowly rather than suddenly) *The bird captures its prey on the ground after a long shallow dive.*

VERBS

go into a dive (=start to move downwards) *The plane was in trouble, then it went into a dive.*

pull out of a dive (=stop a plane going down) *He tried to pull out of the steep dive before hitting the ground.*

diverse *adj*

including many different things or types of people

ADVERBS

highly/incredibly diverse (=extremely diverse) *India is an incredibly diverse country.*

ethnically/culturally diverse *New York is one of the most culturally diverse cities in the world.*

NOUNS

a diverse range/group *The college has students from a diverse range of social and economic backgrounds.*

a diverse population/community/society *The rainforest is home to a diverse population of animals and plants.*

a diverse workforce *The advantage of having a diverse workforce is that staff can relate to a wide range of customers.*

diverse backgrounds/cultures *University gives you the opportunity to meet people from diverse backgrounds.*

diverse interests *He was a man of remarkably diverse interests and achievements.*

diverse needs *Teachers have to take account of the diverse needs of their students.*

diversity Ac *n*

a situation in which something includes many different types of people or things

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable/enormous diversity *There was considerable diversity of opinion among the experts.*

rich diversity *The region is known for the rich diversity of its wildlife.*

incredible/extraordinary diversity *Iran is a country of incredible diversity.*

the sheer diversity of sth (=the surprisingly great diversity) *The sheer diversity of the courses available is amazing.*

cultural diversity *Because of its cultural diversity, Malaysia has many festivals throughout the year.*

ethnic/racial diversity *The huge number of different restaurants reflects the ethnic diversity of the city.*

biological diversity (=the fact that there are many different types of plant and animal) *Human society is having a major effect on the biological diversity of the Earth.*

genetic diversity (=the fact that there are many different genes) *Genetic diversity is vital for maintaining disease resistance in crops.*

VERBS

encourage/promote diversity *Creating a pond in your garden encourages wildlife diversity.*

maintain/protect/preserve diversity *It is important to maintain diversity among the plant population.*

increase/reduce diversity *Governments often try to reduce diversity in education.*

reflect the diversity of sth *The school is keen to reflect the diversity of the community.*

PREPOSITIONS

diversity of sth *Because of our members' diversity of experience, our debates are interesting and well-informed.*

diversity in sth *The diversity in the size and shape of animals' horns is remarkable.*

D

divide *v*

1 to separate something into two or more parts

Grammar
You can also say **divide sth up**, with the same meaning.

ADVERBS

be broadly/roughly divided (up) into sth (=in a way that is not exact) *The research can be broadly divided into three main categories.*

be neatly divided (up) into sth *In those days, the world was neatly divided into friends and enemies.*

be conveniently divided (up) into sth *The book is conveniently divided into three parts.*

PREPOSITIONS

divide sth in two *The room was divided in two by a plastic partition.*

divide sth (up) into sth *Divide the class into groups of four.*

2 to share something between people or things

Grammar
You can also say **divide sth up**, with the same meaning.

ADVERBS

divide sth (up) equally *We need to divide the work equally.*

divide sth (up) fairly *The other family members complained because they didn't think the money was being divided up fairly.*

be evenly divided *The eight-member panel was evenly divided between Republicans and Democrats.*

PREPOSITIONS

divide sth (up) between/among sb *They planned to divide the money between them.*

3 to make a group of people disagree with each other

Grammar
This meaning of **divide** is often passive.

ADVERBS

be deeply divided *Politically, the city is deeply divided.*

be bitterly divided *The country was bitterly divided over the war.*

sharply divided (=very clearly divided) *Opinion is sharply divided on this issue.*

be evenly divided *Voters are evenly divided over the plan.*

VERBS

remain divided *Experts remain divided about whether the drug is harmful or not.*

NOUNS

divide the country/nation *We need a leader that can unite this divided country.*

divide the community *We risk dividing the community even further.*

divide the party *The issue continues to divide the party.*

divide opinion *The war has divided public opinion.*

PREPOSITIONS

be divided over/on/about sth *The people are divided over the future of their country.*

divorce *n*

the legal ending of a marriage

VERBS

get a divorce *After five unhappy years they decided to get a divorce.*

ask (sb) for a divorce *She asked her husband for a divorce after he had been unfaithful.*

want a divorce *She told him she wanted a divorce.*

a marriage ends in divorce *One in three marriages ends in divorce.*

file/petition for (a) divorce (=start the legal divorce process) *The next day I saw a lawyer and filed for a divorce.*

be granted a divorce (=be legally given one) *Mullaney's wife was granted a divorce on grounds of his adultery.*

ADJECTIVES

a bitter/painful divorce *After a long and bitter divorce, Wendy was looking forward to starting a new life.*

a messy divorce (=complicated and unpleasant to deal with) *For the children's sake we want to avoid a messy divorce.*

divorce + NOUNS

the divorce rate (=the number of people who get a divorce) *The country has a high divorce rate.*

a divorce case (=a legal case dealing with a divorce) *It was the biggest divorce case that an English court has dealt with.*

a divorce settlement (=the amount of money, property etc each person gets in a divorce) *She received a $10 million divorce settlement from her first husband.*

PHRASES

grounds for divorce (=acceptable reasons for divorce, according to the law) *Violence and neglect are grounds for divorce.*

do *v*

to perform an action or activity

do + NOUNS

do a job/task *Machines are doing jobs that humans used to do.*

do work/housework/homework *She was too tired to do any work.*

do business *The company does a lot of business in China.*

do something/nothing/anything *My son lies on the sofa and does nothing all day.*

do sports/exercise *The doctor says I need to do more exercise.*

do a test/exam/course/class *Everyone has to do a fitness test.*

do an essay/report *I'm doing an essay on Jane Austen.*

do research/an experiment/a study *A lot of experiments have been done by psychologists on this topic.*

do a talk/presentation *I was asked to do a talk at the conference.*

do a check/inspection/search *Customs officers are doing a check on the company.*

do an investigation/survey *The police did a thorough investigation but they found no new evidence.*

do a calculation *She did a quick calculation on a piece of paper.*

do a drawing/painting/picture/sketch *He did a picture of an old farmer.*

You often use **do** when talking about everyday household tasks – **do the shopping/cleaning/ironing/cooking**: *Who does the cooking in your family?* **do the dishes/laundry**: *Can you do the dishes for me* (=wash them)? **do your hair/make-up**: *She's upstairs doing her make-up* (=putting it on).

THESAURUS: do

make
decision | choice | mistake | speech | statement | announcement | suggestion | progress | change
used with certain nouns when saying that someone does something, for example decides, says, or changes something:
The committee will make its final decision tomorrow. | The newspaper admitted that it had made a mistake. | He made a speech about the need for more nurses. | Can I make a suggestion? | His teacher says he has made good progress at school. | Companies are having to make major changes to adjust to new market conditions.

give
speech | talk | presentation | class | lecture | performance
to do something such as talk or perform in front of an audience:
Chris will give an illustrated talk on his expedition to Greenland. | Nicole Kidman gave a brilliant performance in the film.

take
test | exam | bath | shower | walk | drive | ride | swim
to do something – used about tests and everyday actions such as going for a walk or having a shower:
Kate's taking her driving test tomorrow. | I think I'll go and take a shower. | They took long walks in the woods.

British speakers often use **have** instead of **take**, and say **have a bath/shower/walk/swim**.
You can also say **go for a walk/drive/swim**.

commit
crime | offence | murder | robbery | act | suicide | sin | atrocity
to do something that is a crime, or something that people strongly disapprove of:
The crime was committed in the early hours of Sunday morning. | He was one of the men who committed the robbery. | She tried to commit suicide because she was being bullied at school (=tried to kill herself).

You don't say 'do a crime/offence'. However, when you are talking about a particular crime, you can say that someone was *the person who* ***did the murder/robbery/burglary***.

carry out
work | task | duties | research | study | test | experiment | operation | investigation | search | survey | business | attack | robbery | punishment | execution
to do something, especially in a carefully planned way:
The work is being carried out in the university laboratory. | They carried out a survey on people's attitudes to work. | The group has carried out a number of bomb attacks.

You also use **carry out** when you do what you have said you will do: *The union* ***carried out their threat*** *and went on strike.* You also use it when you do what another person has told you to do: *I was only* ***carrying out your orders***. | *The staff* ***carried out her instructions***.

conduct *formal*
research | study | test | experiment | investigation | inquiry | search | survey | ceremony | business | operation | interview
to do something, especially in a carefully planned way. **Conduct** means the same as **carry out**, but it sounds more formal and official:
North Korea announced that it had conducted a nuclear test. | The police are conducting an investigation into the cause of the fire. | They

conducted a survey of approximately 2,000 people living in the area. | The interview was conducted in English.

perform *formal*
task | duties | operation | surgery | ceremony | analysis | research | study | experiment | calculation | action
to do something:
The job mostly involves performing administrative tasks. | Surgeons performed an emergency operation to save the baby. | We asked our local priest to perform the ceremony. | Do you think it is right to perform experiments on animals?

undertake *formal*
investigation | inspection | review | research | study | survey | project
to do something, especially something complicated or something that needs a lot of effort, which you are responsible for:
The company is undertaking a full investigation into the allegations. | All final year students have to undertake a research project.

implement
policy | plan | system | programme | decision | recommendation | proposal | change | reform | measure
to do something that has been officially planned or agreed:
The government continued to implement its policy of radical economic reform. | Managers are expected to implement decisions rather than deciding on the overall direction of the company. | Schools will have three months in which to implement the changes.

Formality
Often the same noun can be used with a range of different verbs, depending on the formality. For example ***carry out*** *research/a study/an experiment/an operation* sounds neutral. ***Do*** *research/a study/an experiment/an operation* sounds more informal and is typically used in spoken English. ***Perform*** *research/a study/an experiment/an operation* sounds more formal and is typically used in written English.

doctor *n*
someone who is trained to treat people who are ill

VERBS + doctor

go to the doctor *I'd been having bad headaches so I went to the doctor.*

see/visit a doctor (=go to the doctor) *A friend urged me to see a doctor about my breathing problems.*

ask a doctor (*also* **consult a doctor** *formal*): *If you have any of these symptoms, you should consult a doctor.*

call a doctor (=telephone one and ask them to come to you) *His mother was very worried and called the doctor.*

send for/get a doctor (=arrange for one to come to you) *In the middle of the night we decided to get the doctor.*

qualify as a doctor *He studied medicine, and qualified as a doctor in 2008.*

doctor + VERBS

a doctor examines sb *The doctor examined her and said she had a chest infection.*

a doctor treats sb *The doctors who treated her say she will recover.*

a doctor prescribes sth (=writes an order for medicine for someone) *My doctor prescribed me some painkillers.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + doctor

a qualified/trained doctor *The operation must be performed by a qualified doctor.*

a junior doctor *BrE* (=a doctor who has finished their medical training, who works in a hospital to get experience) *She worked as a junior doctor at South Tyrone Hospital.*

sb's local doctor *You should go and see your local doctor.*

a family doctor (=who treats all the members of a family) *We've had the same family doctor for 15 years.*

a hospital doctor *BrE: Hospital doctors have to work very long hours.*

PHRASES

a doctor's appointment *I have a doctor's appointment this afternoon.*

the doctor's surgery *BrE*, **the doctor's office** *AmE* (=where a doctor works) *Parents usually accompany children on visits to the doctor's surgery.*

document Ac *n*
a piece of writing on paper or on a computer

ADJECTIVES

a legal document *Legal documents are often written in a way that is difficult to understand.*

an official document *His name is mentioned in an official document.*

an important document *Your birth certificate is an important document, so keep it safe.*

a secret/confidential document *This document is strictly confidential.*

a leaked document (=a secret document that is made public in a newspaper, on the internet etc) *The paper published a leaked document which showed that the company knew the equipment was unsafe.*

an electronic document *You can send electronic documents by email.*

the original document *A photocopy will not be accepted – we need to see the original document.*

07-11 14:23
te-josephine-ochavo
02.cebu.archive.org

l to sign a document to say money.
ment *The final document wing year.*

lost my passport and all

an early version of a be changed later) *This is*

ation document (=a eople's opinions about *ve to comment on the tation document.*

ogramme that gives bout a subject

locumentary
ocumentary *There is an ocumentary about the ge.*
ocumentary *He likes mentaries.*
cumentary (=a g people's daily lives a) *The programme is filmed -the-wall documentary.*

/programme *He has just tary film about Thomas*

es *There was a BBC bout the history of art.*
maker *The American er Michael Moore has won*

ry *A local film crew is ry about volcanoes.*
nentary *I watched a really ary last night.*
documentary *The t shown on Channel 4.*

ut/on sth *I remember y about Picasso's early life.*

ith four legs, fur, and a tail.

a stray dog (=a pet dog that is lost) *He was always bringing home stray dogs.*

a guide dog *BrE*, **a seeing eye dog** *AmE* (=trained to guide a blind person) *No dogs except guide dogs are allowed in the store.*

a guard dog (=trained to guard a building) *The guard dog growled at him.*

a police dog (=trained to help the police) *Police dogs helped in the search for the missing child.*

a sniffer dog *BrE* (=trained to find drugs or bombs) *Police and sniffer dogs have become a regular presence at the airport.*

a dangerous dog *There have been several tragic cases of young children being attacked by dangerous dogs.*

dog + VERBS

a dog barks (=makes short loud sounds) *The dog barks every time someone comes to the door.*

a dog yaps (=barks – used of small dogs) *A little dog was yapping at her heels.*

a dog growls (=makes a long deep angry sound) *The dog growled at me as I walked towards it.*

a dog snarls (=shows its teeth and makes an angry sound) *When a dog snarls, it is threatening attack.*

a dog whines (=makes a long high sound because it is unhappy or in pain) *I could hear the dogs whining outside the door.*

a dog howls (=makes a long loud sound like a wolf) *We knew something was wrong because the dogs were howling.*

a dog bites sb *The dog bit me on the leg.*

a dog wags its tail (=moves its tail from side to side to show pleasure) *The dog bounded towards me, wagging its tail.*

VERBS + dog

have a dog (=keep one as a pet) *We have one dog and two cats.*

walk a dog/take a dog for a walk *She loves walking her dogs on the beach.*

feed a dog *Feeding a dog of that size costs a lot of money.*

train a dog (=teach it to do something) *The dogs are trained to sniff out drugs.*

dog + NOUNS

dog food *Ella opened a can of dog food.*

a dog owner *Dog owners are responsible for controlling their animals.*

a dog lover (=someone who likes dogs) *Britain*

D

a door swings open/shut (=moves forward to open or backwards to shut) *The door swung shut behind me.*

a door slides open/shut (=moves smoothly to the side or back again) *The lift doors slid open and we got in.*

a door leads somewhere *The kitchen door leads into the garden.*

door + NOUNS

a door handle (=that you move up or down to open a door) *Ella reached for the door handle.*

a door key *She was looking in her bag for her door key.*

a door knocker (=a metal object on a door that you use to knock with) *There was a brass door knocker in the shape of a lion's head.*

Doorbell, **doormat**, and **doorknob** (= a round object that you turn to open a door) are usually written as one word. **Doorstep** is always written as one word.

PHRASES

the key to a door *I've lost the key to the back door.*

dose *n*

an amount of a medicine or a drug that someone takes or should take

ADJECTIVES

a high/large/massive dose *High doses of the drug can have bad side effects.*

a low/small dose *You should only take the drug in small doses.*

a daily dose *The study shows that a daily dose of aspirin may reduce the risk of heart disease.*

the recommended dose *The recommended dose is 250 mg a day.*

a lethal/fatal dose (=an amount that kills you) *He died after taking a lethal dose of painkillers.*

a single dose *The medicine is given as a single dose.*

VERBS

take a dose of sth *He had taken his usual dose of sleeping pills.*

give sb a dose of sth *A nurse came in to give me a dose of antibiotics.*

exceed the dose (=take more than you should) *You should take care not to exceed the recommended dose of paracetamol.*

increase/reduce the dose *He was in a lot of pain, and doctors decided to increase the dose of morphine.*

prescribe a dose (=a doctor says that someone should have an amount of a drug) *The doctor prescribed a higher dose of the drug.*

PREPOSITIONS

a dose of sth *She was given another dose of painkillers.*

doubt[1] *v*

to think that something may not be true or that it is unlikely

ADVERBS

doubt sth very much *"Do you think you will ever go back there again?" "I doubt that very much."*

seriously doubt (=doubt something very much) *I seriously doubt that such a meeting would take place in the near future.*

PHRASES

I doubt it (=I don't think so) *"Do you think there'll be any tickets left?" "I doubt it."*

I never doubted sth (for one minute) (=you were completely sure about it) *I never doubted for one minute that we would win.*

doubt[2] *n*

a feeling of being not sure about something

ADJECTIVES

serious/grave doubts *They have some serious doubts as to his honesty.*

considerable doubts *He had considerable doubts about accepting the job.*

a lingering/nagging doubt (=that does not go away) *I still had a nagging doubt that there might be something seriously wrong.*

growing/increasing doubts *There have been growing doubts about the accuracy of the test results.*

VERBS

have doubts (*also* **harbour doubts** *formal*): *Scientists still have some doubts about the theory.*

feel doubt *He felt some doubt about whether the treatment would work.*

express/voice doubts (=say that you have doubts) *Many people expressed doubts about the necessity of the war.*

raise doubts (=make people unsure about something) *The disaster raised doubts about the safety of nuclear power.*

cast/throw doubt on sth (=make people unsure about something) *Research has cast doubt on the safety of mobile phones.*

PREPOSITIONS

doubt about sth *There is no doubt about what he wants.*

doubt over sth *There are continuing doubts over his fitness.*

doubt as to sth *Some government ministers had serious doubts as to whether the policy would work.*

in doubt (=not sure) *If in doubt, ask your teacher.*

without doubt *She is, without doubt, the most beautiful woman I have ever seen.*

beyond doubt (=definitely) *The test proved beyond doubt that Paul was her father.*

PHRASES

have no/little doubt (=be completely sure) *I have no doubt that you are right.*

be in no doubt/not be in any doubt (=be completely sure) *The government is in no doubt about the seriousness of the situation.*

leave no/little doubt (=make people sure or almost sure about something) *The evidence left no doubt that he was the murderer.*

there is no/little/some doubt (=used to talk about how sure people are about something) *There is little doubt that he will play for England one day.*

without/beyond a shadow of a doubt (=without any doubt) *I knew without a shadow of a doubt that I was going to win.*

not the slightest doubt (=no doubt at all) *There's not the slightest doubt in my mind about it.*

an element of doubt (=a slight doubt) *There's an element of doubt about his true age as he doesn't have a birth certificate.*

downfall *n*

a complete failure or the complete loss of money, position, power etc

ADJECTIVES

the ultimate/eventual downfall of sb/sth *There were various causes which led to the eventual downfall of the Roman Empire.*

the inevitable downfall of sb/sth *The economic crisis resulted in the inevitable downfall of the government.*

VERBS

lead to/cause sb's downfall *The scandal led to the president's downfall.*

sth is sb's downfall (=it causes someone's downfall) *Gambling was his downfall.*

prove (to be) sb's downfall (=eventually cause it) *An addiction to alcohol proved to be her downfall.*

contribute to sb's downfall (=help to cause it) *Several factors contributed to his downfall.*

plot sb's downfall (=plan it) *He plotted the downfall of his hated rival.*

sb's downfall comes *Her downfall came through being overconfident.*

download *v*

to get something from the internet or a computer system and put it onto your computer, phone etc

NOUNS

download music/a song/a film/a game etc *He often downloads films onto his computer.*

download software/a program/a file etc *You can download the software for free.*

PREPOSITIONS

download sth from sth/off sth *I downloaded the camera software from the internet.*

download sth to sth *A salesman can write an order and download it to his company's main computer at the end of the day.*

download sth onto sth *I downloaded the songs onto my phone so I could listen to them on the train.*

drab *adj* THESAURUS depressing

draft Ac *n*

a piece of writing or a plan that is not yet in its finished form

ADJECTIVES

the first/second etc draft *The second draft of the agreement contained a few important changes.*

the final draft (=the finished form) *All parties eventually approved the final draft of the peace treaty.*

a rough draft (=not the finished form) *Could you let me see a rough draft of your report?*

the original draft (=the first one) *The hero had a different name in the original draft of the story.*

an early/earlier draft (=written before others) *In earlier drafts of the speech, he criticized the pace of political progress.*

a preliminary draft (=coming before others) *A preliminary draft of the charter has been issued.*

a revised draft (=changed from an earlier form) *The US circulated a revised draft last week.*

VERBS

write/draw up/prepare a draft *Always write a rough draft of your essay first.*

approve a draft (=officially accept one) *The draft was approved by the Senate.*

draft + NOUNS

a draft proposal *The committee was discussing draft proposals to restructure the organization.*

drama Ac *n*

a play or a film that tells a dramatic story, usually a serious one

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + drama

a TV/television/radio drama *The book has been made into a television drama.*

a romantic drama *The film is a romantic drama about two young people who fall in love.*

a comedy drama *There is a new comedy drama on TV.*

a historical drama *She starred in a historical drama about Marie Antoinette.*

a costume drama (=about events in history, in which people wear costumes from that time) *The series is a costume drama set in Victorian England.*

a medical/hospital drama *He played a doctor in the US medical drama 'ER'.*

a courtroom drama *Perry Mason was the hero of 82 courtroom dramas.*

dress[2] *n*

1 a piece of clothing worn by a woman or girl that covers the top of her body and part or all of her legs

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + dress

a beautiful/pretty dress *That's a pretty dress you're wearing!*

a silk/cotton/velvet etc dress *Ellie chose a green silk dress.*

a long/short dress *Most of the women were wearing long dresses.*

a wedding dress *Have you chosen your wedding dress yet?*

an evening dress (=a formal dress to wear in the evening) *She arrived in a red evening dress.*

a cocktail dress (=a formal dress which is not usually very long) *She wore a little black cocktail dress.*

a party dress *I need a new party dress for Christmas.*

a summer dress *The weather wasn't warm enough for a summer dress.*

VERBS

wear a dress *Sheila wore a long red dress.*

make a dress *She has made dresses for the Queen.*

design a dress *The dress was designed by Vera Wang.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a dress (=wearing a dress) *Who's that woman in the green dress?*

THESAURUS: dress

clothing, garment, dress, wear, gear, wardrobe
→ **clothes**

2 clothes of a particular type or for a particular occasion

Grammar
Always uncountable in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + dress

evening dress (=formal clothes for an important social event) *Everyone was in evening dress.*

formal dress *This kind of formal dress is worn at very traditional weddings.*

casual dress (=not formal) *Casual dress is now acceptable in many British workplaces.*

traditional dress *Women in traditional Tibetan dress lined the streets.*

modern dress *They performed Shakespeare plays in modern dress.*

fancy dress *BrE* (=clothes that you wear for fun, which make you look like someone else or like an animal or object) *Party guests have been asked to wear fancy dress.*

military dress *The prince often wears military dress.*

dress + NOUNS

a dress code (=a standard of what people must wear) *The school has a strict dress code.*

PREPOSITIONS

in ... dress *The dancers were in traditional dress.*

PHRASES

full evening dress/full military dress etc (=completely dressed in evening clothes, military clothes etc) *The others were all wearing full evening dress.*

dressed *adj*

having your clothes on or wearing a particular type of clothes

ADVERBS

well-dressed (=wearing nice clothes of good quality) *The restaurant is full of well-dressed couples.*

smartly/neatly dressed *There was a smartly dressed man with a briefcase at the door.*

immaculately/impeccably dressed (=perfectly dressed in smart clothes) *He was immaculately dressed in a grey suit and a blue tie.*

fashionably dressed *Most teenagers want to be fashionably dressed.*

elegantly/beautifully dressed *Even in her eighties, my grandmother was always elegantly dressed.*

fully dressed (=with all your clothes on) *She was so tired that she went to bed fully dressed.*

half dressed (=not having finished putting your clothes on) *Don't come in – I'm only half dressed!*

casually dressed (=wearing informal clothes) *Luke was casually dressed in jeans and a T-shirt.*

properly/suitably/appropriately dressed (=wearing suitable clothes for something) *It's important to be properly dressed when walking in the mountains.*

badly dressed (=not well dressed) *The prime minister has been criticized for being badly dressed.*

PREPOSITIONS

be dressed in jeans/shorts/a suit etc *She was dressed in a skirt and jacket.*

dressed as sb/sth *The children came to the party dressed as pirates.*

drift *v*

to move slowly from one place or condition to another

NOUNS

a boat drifts *A boat had come loose and was drifting down the river.*

cloud/smoke/mist drifts *Cloud drifted across the sky.*

a sound/sb's voice drifts *Joe's voice drifted to where we were standing.*

a smell drifts *The smell of freshly baked bread drifted into the room.*

sb's gaze drifts/sb's eyes drift *His gaze drifted to the wedding ring on her finger.*

sb's mind drifts/sb's thoughts drift (=start thinking about other things) *The meeting was rather boring and her mind started to drift.*

ADVERBS

drift slowly *The boat drifted slowly down the river.*

drift aimlessly (=do one thing after another, without any definite purpose) *Some people drift aimlessly through life without knowing what they really want to do.*

drift apart (=gradually end your relationship) *Some couples get bored with each other and slowly drift apart.*

drink[1] *v*

1 to take liquid into your mouth and swallow it

NOUNS

drink some water/coffee/beer etc *You should drink plenty of water.*

drink a glass/bottle of sth *He drank another glass of orange juice.*

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

drink sth quickly/slowly *She drank her tea slowly because it was hot.*

drink sth down/up (=finish your drink) *Drink up your coffee – it's time to go.*

drink out of/from sth *We had to drink out of plastic cups.*

PHRASES

something to drink *Take a seat while I get you something to drink.*

2 to drink alcohol

ADVERBS

drink heavily/excessively (=drink a lot of alcohol often) *After his wife left him, he started drinking heavily.*

drink sensibly/in moderation (=not drink too much) *The advertisement warns people to drink sensibly.*

drink too much *Don't drink too much at the party!*

PHRASES

drink like a fish *informal* (=often drink a lot of alcohol) *She drinks like a fish – she says it helps her to relax.*

drink and drive *We all know the dangers of drinking and driving.*

sb can drink sb under the table *informal* (=someone can drink much more than another person without getting drunk) *My sister can drink me under the table anytime.*

sb has had too much to drink *The man had had too much to drink and he couldn't walk in a straight line.*

binge drinking (=drinking a lot of alcohol in a short time, so that you get very drunk) *Binge drinking is a problem among students.*

drink[2] *n*

liquid that you drink, or the act of drinking something

ADJECTIVES

a hot/warm drink *Come inside and I'll make you a hot drink.*

a cool/cold drink *You can relax by the pool with a nice cool drink.*

a soft drink (*also* **a non-alcoholic drink** *formal*) (=one that does not contain alcohol) *I'm driving, so I had better have a soft drink.*

an alcoholic drink (=one that contains alcohol) *Beer, wine, and other alcoholic drinks will be available.*

a fizzy drink *BrE*, **a carbonated drink** *especially AmE* (=with bubbles of gas) *Fizzy drinks are bad for children's teeth.*

a refreshing drink (=making you feel less tired or hot) *You can enjoy a refreshing drink in our lakeside café.*

strong drink (=strong alcohol) *His breath smelled of tobacco and strong drink.*

a stiff drink (=a glass of strong alcohol) *He needed a stiff drink to calm himself down.*

a quick drink (=one or two drinks in a pub or bar) *Why don't we go for a quick drink after work?*

a quiet drink (=alone or with a small group of people) *We went for a quiet drink, just the two of us.*

a farewell drink (=in order to say goodbye to someone) *When someone leaves the company, they usually organize a farewell drink.*

VERBS

have a drink *Can I have a drink of water?*

take a drink *She took a drink of her coffee.*

pour (sb) a drink *She got out two glasses and poured us a drink.*

make (sb) a drink *Shall I make you a hot drink?*

buy/get sb a drink *It's my turn to buy you a drink.*

go for a drink (=go to a bar or pub for an alcoholic drink) *Why don't we go for a drink after work?*

sip your drink (=drink it in very small amounts) *Connie was sitting at the table, sipping her drink slowly.*

spill sb's drink *He split his drink all over the floor.*

spike sb's drink (=secretly add alcohol or a drug to it) *She suspects that someone spiked her drink.*

the summer drought *The summer drought is threatening Britain's fruit and vegetable crops.*

VERBS

experience/suffer a drought *The country experienced its worst drought this century.*

be affected by drought/be hit by drought *The area has been severely affected by drought.*

drought + NOUNS

drought conditions *Drought conditions have spread to nearly all of the country.*

PHRASES

a period of drought *Some trees survive long periods of drought by storing water internally.*

drug *n*

1 a medicine

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + drug

a strong/powerful drug *Morphine is a very powerful drug.*

a miracle/wonder drug (=a very effective drug that cures a serious disease) *When penicillin first appeared, it was seen as a miracle drug.*

a life-saving drug *People are being denied life-saving drugs because they don't have enough money.*

a pain-killing drug *A pain-killing drug was injected into the man's leg.*

a prescription drug (=that you can only have if a doctor writes an official note for it) *Not everyone can afford the cost of prescription drugs.*

an over-the-counter drug (=which is available without special permission from a doctor) *Some over-the-counter drugs can have serious side effects.*

a performance-enhancing drug (=taken by a sportsperson to make them perform better) *Seven of the twelve winners tested positive for performance-enhancing drugs.*

VERBS

take a drug *There are certain drugs you should not take when you are pregnant.*

give (sb) a drug *They gave him all sorts of drugs.*

prescribe a drug (=a doctor writes an official note saying that someone can receive it) *Doctors won't prescribe drugs if you don't need them.*

test a drug (*also* **trial a drug** *BrE*): *They tested the drug for five years before using it on humans.*

drug + NOUNS

a drug company *The big drug companies make huge profits.*

PREPOSITIONS

a drug for sth *There's a new drug for breast cancer.*

a drug against sth *Some drugs against the disease have strong side effects.*

PHRASES

be on a drug (=be taking it regularly) *How long have you been on this drug?*

a drug is used to treat sb/sth *The drug is used to treat heart disease.*

the side-effects of a drug (=the bad effects it can have) *One of the side effects of the drug is headaches.*

2 an illegal substance such as marijuana or cocaine

PHRASES

be on drugs (=take drugs regularly) *Sometimes she looks as though she's on drugs.*

be addicted to drugs (=be unable to stop taking drugs) *People who are addicted to drugs need help.*

come off/get off drugs (=stop taking drugs permanently) *It was years before I was able to come off drugs.*

be high on drugs (*also* **be under the influence of drugs** *formal*) (=be experiencing the effects of a drug) *He was high on drugs when he was arrested.*

the war on drugs (=a long struggle by the authorities to control drugs) *The war on drugs continues.*

VERBS

take/use drugs (*also* **do drugs** *informal*): *When did he start taking drugs?*

experiment with drugs (=try taking drugs) *She admitted that she had experimented with drugs.*

smuggle drugs (=take drugs illegally from one country to another) *She was caught trying to smuggle drugs into the country.*

seize drugs (=take possession of drugs) *The police seized drugs worth over £1 million.*

drug + NOUNS

drug abuse (=taking illegal drugs) *She is being treated for drug abuse.*

drug addiction (=the problem of not being able to stop taking drugs) *He wrote a book about his struggle with drug addiction.*

a drug addict (=someone who cannot stop taking drugs) *He is a former drug addict who has been in prison twice.*

a drug user (=someone who takes drugs) *We set up a counselling service for drug users.*

a drug problem/habit (=the problem of being addicted to drugs) *His daughter has a drug problem.*

a drug overdose (=taking too much of a drug at one time) *She died from a drug overdose.*

a drug dealer/pusher (=someone who sells drugs) *The city's streets are full of drug dealers.*

drug trafficking/smuggling (=the crime of bringing drugs into a country) *The maximum penalty for drug smuggling was 25 years in jail.*

a drug trafficker/smuggler (=someone involved in bringing drugs into a country) *US*

efforts against drug traffickers are beginning to work.

the drug trade *The international drug trade is worth billions of dollars.*

a drug test *She was banned from the Olympics after failing a drug test.*

ADJECTIVES

illegal drugs *A lot of crime is connected to illegal drugs.*

hard drugs (*also* **class A drugs** *BrE*) (=strong drugs such as heroin, cocaine etc) *He was in prison for dealing hard drugs.*

soft drugs (=less strong drugs such as marijuana) *Soft drugs are legal in some countries.*

recreational drugs (=taken for pleasure) *Ecstasy was first used in Britain as a recreational drug in the 1980s.*

drunk *adj*

having drunk too much alcohol so that your behaviour and mental processes are affected

VERBS

get drunk *I just hope they don't get drunk and start fighting.*

get sb drunk (=deliberately try to make someone drunk) *She was trying to get him drunk.*

make sb drunk *The wine had made her drunk.*

feel drunk *I started to feel a bit drunk.*

look/sound drunk *Both men sounded drunk.*

ADVERBS

slightly drunk *He was slightly drunk and his face was pink.*

completely/very drunk *By 10 p.m., she was completely drunk and I had to take her home.*

roaring/blind drunk *informal* (=very drunk) *They were not just happy, they were roaring drunk.*

too drunk *She was too drunk to stand up.*

NOUNS

a drunk man/woman *We found a drunk man lying in a bush.*

a drunk driver *Their daughter had been killed by a drunk driver.*

drunk driving *He was arrested for drunk driving.*

Driving when drunk
You say that someone is arrested for **drink driving** (BrE) or **drunken driving** (AmE), or in official contexts **driving under the influence (of alcohol)**.

PHRASES

drunk and disorderly (=used in legal situations when someone is drunk and behaving badly) *She admitted two charges of being drunk and disorderly.*

THESAURUS: drunk

drunken *especially written*
stupor | **state** | **behaviour** | **rage** | **brawl** | **driving** | **rampage** | **party** | **night** | **man** | **soldier** | **sailor** | **yob** | **reveller**
drunk, or behaving in a way that shows you are drunk – usually used in the following phrases:
We found him lying by the roadside in a drunken stupor (=almost unconscious as a result of being drunk). | *She was injured during a drunken brawl outside a bar.* | *He was arrested for drunken driving* (=driving after you have drunk alcohol – used in American English). | *On New Year's Eve, the streets are full of drunken revellers* (=people who are enjoying themselves by getting drunk, especially in order to celebrate something).

Drunken is always used before a noun. Don't say 'He is drunken.' Say **He is drunk.**

intoxicated *formal*
drunk – used especially in legal or official situations:
He was arrested for driving while intoxicated.

Intoxicated is not usually used before a noun.

tipsy
slightly drunk:
*After the second glass of wine I was **feeling** a little **tipsy**. | He **got** a bit **tipsy** and started saying some embarrassing things.*

dry *adj*

1 without any water or moisture

NOUNS

dry clothes *I need to change into some dry clothes.*

dry grass/leaves *There had been no rain and the grass was very dry.*

dry mouth/tongue/throat/lips *My mouth is getting dry – can I have a glass of water?*

Dry land is used especially when someone has been on the sea or a river in a boat, and comes back onto the land: *It was good to get off the ship onto **dry land** again.*

VERBS

keep/stay dry *We managed to keep dry inside an old farm building.*

get dry (=become dry) *Come inside and get dry.*

shake/rub/wipe etc sth dry *He wiped his hands dry with a handkerchief.*